The Sacred Books of the East: Pahlavi texts, pt. 2

Friedrich Max Müller
The New York Public Library
Astor, Lenox & Tilden Foundations

* * *

The R. Heber Newton
Collection

Presented by His Children

* 1931 *
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

[18] a
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED

BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

AND EDITED BY

F. MAX MÜLLER

VOL. XVIII

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1882

[All rights reserved]
PAHLAVI TEXTS

TRANSLATED BY

E. W. WEST

PART II

THE DĀDISTĀN-Ī DĪNĪK AND THE EPISTLES
OF MĀNŪSKĪHAR

Orford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
1882

[All rights reserved]
CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>General Remarks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>The Dādīstān-ī Dīnīk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>xxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>The Epistles of Mānuṣkīhar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>xxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>The Appendix</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>xxviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abbreviations used in this volume</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>xxxi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TRANSLATIONS.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dādīstān-ī Dīnīk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Why a righteous man is better than all creatures, spiritual or worldly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Why a righteous man is created, and how he should act</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Why a righteous man is great</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How temporal distress is to be regarded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Why the good suffer more than the bad in this world</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Why we are created, and what we ought to do</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Whether good works done for the dead differ in effect from those ordered or done by themselves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How far they differ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. The growth of good works during life</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Whether the growth of a good work be as commendable as the original good work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Whether it eradicates sin equally well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Whether one is made responsible for all his sins and good works separately at the last account, or only for their balance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. The angels who take account of sin and good works, and how sinners are punished</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. The exposure of a corpse does not occasion the final departure of life, and is meritorious</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Whether the soul be aware of, or disturbed by, the corpse being gnawed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAP.</td>
<td>CONTENTS.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Reasons for the exposure of corpses</td>
<td>38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>How the corpse and bones are to be disposed of</td>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Whether departed souls can see Aūhrāmazd and Aharman</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Where the souls of the righteous and wicked go</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>The Dāštīh peak, the Kinvād bridge, and the two paths of departed souls</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Whether the spirits are distressed when a righteous man dies</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>How the life departs from the body</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Where a righteous soul stays for the first three nights after death, and what it does next</td>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Where a wicked soul stays for the first three nights after death, and what it does next</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>The nature of heaven and its pleasures</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>The nature of hell and its punishments</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Why ceremonies in honour of Srōšh are performed for the three days after a death</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Why Srōšh must be reverenced separately from other angels</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Why three sacred cakes are consecrated at dawn after the third night from a death</td>
<td>61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>How a righteous soul goes to heaven, and what it finds and does there</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>How a wicked soul goes to hell, and what it finds and suffers there</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>The position and subdivisions of hell</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>The two ways from the Dāštīh peak; that of the righteous to heaven, and that of the wicked to hell</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>The continuance of mankind in the world till the resurrection</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>The preparers of the renovation of the universe</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>The contest of the good and evil spirits from the creation till the resurrection, and the condition of creation after the resurrection</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>The effect of doing more good works than are necessary for attaining to the supreme heaven</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Reasons for wearing the sacred thread-girdle</td>
<td>122</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>On the sacred shirt and thread-girdle, grace before and after eating, and cleansing the mouth before the after-grace</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>The sin of apostasy, and how to atone for it</td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>The good works of him who saves others from apostasy</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chap.</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43. The distance at which the fire can be addressed, the use of a lamp, and the proper order of the propitiatory dedications, when consecrating a sacred cake</td>
<td>141</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44. Whether a skilful priest who is employed to perform ceremonies, but is not officially the priest of the district, should be paid a regular stipend</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45. The separate duties of priests and disciples</td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46. When a priest can abandon the priesthood to obtain a livelihood</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. Whether a priest who knows the Avesta, or one who understands the commentary, be more entitled to the foremost place at a sacred feast</td>
<td>155</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. The advantage and proper mode of celebrating the ceremonial</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. Whether it be lawful to buy corn and keep it long, so as to raise the price for the sake of profit</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. Whether it be lawful to sell wine to foreigners and infidels</td>
<td>176</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. The sin of drunkenness, and what constitutes immoderate drinking</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. Whether a man who bargains to deliver wheat in a month, and takes a deposit, is bound to deliver the wheat if its market-price has risen enormously</td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. Whether it be lawful to sell cattle to those of a different religion</td>
<td>182</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. Whether a man without a son can give away his property to one daughter on his death-bed; the laws of inheritance, and when an adopted son must be appointed, in such a case</td>
<td>183</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55. Whose duty it is to order the ceremonies after a death</td>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56. The laws of adoption and family-guardianship</td>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57. Those who are fit, or unfit, for adoption</td>
<td>190</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58. The three kinds of adoption</td>
<td>191</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59. The least amount of property that requires the appointment of an adopted son</td>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. The sin of not appointing an adopted son, or of appointing a dishonest one</td>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61. The merit and demerit of family-guardianship</td>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62. The laws of inheritance</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63. Whether it be lawful to seize property from foreigners and infidels</td>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAP.</td>
<td>CONTENTS.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>The origin of Gāyōmard, Mashyāh, and Mashyāyōdih</td>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>The origin of next-of-kin marriage</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>Regarding the cost of religious rites, and whether a priest's fees can be reduced when others will take less</td>
<td>201</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>The cause of the rainbow</td>
<td>210</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>The cause of the phases of the moon</td>
<td>210</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>The cause of eclipses</td>
<td>212</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>The causes of river-beds</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>What things happen through destiny, and what through exertion</td>
<td>214</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>The seven heinous sinners, and the necessity of avoiding him who commits unnatural intercourse</td>
<td>216</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Whether the stench of such intercourse reaches the sky</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Whether that stench disturbs the archangels</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Whether the angels raise such a sinner from the dead at the resurrection</td>
<td>222</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Whether it be a good work to kill such a sinner</td>
<td>223</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Why such intercourse is a heinous sin</td>
<td>224</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Why adultery is heinous, and how one can atone for it</td>
<td>227</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>The sin of not repeating the full grace before drinking (when one is able to do so), and how one can atone for it</td>
<td>233</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Regarding him who does not order ceremonies</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81.</td>
<td>About the ceremonies for the living soul</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>About him who pays for ceremonies and him who takes the money without performing them</td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Whether a priest must undertake all religious rites</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Whether gifts to the priesthood for ceremonies can be diminished or increased</td>
<td>245</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>The advantages of increasing such gifts</td>
<td>246</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>The harm of diminishing such gifts</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Why it is good to give such gifts</td>
<td>249</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>About the cost of religious rites in Pārs</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>Whether when a man has once resolved to go into Pārs, with gifts for the priesthood, it be lawful for him to send another man with the gifts</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>The seven immortal rulers in the region of Khvanīras before the coming of the good religion</td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>The nature and material of the sky</td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>The course and benefit of the water of Arekdivsūr</td>
<td>262</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAP.</td>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Tîrtar's seizing of water from the ocean to rain it upon the earth, and his conflict with Apâôsh</td>
<td>264</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>269</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Epistles of Mânûskîhar**

**Epistle I.** To the good people of Sîrkhân.

1. Introductory compliments, acknowledging receipt of a complaining epistle | 277 |
2. Deploiring the false opinions in circulation, owing to the fiend, about the purification ceremonies | 279 |
3. Excusing any defects in this epistle for various reasons detailed | 282 |
4. Deprecating the disuse of the Bâreshnûm ceremony, as decreed by his brother; such disuse being contrary to scripture and the commentaries | 286 |
5. Alluding to the one-sided view of the opinions of the commentators adopted by the decree they had sent | 292 |
6. Discussing the different statements of the commentators as to the number of purifiers and washings | 298 |
7. Discussing the proper quantities of liquids to be used, and the 300 pebbles | 301 |
8. Regarding the stirring up of the bull's urine when fetid, as mentioned in the Sakâdûm Nask | 304 |
9. Deciding that the commentary which teaches the most efficient mode of purification is to be followed, when there are no special reasons for acting otherwise | 309 |
10. Reserving other matters for special instructions to the priests, but warning them not to obey the decree now denounced | 312 |
11. Arranging for the enforcement of his decision, until he can write further, or come himself; and concluding with benediction and date | 316 |

**Epistle II.** To his brother, Zâd-spâram.

1. Acknowledging receipt of a former epistle, and announcing the arrival of complaints about his brother's reprehensible decree | 320 |
2. Disapproving of the decree and its mode of dealing with the commentaries, whose exact agreement is as unlikely as the simultaneous occurrence of several particular conjunctions of the planets | 324 |
3. Exhorting him not to seek for new rules, but to adhere strictly to the old customs ................................. 336
4. Reasserting his opinions, and protesting against the notion that the decree was in accordance with the practice of all the purifiers in Iran ........................................... 341
5. Commenting upon the secrecy with which the decree had been prepared, and the evil consequences resulting from it ................................................................. 343
6. Persuading him to remain steadfast in the faith, and threatening him if he should not ........................................... 348
7. Explaining that he had previously written to Sirkân, and would shortly come there himself; but ordering the appointment of proper purifiers ........................................... 350
8. Mentioning his general epistle to all of the good religion in Iran, and describing the evil consequences of continued disobedience, including the possibility of his own retreat to foreign lands ........................................... 352
9. Giving further instructions for satisfying the discontented, and opposing the heterodox; and concluding without date ................................................................. 354

EPISTLE III. To all of the good religion in Iran. Forbidding the substitution of a fifteenfold washing for the Bareshnûm ceremony; and dated A.Y. 250 (A.D. 881) ........................................... 359

APPENDIX ........................................................................................................................................ 367
I. Legends relating to Keresâsp ........................................................................................................ 369
II. The Nîrâng-i Kustî ....................................................................................................................... 383
III. The meaning of Khvêtûk-das ...................................................................................................... 389
IV. The Bareshnûm ceremony ......................................................................................................... 431
V. Finding a corpse in the wilderness ............................................................................................... 455

INDEX .............................................................................................................................................. 459
CORRECTIONS .................................................................................................................................. 479

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East ................................. 481
INTRODUCTION.

I. GENERAL REMARKS.

The Pahlavi texts selected for translation in this volume are distinguished from all others by the peculiarity that both the name and station of their author and the time in which he lived are distinctly recorded.

His name, Mânûškihr, son of Yûdân-Yim (or Gûndam), is mentioned in each of the headings and colophons to the Dâdistân-î Dinik and the three Epistles attributed to him. He is styled simply aërpat, or 'priest,' in the headings of Eps. I and II, and aërpat khûdâl, or 'priestly lordship,' in that of Ep. III; but he is called the rad, 'pontiff,' or executive high-priest,' of Pûrs and Kirmân, and the farmaďâr, 'director,' of the profession of priests, in the colophons to Dd. and Ep. II; and we learn from Dd. XLV, 5 that the farmaďâr was also the pesûpâl, or 'leader' of the religion, the supreme high-priest of the Mazaďa-worshipping faith.

Regarding his family we learn, from Ep. I, iii, 10, viii, 5, that his father, Yûdân-Yim, son of Shahpûhar, had been the leader of the religion before him; and his own succession to this dignity indicates that he was the eldest surviving son of his father, who, in his declining years, seems to have been assisted by his advice (Ep. I, iii, 11). We also learn, from the heading of his second epistle, that Zâd-sparam was his brother, and this is confirmed by the language used in Ep. II, vi, i, ix, 6, and by Zâd-sparam being a son of the same father (Eps. I, heading, III, 2); that he was a younger brother appears from the general tone of authority over him adopted by Mânûškihr in his epistles. Shortly before these epistles were written, Zâd-sparam appears to have been at Sarakhs (Ep. II, v, 3), in
the extreme north-east of Khurāsān, where he probably came in contact with the Tughazghuz (Ep. II, i, 12) and adopted some of their heretical opinions, and whence he may have travelled through Nivshahpūhar (Ep. II, i, 2, note) and Shīrāz (Ep. II, v, 3, 4) on his way to Sīrkān to take up his appointment as high-priest of the south (Eps. I, heading, II, i, 4, v, 9, vii, i, viii, i, Zs. I, o). Soon after his arrival at Sīrkān he issued a decree, regarding the ceremonies of purification, which led to complaints from the people of that place, and compelled his brother to interfere by writing epistles, threatening him with deprivation of office (Ep. I, xi, 7) and the fate of a heretic (Eps. II, viii, 2, 3, III, 17–19). That Zād-sparām finally submitted, so far as not to be deprived of his office, appears from his still retaining his position in the south while writing his Selections (Zs. I, o), which must have been compiled at some later period, free from the excitement of active and hazardous controversy.

The age in which Mānūškiāhar lived is decided by the date attached to his third epistle, or public notification, to the Māsda-worshippers of Irān; which date is the third month of the year 250 of Yasdakard (Ep. III, 21), corresponding to the interval between the 14th June and 13th July A.D. 881; at which time, we learn, he was an old man (Ep. II, ix, 1), but not too old to travel (Eps. I, iii, 13, xi, 4, II, v, 5, vi, 4, 6, vii, 3, viii, 4, 5).

His writings, therefore, represent the state of the Zoroastrian religion a thousand years ago; and it may be presumed, from the importance and influentialness of his position, that his representations can be implicitly relied upon. To detect any differences there may be between the tenets and religious customs he describes, and those upheld by Zoroastrians of the present time, would require all the learning and experience of a Parsi priest; but, so far as a European can judge, from these writings and his own limited knowledge of existing religious customs among the Parsees, the change has been less than in any other form of religion during the same period.

The manuscripts containing the writings of Mānūškiāhar
are of two classes, one represented in Europe by the codex
No. 35 of the collection of Avesta and Pahlavi manuscripts
in the University Library at Kopenhagen, the other repre-
sented by No. 14 of the Haug Collection of similar
manuscripts in the State Library at Munich, which two
manuscripts are called K₃₅ and M₁₄, respectively, in this
volume. In the former of these classes, represented by
K₃₅, the Dādistān-i Dinik occupies the central third of the
codex; being preceded by a nearly equal extent of other
miscellaneous religious writings of rather later date, resem-
bling a Pahlavi Rivâyat; and being followed by a third
series of similar writings of about the same age and extent
as the Dādistān-i Dinik, which includes the Epistles of
Mānuṣkīhar and the Selections of Zād-sparām. In the
latter class of manuscripts, from which M₁₄ is descended,
the text of the Dādistān-i Dinik contains many variations
from that in the former class, as if it had been revised by
some one whose knowledge of Pahlavi was insufficient to
decipher difficult passages, and who had freely exercised
his editorial license in altering and mutilating the text to
suit his own limited comprehension of it.

The codex K₃₅, which was brought from Persia by the
late Professor Westergaard in 1843, is one of the most im-
portant manuscripts of the former class, and now consists of
181 folios; but it is incomplete at both ends, having lost
seventy-one folios at the beginning and about thirty-five at
the end. It still includes, however, the whole of the
Dādistān-i Dinik and the Epistles of Mānuṣkīhar; though
its date has been lost with its last folio. But this date can
be recovered from an old copy of this codex existing in India
(here called BK) and still containing a colophon, probably
copied from K₃₅¹, which states that the manuscript was

¹ One reason for supposing that this colophon was so copied is that K₃₅
does not seem older than the date mentioned in it. Another reason is that
the loss of the end of this colophon in BK allows us to assume that it was
followed by another colophon, as is often the case in copies of old MSS. A
colophon that extends to the end of the last folio of a manuscript can never be
safely assumed to belong to that manuscript, because it may have been followed
by others on further folios.
completed by Marzapân Frêdûn Vâhrôm Rûstâm Bôndâr Malkâ-mardân Din-ayâr, on the day Âsmân of the month Amerôdad A. Y. 941 (19th March, 1572), in the district of the Dahikân in the land of Kirmân. The end of this colophon is lost with the last folio of BK, which renders it possible that the last folio contained the further colophon of this copy.

That BK is descended from K35 is proved by its containing several false readings, which are clearly due to mis-shapen letters and accidental marks in K35. And that it was copied direct from that codex is proved by the last words of thirty-two of its pages being marked with interlined circles in K35, which circles must have been the copyist's marks for finding his place, when beginning a fresh page after turning over his folios. This copy of K35 has lost many of its folios, in various parts, but most of the missing text has been recently restored from the modern manuscript J, mentioned below; there are still, however, eleven folios of text missing, near the end of the codex, part of which can be hereafter recovered from TK, described below. The independent value of BK is that it supplies the contents of the seventy-one folios lost at the beginning of K35, and of about nineteen of the folios missing at the end of that codex.

A third manuscript of the first class, which may be even more important than K35, was brought to Bombay from Persia about fifteen years ago, and belongs to Mr. Tehmurâs Dinshawji Ankesaria, of Bombay, but it has not been available for settling the texts translated in this volume. It is here called TK, and is described as still consisting of 227 folios, though seventy folios are missing at the beginning and about fourteen at the end. In its present state, therefore, it must begin very near the same place as K35, but it extends much further, so as even to supply nearly half the contents of the eleven folios missing from BK; it does not, however, include the contents of the last three folios of BK. According to a colophon appended in this manuscript to the 'Sayings of Zâd-spâram, son of Yûdân-Yim, about the formation of men out of body, life,
INTRODUCTION.

and soul’ (see Zs. XI, 10, note), some copy of these ‘sayings’ was written by Gōpatshah Rūstôm Bāndār Malkā-marţān in the land of Kirmān. This Gōpatshah was evidently a brother of Vāhrōm, the grandfather of the Marsapān who wrote the colophon found in BK and supposed to have been copied from K35 (see pp. xv, xvi). If, therefore, this colophon in TK has not been copied from some older MS., it would indicate that TK is two generations older than K35.

A recent copy of TK exists in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay, to whom I am indebted for the information that its text does not differ from that of K35, at the two points (Dd. XCIII, 17 and Ep. III, 11) where some omission of text may be suspected.

The manuscripts of the second class appear to be all descended from an old, undated codex brought to Bombay from Persia about sixty-five years ago¹, and recently in the library of Mr. Dhanjibhai Frāmjī Pātcl of Bombay. From what is stated, concerning the contents of this codex, it appears to commence with about three-fourths of the miscellaneous religious writings, found at the beginning of BK; and these are followed by the altered text of the Dādīstān-i Dīnīk, as appears from the copies described below, but how the codex concludes is not stated. It may, however, be supposed that it contains as much of the third series of writings as is found in the manuscript J, a copy of this codex which ends in Ep. II, vi, 2.

This manuscript J belongs to the library of Dastur Jamāspji Minochharji in Bombay; it commenced originally at the same point as the codex just described, and, so far as it has been examined, it contains the same altered text of the Dādīstān-i Dīnīk. There is, therefore little doubt that it was originally copied from that codex, but a considerable

¹ There is some doubt about this period. Dastur Peshtanji mentions thirty or forty years, but in the MS. J, which appears to have been copied chiefly from this codex in Bombay, the date noted by the copyist of the older part of that MS. is ‘the day Rashn of the month Khūrdād, A.Y. 1188’ (21st December 1818, according to the calendar of the Indian Parsees), showing that the codex must have been at least sixty-four years in Bombay.
portion of the additional matter at the beginning of BK has been prefixed to it at a later date. The oldest portion of this copy, extending to Ep. I, vii, 4, bears a date corresponding to 21st December 1818; the date of a further portion, extending to Ep. II, vi, 2, corresponds to 12th February 1841; and a third portion copied from BK, at the beginning of the manuscript, is still more recent.

Another copy of this codex, or of the Dādistān-ī Dinīk contained in it, exists in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay; and from this copy the text of the Dādistān-ī Dinīk contained in M.14 was transcribed.

This latter manuscript consists of two volumes, written in 1865 and 1868, respectively; the first volume containing Chaps. I, 1–XXXVII, 9, and the second volume Chaps. XXXVI, 1–XCIV, 15 of the altered text of the Dādistān-ī Dinīk.

Other copies of the Dādistān-ī Dinīk, which have not been examined, are to be found in India, but, unless descended from other manuscripts than K.35 and the above-mentioned codex recently belonging to Mr. Dhanjibhai Frămji, they would be of no further use for settling the text.

Of the manuscripts above described the following have been available for the translations in this volume:—K.35 for the whole of the Dādistān-ī Dinīk and the Epistles; M.14 for the whole of the Dādistān-ī Dinīk alone; BK for Dd. I, 1–VI, 3¹, X, 2–XIV, 3², LXXXVIII, 9–XCIV, 15, the whole of the Epistles, the legend about the soul of Kersāsp (see pp. 373–381), and the extracts from the Pahlavi Rivāyat in these codices relating to Khvētūk-das (see pp. 415–423); and J for Dd. I, 1–XXXIX, 10³; LXXXVIII, 9–LXXXIX, 1⁴, XCI, 7–XCIV, 15, Ep. I, i, 1–II, ix, 7⁵, the

¹ The text of Chaps. VI, 3–X, 2 has been lost, and recently supplied from J.
² No copy of the intermediate chapters obtained by the present translator, and several of the original folios have been lost.
³ No copy of the intermediate chapters taken by the present translator.
⁴ Chaps. LXXXIX, 1–XCI, 7 omitted.
⁵ Ep. II, vi, 2–ix, 7 being copied from BK and wrongly inserted in Dd. XXXVII, 33 (see p. 89, note 5).
INTRODUCTION.

legend about Keresāsp, and the extracts relating to Khvētūk-das. Other manuscripts, used for the remaining extracts translated in the Appendix, will be mentioned in § 4 of this introduction.

The existence of two versions of the text of the Dāfästān-i Dīnāk would have been a source of much perplexity to the translator, had it not been soon apparent that the version represented by M14 was merely a revision of that in K35, attempted by some editor who had found much difficulty in understanding the involved phraseology of Mānūškīhār. There are, undoubtedly, some corrupt words and passages in K35, where the revised version may be followed with advantage, but nine-tenths of the alterations, introduced by the reviser, are wholly unnecessary, and in many cases they are quite inconsistent with the context.

Under these circumstances it has been the duty of the translator to follow the text given in K35, wherever it is not wholly unintelligible after prolonged study, to note all deviations of the translation from that text (which are usually small), and merely to mention the variations of the revised text, so far as they are intelligible, in the notes.

The writings of Mānūškīhār are certainly difficult to translate, not only from the involved and obscure style he affects, but also from the numerous compound epithets he uses, which are not easy either to understand with certainty, or to express clearly in English. The only other Pahlavi writings that approach them in difficulty are those of his brother, Zād-spāram, and those of the author of the third book of the Dīnkard, who seems to have also been a contemporary writer. To a certain extent, therefore, an involved style of writing may have been a failing of the age in which he lived; and his works, being of an epistolary and hortatory character, would naturally be more abstruse and idiomatic than simple narrative; but much of the obscurity of his style must still be attributed to his own want of clear arrangement of thought and inadequate, though wordy, expression of ideas, the usual sources of all obscure and rambling writing.

When to the difficulty of tracing the thread of an argument
through the involved obscurity of the text is added the perplexity occasioned by the ambiguity of many Pahlavi words, it can be readily understood that no translation is likely to be even approximately accurate, unless it be as literal as possible. The translator has to avoid enough pitfalls, in the shape of false constructions and incorrect readings, without risking the innumerable sources of error offered by the alluring by-paths of free translation. If, therefore, the reader should sometimes meet with strange idioms, or uncouth phrases, he must attribute them to a straining after correctness of translation, however little that correctness may be really attained.

For the purpose of more effectually keeping a curb upon the imagination of the translator, and indicating where he has been compelled to introduce his own ideas, all words not expressed or fully understood in the original text are italicised in the translation. Occasionally, also, the original word is appended to its translation, where either the reading or meaning adopted is unusual, or where a scholar might wish to know the particular Pahlavi word translated.

Some endeavour has likewise been made to introduce greater precision than has hitherto been attempted, in the transliteration of Pahlavi words and names, by taking advantage of the italic system, adopted for this series of Sacred Books of the East, not only for distinguishing variations of sound (as in the use of g, k, and s for the sounds of j, soft ch, and sh, respectively, in English), but also to indicate the use of particular Pahlavi letters, when there are more than one of nearly the same sound. Thus, d is used where its sound is represented by \( \text{ṭ} \); l and r where they are represented by \( \text{ṭ} \); n, v, ò, or by \( \text{ṭ} \); v and z where they are represented by \( \text{ṭ} \); and sd where those letters are represented by \( \text{ṭ} \). If, in addition to these particulars, the Pahlavi scholar will remember that the uncircumflexed vowels are not expressed in Pahlavi characters, and the vowel ò is expressed, he will find no particular difficulty in restoring any of the transliterated words to their original character, by merely following the
ordinary rules of Pahlavi writing. Without some such mode\textsuperscript{1} of distinguishing the different Pahlavi letters used for the same sound, it would be practically impossible to restore the transliteration of any word, new to the reader, to its original Pahlavi form. And even the system here adopted requires the addition of $a$ and $d$ to represent the vowel $a$, $a$ when one of its turns is omitted in writing (as in $\text{aw}$ $a$, $d$ $\nu$, used for $\text{aw}$ $a$, $a$; $\text{aw}$ $d$ $\text{in}$ used for $\text{aw}$ $d$ $\text{in}$, &c.), and of $j$ or $j$ to represent $\delta$ $y$ when it has the sound of $g$ or English $j$, in order to distinguish it from $g$, $k$, $g$.

The general reader should, however, observe that these niceties of transliteration are merely matters of writing, as the exact pronunciation of Pahlavi cannot now be fully ascertained in all its details. There is every reason to suppose that the Semitic portion of the Pahlavi was never pronounced by the Persians as it was written (unless, indeed, in the earliest times); but to transliterate these Semitic words by their Persian equivalents, as the Persians certainly pronounced them, would produce a Pâzand text, instead of a Pahlavi one. If, therefore, we really want the transliteration to represent the Pahlavi text correctly, we must transliterate the Semitic words as they are written, without reference to the mode in which we suppose that the Persians used to read them. With regard to the Persian words, if we call to mind the fact that Pahlavi was the immediate parent of modern Persian, we shall naturally accept the modern Persian pronunciation (stripped of its Arabic corruptions) as a guide, so far as Pahlavi orthography permits, in preference to tracing the sounds of these words downwards from their remote ancestors in ancient Persian or the Avesta. But the pronunciation of words evidently derived directly from the Avesta, as is the case with many religious terms, must clearly depend upon the

\textsuperscript{1} Dotted letters might be used, if available, instead of italics; but they are liable to the objection that, independent of the usual blunders due to the ordinary fallibility of human eyesight, it has been found by the translator that a dot, which was invisible on the proofs, will sometimes appear under a wrong letter in the course of printing.
Avesta orthography, so far as the alteration in spelling permits. These are the general rules here adopted, but many uncertainties arise in their practical application, which have to be settled in a somewhat arbitrary manner.

2. The Dādistân-i Dinîk.

The term Dādistân-i Dinîk, 'religious opinions or decisions,' is a comparatively modern name applied to ninety-two questions, on religious subjects, put to the high-priest Mânûskîhar, and his answers to the same. These questions appear to have been sent in an epistle from Mitrô-khûrshêd, son of Ātûrû-mahân, and other Mazda-worshippers (Dd. heading and I, 2), and were received by Mânûskîhar, who was the leader of the religion (Dd. I, 10, note), in the month of July or August (Dd. I, 17); but it was not till September or October, after he had returned to Shîrâz from a tour in the provinces, that he found time to begin his reply which, when completed, was sent by a courier (Dd. I, 26) to his correspondents, but at what date is not recorded.

Regarding the residence of these correspondents, and the year in which these transactions took place, we have no positive information. The correspondents seem to have thanked Mânûskîhar for sending them one of his disciples (Dd. I, 3, 4) to act probably as their high-priest; and, from the mode in which the land of Pârs is mentioned in Dd. LXVI, 28, LXXXIX, 1, it seems likely that they were not inhabitants of that province; but this conclusion is hardly confirmed, though not altogether contradicted, by the further allusions to Pârs in Dd. LXVI, 3, 15, 21, LXXXVIII, 1. With regard to the date of this correspondence we may conclude, from the less authoritative tone assumed by Mânûskîhar in his reply (Dd. I, 5–7, 11), as compared with that adopted in his epistles (Ep. III, 17–19), that he was a younger man when he composed the Dâdistân-i Dinîk than when he wrote his epistles; we may, therefore, probably assume that the Dâdistân-i Dinîk was written several years before A.D. 881.
INTRODUCTION.

Although the subjects discussed in the Dâdîstân-i Dinik cover a wide range of religious doctrines, legends, and duties, they cannot be expected to give a complete view of the Mâsda-worshipping religion, as they are merely those matters on which Mîtrô-khûrshêd and his friends entertained doubts, or wished for further information. It is also somewhat doubtful whether the whole of the questions have been preserved, on account of the abrupt transition from the last reply, at the end of Dd. XCIII, to the peroration in Dd. XCIV, and also from the fact that a chapter is alluded to, in Dd. XVII, 20, XVIII, 2, which is no longer extant in the text.

The questions, although very miscellaneous in their character, are arranged, to some extent, according to the subjects they refer to, which are taken in the following order:—The righteous and their characteristics; the temporal distress of the good; why mankind was created; good works and their effects; the account of sin and good works to be rendered; the exposure of corpses and reasons for it; the paths, destinations, and fate of departed souls, with the ceremonies to be performed after a death; the contributors to the renovation of the universe; the contest between the good and evil spirits from the creation till the resurrection; works of supererogation; the sacred shirt and thread-girdle; apostasy and its prevention; the use of fire at ceremonies, and other details; duties, payment, and position of priests; details regarding ceremonies; lawful and unlawful trading in corn, wine, and cattle, with a definition of drunkenness; adoption, guardianship, and inheritance; rights of foreigners and infidels; the origin of mankind and next-of-kin marriage; the cost of religious rites; the causes of the rainbow, phases of the moon, eclipses, and river-beds; things acquired through destiny and exertion; the sins of unnatural intercourse and adultery; imperfect prayer before drinking; ceremonies and payments for them; the seven immortal rulers before Zaratûst; the sky, the source of pure water, and the cause of rain and storms.

In his replies to these questions Mânûskîhar displays
much intelligence and wisdom, the morality he teaches is of a high standard for the age in which he lived, and, while anxious to uphold the power and privileges of the priesthood, he is widely tolerant of all deficiencies in the conduct of the laity that do not arise from wilful persistence in sin. The reader will search in vain for any confirmation of the foreign notion that Mazda-worship is decidedly more dualistic than Christianity is usually shown to be by orthodox writers, or for any allusion to the descent of the good and evil spirits from a personification of 'boundless time,' as asserted by strangers to the faith. No attempt is made to account for the origin of either spirit, but the temporary character of the power of the evil one, and of the punishment in hell, is distinctly asserted.

Although Mânûškîhar does not mention, in his writings, any of the lost Nasks or sacred books of the Mazda-worshippers, except the Hûspârûm (Dd. LXI, 3) and the Sakađûm (Ep. I, viii, 1, 6, 7), he certainly had access to many Pahlavi books which are now no longer extant; hence he is able to give us more information than we find elsewhere regarding some of the legendary personages mentioned in Dd. II, 10, XXXVI, 4, 5, XLVIII, 33, XC, 3; he hints that the second month of the year (April–May) was called Zaremaya in the Avesta (Dd. XXXI, 14); and he mentions two places, instead of one, intermediate between heaven and hell, one for the souls of those not quite good enough for heaven, and one for those not quite bad enough for hell (Dd. XXIV, 6, XXXIII, 2).

The present translation of this work is not the first that has been attempted. Shortly before the late Professor Haug left India he delivered a lecture on the Parsi religion to a large assemblage of Parsees in Bombay, at their request, and at his desire the sum of 900 rûpîs, out of the net proceeds of the entrance-tickets sold, was offered as a prize for an edition of the Pahlavi text of the Dâdistân-1 Dînîk with a Gujarâti translation and glossary. Some years afterwards this prize was awarded to Mr. Shehrîarji Dadabhoy and Mr. Tehmurâs Dinshawji Anklesaria, for their joint Gujarâti translation of the work, which still, however, remains unpublished.
for want of funds, and has, therefore, been inaccessible to the present translator.

3. THE EPISTLES OF MĀNŪSKĪHAR.

It has been already stated (see pp. xiii, xiv) that Zād-sparam, a younger brother of Mānūskīhar, after having been at Sarakhs, in the extreme north-east of Khurāsān, where he seems to have associated with the heretical Tughazghuz, was appointed high-priest of Sīrkān, south or south-west of Kirmān. Shortly after his arrival there he issued a decree, regarding the ceremonies of purification and other matters, which was so unpalatable to the Māsda-worshippers of that place that they wrote an epistle to Mānūskīhar, complaining of the conduct of his brother (Ep. I, i, 2, ii, 1).

In reply to this complaint, which was sent by a special courier (Ep. I, i, 2), and after going to Shīrāz and holding a general assembly of the priests and elders (Ep. II, i, 11), Mānūskīhar wrote his first epistle, completed on the 15th March 881 (Ep. I, xi, 12), in which he condemned the practices decreed by Zād-sparam, to whom he sent a confidential agent, named Yazdān-pānak (Ep. I, xi, 1, 2, 6, 10, II, vii, 2), with a copy of this epistle and a further one to himself, which has not been preserved, for the purpose of inducing his brother to withdraw his decree and conform to the usual customs.

It would appear that Yazdān-pānak was not very successful in his mission, as we find Mānūskīhar writing a general epistle (Ep. III) to all the Māsda-worshippers in Irān, in the following June or July (Ep. III, 21), denouncing as heretical the mode of purification decreed by Zād-sparam, and ordering an immediate return to former customs. At the same time (Ep. II, vii, 2, viii, 1) he wrote a second epistle (Ep. II) to his brother, as he had already

1 The city of Kirmān was itself called Shīrgān, or Shīrgān, in the middle ages, and is evidently mentioned by that name in Ouseley’s Oriental Geography, pp. 139, 143, though the Shīrgān of pp. 138, 141 of the same work was clearly further south. Which of these two towns was the Sīrkān of these epistles, may, therefore, be doubtful.
promised in Ep. I, xi, 2, and, after referring to an epistle (now lost) which he had received from Zâd-sparam in the previous November or December, he proceeded to enforce his views by a judicious intermingling of argument, entreaty, and threats. He also contemplated making preparations (Ep. I, xi, 4, II, vii, 3) for travelling himself to Sirkân, notwithstanding his age (Ep. II, ix, 1), to arrange the matters in dispute upon a satisfactory basis. Whether he actually undertook this journey is unknown, but that his brother must have finally submitted to his authority appears from Zâd-sparam retaining his position in the south, as has been already noticed (p. xiv).

The matter in dispute between Zâd-sparam and the orthodox Mazda-worshippers may seem a trivial one to people of other religions, but, inasmuch as the ceremonial uncleanness of a person insufficiently purified after contact with the dead would contaminate every one he associated with, the sufficiency of the mode of purification was quite as important to the community, both priests and laity, as avoidance of breach of caste-rules is to the Hindû, or refraining from sacrifices to heathen gods was to the Jew, the early Christian, or the Muhammadan. And much more important than any disputes about sacraments, infallibility, apostolic succession, ritual, or observance of the Sabbath can possibly be to any modern Romanist or Protestant.

In his mode of dealing with this matter Mânûšêîhar displays at once the moderation and tact of a statesman accustomed to responsibility, the learning and zeal of a well-informed priest, and the kindly affection of a brother. That he was not without rivals and enemies appears from his casual allusions to Zarâtûst, the club-footed, and Ātûrō-pâd in Ep. II, i, 13, v, 14, ix, 11; but in all such allusions, as well as in his denunciation of heretical opinions, he refrains from coarse invective, and avoids the use of exaggerated language, such as too often disfigures and weakens the arguments in polemical discussions.

Indirectly these epistles throw some light upon the condition of the Mazda-worshippers after more than two
centuries of ceaseless struggle with the ever-advancing flood of Muhammadanism which was destined to submerge them. Shiráz, Sîrkân, Kîrmân, Râî, and Sarakhs are still mentioned as head-quarters of the old faith; and we are told of assemblies at Shiráz and among the Tughazghuz, the former of which appears to have had the chief control of religious matters in Pârs, Kîrmân, and the south, acting as a council to the high-priest of Pârs and Kîrmân, who was recognised as the leader of the religion (Dd. XLV, 5). We also learn, from Ep. I, iii, 11, II, v, 14, that the leaders of the Mazda-worshippers, if not their high-priests, were still in the habit of maintaining troops; and, from Ep. II, i, 9, that when a high-priest became very old his worldly duties were performed by four of the most learned priests, forming a committee, which had full authority to deliberate and act for him in all worldly matters. Mânûskîhar even speaks of emigrating by sea to China, or by land to Asia Minor (Ep. II, viii, 5), in order to escape from the annoyances of his position.

But the statements which are most important to the Pahlavi scholar, in these epistles, are the date attached to the third epistle, corresponding to A.D. 881, and the mention of Nîshahpûhar in Ep. I, iv, 15, 17 as the supreme officiating priest and councilor of king Khûsrû Nôshirvân (A.D. 531–579), engaged apparently in writing commentaries on the Avesta. The date of these epistles not only limits that of the Dâdîstân-i Dinîk to the latter half of the ninth century, but also fixes those of the larger recension of the Bundahîs and of the latest revision of the Dinkard within the same period, because it is stated in Bd. XXXIII, 10, 11 that the writer of that chapter was a contemporary of Zâd-sparam, son of Yûdân-Yim, and Îtûr-pâd, son of Hêmîd, the former of whom was evidently the brother of Mânûskîhar, and the latter is mentioned in Dinkard III, ccccxîi as the latest editor of that work. The actual compiler of a great part of the Dinkard (especially of the fourth and fifth books) was, however, the somewhat earlier writer Îtûr-frôbag, son of Farukhûzâd (Dd. LXXXVIII, 8, Ep. I, iii, 9). The name of Nishahpûhar is also mentioned as that
of a commentator in the Pahlavi Vendidâd and Nirangistân, which works must, therefore, have been revised since the middle of the sixth century. And as we are informed in the book of Arda-Virâf (I, 35) that 'there are some who call him by the name of Nikhshahpûr,' we ought probably to refer that book to the same age. These epistles, therefore, enable us, for the first time, to fix the probable dates of the latest extensive revisions of six of the most important Pahlavi works that are still extant; and from the relationship of these to others we can readily arrive at safer conclusions, regarding the age of Pahlavi literature in general, than have been hitherto possible.

4. The Appendix.

For the sake of elucidating certain matters, mentioned in the writings of Mânûskîhar, further information than could be given in the foot-notes has been added in the shape of an appendix.

To a brief summary of the Avesta legends, relating to the ancient hero Keresâsp, has been added a translation of a Pahlavi legend regarding the fate of his soul, in which several of his more famous exploits are detailed. This legend is found in the Pahlavi Rivâyat preceding the Dâdistân-i Dînîk in the manuscripts BK and J, and is evidently derived from the fourteenth fargard of the Sûdkar Nask, whose contents, as described in the ninth book of the Dinkard, are also given. It is likewise found in the later Persian Rivâyats, with several modifications which are duly noticed.

The Nirang-i Kustî, or ceremony of tying the sacred thread-girdle, is also described in detail, with a translation of the ritual accompanying it, partly from actual observa-
tion, and partly from Gugarâti accounts of the rite.

It having become necessary to ascertain with certainty whether the term 'next-of-kin marriage' was a justifiable translation of khevêtûk-das, as used by Pahlavi writers, an extensive examination of all accessible passages, which throw any light upon the meaning of the word, has been
made. The result of this enquiry can be best understood from the details collected, but it may be stated in general terms that, though 'marriage among kinsfolk' might fairly represent the varying meaning of khvētāk-dās in different ages, its usual signification in Pahlavi literature is more accurately indicated by 'next-of-kin marriage.'

Some apology is perhaps due to the Parsi community for directing attention to a subject which they consider disagreeable. But, by the publication of a portion of the Dinkard, they have themselves placed the most important passage, bearing on the subject, within the reach of every European Orientalist; thus rendering it easy for any prejudiced translator to represent the practice of such marriages as having been general, instead of their being so distasteful to the laity as to require a constant exertion of all the influence that the priesthood possessed, in order to recommend them, even in the darkest ages of the faith. To avoid such one-sided views of the matter, as well as to hinder them in others, has been the special aim of the present translator in trying to ascertain the exact meaning of the obscure texts he had to deal with.

The translations from the Pahlavi Vendidad, regarding the Bareshnûm ceremony and the purifications requisite after finding a corpse in the wilderness, will be found necessary for explaining many allusions and assertions in the Epistles of Mánûsîšâhar.

The text followed in all passages translated from the Dinkard is that contained in the manuscript now in the library of Dastôr Sohrâbji Rustamji, the high-priest of the Kadmi sect of Parsis in Bombay. It was written A.D. 1669, and was brought from Persia to Surat by Mullâ Bahman in 1783. All other known copies of the Dinkard are descended from this manuscript, except a codex, brought from Persia by the late Professor Westergaard in 1843, which contains one-fifth of the Dinkard mostly written in 1574, and is now in the University Library at Kopenhagen.

For translations from the Pahlavi Vendidad the text adopted, wherever available and not evidently defective, has been that of L4, a manuscript of the Vendidad with
Pahlavi, Z. and P. IV, in the India Office Library in London. The date of this manuscript has been lost with its last folio, but its text is in the same handwriting as that of three others, in Kopenhagen and Bombay, which were written A.D. 1323–4. A considerable portion of the beginning of this manuscript has also been lost, and is replaced by modern folios of no particular value.

In conclusion, the translator must take the opportunity of thankfully acknowledging the kindness and readiness with which Dastûr Peshotanji Behrâmji Sanjânâ, the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay, and Dastûr Jâmâspji Mino-chihrji Jâmâsp-Âsâ-nâ, of the same city, have always furnished him with any information he applied for, not only on those matters specially mentioned in the foot-notes, but also on many other occasions.

E. W. WEST.

MUNICH,
September, 1882.
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS VOLUME.

Acc. for accusative case; Åf. Zarat. for Åfrîngân-i Zaratûst; anc. Pers. for ancient Persian; App. for Appendix to this volume; Ar. for Arabic; AV. for the Book of Arda-Viraf, ed. Hoshangji and Haug; Av. for Avesta; B29 for Persian Rivâyat MS. No. 29 of the University Library in Bombay; Bd. and Byt. for Bundahis and Bahman Yast, as translated in vol. v of this series; BK for an old imperfect copy of K35 written in Kirmân, but now in Bombay; Chald. for Chaldee; comp. for compare; Dd. for Dâdîstân-i Dinîk, as translated in this volume; Dk. for Dinkard; Ep. for Epistles of Manûskihr, as translated in this volume; Farh. Okh. for Farhang-i Oîm-khâdûk, ed. Hoshangji and Haug; Gen. for Genesis; Haug’s Essays for Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis, by M. Haug, 2nd edition; Hn. for Hâdîkht Nask, as published with AV.; Huz. for Huzvâris; Introd. for Introduction; J. for Dd. MS. belonging to Dastûr Jâmâspji Minochihrji in Bombay; K35 for Dd. MS. No. 35 of the University Library in Copenhagen; L4 for Vend. MS. No. 4 of the India Office Library in London; Lev. for Leviticus; M5, M7, M10, M14 for MSS. Nos. 5, 7, 10, 14 of the Haug Collection in the State Library in Munich; Mkh. for Mainyû-i-khard, ed. West; n. for foot-note; nom. for nominative case; p. for page; Pahl. for Pahlavi; Påz. for Pâzand; Pers. for Persian; p. p. for past participle; Str. for Sirozah, ed. Westergaard; Sls. for Shâyast-lâ-shâyast, as translated in vol. v of this series; TD for Bd. MS. belonging to Mr. Tehmurad Dinshawji in Bombay; TK for Dd. MS. belonging to the same; trans. D. for translated by Darmesteter, in vol. iv of this series; Vend., Visp., and Yas. for Vendidâd, Visparad, and Yasna, ed. Spiegel; Yt. for Yast, ed. Westergaard; Z.D.M.G. for Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft; Zs. for Selections of Zâd-sparam, as translated in vol. v of this series.
DÂDISTÂN-Î DÎNÎK

or

THE RELIGIOUS OPINIONS

OF

MÂNûSKÎHAR, SON OF YÛDÂN-YIM,

DASTûR OF

PÂRS AND KIRMÂN,

A. D. 881.
OBSESSIONS.

1. For all divisions into chapters and sections the translator is responsible, as the manuscripts merely indicate the beginning of each question and reply.

2. Italics are used for any English words which are not expressed, or fully understood, in the original text, but are added to complete the sense of the translation.

3. Italics occurring in Oriental words, or names, represent certain peculiar Oriental letters (see the 'Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets' at the end of this volume). The italic d, l, n, r, v may be pronounced as in English; but g should be sounded like j, hv like wh, k like ch in 'church,' s like sh, and z like French j.

4. In Pahlavi words the only vowels expressed in the original text are those circumflexed, initial a, and the letter ō; italic d is written like t, r and l like n or the Avesta o, v and z like g, and zd like å in the Pahlavi character (see the latter part of § 1 of the Introduction).

5. In the translation, words in parentheses are merely explanatory of those which precede them.

6. For the meaning of the abbreviations used in the notes, see the end of the Introduction.

7. The manuscripts mentioned are:—

BK, an old imperfect copy of K35 written in Kirmān, but now in Bombay.

J (about 60 years old), belonging to Dastūr Jāmāspji Minochiharji in Bombay.

K35 (probably written A.D. 1572), No. 35 in the University Library at Copenhagen; upon the text of which this translation is based.

M5 (written A.D. 1723), a MS. of miscellaneous texts in Persian letters, No. 5 of the Haug Collection in the State Library at Munich.

M14 (a modern copy of a MS. in the library of the Parsi high-priest in Bombay), No. 14 in the same Collection.

TD, a MS. of the Bundahīr belonging to Mōbad Tehmurās Dinshawji in Bombay.
DĀDISTĀN-ī DINĪK.

Some chapters of the enquiries which Mitrō-khūrshēd, son of Ātūrō-mahān ¹, and others of the good religion made of the glorified (anoshakō-rūbān) Mānsēkhar ², son of Yūdān-Yim, and the replies given by him in explanation.

Chapter I.

0. Through the name and power and assistance of the creator Āharmāzd and all good beings, all the heavenly and earthly angels, and every creature and creation that Āharmāzd set going for his own angels and all pertaining to the celestial spheres.

¹ The name Ātūr-mahān occurs in a Pahlavi inscription, dated A.Y. 378 (A.D. 1009), in one of the Kanheri caves, near Bombay (see Indian Antiquary, vol. ix, pp. 266, 267), and Adharmāh is mentioned in Hoffmann's Auszüge aus syrischen Akten persischer Märtyrer (Leipzig, 1880), p. 203; so that this name must have been commonly used by Parsis in former times, though unknown now.

² He calls himself pontiff and director of the priests of Pārs and Kirmān in A.Y. 250 = A.D. 881, and was, therefore, the leader of the religion (see Chaps. XLV, 5, XCIV, 13, and Ep. III, 21). Besides these titles of pērūpāt, 'leader,' farmādār, 'director,' and rad, 'pontiff or executive high-priest,' he is also called aērpat kẖūdāt, 'priestly lordship,' in the heading to Ep. III, and has the general title aērpat, 'priest,' in those of Ep. I and II. The reading of the name of his father, Yūdān-Yim (Pers. Guvān-Gam, 'the youthful Gamshēd'), is merely a guess; the Parsis read either Gōshna-gam or Gōdān-dam; and, perhaps, Gūshna-dam, 'breathing virility,' is a likely alternative reading.
1. To those of the good religion, who are these enquirers owing to devout force of demeanour and strength of character, the type of wisdom and standard of ability—and of whom, moreover, the questions, seeking wisdom, contemplating good works, and investigating religion, are specified—the blessing and reply of Mânûskîhar, son of Yûdân-Yim, are these:—2. That is, forasmuch as with full affection, great dignity, and grandeur you have blessed me in this enquiring epistle\(^1\), so much as you have blessed, and just as you have blessed, with full measure and perfect profusion, may it happen fully likewise unto you, in the first place, and to your connections, separately for yourselves and dependents; may it come upon you for a long period, and may it be connected with a happy end.

3. As to that which you ordered to write about wishes for an interview and conversation with me, and the friendliness and regard for religion of yourselves and our former disciple\(^2\) (I'an man ak kâdmân)—who is a servant of the sacred beings (yazdânô)\(^3\) and a fellow-soldier in struggling with the fiend, alike persistent in reliance upon the good religion of Mazda-worship—I am equally desirous of that one path of righteousness when its extension is to a place in the best existence\(^4\), and equally hopeful

---

\(^1\) Regarding this epistle, nothing further is known that can be gathered from the text of this reply to it, which gives the substance of the questions it contained.

\(^2\) This disciple appears to have been previously sent by Mânûskîhar to the community he is addressing, most probably to serve as their high-priest.

\(^3\) The word is plural, like Elohim in the book of Genesis, but it means ‘God’ in Pers an.

\(^4\) Another name for Garôdmân, the highest heaven, or dwelling of Aûharmaazd (see Sls. VI, 3, 4).
of resurrection (ākhēςisnō) at the renovation of the best existence. 4. As to the interview and important conversation of that disciple of ours (mānak), and his going, and that also which he expounded of the religion—that of him who is intimate in interview and conversation with him who is wise and righteous the stunted good works are then more developing—and as to the degree of praise which you ordered to write concerning me, much greater than reason, and the important statements full of the observations of friendship as to kind regards, my course about these is also that which leads to gratitude.

5. That which you ordered to write about the way of knowing and understanding not being for any one else but for your servant, was owing to your affection, and for the sake of kind regard; but on account of the importance of truth it is more expressly to be regarded as being proper to write also to other spiritual men, as to the learning which is more fully studied by them. 6. For even with the perplexing struggle of the fiend, and the grievous devastation and collapse (nizōrīh) which have happened to religious people, after all, through the persistence (khvāparīh) of the sacred beings even

---

¹ That is, when this transitory world is purified and made permanent, so as to form a part of heaven, which is expected to take place at the resurrection.

² Pahl. kāzd, which may be compared with Pers. kāz, 'distorted,' or may be a miswriting of Pahl. kās, 'small.'

³ The modern MSS., M14 and J, add 'and those which are great are more attainable.'

⁴ The word is maśnōk (mānavad), but the omission of one stroke would make it magōg, 'priestly,' which was probably the original reading.
now there are pontiffs (raḍânô), priests, high-priests, judges, and also other religious leaders of those of the religion in various quarters. 7. Moreover, the other priests and spiritual men here enumerated have well considered the commentary (zând) of the text (mânsar) which is muttered, are acquainted with opinions explaining the religion, and are, in many places, the cause of preferring good works; with whom also, on account of their understanding and knowing about such opinions, the sacred beings are pleased.

8. The desires expressed, and the good wishes as to what is mine and has happened to me, which you ordered to write, are likewise marks of friendship and kind regard, and owing to them a like measure of friendship and kind regard becomes your own.

9. As to that which you ordered to write in much friendship and commendation and profusely about me—as regards the administration of the realm (kêshvar dastôbarth), of the unity without counterpart (daḍtgarth), and the singleness co-extensive with any duality—if the writing of that, too, were owing to your friendship, even then it seemed to me disquieting, owing to this being so much praise. 10. If in these times and countries there be an understanding of the time and a boasting about any one, if it be graceful as regards him who is a leader of the religion (dînô pêst pât) of long-continued faith, I consider it not suitable for myself. 11. Though

1 See p. 5, note 4. 2 All MSS. have 'thy.' 3 Although he was himself the 'director of the profession of priests' of Pârs (see Chap. XCIV, 13), an office which was then equivalent to that of 'leader of the religion' (see Chap. XLV, 5).
the praise of a leader (sарdár), raised by agreeable voices\(^1\), is uttered about me, yet I am not pleased when they extol my greatness more than that of their own leader; for my wish is for that praise which is due to my own rank and similar limits, and seems suitable to me; and humility in oneself is as correct as grandeur among inferiors.

12. That which is about the lengthy writing of questions, as to your worldly circumstances (stihāniśa) and worldly affairs, has also shown this, that I should write a reply at a time in which I have leisure. 13. That is more important on account of your well-expressed questions and boldness about ambiguous answers, and your ardent desire for the setting aside of time; for the setting aside, or not beginning, of a reply is implied. 14. But owing to the perplexing\(^2\) struggle on account of the fiend there is little leisure for quick and searching thought, and owing to that which is undecided\(^3\) there is little for indispensable (frēzvāntkō) work.

15. As to a reply at a period of leisure time, the occurrence of the time appointed is manifested in everything, apart even from the kind regards of friendship, and the collection of information whereby, owing to my little leisure, it is declared unto you. 16. And I have, too, this confidence, that your questions are written with religious faith and desiring religious decision; and in the reply the statement of reasons from revelation (dīnō) is manifold, for

---

\(^1\) This translation of mānō-advāṣīkō-ākhesakō is somewhat doubtful.

\(^2\) Or 'prodigious.'

\(^3\) That is, awaiting the high-priest's judicial and ecclesiastical decision.
guidance which is not destitute of wisdom and which is without risk from every kind of importunity.

17. And this same epistle came in the month Tīr, at such season as, owing to entreaties for three years from the country-folk (dēštikānō), and the burden of troubles of the offspring (sarakō) of those of the good religion, the much importunity for arranging what was undecided among them—which, inasmuch as I had no power about investigating that trouble and suffering, was the more indispensable—the arrangements for the preservation and education of disciples, and many private matters which had accumulated, I obtained no opportunity for properly looking over these same questions till the month Shatvārō, when I came to Shirāz and had at various times a little leisure.

18. And I looked over these same questions; and when I saw the compact writing (ham-dādakthā-yektībūnīstīth) it then seemed to me more important to make each chapter of the questions separate and more explanatory. 19. And I gave the questions to a writer, in the same copy which you ordered to write, and instructed him to write the various chapters, every single question in one chapter; and the several opinions, both due to my acquaintance with the religion and my remembrance in perfection,
both of the decisions (dastôbarth) of the ancients and as regards wisdom, are the replies I intend to write below the questions.

20. When there is nothing in such as you ask, concerning which I consider such otherwise, as I write, than what is like that which was once advisedly our different opinion from those high-priests of the ancients who were better and wiser, and have become our lord (ahvô), master (radô), and high-priest, I have written that¹, even though the usual decision on the same subject is such as our high-priests, who are of our family, have maintained in particular. 21. Afterwards, moreover, about the sayings of that high-priest whose custom is otherwise there is no difference of opinion expressed²; and if there be any one for whose opinion I have acquired perfect reverence, a priestly man acquainted with the religion, who understands and who manages intelligently, by holding in reverence the ancient treatises and truth, and the sayings of the high-priests, whatever of his is to the purpose, as regards the reply, this also is written as successful illustration.

22. If owing to such cause it be not fully perceived, or regarding the decision it be not clear, it is chiefly not owing to the incompleteness of the decision of revelation in clearness of demonstration and correctness of meaning, but owing to our incomplete attainment to understanding the authoritative decrees (nikêzak fragûstô)³ of the religion. 23. From the

¹ That is, his own different opinion apparently, but the writer’s sentences are often so involved as to confuse the reader.
² Meaning, apparently, that he does not propose to mention the opinions of others unless he approves of them.
³ The MSS. have fragûtô, possibly Pers. fargûd, ‘miracle.’
imperfection (avêhîh) of that also which is asked of us the hasty thinking, notably therein, owing to the grievousness of the times, is even till now devoid of a distinct knowledge, interpreting the texts about the compassion of the good spirits, and regarding a clearer demonstration of the exposition of revelation which is thereby\(^1\) more fully declared, as regards religious practice, from two sources, one is from the treatises which are an exposition of the rules and wisdom of the leader of the religion, and one—which is more descriptively expressed (mâdî-gânôtar hankhetûntô)—is the writings (vutakô) of various glorified ancients, those who were the great leaders of those of the primitive faith\(^2\).

24. Owing to that\(^3\), as their writings (nipûkân) about the demonstration of reasons, on account of depth and minute wording, are not well known, even to minute observers and penetrative (vêhramakô) understandings, and through the little diffusion (frâgô-pâdkhûth), likewise, of difficult words, there may be doubts among the less intelligent, so, about the purport of these same questions, if there be anything which is wanted by you more clear and more plain in meaning, or a nearer way to a true interpretation, not without clearness, of any decision of a learned leader of the religion, I will give a reply, whenever you ask and I am able, so far as my knowledge and want of power permit.

25. When one has to observe the nature of the attributes (gôhârânô) of the sacred beings the

\(^1\) That is, revelation is declared by the exposition.

\(^2\) The true Masdâ-worshipping religion in all ages, both before and after the time of Zarâtûst (see Sls. I, 3).

\(^3\) Want of knowledge referred to in § 23.
investigator's great advantage is the perfection, peace, equipment with righteousness, and fiend-destroying power of his own people; and since you are made aware of the result of wishes and actions, and are directed by me, many new blessings also arise from you.

26. That which is written to you yourselves and unto all, in the beginning and even the end, is completely adapted to your own several wants; may it have an exalted end, with one courier (aê-barîdô) and continuously from beginning to end, and also perpetually!

27. A fair copy (bûrizisntkô paîtndo) of the questions, as well as the replies, is this; so that, when there is nothing in it which owing to that cause¹ is different, I am of opinion as is here written.

---

Chapter II.

1. First you ask thus: Why is a righteous man created better than the stars and moon and sun and fire of Aûharmazd, and is called in revelation greater and better than the spiritual creation, and also than that which is worldly?

2. The reply is this, that the greatness and goodness of advance in wisdom and just judgment over the creatures arise from proficiency (hûnar).

3. Justice is the one good proficiency over the creatures, the means of wisdom are great, and praise bestowed is the most effectual performance

¹ Owing to the copying. The sentence is equivalent to the modern phrase, 'errors excepted.'
of what is desirable (kâmisn-kârth). 4. For all three are mutually connected together; since the manifestation of justice is through wisdom, and its advantage is the performance of what is desirable for the creator; wisdom is the performance of what is desirable for the requirements of the creator, and its weapon (zênô) is justice; and the desire of the creator, which is progress, is in wisdom with justice. 5. All three are great among the creatures, and their lodgment in the superior beings and righteous men is spiritual, in the spirit which is the pure guardian angel\(^1\), in the understanding for encountering, averting, smiting, and prostrating (khvâpâk) the fiend, in the army of angels, and in the sovereignty of the far-seeing (dûr-vênâkô)\(^2\) spirit, Aûharmazd; and, materially, in the worldly equipment and mutual connection of body and life. 6. And their appliances are the wisdom and worldly efficacy of treatises on the wise adoption of good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, and the relinquishment and discontinuance of evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds. 7. And their acquirer is the worldly ruler who is providing for Aûharmazd, and approving and stimulating the pure religion, a praiser of the good and pure creator, and a director of persistence in destruction of the fiend. 8. And in the pro-

---

1 The fravâhar or fravashi, which is the prototype or spiritual counterpart supposed to have been created in the beginning for each good creature and creation afterwards produced, whether material or immaterial, and whose duty is to represent the creature and watch over its interests in the spiritual world.

2 This word is badly written in K35, so that it has become zûrînâk in later MSS., which might perhaps mean 'strength-exerting.'
mulgation (rûbâkō-dahisnîh) of the good and religious liturgy (mânsar), the coming of the good cause of the resurrection, and the production of the renovation of the universe\(^1\) are his coöperation and his own thanksgiving; and over the creatures of this prior world he is a guardian, defender, and manager.

9. And such rulers are great and pre-eminent; yet every man is not for that greatness, but it is mentioned as to superior beings and concerning righteous men, in whom it has arisen, and the best are the three who are the beginning, middle, and end of the creation. 10. One is the pure man, Gâyômard, who was its first rational praiser; he in whose keeping was the whole creation of the sacred beings, from its beginning and immaturity unto the final completion of the worldly creatures, over which was the exercise of goodness of his well-destined progeny, such as Hôshâng, Tâkhmôrûp, Yim, and Frêđûn\(^2\), such as the apostles of the religion, like Zaratûst, Hûshêdar, and Hûshêdar-mâh\(^3\), and the producers of the renovation of the universe, like Sôshâns\(^4\), Rôshanô-kâshm, and

---

\(^1\) Which is expected to take place about the time of the resurrection (see Bd. XXX, 32).

\(^2\) The first four rulers of the world (omitting the usurper Dahâk) after Gâyômard (see Bd. XXXI, 1–3, 7). The five names of these primeval sovereigns are corruptions of the Avesta names, Gaya-maretan, Haoshyanha, Takhmô-urupa, Yima, and Thraētaona. The third name is always written Tâkhmôridô in Dd.

\(^3\) Corruptions of Av. Zarathustra, Ukhsyad-ereta, and Ukhshyad-nemangh. The last two are future apostles still expected by the Parsis to restore their religion to its original purity, in preparation for the resurrection (see Bd. XXXII, 2–10, Byt. III, 13, 43–48, 52, 53).

\(^4\) Av. Saôshyās. The last of the future apostles, in whose
Khûr-kashm. 11. The approver of the enterprises (rûbâk-dahîsnîhâ) of co-operators, the purely-praising and just worshipper of the sacred beings through the strength of the spirit, the disabler of the worldly activity of the fiend as regards worldly bodies, and the one of pure religion—which is his charge (spôr), the revelation of the place of the beneficent spirit and of the destruction of the depravity of the evil spirit, the subjugation (khvâpišnîô) of the fiend, the completion of the triumph of the creator, and the unlimited progress of the creatures—is the upholder of Mazda-worship. 12. And likewise through the goodness of Gâyô-mard, which is the begetting of Zarâtûst, he is also just; likewise through the goodness of Sôshâns, by which he is the progeny of Zarâtûst, he is also progressive in every good thought, good word, and good deed, more than the creatures which are produced with a hope of the religion, and equally thankful. 13. And one is the producer of bodies,

---

1 These two names, which mean 'bright-eyed' and 'sunny-eyed,' are the Av. Raokas-kaēshman and Hvare-kaēshman of Fravardin Yt. 128 (see also Chap. XXXVI, 4).

2 This is Zarâtûst (see § 12), the righteous apostle of the middle portion of the history of creation referred to in § 9.

3 Or 'which is wholly his.'

4 These two spirits are supposed to be the authors of all the good and evil, respectively, that exists in creation. They appear, originally, to have been both supposed to spring from Aûharmazd, who speaks of 'the more beneficent of my two spirits' in Yas. XIX, 21; but in later times, and throughout the Pahlavi literature, the beneficent spirit is identified with Aûharmazd, and the origin of the evil spirit is left in obscurity.

5 The renovated bodies of the future existence which are prepared for mankind at the resurrection (see Bd. XXX, 4, 7, 25-27).
the renovator (frashagar) Sôshâns, who is the putter down, with complete subjugation from the world, of the glorification of fiends and demons, and of the contention with angels in apostasy and heterodoxy of various kinds and unatoned for; and the completer of the renovation through the full continuance of the glorification of the angels, and the perfect continuance of the pure religion.

14. And through that excellent, unblemished, brotherly work\textsuperscript{1} such a ruler may be seen above the sun with swift horses, the primeval luminaries, and all removal of darkness, the advance of illumination which is the display (tôgîsnô) of the days and nights of the world\textsuperscript{2}. 15. Regarding the same completion of the renovation of the universe it is said in the revelation of the Mazda-worshippers, that this great light is the vesture of the like righteous men.

\textbf{Chapter III.}

1. The second is that which you ask thus: For what purpose is a righteous man created for the world, and in what manner is it necessary for him to exist in the world?

2. The reply is this, that the creator created the creatures for progress, which is his wish; and

\textsuperscript{1} Mentioned in §§ 7, 8.

\textsuperscript{2} M14 and J have 'such rulers' own praise is above the sun with swift horses, the primeval luminaries, and all good creatures; for that, too, which may be seen when the light of the sun is owing to the removal of darkness, and the removal is the advance of illumination of the world, is the display of days and nights.'
it is necessary for us to promote whatever is his wish, so that we may obtain whatever is our wish. 3. And, since that persistent creator is powerful, whatever is our wish, and so far as we remain very faithful, such is as it were deserving of his wish, which is for our obtainment of whatever is our wish. 1.

4. The miracle of these creatures was fully achieved (āvortadō) not unequally, and the gain (gūāftākō) also from the achievement of the same miracle is manifest; that is, achieving, and knowing 2 that his achievement is with design (ktm) and his desire is goodness, when the designed achievement, which is his creature, and also the goodness, which is his wish, are certain, and likewise, owing to the perfect ability which is due to the creator, the wish is achieved, it is manifest. 5. And, afterwards, it is decided by wisdom that he has achieved it, and the creatures, as perfected for the complete progress which is his wish, lapse into evil; and since when evil exists good becomes the subjugation of evil—for when evil is not complete, and after it is expressly said that his creatures are created for his own will, the progress due to subjugations of evil is on account of the good completed—it is similarly testified, in accordance with the will aforesaid, that it 3 is achieved.

6. The creatures are for the performance of what is desirable for the creator, and the performance of what is desirable for the creator is necessary

1 Reading kāmakō instead of the dāmakō of the MSS., which was, no doubt, originally gāmakō.
2 M14 has 'knowing perfectly.'
3 The subjugation of evil apparently.
for two *purposes*, which are the practice of worship *and* contention. 7. As the worship is that of the persistent creator, who is a friend to his own creatures, *and* the contention is that with the fiend—the contender who is an enemy to the creation of the creator—that great worship is a pledge, most intimate to one's self, of the utmost contention also, and a pledge for the prosperity owing to the friend subjugating by a look which is a contender with the enemy, the great endeavour of the acquirers of reliance upon any mortals whatever. 8. For when the persistent *one* accomplished that most perfect and wholly miraculous creation of the lord, and his unwavering look—which *was* upon the coming on of the wandering evil spirit, the erratic, unobservant spirit—*was* unmingled with the sight of an eye, he made a spirit of observant temperament, which *was* the necessary soul, the virtuous lord of the body moving into the world. 9. And the animating life, the preserving guardian spirit, the acquiring intellect, the protecting understanding, the deciding wisdom, the demeanour which is itself a physician, the impelling strength, the eye for what is seen, the ear for what is heard, the nose for what is smelt, the mouth for recognising flavour, the body for approaching the assembly (*pi drâm*) of the righteous, the heart for

---

1 Referring probably to the strong influence of a steady eye upon all living creatures.

2 This appears to be the meaning of ag mēg isnō-1 va l vēnāštākō dīdag; which phrase is followed by the conjunction 'and,' so that the original text means that when the creator had done as in §§ 8, 9, he proceeded to act as in § 10. This conjunction, for the sake of clearness, is here transferred to the beginning of § 10.
thinking, the tongue for speaking, the hand for working, the foot for walking, these which make life comfortable, these which are developments in creating, these which are to join the body, these which are to be considered perfected, are urged on by him continuously, and the means of industry of the original body are arranged advisedly. 10. And by proper regulation, and the recompense of good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, he announced and adorned conspicuous, patient, and virtuous conduct; and that procurer of the indispensable did not forget to keep men in his own true service and proper bounds, the supreme sovereignty of the creator.

11. And man became a pure glorifier and pure praiser of that all-good friend, through the progress which is his wish. 12. Because pure friendship is owing to sure meditation on every virtue, and from its existence no harm whatever arose; pure glorifying is owing to glorifying every goodness, and from its existence no vileness whatever arose; and pure praising is owing to all prosperity, and from its existence no distress whatever arose. 13. And pronouncing the benedictions he is steadfast in the same pure friendship, just glorifying, and expressive praising, which are performed even as though VohuMAN were kept lodging in the thoughts, SrOsh in the words, and ARD in the actions 1. 14. That, moreover, which is owing to the lodging of VohuMAN in the thoughts is virtu-

1 These three angels are personifications of the Avesta terms vohu-manO, 'good thought,' sraoSha, 'listening, obedience,' and areta, 'righteous.' The coming of VohuMAN ('the good spirit' of § 17) and of SrOsh is mentioned in the Gathas (Yas. XLIII, 16, c d).
ously rushing unto true propitiation from the heart, and keeping selfishness away from the desires; the lodgment of Sôsh in the words is owing to him who is intelligent being a true speaker, and him who is unintelligent being a listener to what is true and to the high-priests; and the lodgment of Ard in the actions is declared to be owing to promoting that which is known as goodness, and abstaining from that which one does not know.

15. And these three benefits¹ which have been recited are sent down (farôstakô) in two ways that the ancients have mentioned, which are that deliberately taken and that they should deliberately leave², whose means are wisdom and proper exertion.

16. And his (man's) high-priest is he whose instigation is to keep him truly in accordance with the revelation (dûnô) of the sacred beings, and is the origin of his pure meditation which is truly through goodness like Vohûman's. 17. As the religious of the ancients have religiously said, that of him who keeps the goodness of Vohûman lodging in the thoughts the true way is then that of the good spirit. 18. The Mazda-worshipper understands the will of the creator in the true way, and grows and acquires by performing what is desirable for the creator, which obtains the benefit of the renovation.

19. A more concise reply is this, that a righteous man is the creature by whom is accepted that occupation which is provided for him, and is fully

---
¹ The lodgments of the three angels.
² Meaning, probably, the deliberate adoption of good conduct and relinquishment of evil (compare Chap.VII, 7).
watchful in the world as to his not being deceived by the rapacious fiend. 20. And as a determiner, by wisdom, of the will of the creator—one who is himself a propitiator and understander, and a promoter of the understanding of goodness—and of whatever pertains to him (the creator), he is a giver of heed thereto; and it is necessary for him to be thus, so that such greatness and goodness may also be his more securely in the spiritual existence.

CHAPTER IV.

1. The third question is that you ask thus: For what reason does this greatness¹ of a righteous man exist?

2. The reply is this, that it is for the performance of what is desirable for the creator by the Mazda-worshipper; because he strives unhesitatingly that the way for the performance of what is desirable for the creator may be the propitiation² which is his desire, and that desired propitiation² becomes perfect through sound wisdom. 3. The wisdom by which he understands about the desire of the heavenly angels is not appointed (vakht), but is the true, pure religion which is knowledge of³ the spirits, the science of sciences, the teacher of the

¹ Referring to Chap. II, 1, and not to Chap. III, 20; otherwise it might be supposed that the questions were contrived to suit the replies.

² Or, perhaps, 'understanding.'

³ K35 has 'obedience to' by inserting a medial stroke in dānîsīnō, which converts it into sinîsīnō, but is probably a mistake.
teaching of the angels, and the source of all knowledge.

4. And the progress, too, of the pure religion of the Mazda-worshippers is through the righteous man, as is shown of him in revelation thus: 'I created, O Zaratûst the Spîtamân! the righteous man who is very active, and I will guard his hands from evil deeds; I will also have him conveyed unto those who are afterwards righteous and more actively wise. 5. And at the same time the religion of me who created him is his desire, and it is the obtainment of a ruler which is to be changed by the well-organised renovation of the universe.'

6. As through wisdom is created the world of righteousness, through wisdom is subjugated every evil, and through wisdom is perfected every good; and the best wisdom is the pure religion whose progress is that achieved by the upholders of religion, the greatness of the best men of the righteous, in whose destiny it is, such as that which was shown about Gâyômard, Zaratûst, and Sôshâns.

---

1 M14 and J here insert 'I will guard his mind from evil thoughts, his tongue from evil-speaking.'

2 In the future existence.

3 M14 and J have 'and it is the obtainment of a ruler who is a wise upholder of religion, from time to time, even unto the change of the last existences by the well-organised renovation of the universe.' But the additional words appear to have been suggested by the word 'ruler' being taken literally, whereas it seems to have been figuratively applied to the religion which is to rule the righteous till the future existence.

CHAPTER V.

1. The fourth question is that which you ask thus: Of this destruction (zadâm) and terror which ever happen to us from the retribution\(^1\) of the period, and are a cause of the other evils and defects of the good religion, what kind of opinion exists? And is there a good opinion of us among the spirits, or not?

2. The reply is this, that it is said in the revelation of the Mazda-worshippers that the impediments (râs-bândih), through which there is vexation in righteousness, are because its doctrine is this, that, regarding the difficulty, anxiety, and discomfort which occur through good works set going, it is not desirable to account them as much difficulty, trouble, and discomfort. 3. Whereas it is not desirable to account them as anxiety and difficulty, it is then declared by it\(^2\) thereof, that, as its recompense, so much comfort and pleasure will come to the soul, as that no one is to think of that difficulty and discomfort which came upon him through so many such good works, because he is steadfast to maintain the good religion, and utters thanksgivings (va stâye’dô). 4. And as regards the discomfort\(^3\), which the same good religion of ours has had, it comes on from the opponents of the religion.

---

\(^1\) Reading pâdâsân, but by a slight alteration M\(14\) and J have pâdakshahân, 'monarchs,' which is equally suitable.

\(^2\) By revelation.

\(^3\) M\(14\) and J have 'and he remains thereby certain that his good works are in the statement (mâdîgânô) of good works, and as regards all that terror, anxiety (vayâdô), and discomfort,' &c.
5. Through the coming of religion we have full enjoyment (barâ gûkârêm), and owing to religion, unlike bondsmen (abûrdôgânvâr), we do not become changeable among the angels; our spiritual life (ahvôth) of praise then arrives in readiness, and owing to the angels there are joyous salutation, spiritual life, and glory for the soul.

CHAPTER VI.

1. The fifth question is that you ask thus: Why does evil always happen more to the good than to the bad?

2. The reply is this, that not at every time and every place, and not to all the good, does evil happen more—for the spiritual welfare of the good is certainly more—but in the world it is very much more manifest¹. 3. And the reasons for it are many; one which is conclusive is even this, that the modes

¹ Ml4 and J have 'but the worldly evil and bondage are incalculably more manifest about the good, much more in the season (zêmânîh) of Srôsh.' The 'season of Srôsh' may perhaps mean the night-time, or the three nights after death, when the protection of the angel Srôsh is most wanted; but Dastûr Peshotanji Behramji, the high-priest of the Parsees in Bombay, prefers reading zêmânânah (with a double pronominal suffix), and has favoured me with the following free translation of the whole passage: — 'At every time and every place much evil does not happen to all the good; for the good, after having been separated from this world, receive (as a reward for their suffering evil) much goodness in the next world, which goodness is (regarded as) of a very high degree in religious doctrines (srôsh).' Perhaps, after all, Srôsh is a miswriting of saryâ, 'bad, evil.'
and causes of its occurrence are more; for the occurrence of evil is more particularly appointed (vakhtō) by two modes, one by the demons, the appointers of evil, and one by the vile, the doers of evil; even to the vileness of creation and the vile they cause vexation. 4. Moreover, incalculable is the evil which happens to the vile from the demons, and that to the good from the demons and also from the vile, and the mode of its occurrence is in the same way without a demon.

5. This, too, is more particularly such as the ancients have said, that the labour and trouble of the good are much more in the world, and their reward and recompense are more certain in the spiritual existence; and the comfort and pleasure of the vile are more in the world, and their pain and punishment in the spiritual existence are more severe. 6. And this, too, is the case, that the good, through fear of the pain and punishment of hell, should forsake the comfort and ease in the world, and should not think, speak, or do anything improper whatever. 7. And through hope for the comfort and pleasure in heaven they should accept willingly, for the neck¹, much trouble and fear in the practice of virtue in thought, word, and deed.

8. The vile, through provision with temporary enjoyment²—even that enjoyment of improprieties for which eventually there is hell—then enjoy them-

¹ The word can be read either garêvan, ‘collar,’ or gardûn, ‘neck,’ and is the usual Páz. of the Huz. kavarman (Chald. نُّرُمُ), ‘the neck,’ though ‘neck’ is often expressed by gardûn. The meaning is that the yoke of trouble and fear should be accepted.

² M14 and J have ‘through provision with the enjoyment of improprieties which is temporarily theirs.’
selves therein temporarily, and lustfully on account of selfishness; those various actions also, through which there would be a way to heaven, they do not trouble themselves with.

9. And in this way, in the world, the comfort and pleasure of the vile are more, and the anxiety, vexation, despondency, and distress of the good have become more; the reason is revealed by the stars\(^1\).

---

\section*{Chapter VII.}

1. The sixth question is that which you ask thus: Why are we men produced for the world, and what is it necessary for us to do therein?

2. The reply is this, that even in the reply to an accompanying question\(^2\) it is written that the creatures are achieved for\(^3\) justice and the performance of what is desirable for the creator; and to prepare thoroughly well that which is unlimited and the virtuous progress of the creatures, whose distress is like fear, there is the unparalleled (\textit{abrâda\textipa{r}v\textipa{t}\textipa{d}}) renovation of the universe.

3. And that preparation arises from the complete predominance of the creator and the non-predominance of the fiend, as is said of it in revelation thus: 'In that time I become completely predominant, I who am A\textipa{u}h\textipa{r}m\textipa{z}d'; in nothing whatever

\textsuperscript{1} That is, it is dependent upon destiny.

\textsuperscript{2} See Chap. III.

\textsuperscript{3} Reading \textipa{pavan} instead of \textipa{bar\textipa{h}}, two words which are often confounded by the copyists of MSS. because their Persian equivalents are nearly identical.
is the evil spirit predominant.' 4. And also about the good procedure of the creature-creation it is recounted thus: 'Happy am I when the creatures are so created by me, and according to any wish whatever of mine they give the sovereignty to me, and also come to the sovereignty when I have created it for the performance of what is desirable for the expression of what sovereignty is.'

5. And it is necessary for us to become so in the world as that the supreme sovereignty of the creator may be kept more friendly to us, its own true servants. 6. The way to that true service is known through wisdom, is believed (vāvariātātō) through truth, and is utilized through goodness; and the path of excellence more particularly leads to it. 7. And to set the good spirit rightly in the place of thought it is deliberately taken and they should deliberately leave it\(^1\), as it is said in revelation that Aûharmazd spoke out to Zaratûst thus: 'Thou shouldst assist Vohûman with thy pure spiritual faculties (ahvô), so that they may make him fully welcome; for when thou assistest Vohûman with thy pure spiritual faculties, so that they make him fully welcome, thou shalt thus fully understand the two ways, that which is good conduct, and that also which is bad conduct.'

---

**Chapter VIII.**

1. The seventh question is that you ask thus: When a man is passing away, and after the occurrence of his passing away, how does the good work

---

\(^1\) Compare Chap. III, 15. The 'good spirit' is Vohûman.
then go to him and assist him, which any others may do for him who has gone out from the world, on the third night in the dawn, at which he goes out to the balance? And is its greatness such as though it be done by his own hand, or otherwise?

2. The reply is this:—When any others do a good work for him who has passed away, after the passing away, and if he who has passed away did not order that good work in his lifetime, and did not bequeath it, nor was its originator, and it was not even his by design (dādō), then it does not go and does not reach him out at the balance. 3. Even at the time for being proceeded with, when that good work does not assist it is not appropriated, for that which is appropriated as the design of some one is appropriated by acceptance from some one; when it is not his by design it is then not accepted as his.

4. If he who has passed away did not order that good work, and did not even bequeath it, but was consenting to it by design, that which shall be done in his lifetime then reaches out in the three nights (sātāth) for the aggrandizement of his position; but that which shall be done after his passing away is not in the account of the three nights and the balance, but reaches out, at the time the good work is proceeded with, for the enjoyment of the soul.

5. And if he who has passed away ordered that

---

1 The soul of a dead person is supposed to hover about the corpse for three nights, and not to depart for the other world till the dawn after the third night; that is, at dawn of the fourth day, including the day of death (see Chap. XX, 2, 3, Sls. XVII, 2–6).

9 Where the soul's good works are balanced against its sins, to determine its fate till the resurrection.
good work in his own lifetime, or bequeathed it, or was the originator and cause of the soul's employment, although it is proceeded with after his passing away, it then reaches out to him for the happiness of his soul, since the origin of the thanksgiving (sipās)\(^1\), and the orderer and ownership of the good work are certain.

6. Any good work whatever which is proceeded with is clearly a like good work as regards those who account for it as with him who is the doer of it; also in the account of his soul the good work is as much with him who did it, but the soul of him by whom the good work is done by his own hand, is handsomer and stronger than of him by whom it is ordered. 7. And its similitude is such as when a man's handsome and seemly suit of clothes is his own, and he wears it on his body and is handsomer, more splendid, and more seemly than another man who wears a suit of clothes, in like manner, which is his own by theft.

Chapter IX.

1. The eighth question is that which you ask thus: Of him who, out of his own wealth, himself directed others thus: 'Let them act advantageously (khangtnakō) for my soul,' is it so that what others may do for him out of that wealth and that done by his own toil are very different, one from the other, or not?

\(^1\) The good works mentioned in this chapter would chiefly consist of prayers and ceremonies for which priests have to be remunerated, and gifts to holy men and the poor; such actions as are most highly appreciated by priests.
2. The reply is this, that they are very different, one from the other; for that which he orders out of his own wealth is more effectual than that which others may do for him without order. 3. And among the kinds of good work, that is more effectual which one practises himself and with his own toil; then that which one sets going out of whatever is his own by his own order, regarding which he afterwards bequeathes and orders out of his own property and it comes into progress; and, lastly, that which others may do for him.

4. Since thus his own and that which is his by design, when any one manages for him and in his lifetime, aggrandize his position then, and his soul is preserved, when he manages for him thereafter the enjoyment then reaches unto his soul. 5. When not consenting as to the good work, and it is not his by design, even though others may do it for him it does not then come into his possession.

Chapter X.

1. The ninth question is that which you ask thus: How much does the growth of his good works increase, from the time when the good works are done, so long as he is living?

2. The reply is this, that from the time when a good work comes into progress its growth remains on the increase so long as he is living; moreover,

---

1 M14 and J make this an additional kind of good work by reading 'after which is that regarding which he himself,' &c.

2 Reading vakhsh instead of the vērs, 'more,' of the MSS.
when he is distressed by that good work\(^1\), while the increase does not desist from increase, it grows just as a child becomes enlarged in the womb of a mother.

**Chapter XI.**

1. The tenth question is that which you ask thus: Does the growth which increases become as commendable in the fourth night\(^2\) as the original good work\(^3\) in his possession, or does it become otherwise?

2. The reply is this, that it is otherwise; for the original good work stands up opposing sin, and the growing good work\(^4\) stands up opposed to the growth of sin.

**Chapter XII.**

1. The eleventh question is that you ask thus: Does the growth of a good work eradicate sin just like the original good work, or not?

2. The reply is this, that the growth does eradicate it, as happens with the good work which is for atonement for sin; it shall be done as retribution for sin, and it eradicates the sin, which is specially mentioned in revelation\(^5\).

---

\(^1\) The good work being more meritorious when more troublesome.

\(^2\) After death, when all the immediate ceremonies for the dead have been completed (see Sls. XVII, 5 note).

\(^3\) Literally 'the good work of the beginning.' That bûn kirfaxô does not here stand for bûn-ish kirfaxô, 'the origin or root of the good work,' appears from Chap. XII, 1, where it is written kirfaxô-î bûn.

\(^4\) Literally 'the good work of growth.'

\(^5\) See Pahl. Vend. VII, 136, where the matter is mentioned, but
other good work is evidently the soul; and, in order to be with the sin at its origin, it remains and is taken into account.' 4. 'Through good works and the growth of good works is the recompense of the soul, so that they should do those good works in atonement for sin.' 5. And concerning the sin eradicated it is said: 'An original good work eradicates original sin\(^1\), and the growth of a good work eradicates the growth of a sin.'

---

**Chapter XIII.**

1. The twelfth question is that which you ask thus: In the fourth night do they score off (barâ angârênd) the sin by the good works, and does he go by the residue (bôn); or do they inflict punishment on him for the sin which has happened to him, and give reward and recompense for the good works which he has done?

2. The reply is this, that at dawn of the third night the account is prepared it is said, and about the sin which he has atoned for, and the good work which is its equivalent (âvâr) there is no need for account, since the account is about the good works which may be appropriated by him as his own, and about the sin which may remain in him as its origin. 3. Because the origin of it (the sin atoned for) remains distinct, and it is cancelled (astarâdô)

the passages which seem to be quoted here must be from some other source.

\(^1\) Literally 'sinning of the beginning' (bûn-vînasîh). It must mean the first commission of any particular sin, and has no connection with the 'original sin' of Christian writers.
by it (the good work), they balance it therewith; and they weigh the excess and deficiency, as it may be, of the other good works and sin.

4. Of those living, at the just, impartial (akafsinsnô) balance the man of proper habits (dâdô), whose good works are more, when sin has happened to him, undergoes a temporary (vidanâtk) punishment and becomes eternally cleansed by the good works; and he of improper habits, of much sin and little good works, attains temporary enjoyment by those good works, but through the sin which they perceive in him he is suffering punishment unto the resurrection.

Chapter XIV.

1. The thirteenth question is that which you ask thus: Who should prepare the account of the soul as to sin and good works, and in what place should they make it up? And when punishment is inflicted by them, where is their place then?

2. The reply is this, that the account about the doers of actions, as to good works and sin, three times every day whilst the doer of the actions is living, Vohûman the archangel should prepare; because taking account of the thoughts, words, and deeds of all material existences is among his duties.

3. And about the sin which affects accusers\(^1\), which

---

\(^1\) Sins are divided into two classes, hamêmâlân or those which affect ‘accusers,’ and rûbânîk or those which affect only one’s own soul. In the first class are included all evil actions which injure our fellow-creatures or any good animal or thing, and for which the injured party (the ‘accuser’) must receive satisfaction before the sinner can be pardoned (see Sls.VIII, 1).
is committed by (val) breakers of promises, even in the world Mitro\textsuperscript{1} is said to be over the bodies, words, and fortunes (ḥū-bakhtakō) of the promise-breakers; and as to the amount, and also as to being more than the stipulation when there is a period of time\textsuperscript{2}, Mitro is the account-keeper. 4. In the three nights’ account (ṣatūṁh) Srosh the righteous and Rashnû the just\textsuperscript{3} are over the estimate of the limits of the good works and sin of righteousness and wickedness. 5. In the future existence, on the completion of every account, the creator Aûharmazd himself takes account\textsuperscript{4}, by whom both the former account of the three nights and all the thoughts, words, and deeds of the creatures are known through his omniscient wisdom.

6. The punishment for a soul of the sinners comes from that spirit\textsuperscript{5} with whom the sin, which was committed by it, is connected; fostered by the iniquity practised, that punishment comes upon the souls of the sinful and wicked, first on earth, afterwards in hell, and lastly at the organisation of the

\textsuperscript{1} The angel of the sun’s light; he is a personification of friendship and good faith, and is, therefore, specially aggrieved by breaches of promise and fraudulent debtors, but assists righteous souls in their passage to the other world (see AV. V, 3, Mkh. II, 118).

\textsuperscript{2} Referring to debts and promises to pay.

\textsuperscript{3} The angels of obedience and justice; the duty of the former is to protect the righteous, and that of the latter is to weigh the good works and sins in his golden scales, when the soul’s account is balanced after the third night after death (see AV. V, 2–5, Mkh. II, 115–122).

\textsuperscript{4} Referring, perhaps, to the future temporary separation of the wicked from the righteous, after the assembly of the Sadvâstarân (see Bd. XXX, 10–16).

\textsuperscript{5} The demon who is supposed to have occasioned the sin.
future existence. 7. When the punishment of the three nights is undergone the soul of the righteous attains to heaven and the best existence, and the soul of the wicked to hell and the worst existence. 8. When they have undergone their punishment at the renovation of the universe they attain, by complete purification from every sin, unto the everlasting progress, happy progress, and perfect progress of the best and undisturbed existence.

CHAPTER XV.

1. The fourteenth question is that which you ask thus: Is the eradication of life the gnawing of dogs and birds upon the corpse? And does the sin of those who suppose it a sin proceed from that origin, or not?

2. The reply is this, that the decrease of sin and increase of good works, owing to good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, arise really from the effort and disquietude which come on by means of the religion the soul practises, and through the strength in effort, steadfastness of religion, and

---

1 The three days and nights of final punishment, after the resurrection and before the final purification in melted metal (see Bd. XXX, 13, 16, 20), which is mentioned again in § 8.

2 This does not refer to the final punishment of §§ 6 and 8, but to the previous three nights' tribulation just after death, and to the fate of the soul before the resurrection (see Chaps. XXIV, XXV).

3 The exposure of the dead, apparently; but the construction of this question and its relation to the reply are by no means clear at first sight. From §§ 2, 5, 6 we have to infer that the exposure is a meritorious action rather than a sin; and from §§ 3, 4 we have to gather that as loss of life occurs to every one, and exposure of the corpse only to some, the former cannot be caused by the latter.
protection of soul which the faithful possess. 3. That evil which occurs when doing good works, which is the one (hanâ) when doing iniquity, and when one strives it is the one when he does not strive, the one when content and the one when not content, and after it is undesired, and no cause of good works is with it, it occurs just as undesired, for the sake of favour and reward, is the certain eradication of life. 4. It happens once only (aëtâm) unto the righteous and the wicked, every one who may have received the reward—that reward is living until the time of passing away—but the gnawing of dogs and birds does not happen unto every one and every body. 5. It is necessary for those to act very differently¹ whose understanding of good works is owing to proper heed of dead matter; and, on account of the rapid change (var dét-hastânâ) of that pollution, and a desire of atonement for sin, they should carry the body of one passed away out to a mountain-spur (kôf vakhsh), or a place of that description, enjoining unanimously that the dogs and birds may gnaw it, owing to the position of the appointed place². 6. Therefore, as owing to that fear³, the commands of religion, and progressive

---

¹ Differently from others.
² The dead must be deposited upon some dry and barren spot, remote from habitations and water, and, if possible, upon the summit of a hill (see Chap. XVII, 17, and Vend. VI, 93). From the mention of dogs gnawing the corpse it would appear that the depositories for the dead were less enclosed when this work was written than they are at present; and in ancient times both enclosed and unenclosed depositories seem to have been used (see Vend. VI, 92–106). For a description of the present form of such depositories see Sls. II, 6, note.
³ Fear of pollution from the dead.
desire it is accepted strenuously for the wicked himself, his own recompense is therein, and it happens to him in that way for the removal (narafsisnō) of sin and for the gratification of his soul.

Chapter XVI.

1. The fifteenth question is that which you ask thus: When the dogs and birds tear it (the corpse) does the soul know it, and does it occur uncomfortably for it, or how is it?

2. The reply is this, that the pain occasioned by the tearing and gnawing so galls (mālèdō) the body of men that, though the soul were abiding with the body, such soul, which one knows is happy and immortal, would then depart from the body, along with the animating life, the informing (sināyinākō) consciousness, and the remaining resources of life.

3. The body is inert, unmoving, and not to be galled; and at last no pain whatever galls it, nor is it perceived; and the soul, with the life, is outside of the body, and is not unsafe as regards its gnawing, but through the spiritual perception¹ it sees and knows it.

4. That which is wicked is then again desirous of its bodily existence², when it sees them thus: the wonderfully-constructed body which was its

¹ Supposing that sināsīnō stands for sināyisnō; otherwise we must read 'in the spiritual places (dīvāgānō).'

² This section is made still more complicated in the Pahlavi text by the division of this first phrase; half of it being placed at the beginning, and the other half at the extreme end of the sentence.
vesture, and is dispersed, and that spiritual life (hûkô) which was with its heart, and is even on account of this—that is: ‘Because in my bodily existence and worldly progress there was no atone-ment for sin and no accumulation of righteousness’—also in mourning about it thus: ‘In the prosperity which this body of mine had, it would have been possible for me to atone for sin and to save the soul, but now I am separated from every one and from the joy of the world, which is great hope of spiritual life; and I have attained to the perplexing account and more serious danger.’ 5. And the gnawing becomes as grievous to it, on account of that body, as a closely-shut arsenal (afzâr bêtâ-i bâd tûm) and a concealed innermost garment are useless among those with limbs provided with weapons and accoutrements, and are destroyed.

6. And of that, too, which is righteous and filled with the great joy that arises from being really certain of the best existence, then also the spiritual life which was with its body, on account of the great righteousness, fit for the exalted (fîrâkhtagânîk), which was ever accumulated by it with the body, is well developed (mâdâm hû-tâshtîdû), and the wonderfully-constructed body is destroyed in the manner of a garment, particularly when its dispersion (apâsîsnû) occurs thereby.

7. And the consciousness of men, as it sits three nights outside of the body, in the vicinity of the body, has to remember and expect that which is truly fear and trouble (khâr) unto the demons, and reward, peace, and glad tidings (nôvîk) unto the spirits of the good; and, on account of the dispersion and injuring of the body, it utters a cry spiritually,
thus: 'Why do the dogs and birds gnaw this organised body, when still at last the body and life unite together at the raising of the dead?' 8. And this is the reminding of the resurrection and liberation, and it becomes the happiness and hope of the spirit of the body and the other good spirits, and the fear and vexation of the demons and fiends.

Chapter XVII.

1. The sixteenth question is that which you ask thus: What is the purpose\(^1\) of giving up a corpse to the birds?

2. The reply is this, that the construction of the body of those passed away is so wonderful that two co-existences have come together for it, one which is to occasion endurance (dêr padâyînîdanô) and one which is to cause conflict (nipôrdînîdanô), and their natures are these, for watching the angels and averting the demons. 3. After appertaining to it the life—so long as it is in the locality of the place of the body—and the demons of dull intellects, who are frightened by the body, are just like a sheep startled by wolves when they shall further frighten it by a wolf\(^2\). 4. The spirit of the body, on account of being the spiritual life (hûkô) for the heart in the body, is indestructible; so is the will which resided therein, even when they shall release it from its abode.

5. In the same way the body of those who are

\(^1\) Assuming that âhan stands for âhang.

\(^2\) This last clause is a quotation, slightly altered, from Pahl. Vend. XIX, 108, 109.
passed away is so much the more innocently worthy of the rights (sānō) of one properly passed away, and what it is therein provided with, as it has uttered thanksgivings. 6. For those guardian spirits who keep watch over the body of Keresāsp the Sāmān are also such praises from the life and body, for that reason, moreover, when they unite.

7. The injury of the destroyer to the body of those passed away is contaminating; the Nasūs ('corruption') rushes on it and, owing to its violence when it becomes triumphant over the life of the righteous man, and frightens it from the place of the catastrophe (hankardīkth), and puts itself into the place of the body, that body is then, for that reason, called Nasāt ('dead matter'). 8. And, on account of the co-existence of rapid changing and the mode of attacking of the same Nasūs, even when it is necessary for the disintegration of the body, this is also then to lie and change sanatorily.

---

1 An ancient hero, mentioned both in the Avesta and Shāhnāmah, who, owing to his disregard of religion, is said to be lying asleep on the plain of Pērōōnsāi (probably the Pirin valley near Qandahār), watched by a myriad guardian spirits of the righteous, until he shall be hereafter aroused by the angels to kill the revived usurper Az-i Dahāk (see Bd. XXIX, 7, 8, Byt. III, 59-61). Regarding his soul a legend is related in the Pahlavi tracts which precede Dd. in some MSS., of which a translation will be found in Appendix I.

2 Supposed to be a fiend who enters and pervades every corpse immediately after death, except in certain cases of violent death, when its arrival is delayed till the next period of the day (see Slsc. X, 32). This exception is made in Vend. VII, 5, 6, and was probably intended, in most cases, to prevent a person who had met with a serious accident being left to perish, through fear of his death contaminating any one coming to his relief; not from any idea of the fiend being taken unawares by the suddenness of his death. This fiend is the Av. nasu (nom. nasu).
9. Hence, as the body of men is formed out of hard bone and soft fat, that which is established is the expulsion of the bone from the fat. 10. For the bone through its hardness, when no damp fat is with it, and it does not become a holder of its damp, is itself essentially dry; and it becomes unconsumable and attaining durability, through dryness, out of the dead matter even for perpetuity. 11. And the sun is provided to make rotten, dispersed, and useless the fat that is around the bone, which on the decay of the animating life is to become increasingly damp, and, after the departure of life through terror and disgust (adóstfh), it comes to rottenness and stench; and the noxious creatures in it alike afflict it and the hard part such as bone.

12. As regards the shrinking away of those who are sinners, the nearer way to a remedy is the gnawer away from men1; the fat becomes separate from the bone, and is seized and digested, as by the separation of the fat from the dead matter for digestion, moreover, the permanent matter (asarfh) and bone attain more fully unto their own nature (sánô), and the body (kálpâdô) to emptiness. 13. Because there is no other way to consume that fat of men, since it is most grievous to them (the sinners), and the pollution and contamination are made a blessing unto it (the gnawer). 14. The dispersers (astârdô-garân) completely disperse from it2; they are ap-

---

1 That is, in the case of those who neglect the proper exposure of corpses, there is a natural remedy in the worms produced for consuming them. Perhaps the word khastâr, 'cutter or gnawer,' stands for khastar, 'noxious creature.'

2 The consumers of the corpse disperse when their work is done, and carry contamination with them unless purified by the sun's heat, as described in § 15.
pointed and produced, a production not worthy, for its defilement of those purified and animals is contaminating, through contact again with men. 15. The crow (galâg) and such-like, through scorching away by the fire of the luminaries, become worthy; moreover, the affliction of that which is completely pure fire arises therefrom, as it is not able itself to come unto the scorched one, for then the defilement (darvâkh) of the scorcher by the most grievous gnawer would be possible.

16. But it is not proper to recount (angâstanô) the devouring of the noxious creatures, for the spirit of the body is troubled when it observes the alarmed (vaztd) spirituality which was in the body of those destroyed, the noxious creatures upon the goodly forms, and the mode and strangeness of their disintegration and spoliation. 17. And so it then becomes the more remedial way¹ when, as it is ordered in revelation², the body fraught with corruption is placed on the ground of a clear mountainspur (kôf vakhsh); and, in order not to convey it to the water, plants, and men of the plain, it is fastened³ in the customary manner, so that the corpse-eating dogs and corpse-eating birds, which are not subject to the hand (daštô-âmûkô) of men, and are likewise not entertained as food, shall yet not drag any of it away for man's eating of dead matter.

18. For streams and waters go themselves⁴ and

¹ That is, it is better to adopt the customary mode of removing the corpse.
² See Vend. VI, 93–97.
³ This is ordered only when the corpse is not placed in any enclosure.
⁴ Or, as Vend. V, 49–62 describes it, the water is rained down by
consume that fat, and are digested by the vital fire\(^1\) which is in the life of the creatures of A\^harmazd; \(and\) from fat the corpses and dead matter are reduced unto dregs of clay\(^2\) and permanent matter, even with the dust they are mingled \(and\) become scattered about. 19. Likewise to those dogs, flying creatures, \(and\) birds they themselves (the waters) have given the corpse-eating quality \(and\) habit\(^3\), and on account of dull intellect they (the creatures) are not overwhelmed even by that sin.

20. From that fat which is mingled with the living body of a creature of A\^harmazd then \(arises\) also the assault\(^4\) of the demons, as is shown in the chapter\(^5\) on the reason for showing a dog to a dead person, so that the body of those passed away, when the gnawers away are mingled with the living body of a creature of A\^harmazd, exhibits a partial resurrection and the tokens of it, and thereby the demons keep in it (the living body), and give pain\(^6\) by the will of the sacred beings.

\(^1\) The vital heat, or Vohu-fry\(\text{"an}\) fire (see Bd. XVII, 1, 2).

\(^2\) Reading gil-valig\(\text{"ih}\) (compare Pers. kali\(\text{"k}\), ‘sediment,’ or gali\(\text{"z}\), ‘saliva’).

\(^3\) Which they have imbibed by contact with dead matter.

\(^4\) Or ‘weapon.’

\(^5\) No such chapter is now extant in Dd., and, therefore, this remark favours the supposition that some chapters are lost between Chaps. XCIII and XCIV. A corpse must be shown to a dog in order that the demon, Nas\(\text{"ur}\), may be driven out of it by the look, or touch, of the dog (see Sls. II, 1-4, X, 33).

\(^6\) A recognition of the fact that the drinking of impure water, or eating of tainted food, is apt to produce disease.
Chapter XVIII.

1. The seventeenth question is that you ask thus: Is it better when they give it to the birds, or what mode is better?

2. The reply is this, that after showing the dog—the reason of which is as declared in its own chapter—they shall carry the corpse at once to the hills and rising ground (vākhs hūm); and, for the reason that the dogs and birds should not bring that dead matter away to a watered, cultivated, or inhabited place, one is to fasten it in the manner of a thief. 3. When the corpse-eating birds have eaten the fat, that fat which, when it is not possible to eat it, becomes rotten, offensive, and fraught with noxious creatures, then men shall properly convey the bones away to the bone-receptacle (astōdānō), which one is to elevate so from the ground, and over which a roof (āskūpō) so stands, that in no way does the rain fall upon the dead matter, nor the water reach up to it therein, nor the damp make up to it therein, nor are the dog and fox able to go to it, and for the sake of light coming to it a hole is made therein.

4. More authoritatively (dastōbarthā) it is said that bone-receptacle is a vault (kādākō) of solid stone, and its covering (nihūmbakō) one is to

1 Literally 'as the reason of it is declared.' This is another allusion to the missing chapter mentioned in Chap. XVII, 20.
2 Reading āhūn khađūnō, but this is very likely a corruption of khađūnō khađūnō, 'in various modes.'
3 The MSS. have mūnam, 'which by me.'
4 The MSS. have mīn madām, 'from above.'
5 Whether khađūkō-sagākō means 'solid rock' or 'solid ashlar' is doubtful.
construct also of a single stone which is cut perforated (sūlāk-hōmand), and around it one is to fill in with stone and mortar.

CHAPTER XIX.

1. The eighteenth question is that which you ask thus: When the souls of the righteous and the souls of the wicked go out to the spirits, will it then be possible for them to see Aûharmazd and Aharman², or not?

2. The reply is this, that concerning Aharman it is said that his is no material existence (stās); and Aûharmazd, as a spirit among the spirits, is to be heard by those who are material and those also who are spiritual, but his form (kerpō) is not completely visible except through wisdom. 3. And a semblance of his power is seen, as was told unto Zaratûst the Spītamān when he saw the result (zah) of his handiwork, and he (Aûharmazd) spoke thus: 'Grasp the hand of a righteous man! for the kindly operation of my religion through thee thyself is as

¹ Perhaps the single stone is not to cover the whole space, but merely to contain the opening for light, and to be set in a vaulted roof of ashlar or rubble; otherwise it is not clear where the filling with stone and mortar is to be placed. This bone-receptacle was to be provided for the bones of those corpses which were deposited on the open ground. In the enclosed depositories, used in India, the bone-receptacle is a circular well in the centre, from which the rain does not appear to be excluded (see Slis, II, 6, note).

² The evil spirit (see Chap. II, 11), whose nature and powers differ very little from those ascribed to the devil by most Christian writers.

³ Or 'on;' or, perhaps, it 'is as much as he shall grasp at thee thyself.'
much as he shall grasp, and thou mayst see him whose reception (māhmānth) of my wisdom and glory is the most.'

4. And about the souls of the righteous and wicked, in the spiritual places they see the throne (gās), which they deem a sight of Aûharmazd. 5. And so also those who are domiciled with (han-nemân) Aharman, through that wisdom with reference to whose creator they shall suffer, will understand minutely as regards Aûharmazd and the nature of Aharman (Ahārmanth). 6. And he who is of the righteous is delighted at escaping from Aharman and coming to the existence pertaining to Aûharmazd; and they shall offer homage to the glory¹ of Aûharmazd. 7. And he who is wicked, through being deceived by Aharman, and turning from the direction (pelag) of Aûharmazd, becomes more vexed and more penitent; the hope (zahīsnō) and forgiveness which he possesses, and the retribution and manacling which are his among the fiends and spirits through his own handiwork, are by the permission which comes from the most persistent of the persistent² at the period of the resurrection.

¹ The word 'glory' is always to be understood in its material sense of 'radiance, effulgence.'
² That is, from Aûharmazd. The epithet kḥvāpar, here translated 'persistent,' appears to mean 'self-sustaining' in the Avesta (see Sls. XXII, 21); traditionally it is supposed to mean 'protecting, cherishing,' but this is merely a guess, though it seems related to Pers. khapārah, 'active,' and may, therefore, often mean 'persevering.'
CHAPTER XX.

1. The nineteenth question is that you ask thus: To what place do the righteous and wicked\(^1\) go?

2. The reply is this, that it is thus said that the souls of those passed away and of the dead\(^2\) are three nights on earth; and the first night satisfaction comes to them from their good thoughts and vexation from their evil thoughts, the second night come pleasure from their good words and discomfort and punishment\(^3\) from their evil words, and the third night come exaltation from their good deeds and punishment from their evil deeds\(^4\). 3. And that third night, in the dawn, they go to the place of account on Albûrz\(^5\); the account being rendered they proceed to the bridge\(^6\), and he who is righteous

---

\(^1\) As K\(_{35}\) inserts the relative i here, some such phrase as 'who are dead' has probably dropped out of the Pahlavi text.

\(^2\) The Parsi books speak of the righteous dead as 'departed,' a term very rarely applied to the wicked (see Chap. XXXII, 4), who are nearly always said 'to die;' the latter verb is, however, occasionally used when speaking of the righteous. This distinction is made even in the Huzvâris logograms, which express the death of the righteous by forms allied to Chald. "\(\text{يم}\) he passed over,' and the death of the wicked by forms allied to Chald. "\(\text{ن}\) he died.'

\(^3\) So in all MSS., but the 'punishment' seems superfluous here.

\(^4\) The Avesta merely states that the soul remains three nights near the body, chanting a particular hymn, and experiencing as much pleasure or uneasiness as it had in the world (see Hn. II, 3-17, III, 3-16); and much the same account is given in AV. IV, 9-14, XVII, 2-9, Mk. II, 114, 158-160.

\(^5\) The mountain chain which is supposed to surround the world (see Bd. XII, 3); the Av. Hara-berezaiti.

\(^6\) The Kînvad bridge (see Chap. XXI, 2-7), which is said to
passes over the bridge on the ascent (lâlâth), and if belonging to the ever-stationary (hamîstânîkô)\(^1\) he goes thither where their place is, if along with an excess of good works *his* habits are correct (frârûn-dâd) *he goes* even unto heaven (vahîstô), and if along with an excess of good works and correct habits *he has* chanted the sacred hymns (gâsânô) *he goes* even unto the supreme heaven (garôdmânô). 4. He who is of the wicked falls from the lower end (rsth) of the bridge, or from the middle of the bridge; he falls head-foremost to hell, and is precipitated (nikûnî-aitô) unto that grade\(^2\) which is *suitable for* his wickedness.

---

**Chapter XXI.**

1. The twentieth question is that which you ask thus: How are the Kînvald bridge, the Dâîtiâh peak (kâkâd), and the path of the righteous and wicked;

rest upon the Dâîtiâh ("judicial") peak, and to pass over to Albûrs (see Bd. XII, 7). According to the Avesta (Vend. XIX, 100, 101, trans. D.) his conscience, in the form of a maiden, 'makes the soul of the righteous one go up above the Hara-berezaiti (Albûrs); above the Kînvald bridge she places it in the presence of the heavenly gods (angels) themselves.' See also AV. V, 1, 2, Mkh. II, 115.

\(^1\) The intermediate place for those not good enough for heaven and not bad enough for hell, where such souls remain in a passive, immovable state till the resurrection (see Sls. VI, 2). It is divided into two parts, according to the author, one for those nearly righteous (see Chap. XXIV, 6), and one for those nearly wicked (see Chap. XXXIII, 2).

\(^2\) Four grades of heaven and four of hell are mentioned in AV. and Mkh. (see Sls. VI, 3, note).
how are they when one is righteous, and how when one is wicked?

2. The reply is this, that thus the high-priests have said, that the Dâtíth peak\(^1\) is in Atrân-vês\(^2\), in the middle of the world; reaching unto the vicinity of that peak is that beam-shaped (dâr-kerpô) spirit, the Kînvasd bridge\(^3\), which is thrown across from the Albûrz enclosure (var) back to the Dâtíth peak.

3. As it were that bridge is like a beam of many sides, of whose edges (pôstô) there are some which are broad, and there are some which are thin and sharp; its broad sides (sûkîhâ) are so large that its width is twenty-seven reeds (nâl), and its sharp sides are so contracted (tang) that in thinness it is just like the edge of a razor. 4. And when the souls of the righteous and wicked arrive it turns to that side which is suitable to their necessities, through the great glory of the creator and the command of him who takes the just account\(^4\).

5. Moreover, the bridge becomes a broad bridge for the righteous, as much as the height of nine spears (nizakô)—and the length of those which they carry is each separately three reeds\(^5\)—; and

---

\(^1\) The Kâkâd-i Dâtítk of Bd. XII, 7.
\(^2\) The primeval home of Mazda-worship (see Vend. I, 5, 6), which the Bundahis places 'in the direction of Ādarbigân'; it is also stated to contain the Dâtítk or Dâtíth river (which must not be confounded with the Dâtíth peak) and the Dârâgâ river (on whose bank Zarâtûrt's father is said to have dwelt), and to have been the scene of Zarâtûrt's first promulgation of the religion (Bd. XX, 13, 32, XXIX, 12, XXXII, 3). Its winter is likewise described as both long and cold (Vend. I, 8-12, Bd. XXV, 11, 16), which is the case in Ādarbigân.

\(^3\) See Chap. XX, 3.

\(^4\) The angel Rashnû.

\(^5\) The nine spears of three reeds each, in length, making up the
CHAPTER XXI, 2—9.

it becomes a narrow bridge for the wicked, even unto a resemblance to the edge of a razor. 6 And he who is of the righteous passes over the bridge, and a worldly similitude of the pleasantness of his path upon it is when thou shalt eagerly and unweariedly walk in the golden-coloured spring, and with the gallant (hû-kîr') body and sweet-scented blossom in the pleasant skin of that maiden² spirit, the price of goodness. 7. He who is of the wicked, as he places a footstep on to the bridge, on account of affliction (sîparth) and its sharpness, falls from the middle of the bridge, and rolls over head foremost. 8. And the unpleasantness of his path to hell is in similitude such as the worldly one in the midst of that stinking and dying existence (hastân), there where numbers of the sharp-pointed darts (tēzō mâk dûg') are planted² out inverted and point upwards, and they come unwillingly running; they shall not allow them to stay behind, or to make delay. 9. So much greater than the worldly similitude is that pleasantness and unpleasantness unto the souls, as such as is fit for the spirit is greater than that fit for the world.

twenty-seven reeds mentioned in § 3. As the reed appears to have been about 4 feet 8 inches (see Chap. XLIII, 5, note), the width of the bridge is supposed to be about 126 feet, and the length of a spear is taken as 14 feet.

¹ So in the MSS., but hû-kîhar, 'handsome,' is more probable.
² Reading kânîkô, instead of the kânâkô of the MSS., as there can be no allusion to the evil spirit here. The reference is to a good conscience, which is symbolised by the handsome maiden who is supposed to meet the righteous soul on its way to heaven (see Chap. XXIV, 5).
³ Assuming that âḡzâst is equivalent to Pers. âgâst. The allusion seems to be to a form of torturing punishment (running upon ground studded with sharp points) well known to the author.
CHAPTER XXII.

1. The twenty-first question is that which you ask thus: When he who is righteous passes away, who has performed much worship of the sacred beings, and many duties and good works, do the spirit of creation, the spirit of the sacred ceremony (yazisho) and religion of the Mazda-worshippers, the water, earth, plants, and animals, make complaint unto Aûharmazd, owing to the passing away of him who is righteous, and is it distressing to them when he goes out from the world, or how is it?

2. The reply is this, that as to him who is of the righteous, in his transit of worldly pain in passing away, and also after passing away to the passage onwards which is his limit (stâr) still in the perplexing account, and, after the account, in his own joy, and in what occurs when his gossips (ham-vâkân) in the world—by whom the spiritual beings are also not unrecognised, nor his position unknown—are in worldly demeanour downcast and grieving, on all these occasions his thoughts, procuring forgiveness, are about the sacred beings.

3. And the spirit of creation, and the good spirit of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, which are in the worldly existence—of which also, in the world, that righteous one is a praiser, an employer, a manager, a protection, and a forbearing friend—shall make an outcry to

---

1 The Kînvad bridge, near which the soul's account is rendered.
2 The sentence is clear enough in Pahlavi, but too involved to be readily understood in English without these extra words.
3 The worldly existences which those spirits represent.
the creator about him who is righteous, who is away from worldly protection, also for the granting of a promoter of forbearance, and for a restorer (アヴォルダル) of what is extorted; likewise a petition about the compensatory concomitants as to his new protection and disposer.

4. And the almighty creator responds, and allots a teacher for smiting the fiend, for the satisfaction of the righteous, and for the protection of the good creatures. 5. As it is said, that in every age a high-priest of the religion and his managing of the creatures are made manifest, in whom, in that age, the protection of the creatures and the will of the sacred beings are progressing.

CHAPTER XXIII.

1. The twenty-second question is that which you ask thus: When they shall snatch forth the life from the body of man how does it depart?

2. The reply is this; that it is said to be in resemblance such as when the redness is drawn up out of a fire; for when the inflammable material of a fire is burnt, and has remained without glowing.

---

1 These latter clauses of the outcry refer to their own wants, and the necessity of providing some one to take the place of the deceased; but the final petition seems to be for the deceased himself.

2 The word may be either фархактако, ‘preparing, educating,’ or фирстако, ‘sending, deputing,’ and must be used as a substantive.

3 Reading abartі (compare Pers. barz, ‘splendour’), or it may be abarakh, ‘sparkless,’ if barks, ‘a spark,’ be a pure Persian word, which is doubtful.
and when it does not obtain new inflammable material, or extinguishing matter (nizâyisîk) comes upon it, its redness and heat then depart from it; the life, too, on the departure of the breath (vâdô vâsakîth), does not stay in the body, but in like manner departs.

3. To a like purport the high-priests of the religion have also said this, that mortals and men by listening perceive the time when the spirits shall put a noose (band) on the neck; when his time has fully come then conducts him with a companion (pavan ham-bar), and at his falling are the place of death and cause of death; and having made lethargy (bûshâsp) deliver him up, and terrified his fever (tapô), death (aôsh) seizes decrepitude (zarmân) away from him.

4. The strength in those intrusted with him, and the good proceedings and pursuit of means which remain behind, giving them strength, are the deter-

---

1 Mî4 and J omit the remainder of the sentence.
2 Reading sinvisînô, but by omitting a stroke we should have dânîsînô, 'knowledge.'
3 Of a person at the point of death. The demon of death, Astôvidad, is supposed to cast a noose around the necks of the dead to drag them to hell, which only the righteous can throw off (see Bd. III, 21, 22).
4 That is, the dying man must be conveyed by more than one person, for fear of such contamination by the demon of corruption (at the time of death) as would require the tedious Bareshnîm ceremonial of purification (see Sls. II, 1, 6–8).
5 And, therefore, the place where his body will rise again at the resurrection (see Sls. XVII, 11–14).
6 Lethargy, fever, and decrepitude are considered as fiends, but are dispossessed by the mightier demon of death. Mî4 and J mention 'lethargy,' but omit the after part of the sentence.
7 Alluding probably to the ceremonies to be ordered and performed by the survivors (see Chap. XXVIII, 6, Sls. XVII, 2–6).
mination (viḥṭr) which is their own inward physician. 5. And should it be a passing away (vidarg) which obtains no light, and on account of their disquietudes they have gone to the understanders of remedies for strength for the remedial duties, and the way is closed, he proceeds with insufficiency of means¹.

6. And the soul of the body, which is the master of its house (kadak khūḍāt), along with the animating life, goes out of the impotent body to the immortal souls², as a wise master of a house goes out of a foreign (anīrānō) house to a residence of the good worship.

7. It was also told to the ancient learned that life (khayā) is where there is a living spirit within the soul's body, which is connected with the soul³, as much as a development (sarṭūntanō) of the body, and is the life (zīvandakth) of the soul of a body of one passed away.

---

CHAPTER XXIV.

1. The twenty-third question is that which you ask thus: When he who is righteous passes away, where is the place the soul sits the first night, the second, and the third; and what does it do?

2. The reply is this, that thus it is said, that the

---

¹ That is, when there are doubts about the fate of the soul, and the survivors can obtain no satisfactory assurances from the priesthood, the soul has to proceed to the other world without suitable provision for its happiness.

² The MSS. have 'soul.'

³ Mr14 and J have 'which is the soul,' and omit the remainder of the sentence.
soul of man, itself the spirit of the body\(^1\), after passing away, is three nights upon earth, doubtful about its own position (gâs)\(^2\), and in fear of the account; and it experiences terror, distress (dâh-yâkô), and fear through anxiety about the Kînîvâd bridge\(^3\); and as it sits it notices about its own good works and sin. 3. And the soul, which in a manner belongs to that same spirit of the body which is alike experiencing and alike touching it, becomes acquainted by sight with the sin which it has committed, and the good works which it has scantily done.

4. And the first night from its own good thoughts, the second night from its good words, and the third night from its good deeds it obtains pleasure for the soul; and if also, with the righteousness, there be sin which remains in it as its origin, the first punishment in retribution for the evil deed occurs that same third night. 5. The same third night, on the fresh arrival of a dawn\(^4\), the treasurer of good works, like a handsome maiden (kânîkô)\(^5\), comes out to meet it with the store of its own good works; and, collected by witches (partkô-kind), the sin and crime unatoned for (atôkhtô) come on to the account and are justly accounted for\(^6\).

---

\(^1\) The 'spirit of the body' which is to some extent distinguished from the 'soul,' both in this chapter and the next, is probably the life, as described in Chap. XXIII, 7.

\(^2\) That is, its future position, or 'destination.'

\(^3\) See Chap. XXI, 2–7.

\(^4\) Reading dên bâm-1 nuk ayâftô.

\(^5\) Fully described in Hn. II, 22–32, AV. IV, 18–35, Mkh. II, 125–139.

\(^6\) The author is more practical than most other writers on the same subject, as he assumes that the righteous soul is not absolutely righteous, nor the wicked soul absolutely wicked.
6. For the remaining (ketvironment) sin it undergoes punishment at the bridge, and the evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds are atoned for; and with the good thoughts, good words, and good deeds of its own commendable and pleasing spirit it steps forward unto the supreme heaven (garΔd'mânô)\(^1\), or to heaven (vahistô), or to the ever-stationary (hamt-stânagânô) of the righteous\(^2\), there where there is a place for it in righteousness.

**Chapter XXV.**

1. The twenty-fourth question is that which you ask thus: When he who is wicked shall die, where is the place the soul sits the first night, the second, and the third; and what does it say and do?

2. The reply is this, that those three nights the soul is upon earth, and notices about the thoughts, words, and deeds of its own body; it is doubtful about its own position, and experiences grievous fear of the account, great terror of the bridge, and perplexing fear on account of hell. 3. Thought is oppressive as an indicator of fear, and the soul, in a manner the spirit of the body, is a computer\(^3\) and acquirer of acquaintance by sight about the good works which it has not done, and the sin which it has committed.

4. And the first night it is hastening away from

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XX, 3.

\(^2\) There is another place for the ever-stationary of the wicked (see Chap. XXXIII, 2).

\(^3\) Assuming that angrâldâr stands for angâridâr.
its own evil thoughts, the second night from its own evil words, and the third night from its own evil deeds; but, owing to the good works which it has done in the world, the first night the spirit of its good thoughts, the second night the spirit of its good words, and the third night the spirit of its good deeds, come unto the soul, and become pleasing and commendable to it.

5. And the third night, on the fresh arrival of a dawn, its sin, in the frightful, polluted shape of a maiden (karâtik) who is an injurer, comes to meet it with the store of its sin; and a stinking northerly wind comes out to meet it, and it comes on shudderingly, quiveringly, and unwillingly running to the account. 6. And through being deceived and deceiving, heresy (avârûn-dînôth), unrelenting and false accusation of constant companions, and the wide-spread sinfulness of a fiend-like existence (drûg-stîth) it is ruined, falls from the bridge, and is precipitated to hell.

Chapter XXVI.

1. The twenty-fifth question is that which you ask thus: How are the nature of heaven (vahîstó), and the comfort and pleasure which are in heaven?

2. The reply is this, that it is lofty, exalted, and

---

1 The demons are supposed to come from the north, where the gates of hell are situated (see Sls. X, 7).
2 Reading astô-stîthâ naftô-gumdânîhâ, which may be, literally, 'with bones started and with shaking navel;' but the reading is doubtful.
3 Literally 'not allowing to hear and false-speaking.'
supreme, most brilliant, most fragrant, and most pure, most supplied with beautiful existences, most desirable, and most good, and the place and abode of the sacred beings (yazdânô). 3. And in it are all comfort, pleasure, joy, happiness (vastdâgîth), and welfare, more and better even than the greatest supremest welfare and pleasure in the world; and there is no want, pain, distress, or discomfort whatever in it; and its pleasantness and the welfare of the angels are from that constantly-beneficial place (gâs), the full and undiminishable space (gûng)¹, the good and boundless world.

4. And the freedom of the heavenly from danger from evil in heaven is like unto their freedom from disturbance, and the coming of the good angels is like unto the heavenly ones' own good works provided. 5. This prosperity (freh-haustô) and welfare of the spiritual existence is more than that of the world, as much as that which is unlimited and everlasting is more than that which is limited and demoniacal (sèdânîkô).

---

CHAPTER XXVII.

1. The twenty-sixth question is that which you ask thus: How are the nature of hell, and the pain, discomfort², punishment, and stench of hell?

2. The reply is this, that it is sunken, deep, and descending, most dark, most stinking, and most terrible, most supplied with wretched existences (anâzîdântûm), and most bad, the place and cave

¹ See Chap. XXXI, 24. ² Or 'ingloriousness.'
(grêstakô) of the demons and fiends. 3. And in it is no comfort, pleasantness, or joy whatever; but in it are all stench, filth, pain, punishment, distress, profound evil, and discomfort; and there is no resemblance of it whatever to worldly stench, filthiness, pain, and evil. 4. And since there is no resemblance of the mixed evil of the world to that which is its sole-indicating (aê-numâl) good, there is also a deviation (gumîsnô) of it from the origin and abode of evil.

5. And so much more grievous is the evil in hell than even the most grievous evil on earth, as the greatness of the spiritual existence is more than that of the world; and more grievous is the terror of the punishment on the soul than that of the vileness of the demons on the body. 6. And the punishment on the soul is from those whose abode it has become, from the demons and darkness—a likeness of that evil to hell—the head (kamârakô) of whom is Aharman the deadly.

7. And the words of the expressive utterance of the high-priests are these, that where there is a fear of every other thing it is more than the thing itself, but hell is a thing worse than the fear of it.

---

**Chapter XXVIII.**

1. The twenty-seventh question is that which you ask thus: Why and what is the ceremony of

Meaning, probably, that the mixture of good and evil in the world is as far removed from heaven as it is from hell. But the words aê-numâl and gumîsnô are doubtful both in reading and meaning.

* That is, hell has become; reading mân gastô.
the three nights (sāṭūḥ), when during three days they order and perform the sacred-cake ceremony (yażisnō drōnō) of Srōsh? 2. The reply is this, that the life and soul, when from the realm of the spirit of air they attain unto worldly attire, and have passed into its pain and misfortune, are more sensitive (nāzūktar); owing to their nurture, birth, and mission, protection and defence are more desirable and more suitable for the discreet (hū-kīragānīktar); and milk food, and renewed (navagūnak) and constant attention to the fire are requisite 3. 3. So also when they are ousted from bodily existence, and pain and the eradication of life have come upon them, they are in like manner more sensitive, and sending them protection and defence from spirits and worldly existences is more desirable. 4. And on account of their spiritual character the offering (fiṟtisnō) of gifts for the angels, fit for the ritual of a spirit (maīnok nīrangīk), is more presentable; and also a fire newly tended (nōgōnd) is that which is more the custom in the sacred ceremony (yażisnō).

5. For the same reason in the three days when in connection with the soul the sacred ceremony, the burning of fire, its cleanly clearance (gōndisnō),

1 See Chap. XIV, 4.
2 Reading min maīnok vāyih, and assuming that 'the good Vāē' (the Vayō of the Rām Yt.), who is often called the angel Rām, is alluded to (see Chap. XXX, 4, Sls. XI, 4, XVII, 4). The life and soul are treated as one being in this chapter, as all the verbs and pronouns referring to them are in the singular number in the Pahlavi text.
3 Referring to the proper care of new-born infants, for whose protection from the demons a bright fire is to be kept constantly burning for three days (see Sls. XII, 11, 12).
and other religious and ritualistic defence, feeding on milk and eating with a spoon¹ are ordered, because—as the sacred ceremony, the defence and protection of the worldly existences, is, by order of the creator, the business of Srôsh the righteous², and he is also one of those taking the account in the three nights³—Srôsh the righteous gives the soul, for three days and nights, the place of the spirit of air in the world, and protection. 6. And because of the protectiveness of Srôsh, and that one is assisted likewise by Srôsh’s taking the account, and for that purpose, are the manifest reasons for performing and ordering the ceremony of Srôsh for three days and nights⁴.

7. And the fourth day the ordering and performing the ceremony of the righteous guardian spirit (ardâl fravardô)⁵ are for the same soul and the remaining righteous guardian spirits of those who are and were and will be, from Gâyômard the propitious to Sôshâns the triumphant⁶.

---

**CHAPTER XXIX.**

1. The twenty-eighth question is that you ask thus: For what reason is it not allowable to perform

---

¹ No meat is to be eaten by the survivors until the third night has passed away (see Sls. XVII, 2).
² The angel Srôsh is said to have been the first creature who performed the sacred ceremony (see Yas. LVI, i, 2–7, ii, 2–4, iii, 2–4), of which the spiritual counterpart was produced by Ahuramazd during the creation (see Bd. II, 9).
³ See Chap. XIV, 4.
⁴ See Sls. XVII, 3.
⁵ See Sls. XVII, 5.
⁶ That is, from the first man to the last; the phrase is quoted from Yas. XXVI, 33.
the ceremony of Srôsh, the living spirit (ahvô)\(^1\), along with other propitiations (shnûmanô)\(^2\), when they reverence him separately?

2. The reply is this, that the lord of all things is the creator who is persistent over his own creatures, and a precious work is his own true service\(^3\) which is given by him to Srôsh the righteous whom, for this reason, one is to reverence separately when even his name is not frequently mentioned, and one is not even to reverence the names of the archangels with him.

---

**Chapter XXX.**

1. The twenty-ninth question is that which you ask thus: The third night, in the light of dawn, what is the reason for consecrating separately the three sacred cakes\(^4\) with three dedications (shnûman)\(^5\)?

2. The reply is this, that one sacred cake, whose dedication is to Rashnû and Åstâd\(^6\), is for\(^6\) satisfying

---

\(^1\) Probably a miswriting of ashôk, ‘righteous.’

\(^2\) Short formulas of praise, reciting all the usual titles of the spirits intended to be propitiated by them, which are introduced into a particular part of the liturgy to dedicate the ceremony to the particular spirit in whose honour it is being performed (see Sls. VII, 8).

\(^3\) Reading bôndakîh; but it may be bûndakîh, ‘completeness. perfection.’

\(^4\) The drôn, or sacred cake, is a small flexible pancake which is consecrated in the ceremonies, and dedicated to some particular spirit by means of the shnûman, or propitiatory dedication (see Sls. III, 32).

\(^5\) See Sls. XVII, 4. These two angels are supposed to be present when the soul renders its account; Rashnû weighs its actions in his golden balance, and Åstâd assists it (see AV. V, 3, 5).

\(^6\) Reading rái, instead of lá, ‘not.’
the light of dawn and the period of Aûshahân¹, because the mountain Aûshdâstâr² is mentioned in the propitiation of the angel Âstâd. 3. With Âstâd is the propitiation of the period of Aûshahân³, and she is the ruler of glory⁴ of that time when the account occurs; the souls are in the light of the dawn of Aûshahân when they go to the account; their passage (vidâr) is through the bright dawn.

4. One sacred cake, which is in propitiation of the good Vâê⁵, is, moreover, on this account: whereas the bad Vâê⁶ is a despoiler and destroyer, even so the good Vâê is a resister (kûkhshâdâr), and likewise encountering the bad Vâê; he is also a diminisher (vizûdâr) of his abstraction of life,

¹ One of the five periods of the day and night, extending from midnight until the stars disappear in the dawn, or, as some say, until all the fixed stars disappear except four of the first magnitude (see Bd. XXV, 9, Sls. XIV, 4–6).
² Called Ushi-darena in the Avesta, and identified with some mountain in Sagastân in Bd. XII, 15. It is mentioned in the dedicatory formula of Âstâd (see Sb. 26), and its name is evidently here supposed to mean 'the holder of dawn,' an appropriate term for a lofty mountain to the eastward.
³ Both Rashnû and Âstâd are blessed in the prayers appointed for the Aûshahân period of the day.
⁴ The 'glory of the Aryans' is lauded in the Âstâd Yast.
⁵ The spirit of air, or angel Râm, who receives and protects the good soul on its way to the other world (see Chap. XXVIII, 2, 5).
⁶ Identified with Astô-vidâd, the demon of death, in Bd. XXVIII, 35, but Pahl. Vend. V, 25. 31 makes him a separate demon, who conveys away the bound soul, which would identify him with the demon Vîzarêsh of Vend. XIX, 94, Bd. XXVIII, 18. There is very little doubt, however, that the Pahlavi translator of Vend. V misunderstood the Avesta, which merely says that 'Astô-vidhôtu binds him, Vayô conveys him bound;' referring probably to the good Vâê who receives the parting soul; and Pahl. Vend. V, 31 admits that this was the opinion of some.
and a receiver and protection of life, on account of the sacred cake.  

CHAPTER XXXI.

1. The thirtieth question is that which you ask thus: When a soul of the righteous goes on to heaven, in what manner does it go; also, who receives it, who leads it, and who makes it a household attendant of Aûharmazd? Also, does any one of the righteous in heaven come out to meet it, and shall any thereof make enquiry of it, or how? 2. Shall they also make up an account as to its sin and good works, and how is the comfort and pleasantness in heaven shown to it; also, what is its food? 3. Is it also their assistance which

---

1 Nothing is here said about the third sacred cake, but Sls. XVII, 4 states that this is to be dedicated to the righteous guardian spirit (see Chap. XXVIII, 7).

2 It is doubtful whether the verb be yezrûn (a corruption of yezderûn) or dezrûn (a corruption of dedrûn), but both forms are traceable to the same Semitic root (יֵרַב), one with and the other without the prefix 'ye,' and both, therefore, have nearly the same meaning.

3 Reading khavag-î-mân, 'servant of the house' (see also §§ 5, 8, Chaps. XXXII, 7, XXXVII, 16, 17, 21, XLIII, 1, XLVIII, 41). This word occurs in Pahl. Vend. XIX, 102, in a compound which is doubtfully read avidamânkarânô, 'those acting without time, eternal ones,' in Haug's Essays, p. 388 (it should be 'those acting as household attendants'). It also occurs in the Pâzand tract called Aogemâdabâz, from its initial word (see Geiger's ed. p. 23, § 11), where it is read avidimânî, and translated by Sans. pratîhâra, 'doorkeeper;' but in a Pahlavi version of this tract (which seems to form part of the Afrîm-i Dâhmân, and differs considerably from the Pâzand text) this word is replaced by bôndak mâwikî, 'a household servant,' which confirms the reading adopted here.
reaches unto the world, or not? And is the limit (sāmānō) of heaven manifest, or what way is it?

4. The reply is this, that a soul of the righteous steps forth unto heaven through the strength of the spirit of good works, along with the good spirit\(^1\) which is the escort (parvānakō) of the soul, into its allotted station and the uppermost (tāyākō) which is for its own good works; along with the spiritual good works, without those for the world, and a crown and coronet\(^2\), a turban-sash and a fourfold fillet- pendant\(^3\), a decorated robe (gāmakō) and suitable equipments, spiritually flying unto heaven (vahistō), or to the supreme heaven (garōdmān), there where its place is. 5. And Vohu-man\(^4\), the archangel, makes it a household attendant (khavāg-l-mānīnēdō) to Aūharmazd the creator, and by order of Aūharmazd announces its position (gās) and reward; and it becomes glad to beg for the position of household attendant of Aūharmazd, through what it sees and knows.

6. Aūharmazd the creator of good producers

---

\(^1\) Probably the good Vāē, the spirit of air (see Chaps. XXVIII, 2, 5, XXIX. 4).

\(^2\) Reading rukhō vardivanō, which words also occur in AV. XII, 16, XIV, 9. A most elaborate account of heaven and hell will be found in the Book of Arāν śāhī with an English Translation, ed. Hôshangji and Haug, 1872.

\(^3\) Reading vās va kahāvakō bālak.

\(^4\) Vend. XIX, 102–107 (trans. D.) states as follows: 'Up rises Vohu-manō from his golden seat; Vohu-manō exclaims: ''How hast thou come to us, thou holy one, from that decaying world into this undecaying one?'' Gladly pass the souls of the righteous to the golden seat of Ahura Mazda, to the golden seat of the Ame-sha-spentas, to the Garō-nmânem, the abode of Ahura Mazda, the abode of the Amesha-spentas, the abode of all the other holy beings.'
(dahākān) is a spirit even among spirits, and spirits even have looked for a sight of him; which spirits are manifestly above worldly existences. 7. But when, through the majesty of the creator, spirits put on worldly appearances (vēnisnōthā), or are attending (sināyāṅākō) to the world and spirit, and put away appearance (vēnisnō apadōgēnd), then he whose patron spirit (ahvō) is in the world is able to see the attending spirits, in such similitude as when they see bodies in which is a soul, or when they see a fire in which is Varahrān, or see water in which is its own spirit. 8. Moreover, in that household attendance, that Aūharmazd has seen the soul is certain, for Aūharmazd sees all things; and many even of the fiend's souls, who are put away from those of Aūharmazd in spiritual understanding, are delighted by the appearance (numūdanō) of those of Aūharmazd.

9. And the righteous in heaven, who have been

---

1. Implying that Aūharmazd can hardly be considered visible, except by the eye of faith (see Chap. XIX, 2).
2. Assuming that rabā-vānāghi is equivalent to Pers. buzurgānātī, 'magnificence.'
3. The ahvō (Av. aḥū) seems to be a spiritual protector, somewhat similar to a patron saint; as, according to the Ahunavar, the most sacred formula of the Parsis (see Bd. I, 21, Zs. I, 12–19), both an aḥū and a ratu are to be chosen, that is, both a patron spirit and a high-priest.
4. That is, he sees the spirits by means of their material manifestations.
5. The old Pahl. form of Vāhrām, the angel whose name is applied to the sacred fire (see Bd. XVII, 1, 2, 9); he is the Av. Verethraghna of the Bahram Yt.
6. The female angel of water is the Av. ardvi sūra Anāhita of the Âbān Yt.
7. The souls in hell.
his intimate friends, of the same religion and like goodness, speak to him of the display of affection, the courteous enquiry, and the suitable eminence from coming to heaven, and his everlasting well-being in heaven.

10. And the account as to sin and good works does not occur unto the heavenly ones; it is itself among the perplexing questions of this treatise, for the taking of the account and the atonement for the sins of a soul of those passed away and appointed unto heaven happen so, although its place (gâs) is there until the renovation of the universe, and it has no need for a new account. 11. And that account is at the time the account occurs; those taking the account are Aûharmaezd, Vohûman, Mitrô, Srôsh, and Rashnû, and they shall make up the account of all with justice, each one at his own time, as the reply is written in its own chapter.

12. As to that which you ask concerning food, the meals of the world are taken in two ways: one is the distribution of water in haste, and one is with enjoyment (aûrvâzišnô) to the end; but in heaven there is no haste as to water, and rejoicing with much delight they are like unto those who, as worldly beings, make an end of a meal of luxury (aûrvâzišnîkîth). 13. To that also which is the spiritual completion of the soul’s pleasure it is attaining in like proportion, and in its appearance to worldly beings it is a butter of the name of Maûdyôk-zarem. 14. And the reason of

1 As in Chap. XXIV, 5, 6. 2 In heaven. 3 See Chap. XIV, 2-5. 4 This sentence is rather ambiguous in the original. 5 Said to be the food of the souls in heaven (see Hn. II, 38,
that name of it is this, that of the material food in the world that which is the product of cattle is said to be the best (pâshûm), among the products of cattle in use as food is the butter of milk, and among butters that is extolled as to goodness which they shall make in the second month of the year\(^1\), and when Mitrô\(^2\) is in the constellation Taurus; as that month is scripturally (dînôîkô) called Zaremêyâ\(^3\), the explanation of the name to be accounted for is this, that its worldly representative (andâzakô) is the best food in the world.

15. And there is no giving out of assistance by the soul of the righteous from heaven and the supreme heaven\(^4\); for, as to that existence full

Mkh. II, 152); it is to be distinguished from the draught of immortality, called Hûsh, which is prepared from the fat of the ox Hadhayôr and the white Hôm at the time of the resurrection (see Bd. XXX, 25).

\(^1\) If the writer refers to the correct solar year of Bd. XXV, 21, beginning at the vernal equinox, the second month would be 19th April–19th May when the sun is in the conventional sign of Taurus; but the ordinary Parsi year in his time commenced in the middle of April, and its second month would be May–June when the sun (about A.D. 880) would be in the actual constellation of Taurus. So that the statements in the text afford no certain indication of the particular calendar used by the author.

\(^2\) The angel of the sun’s light, here used for the sun itself.

\(^3\) The fifteenth day of the second month of the Parsi year is the season festival called Maidhyô-zaremaya, ‘mid-verdure,’ in the Avesta; being also the middle of the second month, the author assumes that the name of that month was originally Zaremaya. The Pahl. word can also be read Zar-mâh, ‘the month of gold, or the green month.’

\(^4\) That is, there is no intercession of saints for those still in the world. The only interceders are the angels and guardian spirits, and they go no further than to obtain strict justice for every one according to his worldly merits.
of joy, there is then no deserving of it for any one unless each one is fully worthy of it. 16. But the soul has a remembrance of the world and worldly people, its relations and gossips; and he who is unremembered and unexpecting (abarmarvad) is undisturbed, and enjoys in his own time all the pleasure of the world as it occurs in the renovation of the universe, and wishes to attain to it. 17. And, in like manner, of the comfort, pleasure, and joy of the soul, which, being attained in proportion, they cause to produce in heaven and the supreme heaven, its own good works of every kind are a comfort and pleasure such as there are in the world from a man who is a wise friend—he who is a reverent worshipper—and other educated men, to her who is a beautiful, modest, and husband-loving woman—she who is a manager (ârâstâr) under protection—and other women who are clever producers of advantage.

18. This, too, which arises from beasts of burden, cattle, wild beasts, birds, fish, and other species of animals; this, too, from luminaries, fires, streams (hû-tagîs-nân), winds, decorations, metals, and coloured earths; this, too, which is from the fences (par-dakânô) of grounds, houses, and the primitive lands of the well-yielding cattle; this, too, which is from rivers, fountains, wells, and the primary species of water; this, too, which is from trees and shrubs, fruits, grain, and fodder, salads, aromatic herbs, and other plants; this, too, which is

---

1 Reading sûd âz kârânô, and identifying the second word with Pers. âz.
2 That is, the pleasure.
3 This clause is omitted in Mî4 and J.
the preparation of the land for these creatures and primitive creations; this, too, from the species of pleasant tastes, smells, and colours of all natures, the producers of protections, the patron spirits (aḥūān), and the appliances of the patron spirits, can come unto mortals.

19. And what the spirit of good works is in similitude is expressly a likeness of stars and males, females and cattle, fires and sacred fires, metals of every kind, dogs, lands, waters, and plants.

20. The spiritual good works are attached (aṇyūkhṭō) to the soul, and in the degree and proportion which are their strength, due to the advancement of good works by him who is righteous, they are suitable as enjoyment for him who is righteous. 21. He obtains durability thereby and necessarily preparation, conjointly with constant pleasure and without a single day's vexation (ayōm-aē-bēšīhā).

22. There is also an abundant joyfulness, of which no example is appointed (vakḥṭō) in the world from the beginning, but it comes thus to those who are heavenly ones and those of the supreme heaven; and of which even the highest worldly happiness and pleasure are no similitude, except through the possession of knowledge which is said to be a sample of it for worldly beings.

1 It is doubtful whether we should read le-denmanshānō, a rare plural form of denman, 'this,' or whether it should be le-denman yasdnō; in the latter case the translation would be 'for these creatures of the sacred beings.'

2 Assuming that zinhārānō stands for zinhārānō, otherwise we must read zōharānō, 'holy-waters.'

3 The chief objects benefited by good works.

4 Reading hangāmīth-ash, but the construction is unusual.
23. And of its indications by the world the limited with the unlimited, the imperishable with perishableness, the consumable with incomsumableness are then no equivalent similitudes of it. 24. And it is the limited, perishable, and consumable things of the world's existence which are the imperishable and incomsumable ones of the existence of endless light, the indestructible ones of the all-beneficial and ever-beneficial space (gûng), and the all-joyful ones—without a single day's vexation—of the radiant supreme heaven (garôdmânô). 25. And the throne (gâs) of the righteous in heaven and the supreme heaven is the reward he obtains first, and is his until the resurrection, when even the world becomes pure and undisturbed; he is himself unchangeable thereby, but through the resurrection he obtains what is great and good and perfect, and is eternally glorious.

Chapter XXXII.

1. The thirty-first question is that which you ask thus: When he who is wicked goes to hell, how

---

1 Meaning that no adequate conception can be obtained of the enjoyments of heaven by contrasting the earthly objects which most resemble it with those most opposed to it.

2 The place of Aûharmazd, or heaven in general (see Bd. I, 2), where things which are perishable on earth become everlasting.

3 The 'constantly-beneficial place' of Pahl. Vend. XIX, 122, 'which is self-sustained, (its constant beneficialness is this, that, when it once became so, all of it became thereby ever-beneficial).’ The Avesta version (trans. D.) merely calls it ‘the sovereign place of eternal weal,’ and it appears from Chap. XXXVII, 22, 24 that it is here understood as the unlimited space of heaven, contained in the ‘endless light.’
does he go, and in what manner does he go; also, who comes to meet him, and who leads him\(^1\) to hell; also, does any one of the infernal ones (dūsa-ḥūtkānō) come to meet him, or how is it? 2. Shall they also inflict punishment upon him, for the sin which he \(\text{has}\) committed, at once, or is his punishment the same until the future existence? 3. Also, what is their food in hell, and of what description are their pain and discomfort; and is the limit of hell manifest, or how is it? 4. The reply is this, that a soul of the wicked, the fourth night after passing away\(^2\), its account being rendered, rolls head-foremost and totters (kaptnēdō) from the Kīnvaṭ bridge\(^3\); and Vīzarāś\(^4\), the demon, conveys (nāyedō)\(^5\) him cruelly bound therefrom, and leads him unto hell. 5. And with him are the spirits and demons connected with the sin of that soul, watching in many guises, resembling the very producers of doubt (vīmandādārān-īk), the wounders, slayers, destroyers, deadly ones, monsters (dūs-gerpānō), and criminals,

\(^1\) M\(_{14}\) and J omit the words from 'also' to 'leads him.'

\(^2\) The term 'passing away' is here used with reference to the death of a wicked person, contrary to the general rule (see Chap. XX, 2).

\(^3\) See Chap. XX, 3.

\(^4\) 'Then the fiend, named Vīzaresha, carries off in bonds the souls of the wicked Daeva-worshippers who live in sin' (Vend. XIX, 94, trans. D.); see also Bd. XXVIII, 18, where the name is Vīzarēsh, but it is always Vīzarāś in Dd. Here it has been first miswritten in K35, and afterwards corrected, so that later copyists have read Vīrāś, as in M\(_{14}\) and J.

\(^5\) Identifying the verb with Av. nayēiti of Vend. V, 25, 31; or it may be read vāyēdo, and identified with Av. vayēiti of Vend. XV, 17, or Av. vādhayēiti of Vend. XIX, 94, without much change of meaning.
those who are unseemly, those, too, who are diseased and polluted, biters and tearers, noxious creatures, windy stenches, glooms, fiery stenches, thirsty ones, those of evil habits, disturbers of sleep (khvāp-khārān), and other special causers of sin and kinds of perverting, with whom, in worldly semblance, are the spiritual causers of distress.

6. And proportional to the strength and power which have become theirs, owing to his sin, they surround him uncomfortably, and make him experience vexation, even unto the time of the renovation of the universe. 7. And through the leading of Vizarāšh\(^1\) he comes unwillingly unto hell, becomes a household attendant (khavag-i-mānōī-altō) of the fiend and evil one, is repentant of the delusion of a desire for fables (vardakthā), is a longer for getting away from hell to the world, and has a wonderful desire for good works.

8. And his food is as a sample of those which are among the most fetid, most putrid, most polluted, and most thoroughly unpleasant; and there is no enjoyment and completeness in his eating, but he shall devour (galād) with a craving which keeps him hungry and thirsty, due to water which is hastily sipped\(^2\). 9. Owing to that vicious habit there is no satisfaction therefrom, but it increases his haste and the punishment, rapidity, and tediousness of his anguish.

10. The locality\(^3\) in hell is not limited (sāmānī-
a1t) before the resurrection, and until the time of the renovation of the universe he is in hell. 11. Also out of his sin is the punishment connected with it, and that punishment comes upon him, from the fiend and spirit of his own sin, in that manner and proportion with which he has harassed and vexed others, and has reverenced, praised, and served that which is vile.

12. And at the time of the renovation, when the fiend perishes, the souls of the wicked pass into melted metal (ayênô) for three days; and all fiends and evil thoughts, which are owing to their sin, have anguish effectually, and are hurried away by the cutting and breaking away of the accumulation (ham-dádakîh) of sin of the wicked souls. 13. And by that pre-eminent (avartûm) ablation in the melted metal they are thoroughly purified from guilt and infamy (dastô va raspakô), and through the perseverance (khvâparîh) and mercifullness of the pre-eminent persistent ones they are pardoned, and become most saintly (môgtûm) pure ones; as it is said in metaphor that the pure are of two kinds, one which is glorious (khvârvatô), and one which is metallic (ayênavatô).

dîvâkîh, but the former reading would be more of a modern Persian idiom than a Pahlavi one.

1 Or, 'the good;' the word is not expressed in the Pahlavi text.
2 Bd. XXX, 20 states that both the righteous and wicked are finally purified by melted metal which is a torment to the latter, but only like a bath in warm milk to the former.
3 See Chap. XIX, 7 n.
4 This is probably a misapplication of a Pahlavi phrase which contained the word âsnavatô, 'indestructible,' and was the translation of an Avesta passage containing the words huvâthravand, 'brilliant, glorious,' and âsna, 'stony, indestructible, enduring' (often translated 'heavenly'), which words are sometimes used together,
14. And after that purification there are no demons, no punishment, and no hell as regards the wicked, and their disposal (vîrâstakô) also is just; they become righteous, painless, deathless, fearless, and free from harm.

15. And with them comes the spirit of the good works which were done and instigated by them in the world, and procures them pleasure and joy in the degree and proportion of those good works.

16. But the recompense of a soul of the righteous is a better formation (vêh-dâdîh) and more¹.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

1. As to the thirty-second question and reply, that which you ask is thus: In which direction and which land is hell, and how is it?

2. The reply is this, that the place of a soul of the wicked, after the dying off² of the body, is in three districts (vîmând): one of them is called that of the ever-stationary³ of the wicked, and it is a

as in Yas. LIX, 14. As the Pahl. âsnavatô and aûênavatô are written alike they are easily confounded, but that 'metal' is meant here appears from Yas. L, 9, b, Bd. XXX, 20.

¹ M14 has 'and the position of more good works is better, the rank is greater, and the pleasure and delight more.'

² Literally 'dying down.'

³ Assuming that ham-hastakân, 'co-existences, associates,' is meant for hamîstakân (see the hamîstânîkô of Chap. XX, 3). From this it would appear that the place of the Hamîstakân, intermediate between heaven and hell, was itself supposed by the author to be divided into two widely separated regions, one for the slightly righteous (see Chap. XXIV, 6), and one for the slightly wicked, as here described. No such separation is mentioned in AV. and Mkh., and the passage is omitted in M14.
chaos (gûmêzaḵō), but the evil is abundantly and considerably more than the good; and the place is terrible, dark, stinking, and grievous with evil. 3. And one is that which is called the worst existence, and it is there the first tormentors (văkh runf gânō) and demons have their abode; it is full of evil and punishment, and there is no comfort and pleasure whatever. 4. And one is called Drûgâskân, and is at the bottom of the gloomy existence, where the head (ka mārāḵō) of the demons rushes; there is the populous abode of all darkness and all evil.

5. These three places, collectively, are called hell, which is northerly, descending, and underneath this earth, even unto the utmost declivity of the sky; and its gate is in the earth, a place of the northern quarter, and is called the Arezûr ridge, a mountain which, among its fellow mountains of the name of Arezûr that are amid the rugged (kôfîk) mountains, is said in revelation to have a great fame with the demons, and the rushing together and assembly of the demons in the world are on the summit of that mountain, or as it is called the head of Arezûr:

1 The Av. drugaskanām of Vend. XIX. 139, which is translated ‘the slothful ones of the Drug’ by Darmesteter, ‘the servants of the Drug’ by Harlez, and ‘wizards’ in Haug’s Essays, p. 336. Drûgâskân is said to be a son of the evil spirit in Bd. XXXI, 6.

2 See Bd. XII, 8.

3 Bd. XII, 16 mentions another Arezûr ‘in the direction of Arûm.’

4 Vend. XIX, 142 (trans. D.) says ‘they run away casting the evil eye, the wicked, evil-doing Daēvas: “Let us gather together at the head of Arezûra!”’
CHAPTER XXXIV.

1. As to the thirty-third question and reply, that which you ask is thus: In what manner is there one way of the righteous from the Dāitih peak\(^1\) to heaven, and one of the wicked to hell; and what is their nature?

2. The reply is this, that one is for ascent, and one for descent; and on account of both being of one appearance I write thus much for understanding and full explanation, that is to say:—3. The righteous souls pass over on the Kinvad\(^2\) bridge by spiritual flight and the power of good works; and they step forth up to the star, or to the moon, or to the sun station, or to the endless light\(^3\). 4. The soul of the wicked, owing to its falling from the bridge, its lying demon, and the pollution collected by its sin, they shall lead therefrom to the descent into the earth, as both ways lead from that bridge on the Dāitih peak.

---

CHAPTER XXXV.

1. The thirty-fourth question is that which you ask thus: Does this world become quite without men\(^4\), so that there is no bodily existence in it what-

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XXI, 2.

\(^2\) See Chap. XXI, 2–7.

\(^3\) These are the four grades of heaven, as described in AV. VII–X, Mkh. VII, 9–11.

\(^4\) Reading \(av\text{īf}k\) (or \(av\text{īh}\) anshûtâ, but it may possibly be \(av\text{ī}-\text{r}\) anshûtâ, 'without a single man.'
ever, and then shall they produce the resurrection, or how is it?

2. The reply is this, that this world, continuously from *its* immaturity even unto *its* pure renovation, *has* never been, and also *will* not be, without men; and *in* the evil spirit, the worthless (asapîr), no stirring desire of this arises. 3. And near to the time of the renovation the bodily existences desist from eating, and live without food (pavan akhûris-nîth)\(^1\); and the offspring who are born from them are those of an immortal, for they possess durable and blood-exhausted (khûn-girâl) bodies. 4. Such are *they* who are the bodily-existing men that are in the world when there are men, passed away, who rise again and live again.

---

**Chapter XXXVI.**

1. The thirty-fifth question is that which you ask thus: Who are they who are requisite in producing the renovation of the universe, who were they, and how are they?

2. The reply is this, that of those assignable for that most perfect work the statements recited are lengthy, for even Gâyômard, Yîm the splendid, Zaratûst the Spîtâmân\(^2\), the *spiritual* chief (radô) of the righteous, and many great thanksgivers were

---

\(^1\) Bd. XXX, 3 states that men first abstain from meat, afterwards from vegetables and milk, and, finally, from water.

\(^2\) See Chap. II, 10. His title, which is nearly always written Spîtâmân in K35 (rarely Spîtâmân), is Av. spîtâma or spîtâma, but is usually understood to mean ‘descendant of Spîtama,’ his ancestor in the ninth generation (see Bd. XXXII, 1).
appointed for completing the appliances of the renovation; and their great miracles and successful (avakiragânîk) management have moved on, which works for the production of the renovation. Likewise, on the approach of the renovation, Keresasp the Sâmân who smites Dahâk, Kai-Khûsrût who was made to pass away by Vâê the long-continuing lord, Tûs and Vêvan the allies (avâkânû), and many other mighty doers are aiding the production of the renovation.

4. But those who are the producers of the renovation more renowned throughout the spheres (vâspôharakânîktar) are said to be seven, whose names are Rûshanô-kashm, Khûr-kashm, Frâdad-gadman,

1 That is, even these ancient rulers and legislators have contributed to the final renovation of the universe by their wise actions and laws.
2 See Chap. XVII, 6.
3 Av. Kavi Husravangh, the third king of the Kayânian dynasty (see Bd. XXXI, 25, XXXIV, 7), whose mysterious disappearance, as related in the Shâhnâmah, is evidently alluded to here.
4 The Av. vayâm dareghô-hvadhâitîm of Khûrshêd Nyâyish, i, that seems to be identified here with the good Vâê (see Chap. XXX, 4), who conducts the soul to the other world.
5 The Tûs and Giw of Bd. XXIX, 6 and the Shâhnâmah, where they are said to have been frozen in the mountain snow, with other warriors, after the disappearance of Kai-Khûsrût. They are the Av. Tusa of Âbân Yt. 53, 58, and, perhaps, Gaëvani of Fravardin Yt. 115, but the Pahlavi form Vêvan (or Vivô) of our text is inconsistent with the latter identification; the form Giw of Bd. XXIX, 6 is merely Pâzand.
6 These names are the Av. Raokas-kaëshman, Hvare-kaëshman, Frâdad-hvarenô, Varedad-hvarenô, Vouru-nemô, Vouru-savô, and Saoshyas of Fravardin Yt. 128, 129, partly transcribed, partly translated, and partly corrupted into Pahlavi. The corruptions are easily explained thus: Av. vouru, 'wide,' when written in Pahlavi is often identical with varen, 'desire,' and has been so read by a later copyist and then translated by its synonym kâmâk; Av,
Vâredad-gadman, Kâmak-vakhshîn, Kâmak-sûd, and Sôshâns. 5. As it is said that in the fifty-seven years¹, which are the period of the raising of the dead, Rôshanô-kashm in Arzâh², Khûr-kashm in Savâh, Frâdadad-gadman in Fradadâfsh, Vâredad-gadman in Vîdadâfsh, Kâmak-vakhshîn in Vôrûbarst, and Kâmak-sûd in Vôrûgarst, while Sôshâns in the illustrious and pure Khvanîras is connected with them, are immortal. 6. The completely good sense, perfect hearing, and full glory of those seven producers of the renovation are so miraculous that they converse from region unto region, every one together with the six others, just as now men at an interview utter words of conference and co-operation with the tongue, one to the other, and can hold a conversation³.

7. The same perfect deeds for six⁴ years in the six other regions, and for fifty years in the illustrious Khvanîras⁵, prepare immortality, and set going ever-

nemô is translated by Pahl. nîyâyîn, 'homage, praise,' which is written very much like vakhshîn, 'increase,' and has been so read by a later copyist. For the first two names and the last see Chap. II, 10.

¹ The same period is mentioned in Bd. XXX, 7.

² That is, there is one of the seven producers of the renovation in each of the seven Kêshvars, or regions of the earth, of which Arzâh is the western, Savâh the eastern, Fradadâfsh and Vîdadâfsh the two southern, Vôrûbarst and Vôrûgarst the two northern, and Khvanîras the central one (see Bd. V, 8, 9, XI, 2–4).

³ If this passage were found in the Christian scriptures, it would very probably be considered as a prophetic allusion to the electric telegraph and telephone.

⁴ So in all MSS., but one would expect it to be 'seven,' so as to complete the fifty-seven years of § 5. The number being written in ciphers the difference between 'six' and 'seven' is very slight.

⁵ This central region of the earth is that which contains Irân and all lands well known to the Irâniâns.
lasting life and everlasting weal (sûdîh) through the help and power and glory of the omniscient and beneficent spirit, the creator Aûharmazd.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

1. As to the thirty-sixth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: How shall they produce the resurrection, how do they prepare the dead, and when the dead are prepared by them, how are they?

2. When it is produced by them, is an increase in the brilliance of the stars, moon, and sun necessary, and does it arise, or not? are there seas, rivers, and mountains, or not? and is the world just as large as this, or does it become more so and wider?

3. The reply is this, that the preparation and production of the resurrection are an achievement connected with miracle, a sublimity (rabâîh), and, afterwards, also a wondrous appearance unto the creatures who are uninformed. 4. The secrets and affairs of the persistent creator are like every mystery and secret; excepting himself—he who is capable of all knowledge, the fully-informed, and all in all (vispânô vispô)—no one of the worldly beings and imperfect spirits has known them.

5. A true proverb (gôbîsînô-gô) of the intelligent and worldly, which is obvious, is that as it is easier in teaching to teach again learning already taught and forgotten than that which was untaught, and easier to repair again a well-built house, given gratuitously, than that which is not so given, so also the formation again of that which was formed is more excellent (hunîrtar), and the wonder is
less, than the creation of creatures. 6. And through the wisdom and glory of the omniscient and omnipotent creator, by whom the saddened (ālkhtō) creatures were created, that which was to perish is produced again anew, and that which was not to perish, except a little, is produced handsome even for a creation of the creator¹.

7. He who is a pure, spiritual creature is made unblemished; he, also, who is a worldly creature is immortal and undecaying, hungerless and thirstless, undistressed and painless; while, though he moves (gundēdō) in a gloomy, evil existence, the fiend is rightly judging from its arrangement (min nivārdō) that it is not the place of a beneficent being, but the place of an existence which is deadly, ignorant, deceiving, full of malice, seducing, destroying, causing disgrace, making unobservant (aūbēngar), and full of envy. 8. And his existence is so full of malice, deceit, seductiveness, unobservance, destructiveness, and destruction that he has no voice except for accomplices (ham-būdīkān) and antagonists, except also for his own creatures and gossips when their hearts are desirous of evil, seducing, destroying, making unobservant, causing malice, and bearing envy. 9. And he is disclosed (vishād) from his own origin and abyss full of darkness, unto the limits of darkness and confines of the luminaries; and in his terribleness and demoniacal deliberation he gazes at the unblemished light and creatures of the beneficent Aūharmazd. 10. And through abundant envy and complete maliciousness is his lying; and he mounts (sūbārēdō) to seize, destroy,

¹ This last clause is omitted in M14 and J.
render unobservant, and cause to perish these same well-formed creatures of the sacred beings. 11. And owing to his observance of falsehood he directed falsehood and lies with avidity (varenô), which were necessary for obtaining his success in his own rendering others unobservant (aùbènô); even in the nine thousand winters (hazangrôk zîm)¹ of falsehood that which is disregarded therein is his own falsity.

12. He who is the most lordly of the lords of the pre-eminent luminaries, and the most spiritual of spirits, and all the beings of Aûharmazd the creator—who was himself capable of an effectual (tûbânô) gain for every scheme of his²—do not allow that fiend into the interior, into the radiance (farôgîd) of the luminaries. 13. And they³ understood through their own universal wisdom that fiend's thoughts⁴ of vileness, and meditation of falsehood

¹ The interval between the first appearance and the final disappearance of the evil spirit. Twelve thousand years are supposed to elapse between the first creation and the resurrection; during the first three (about b.c. 8400–5400) the creation remains undis turbed in a spiritual state, during the next three (b.c. 5400–2400) the evil spirit appears, but flies back to hell in confusion, during the next three (b.c. 2400–a.d. 600) he attacks the creation and keeps it in a constant state of tribulation, and during the last three (a.d. 600–3600) his power, having attained its maximum, is gradually weakened till it is finally destroyed at the resurrection (see Bd. I, 8, 18, 20, 22, III, I, XXXIV, I–9, Byt. III, 11, 44, 52, 61, 62).

² Probably 'the fiend,' but the sentence is by no means clear.

³ As the verbs 'allow' in § 12 and 'accept' in § 13 are both plural we must understand that the opposition to the fiend arises from the spiritual creatures of Aûharmazd, and not from Aûharmazd alone.

⁴ Reading minishnô instead of mainôgânô, 'spirits,' the difference between these words in Pahlavi being only a single stroke.
and lies, and became aware of them by themselves and through their own intuition, and shall not accept the perdition (aṃṣṭhaḥ) of the fiend, but are to be rightly listening to the commands of him who is worthy. 14. For his is not the nature of him who is good, nor the wisdom of him who is propitious; and he does not turn from the confines of the shining ones, and the developments pertaining to those of the good being, until he arrives at the creatures; and he struggles in an attempt (aṃzmānō), spreads forth into the sky, is mobbed (garḥagātītt) in combats, is completely surrounded, and is tested with perfect appliances. 15. His resources, also, are destroyed, his internal vigour is subdued, his weapons of falsehood are disregarded, and his means of deceiving shall perish; and with completeness of experience, thorough painfulness, routed troops, broken battle-array, and disarranged means he enjoys on the outside the radiance of the luminaries with the impotence (anātyyāragth) of a desire which again returns to him.

16. And the same well-shining light of all kinds of the creator, when they shall not let in him who is Aharman, shall remain an unlimited time, while the fiend is in household attendance on those of the frontier through not being let in, and constantly troubled at the everlasting creatures. 17. The household attendance of the fiend seemed to it perpetually afflicting; and also the previous struggle

---

1 Aūharmasd.
2 The fiend's.
3 Reading vēhikānako vakhshīnō.
4 Assuming that andarmūnīh is a form analogous to pirāmūnīh, and with the meaning of andarūnīh.
5 The light.
of the fiend when the celestial spirit (ahvô) pertaining to the luminaries was not contended with by him, his defeat (makhîntanô) when the luminaries were not defeated by him, his infliction of punishment before sin, and his causing hatred before hatred exists are all recounted by it to the justice and judiciousness whose unchangeableness, will, persistence, and freedom from hatred—which is the character of its faithful ones—are not so, to him who is the primeval (pêsakô) creator.

18. The fiend, after his falsity, the struggle—on account of the fighting of the shining ones and the decreed keeping him away which was due to the fighter for the luminaries—and the ill-success of the struggle of himself and army, ordered the beating back of the worthy fighter against destruction, the malicious avenging again of the causer of hatred, and the destroyer’s internal vileness and disorganisation anew of his own place. 19. He saw the beneficent actions by which, through the wisdom of Aûharmazd, the spiritual wisdom, within the allotted (burîn-hômônd) time, the limited space, the restricted conflict, the moderate trouble, and the definite (fargâm-hômând) labour existing, struggles against the fiend, who is the unlawful establisher of the wizard; and he returned inside to fall disarmed (asâmânô) and alive, and until he shall be fully tormented (pûr-dârdag-hâe) and shall be thoroughly experienced, they shall not let him out again in the allotted time that the fiend ordered for the success of falsehood and lies. 20.

1 That is, they are altogether different from the faults of the fiend, just recounted.
2 Perhaps the same as ‘the spirit of wisdom’ of Mkh.
3 Reading là, ‘not,’ instead of râi, ‘on account of.’
CHAPTER XXXVII, 18–22.

And the same fiend and the primeval (kâdmôn) demons are cast out confusedly, irreverently, sorrowfully, disconcertedly, fully afflicting their friends, thoroughly experienced, even with their falsehoods and not inordinate means¹, with lengthy slumbers, with broken-down (aavastst) deceits and dissipated resources, confounded and impotent, into the perdition of Aharman, the disappearance of the fiend, the annihilation of the demons, and the non-existence of antagonism.

21. To make the good creatures again fresh and pure, and to keep them constant and forward in pure and virtuous conduct is to render them immortal; and the not letting in of the co-existent one², owing to the many new assaults (padgastôlh) that occur in his perpetual household attendance³ of falsity—through which there would have been a constant terror of light for the creatures of the sacred beings—is to maintain a greater advantage. 22. And his (Aôharmazd’s) means are not the not letting in of the fiend, but the triumph arranged for himself in the end—the endless⁴, unlimited light being also produced by him, and the constantly-beneficial space⁵.

¹ The words va avigaftô afdzârthâ are omitted in M₁₄ and J.
² The evil spirit. As the co-existent spirits of good and evil are antagonistic the word ham-budlkhô, ‘co-existent,’ is often supposed to mean ‘antagonistic.’
³ See § 16. M₁₄ and J have only ‘that occur through his falsity and the constant terror of light which would have arisen from him.’
⁴ That the term asâr has only its etymological meaning ‘endless,’ and not the wider sense of ‘eternal,’ is clear from this phrase. The ‘endless light’ is the phrase used in Pahlavi to express Av. anaghra raokau, a term implying ‘the fixed stars,’ so the passage in the text is very suggestive of the phrase, ‘he made the stars also’ (Gen. i. 16).
⁵ Instead of gung, ‘space,’ we might read gâng, ‘treasury,’
that is self-sustained—which (triumph) is the resource of all natures, races, characters, powers, and duties from the beginning and maturing of those of the good religion and the rushing of the liar and destroyer on to the creatures, which are requisite for the final, legitimate triumph of the well-directing creator, and for the termination of the struggles of all by the protection and recompense of the praises and propitiation performed, which are the healing of the righteous and the restoration of the wicked at the renovation. 23. Even these developments, even these established habits (dad-sânîhâ), even these emissions of strength, even these births, even these races, even these townspeople (dihîkôîthâ), even these characters, even these sciences, even these manageable and managing ones, and even these other, many, special species and manners which at various periods (anbânô) of time are in the hope that the quantity and nature of their auxiliaries may be complete, and their coming accomplished and not deficient in success (vakhtô), are distributed and made happy by him.

24. The sky is in three thirds, of which the one at the top is joined to the endless light, in which is the constantly-beneficial space; the one at the

but it is written gûng in Chap. XXXI, 24, according to K35, and the meaning 'space' is more appropriate to the gâtus hvedhâtô, 'self-sustained place,' of Vend. XIX, 122. The epithet 'constantly-beneficial' is a Pahl. translation of Av. misvâna, and is evidently applied here to the unlimited heavenly space contained in the 'endless light' (see § 24) and including the supreme heaven, as appears from the order in which these three existences (the earliest creations of Aûharmazd) are mentioned in Chap. XXXI, 24.

1 M14 and J have 'separate doers.'
2 M14 and J have 'doers at different times.'
bottom reached to the gloomy abyss, in which is the fiend full of evil; and one is between those two thirds which are below and above. 25. And the uppermost third, which is called 'the rampart of the supreme heaven' (garôdmânô drupûstô)\(^1\), was made by him with purity, all splendour, and every pleasure, and no access to it for the fiend. 26. And he provided that third for undisturbedly convoking the pure, the archangels, and the righteous that have offered praises who, as it were unarmed (azenâvar), struggle unprepared and thoroughly in contest with the champions of the co-existent one, and they smite the co-existent one and his own progeny (gôhârakô) already described, and afford support to the imperishable state\(^2\), through the help of the archangels and the glory of the creator. 27. And, again also, in their\(^3\) fearlessness they seek for the destruction of the demons and for the perfection of the creatures of the good beings; as one who is fearless, owing to some rampart which is inaccessible to arrows and blows, and shoots arrows at the expanse below, is troubled (bakhirâdô) for friends below.

28. And he made a distinction in the prescribed splendour and glory for the lowermost third of the sky; and the difference is that it is liable to injury (pavan resh), so that the fiend, who is void of goodness, comes and makes that third full of darkness and full of demons, and shall be able to perplex in that difficulty when the thousand winters occur, and the five detested (lakhshâtôdakô) kinds of the

---

\(^1\) Bd. III, 26 says that 'the rampart of the sky was formed so that the adversary should not be able to mingle with it.'

\(^2\) Reading âgûrasânâ va/ aseg ġûn.

\(^3\) Assuming that va/ stands for valman or valmansân.
demons of life\textsuperscript{1} have also overwhelmed with sin those of the wicked who are deceived by the demons and have fled from the contest. 29. \textit{But} they shall not let the fiend fully in, owing to the luminaries of the resplendent \textit{one}, during the allotted time when the demons' punishing and the repentance of the wicked are accomplished.

30. And he appointed for the middle third the creatures of the world separated\textsuperscript{2} from the world and the spiritual \textit{existence}; and among those creatures\textsuperscript{3} \textit{were} produced for them the managing man \textit{as} a guardian of the creatures, and the deciding wisdom \textit{as} an appliance of man; \textit{and} the true religion, the best of knowledge \textit{was} prepared by him. 31. And that third is for the place of combat and the contest of the two different natures\textsuperscript{4}; and in the uppermost part of the same third is stationed by him the light \textit{of} the brilliant sun and moon and glorious stars, and \textit{they} are provided by him that they may watch\textsuperscript{5} the coming of the adversary, and revolve around the creatures. 32. All the \textit{sacred} ceremonies of the distant earth (bûm), the light, the abundant rains, and the good angels vanquish

\textsuperscript{1} Probably referring to the five fiends, or demonesses, which are the special embodiments of each man's evil passions, and are thus detailed in Mkh. XLI, 9-11:—'That man is the stronger who is able to contend with his own fiends, and who keeps these five fiends, in particular, far from \textit{his} body, which are such as avarice, wrath, lust, disgrace, and discontent.'

\textsuperscript{2} Reading \textit{fişardakô}, but the word is doubtful. This central region of the sky would seem to be the place of the 'ever-stationary,' if it do not include the earth itself, which is not quite clear, owing to the obscure style of the author.

\textsuperscript{3} While in the world.

\textsuperscript{4} The beneficent and evil spirits.

\textsuperscript{5} Reading \textit{venâpênd}, but the word is doubtful.
and smite the wizards and witches who rush about below them, and struggle to perplex by injury to the creatures; they make all such assailants become fugitives. 33. And through their revolution the ascents and descents, the increase and diminution (narafšisnō), of the creatures shall occur, the flow and ebb of the seas, and the increase of the dye-like blood of the inferior creatures; also owing to them and through them have elapsed the divisions of the days, nights, months, years, periods, and all the millenniums (hazagrōk zīmān) of time.

34. He also appointed unto our forefathers the equipment which is their own, a material vesture, a sturdy bravery, and the guardian spirits of the righteous; and he provided that they should remain at various times in their own nature, and come into worldly vesture. 35. And those for great hosts and many slaves are born, for the duties of the period, into some tribe; he who has plenty of offspring is like Fravāk, he who is of the early law

1. Below the sun, moon, and stars which protect the creatures.
2. Literally 'springers back.'
3. Reading dāmīkō, but the word is unusual; it might be read dāhmīkō, 'of the holy man,' or be considered a corruption of dāmīkō, 'earth.'
4. Reading rangmānō, but the word is doubtful.
5. Five folios of text are here interpolated in J, of which four contain the passage (Ep. II, vi, 4—ix, 7) omitted at the end of that MS., and the fifth contains a passage on the same subject as Ep. III, and which may possibly be part of the text missing in Ep. III, 11.
6. Meaning that the unembodied spirits of men should enter upon their worldly existence.
7. The great-grandson of the primeval man, Gāyūmard, and the forefather of the fifteen races of undeformed human beings (see Bd. XV, 25–31, XXXI, 1).
(pêsdâdô) like Hôshâng, he who is a smiter of the demon like Tâkhmôrup, he who is full of glory like Yim, he who is full of healing like Frêdûn, he who has both wisdoms like the righteous Mânû-skîthra, he who is full of strength like Keresâsp, he who is of a glorious race like Kat-Kavâd, he who is full of wisdom like Aôshânar. 36. He who is noble is like Styávash, he who is an eminent doer (avarkâr) like Kat-Khûsrôî, he who is exalted like Kat-Vistâsp, he who is completely good like the righteous Zaratûst, he who arranges the world like Peshyôtanû, he who is over the religion (dînô-

1 See Chap. II, 10 for this and the following three names.
2 He is said to have kept the evil spirit thirty years as a steed (see Râm Yt. 12, Zamyâd Yt. 29, Mkh. XXVII, 22).
3 Here written Gîm.
4 Instinctive wisdom and that acquired by experience (see Chap. XL, 3).
5 Av. Mânuskîthra; the descendant of Frêdûn, in the eleventh generation, who overthrew the usurpation of the collateral branches of his family, and restored the Irânian line of the Pêsdâdian dynasty in his own person (see Bd. XXXI, 12–14, XXXIV, 6).
6 See Chap. XVII, 6.
7 Av. Kavi Kavâta; the first king of the Kayânian dynasty (see Bd. XXXI, 24, 25, XXXIV, 7).
8 Probably the Av. Aôshnara, mentioned in Âf. Zarat., along with several of the other names, in a passage somewhat similar to that in our text. The name here can also be read Aûsh-khûr.
9 Av. Kavi Syâvarshân; the son of king Kâî-Kûns and father of king Kâî-Khûsrôî, but he did not reign himself. He is said to have formed the settlement of Kangdes (see Chap. XC, 5, Bd. XXXI, 25, Byt. III, 25, 26).
10 See Chap. XXXVI, 3.
11 Av. Kavî Vistâspa, Pers. Gustâsp; the fifth king of the Kayânian dynasty, who received the religion from Zaratûst. His father, the fourth king, was of collateral descent from the first king (see Bd. XXXI, 28, 29, XXXIV, 7).
12 The great apostle of the Parsis (see Chap. II, 10).
13 Av. Peshtânû; a son of Kâî-Vistâsp, who is said to be
avarag) like Ātūrō-pād₁, he who is liturgical like Hûshêdar², he who is legal like Hûshêdar-mâh, and he who is metrical and concluding like Sôshâns. 37. Among them are many illustrious ones, glorious doers, supporters of the religion, and good managers, who are completely (âpûr) for the smiting of the fiend and the will of the creator.

38. He also produced the creatures as contenders, and granted assistance (vêd'varîh), through the great, in the struggle for the perfect happiness from heaven at the renovation³ of the universe; and he made them universally (vâspôhara kânhâ) contented.

39. A vitiated thought of a living, well-disposed being is a stumble (nistvô) which is owing to evil; and these are even those⁴ contented with death, because they know their limit, and it shall be definite (burfnô-hômônd) and terminable; the evil of the world, in life, is definite, and they shall not make one exist unlimitedly and indefinitely in the evil of the world, through an eternal life with pain.

40. And through a great mystery, wholly miraculous, he produced a durable immortality for the living; a perplexity so long as the best and utmost of it is such an immortality of adversity, for it is immortal and to live in Kangdez, whence he is to come to restore the religion in the millennium of Hûshêdar (see Chap. XC, 3, 5, Bd. XXIX, 5, Byt. III, 25–32, 36–38, 41, 42).

₁ Probably the supreme high-priest and prime minister of the ninth Sasanian king, Shápûr II (A.D. 309–379; see Bd. XXXIII, 3).

² See Chap. II, 10 for these last three names. The terms mân sarîk, 'liturgical,' dâdîk, 'legal,' and gâsânîk, 'metrical,' are those applied to the three divisions of the twenty-one Nasks, or books of the complete literature of the Mazda-worshippers.

³ Mr 14 and J have merely 'granted assistance in the struggle at the renovation.'

⁴ Assuming that ghâl stands for valman, as it sometimes does.
ever living molested and eternally suffering. 41. And their development, the strength of lineage obtained, is ever young in succession, and the tender, well-destined ones, who are good, are in adversity and perpetuity of life, so that there is a succession of life through their own well-destined offspring. 42. They become eternally famous, so that they obtain, every one, an old age which is renewed, free from sickness and decay, visibly in their own offspring and family (gôhâra kô) whenever they become complete; and any one of the combative, whose struggle is through the smiting that his fellow-combatant obtains, is of a comfortable disposition at the balance. 43. This one, too, is for stepping forth to heaven, even as that pre-eminent one of the righteous, the greatest of the apostles and the most fortunate of those born, the chief of worldly beings, the righteous Zaratûst the Spîtamân, when the omniscient wisdom, as a trance (gîp), came upon him from Aûharmazd, and he saw him who was immortal and childless, and also him who was mortal and provided with children; that perpetual life of the childless then seemed to him terrible, and that succession of mortals seemed commendable; so that

1. M14 and J have merely: ‘are a succession in adversity and perpetuity of life.’

2. Assuming that tarâz stands for tarâsûk. The meaning is that any one who has successfully struggled with sin in the world, and leaves offspring behind him, goes to his account, at the balance of the angel Rashnû, with cheerfulness.

3. This seems to be a variation of the statement in Byt. II, 13, where Zaratûst, after asking for immortality, and having had the omniscient wisdom infused into him for a week, describes what he had seen, and amongst other things says: ‘I saw a wealthy man without children, and it did not seem to me commendable; and I
the coming of his assured offspring, Hûshêdar, Hûshêdar-mâh, and Sôshâns, became more longed for and more desired, and death more than the perpetual life of his own body.

44. And when he who is all-watchful and all-knowing had arranged the means of opposing the fiend, there came for destroying, like a general leader (vispvar), that fiend of deceiving nature, the harassing, rushing, evil-wishing, primeval (pês) contender, together with the demons Akômanô (‘evil thought’), Aâshm (‘wrath’), Zarmân (‘decrepitude’), Bûshasp (‘lethargy’), craving distress, bygone luck, Vâê, Varenô (‘lust’), Astô-vîldâd, and Vîzarâsh, and the original, innumerable demons and fiends of Mâzendarân. 45. And his darkness and gloom, scorpions (kâd zûnô), porcupines, and vermin, poison

saw a pauper with many children, and it seemed to me commendable.

1 The Av. âsna frazaîntis, ‘inherent or natural offspring,’ of Yas. LIX, 14, &c. The Pahl. equivalents âsnûdak and ânîdak can hardly be mere transliterations of âsna, but are more probably translations, formed of a + su nûdak and sînîdak, with some such meaning as ‘assured.’

2 These three future apostles (see Chap. II, 10) are considered to be sons of Zaratur (see Bd. XXXII, 8).

3 Aûharmazd.

4 These first four demons are described in Bd. XXVIII, 7, 15-17, 23, 26.

5 The words nîyâsînâkô tangîh bûdô bakhtô, here translated, may possibly be a miswriting of five names of demons.

6 The bad Vâê (see Chap. XXX, 4).

7 See Bd. XXVIII, 25.

8 A demon of death (see Chap. XXIII, 3, note, Bd. XXVIII, 35).

9 Another demon of death (see Chap. XXXII, 4, 7).

10 The mountainous country south of the Caspian, said to be full of demons, the Mâzainya daëva of the Avesta (see Bd. III, 20, XV, 28). These demons were, no doubt, merely idolators.
and venom, and the mischief originally in the lowermost third of the sky¹, issue upwards, astute in evil, into the middle third, in which are the agreeable² creatures which Aûharmazd created.

46. And he smote the ox³, he made Gâyômard mortal, and he shook the earth; and the land was shattered, creation became dark, and the demons rushed below, above, and on all sides, and they mounted even to the uppermost third of the sky⁴.

47. And there the barricade (band) and rampart fortifying (vakhshîkô) the spiritual world is approached, for which the safeguard (nîgâs) of all barricades⁵, that is itself the great glory of the pure religion, solving doubts—which is the safeguard of all barricades—is arrayed. 48. And the splendid, belt-bearing Pleiades⁶, like the star-studded girdle of the spirit-fashioned, good religion of the Mazda-worshippers, are so arrayed as luminaries of the fully-glorious ones. 49. And there was no possibility (aîtôkîth) of any demon or fiend, nor yet even of

¹ See § 28.
² By omitting a stroke nôs, 'agreeable,' would become vêh, 'good.'
³ The sole-created, or primeval ox, whence all animals are said to have sprung. For an account of this incursion of the fiend, see Bd. III, 12–20, VIII, 1, Zs. II, 1–11.
⁴ M14 and J have 'even to the upper sky of the middle third,' which means the same thing, as the author's words imply that the demons did not enter the upper third, but only reached its borders (see § 49).
⁵ M14 and J conclude the sentence as follows: 'the pure religion, solving doubts, is arrayed.'
⁶ Reading vandvar Pêrvakô. The author seems to have been thinking of Yas. IX, 81: 'Mazda brought to thee the star-studded, spirit-fashioned girdle (the belt of Orion) leading the Pleiades; the good Mazda-worshipping religion' (Haug's Essays, p. 182).
the demon of demons, the mightiest (mazvantûm) in valour, rushing up across that boundary; they are beaten back now, when they have not reached it from the gloom, at once and finally (yak-vayô akhar).

50. And the fiend of gloomy race, accustomed to destruction (aôsh-âyin), changed into causes of death the position (gâs) of the brilliant, supreme heaven of the pure, heavenly angels—which he ordained through the power of¹ Mitôkht ('falsehood')—and the triumph of the glory of the world's creatures, as ordained through two decrees (zîkô):—one, the destruction of the living by the power² of death; and one causing the manacling of souls by a course of wickedness. 51. And he made as leaders therein that one astute in evil who is already named³, and Astô-vldâd⁴ who is explained as 'the disintegration of material beings;' he also intrusted the demon Bûshasp ('lethargy')⁴ with the weakening of the breath, the demon Tap ('fever')⁶ with stupefying and disordering the understanding, and the demon Âz ('greediness')⁶ with suggesting cravings and causing drinking before having the thirst of a dog⁷. 52. Also the demon Zarmân ('decrepitude')⁸ for injuring the body and abstract-

---

¹ Or, zôharakô may mean 'venomous.' Mitôkht was the first demon produced by the evil spirit (see Bd. I, 24, XXVIII, 14, 16) who is supposed to be as much 'the father of lies' as his counterpart, the devil of the Christians.

² Or, zôhar may mean 'venom.'

³ Mitôkht.

⁴ See Chap. XXIII, 3.

⁵ See § 44.

⁶ See Bd. XXVIII, 27.

⁷ Reading pês tisnôg-i sågak nôsânînîdânô, but we might read pês tisnôg sedkûnînînîdânô, 'causing gnawing before being thirsty.'

⁸ See § 44 for this demon and the next two.
ing the strength; the bad Vâê’s tearing away the life by stupefying the body; the demon Àëshm (‘wrath’) for occasioning trouble by contests, and causing an increase of slaughter; the noxious creatures of gloomy places for producing stinging and causing injury; the demon Zàirik for poisoning eatables and producing causes of death; with Niyâs (‘want’) the stealthily-moving and dreading the light, the fearfulness of Nîhv (‘terror’) chilling the warmth, and many injurious powers and demons of the destroyers were made by him constant assistants of Astô-vidâd in causing death.

53. Also, for rendering wicked and making fit for hell those whose souls are under the sway of falsehood (kádbâ), which in religious language is called Mitôkht—since it is said in revelation that that is as much an evil as all the demons with the demons of demons—there is Akômanô (‘evil thought’), who is with the evil spirit owing to the speaking of Mitôkht (‘falsehood’). 54. And for his doctrine (dînôth) of falsehood, and winning the creatures, slander the deceiver, lust the selfish, hatred, and envy, besides the overpowering progress of disgrace (nang), the improper desires of the creatures, indolence in seeking wisdom, quarrelling about that

---

1 One of the seven arch-fiends, the Av. Zairiâ, which probably means ‘decay,’ but from the resemblance of his name to zâhar, ‘poison,’ he is called ‘the maker of poison’ (see Bd. I, 27, XXVIII, 11).

2 See Bd. XXVIII, 26.

3 Reading gadman bîm, but it may be yadman bîm, ‘dreading the hand,’ and it is doubtful whether the epithet be applied to Niyâs, or to Nîhv.

4 Reading i instead of the va, ‘and,’ of the MSS.

5 See § 44.

6 See § 50.
which is no indication of learning, disputing (sitōg) about the nature of a righteous one, and many other seductive powers and demons helping to win, were made auxiliary to the doctrine of falsehood in deceiving the creatures.

55. Also, to turn his disturbance¹ to creatures of even other kinds, there are demons and fiends of further descriptions (freh-āltān); and for the assistance of those combatants he established also those afflictions (nīvakān) of many, the witches of natures for gloomy places, whose vesture is the radiance of the lights² that fall, and rush, and turn below the luminaries which have to soar (vāzīṣŋt-kānā) in stopping the way of any little concealment of the spirits and worldly beings³. 56. And they (the witches) overspread the light and glory of those luminaries, of whose bestowal of glory and their own diminution of it, moreover, for seizing the creatures, consist the pain, death, and original evil of the abode for the demon of demons⁴.

57. And those demons and original fiends, who are the heads and mighty ones of the demons, injudiciously, prematurely moving, prematurely speaking, not for their own disciplined advantage,

¹ Reading ḫaṭṭṭyārakō, but K35 and J have paṭṭāzārakō, which, if it be a real word, would have nearly the same meaning.
² Shooting stars, meteors, and comets, the last of which are apparently intended by the term Mūspar (Av. Mūs pairika, 'the Mūs witch') of Bd.V, i, XXVIII, 44.
³ That is, the luminaries which have to prevent these beings from becoming obscured by the darkness produced by the evil spirits.
⁴ By the omission of one loop the MSS. have yasdānā, 'angels,' instead of shēdānā, 'demons;' the difference between the two words being very slight in Pahlavi characters.
but with unbecoming hatred, lawless manner, envy, and spears exposing the body, undesirably struggle together—a perplexing contention of trouble—about the destruction of the luminaries. 58. The army of angels, judiciously and leisurely fighting for the good creatures of the sacred beings, not with premature hatred and forward spears (pēs-nīzāh), but by keeping harm away from themselves—the champions' customary mode of wounding—valiantly, strongly, properly, and completely triumphantly struggle for a victory triumphantly fought. 59. For Aharman the demons are procurers (vahštkānā) of success in the contests till the end, when the fiend becomes invisible and the creatures become pure.

60. Since worldly beings observe, explain, and declare among worldly beings the work of the spirits and knowledge of customs (rīstakā), by true observation, through wisdom, that that life (zīk) is proper when it is in the similitude of the true power of wisdom, and the visible life is undiscerning of that which is to come and that which is provided, so also the evidence of a knowledge of the end of the contention is certain and clearly visible. 61. And tokens are discernible and signs apparent which, to the wisdom of the ancients—if it extended, indeed, to a knowledge about this pre-eminent subject—were hidden by the fiends, who are concealers of them from the perception (hāzīsnā) of worldly beings, and also from their coming to the perception of worldly beings.

1 Reading an-āyin gun, but this is uncertain.
2 Reading  депут-tanū nīzāh; the last word is usually spelt nīzak, but occurs in § 58 in the same form as here.
3 Reading nīvikān mank gun, but this is uncertain.
62. The learned high-priests who were founders (pâyînīkânō) of the religion knew it (the evidence), and those portions of it were transmitted by them to the ancients which the successive realisers of it, for the ages before me (levînam), have possessed. 63. The deceivers¹ of the transmitters, who have existed at various times, even among those who are blessed ², have remained a mass of knowledge for me, by being my reminder of the mature and proper duty of those truly wise (hû-kīrāgântkô), through the directions issuable by even worldly decision, and of so many of which I have a remembrance ³, for the writing of which there would be no end. 64. Then the manifest power of the fiend among us below, and the way provided by the creator for his becoming invisible and his impotence are clear; so also the full power of the creator of the army of angels, assuredly the procurers of success in the end, and ⁴ the accomplishment all-powerfully—which is his own advantage—of the completely-happy progress, for ever, of all creations which are his creatures, are thereby visible and manifest; and many tokens and signs thereof are manifestly clear.

65. One is this, that the creator is in his own predestined (bagdâdakô) abode, and the fiend is

¹ The unorthodox, or those holding erroneous views regarding the traditions handed down by them.
² Reading âsřînîtā, which K 35 has converted into âsgûnêdû, 'casts,' by inverting the order of the two central characters.
³ Mî4 and J omit the words from 'through' to 'remembrance.' The author means that he has acquired much information on the subject even from the opinions of the unorthodox judiciously studied.
⁴ Mî4 has merely the words: 'and the completely-happy progress,' &c.
advancing and has rushed in, and his advancing is for the subjugation of the creation.  

66. One, that the creatures of Aûhargaŋzad are spiritual and also worldly, and that is no world of the fiend, but he gathers an evil spiritual state into the world; and as among so many the greed of success is only in one, so the triumph is manifest of the good spirits and worldly beings over the evil spirits.

67. One is this, that his defeat in the end is manifest from his contention and aggression (pēz-zadārīth); for the fiend is an aggressor in an unlawful struggle, and leaving the army of Aûhargaŋzad—subsequently the lawful defender (lakhvārzadār)—the fiend of violence is a cause of power among those wholly unrequiting the creator in the world.  

68. If, also, every time that he smites the creatures he is equally and lawfully beaten once again, it is assuredly evident therefrom that, when their beating and being beaten are on an equality together, at first he whose hand was foremost was the smiter, and the backward fighter was beaten; but at last that backward fighter is the smiter, and the foremost fighter becomes beaten; for when he is

1 K35 has altered dakhshakō, 'token,' into dahirō, 'creation,' by changing one letter, and M14 and J have adopted the wrong reading.

2 Reading kīgūn dēn hávandīh kīrās dēn khadūkō. The drift of these two first reasons seems to be that the fiend, being an invader and outnumbered, must be vanquished in the end.

3 Reading zak-i zōr drūgō dēn-i dādār barā-ātēgānō-i stīš vahānō-i nīrūkō-hōmandīh. This phrase seems to have been generally misunderstood by copyists, as both M14 and J have altered it into something like: 'when the violence of the fiend is in the hand of the creator, yet even if the motive of the army is so much power.'

4 M14 and J omit this clause, from 'but' to 'beaten.'
beaten in the former combat, there is then a combat again, and his enemy is beaten.

69. One is this, that when the supply of weapons\(^1\), the fighting, and the ability of the contenders are equal, the supply of weapons of him who is the beginner (pēstīdār) has always sooner disappeared, and, at last, he is unarmed and his opponent remains armed; and an armed man is known to be\(^2\) victorious over him who is unarmed, just as one fighting is triumphant over one not fighting\(^3\). 70. And a similitude of it, which is derived from the world, is even such as when each one of two furious ones (ārdō) of equal strength, in a fight together, has an arrow, and each one is in fear of the other's possession of an arrow; and one of them alone shoots his arrow, and makes it reach his opponent; then he is without an arrow, and his opponent, fully mindful of it, has an arrow, and becomes fearless through possession of the arrow, his own intrepidity, and the lack of arrows and complete terror of that earlier shooter. 71. And as regards mighty deeds he is successful; and though there be as much strength for the earlier fighter a successful termination is undiscoverable for him; despoiled of possession by him who is later, and ruined in that which is all-powerful, his end and disappearance are undoubted, clear, and manifest\(^4\).

---

\(^1\) The term zēnō afzār evidently refers here to the warrior's stock of arrows and other missiles which were to be expended in battle, so that it is analogous to the modern term 'ammunition.'

\(^2\) Mī4 has yehevūnēd, 'becomes,' instead of dānōstō, 'known.'

\(^3\) Mī4 and J omit these last four words.

\(^4\) The argument, both in this case and the preceding one, is that even when two combatants are equal in power and resources the hasty aggressor is likely to be beaten in the end, and, therefore,
72. One is this, that owing to the previous non-appearance of the fiend, the coming forward of sickness and death unto the creatures of the sacred beings occurred when the fiend rushed in, and he rendered the existence of men sickly; he also destroyed and put to death the progeny of animals. 73. Afterwards, through lawfully driving him away, sickness and death come in turn (bārīkīhā) unto the demons, and the healthiness of the righteous and perfect life unto the creatures of the sacred beings, as its counterpart is the great healthiness which comes, more rightly rising, unto the creatures advised by the sacred beings, through united arrangement.

74. And, in the end, a worldly similitude of the sickness and grievous, complete death for the fiends, and of the healthiness and intrinsic (benāftshan-kīgūnīth) life for the creatures of the sacred beings, is that which occurs when one of two litigants (ham-patkār), prematurely revengeful, gives to his fellow-litigant an irritating poison, and himself eats wholesome flour before the later litigant gives a poison, as an antidote, to the earlier litigant, and himself eats the poison-subduing flour; after which he is cured by the poison, and his enemy is dead through the poison of the later flour.

the inferiority of the fiend is still more likely to lead to his final defeat.

1 M14 begins a fresh argument here, owing to some misunderstanding of the meaning of the sentence.

2 That is, the advantage of driving away the fiend in this life is a counterpart of the blessings attained at the resurrection.

3 The word drūgānād, 'fiends,' is omitted in K35, but is evidently necessary to complete the sentence.

4 This appears to be a description of ordeal by poison and the two usual modes of evading its operation. The hasty evader relies upon deceitfully substituting a wholesome powder for the
75. One is this, that Aūharmasd, the creator, is a manager with omniscient wisdom, and the contention of the fiend of scornful looks (tar nīgtīrsn) is through lust of defilement; of united power is the management of that creator, as existing with (hamzīk)1 all the vigilance in the wisdom which is in everything; and that united power is the strength of the management of heaven. 76. And of much power is the contention of the fiend, as his manifold changing of will—which is hostile to the will of even his own creatures, and is through the weakness and exhausted2 strength of an evil nature—is the contending power which forms his visible strength3.

77. One is this, that is, on account of the fiend's contending ill-advisedly, however strongly the contest is adapted for the damage of his own fiendishness, and regret and bad consequences therefrom are perceptible. 78. Such as the very paralyzing4 affliction which was appointed (nṭhādīd) by him poison he has to take; while the more cautious evader trusts to recognising his adversary's poison by its taste, and selecting another poison as an antidote for both to take, so that the hasty evader suffers through his own deceit in not taking the first poison. Similarly, the fiend is supposed to suffer in the end from the death and destruction which he was the first to introduce into the world.

1 By omitting a phrase M14 and J have: 'and the management of the fiend of scornful looks is as it were existing with,' &c.
2 This is little more than a guess at the meaning of a word which can be read vashakīdō (compare Pers. gās and kāsidan). The whole sentence is rather uncertain.
3 The argument is that this unstable power of the fiend cannot permanently stand against the consolidated strength of the creator.
4 Adopting J's reading samakūntar, but K35 has vasmak-ğūntar, which may be 'very troublesome,' and M14 has sama-ğintar, probably for sahmğūntar, 'very terrible.'
for the creatures of the world in putting the living to death, which he ordered with violence and the hope that it would be his greatest triumph. 79. Even that is what is so self-damaging to the same fiend that, when he puts to death him who is wicked, and he who is wicked, who is performing what is desirable for him (the fiend)—that performance of what is desirable being the practice of sin—is useless and goes thither where he is penitent of that seduction, the spirit ¹ of the owner (shah) of the sin, whose soul is wicked ², is righteous, in whose worldly body exist the fetters of pain and darkness; and owing to the unfettering of its hands from that pain it (the spirit) is far away, and goes to heaven, which is the most fortified of fortresses. 80. Fearlessly it fights for it, even as the guardian spirit of Yim the splendid ³ kept away all trouble (vēsam), the guardian spirit of Frēdūn kept away even those active in vexing ⁴, and other guardian spirits of those passed away are enumerated as engaged in the defeat of many fiends.

¹ That is, the guardian spirit (see Chap. II, 5) which is not rendered wicked by the sin of the soul.
² The phrase mūn rūbān-ī zak darvand is ambiguous, as it might mean 'which is the soul of that wicked one,' but this is not reconcilable with the context.
³ See Chap. II, 10. Yim-ī shēdō is the Ymaid khshaētō of Vend. II, 43, 45, the Jamshēd of the Shāhnāmah. The legends here referred to are mentioned in Fravardīn Yt. 130–138, where the guardian spirit of Yima is said to withstand the misfortune brought on by the demons, while that of Thraētaona (Frēdūn) withstands various diseases, and those of other heroes withstand various other evils and demons.
⁴ Reading pavan bēsh-īk kardārān, but for īk we ought probably to read az, so as to make the phrase correspond to the Av. azi-karštahē dbaēshanghō of Fravardīn Yt. 131.
81. One is this, that the most grievous severance that is owing to him (the fiend) is the production of the mortality of the creatures, in which the afflicting (nizgûn) demon Astô-vidâd is the head of the many Mâzînîkân demons. 82. And the propitious creator's developers were thus unprovoked (anârgônd) when the only person, who is called Gâyômard, was destroyed by him, and came back to the world as a man and a woman whose names were Marhayâ and Marhîyôîh; and the propagation and connection of races were through their next-of-kin marriage of a sister. 83. The unlucky fiend, while he

1 Instead of zîs madam, 'that is owing to him,' we ought probably to read zîs bar, 'that is his production;' the Huz. madam, which is the proper equivalent of the preposition bar, 'on, according to,' being wrongly used for the noun bar, 'produce.'

2 See § 44.

3 The Mâzainiya daêva of the Avesta (see § 44, note).

4 The sole-created, or primeval, man from whom the whole human race is said to have sprung (see Chap. II, 10, Bd. III, 14, 17, 19–23, XV, 1, 31).

5 The progenitors of the undeformed human race, who are said to have grown up, in the manner of a plant, from the seed of the dead Gâyômard (see Bd. XV, 2–5). Their names are derived from Av. mashya mashyôî, 'the man and woman,' but the latter form is no longer extant in the Avesta. From Av. mashya we have the Mashya of Bd. XV, 6, and the Mâshya of Bd. XV, 11, 19, 20, 30. From its dialectical variant martiya in ancient Pers., which would be marethya in the Avesta (compare Av. mareta, Pers. mard), we have the Marhây of our text. And by transposition of the letters rt=reh=rha in these latter forms, we have the Matrô of Bd. XV, 2 and the Maharîh or Maharyâ of Bd. XV, 22, note. Other forms of these names also occur (see Chaps. LXIV, 2, LXV, 2, LXXVII, 4).

6 M14 has 'of brother and sister,' but the insertion of the extra word is unnecessary. Regarding khvêtudâd, or next-of-kin marriage, see Chap. LXV.

7 Reading lâ-khâgastô; the fiend is certainly 'unlucky' here,
increased offspring and fortune for them through death, so uplifted his voice in their presence, about the death of the living ones of their offspring and lineage, that together with the unmeasured destructiveness of the deadly evil spirit, and the unjust contention of his through death and the conveyer of death, the sting also of birth was owing to death. 84. The repetitions of the cry were many, so that the issue (bâr) of thousands and thousands of myriads from those two persons, and the multitude passed away, from a number which is limited and a counterpart (aëdûnðth) of the living people in the world, are apparent; and for the annihilation of many fiends, through death, the propitiousness of the contending power of the creator is clear and manifest.

85. One is this, that the most steadfast quality of the demon himself is darkness, the evil of which is so complete that they shall call the demons also those of a gloomy race. 86. But such is the power in the arms and resources of the angels, that even the first gloomy darkness in the world is perpetually subdued by the one power really originating with the sun and suitable there to, and the world is illuminated.

87. One is this, that the most mischievous weapon of the demons is the habit of self-deception which, as by introducing death into the world he merely increases the number of beings who pass into the other world to join his opponents in the end; but the text probably means that he is 'inauspicious' and wishes to bring misfortune on mankind.

1 Astô-vidâd (see § 81).

2 The argument is that, as the sun is able to subdue darkness, the most constant quality of the fiend, every day, it is probable that the fiend himself will be entirely subdued in the end.
on account of rendering the soul wicked thereby, seemed to them as the greatest triumph for themselves, and a complete disaster for the angels. 88. In the great glory of the pure, true religion of the sacred beings is as much strength as is adapted to the full power of the lawlessness and much opposition of falsehood, and also to the fully accurate (aṛṣṭidō) speaking which is in itself an evidence of the true speaking of every proper truth; and no truth whatever is perverted by it. 89. And the false sayings are many, and good sayings—their opponents through good statement—do not escape from their imperfect truth¹; since a similitude of them is that which occurs when, concerning that which is white-coloured, the whole of the truthful speak about its white colour, but as to the liars there are some who speak of its black colour, some of its mud colour, some of its blue colour, some of its bran² colour, some of its red colour, and some of its yellow colour. 90. And every single statement of each of the truthful is as much evidence, about those several colours of those who are liars, as even the compiled sayings of the Abraham of the Christians³, which are the word of him who is also called their Messiah⁴, about the

¹ Assuming that aṇūṛāstīḥ stands for aṇūṛ rāstīḥ; it may, however, be intended for aṣṭi-rāstīḥ, 'want of truth.' The meaning is that even true statements become perverted by inaccurate speakers.

² Perhaps sapūṣag, 'bran,' may have originally been sapzag, 'green.'

³ Written Abhāham-i Tarsākīgān.

⁴ The letter š in Maśīkhā is here written like āṭ, but the word is correctly written in §91.
Son of the *Supreme Being*\(^1\); thus, they recount that the Son, who is not less than the Father, is himself He, the Being whom they consider undying. 91. One falsehood they tell about the same Messiah is that he died, and one falsehood they tell is that he did not die; it is a falsehood for those who say he did not die, *and* for those who say he did die; wherefore did he not die, when *he is* not dead? *and* wherefore is it said he did not die, when he is mentioned as dead\(^2\)? 92. Even the compilation itself is an opponent to its own words, for, though it said *he* is dead, it spoke unto *one* not dead; and though *he* is not dead, it spoke unto *one* dead. 93. The proper office (gâs) of a compiler and mutilator\(^3\)—through whose complete attainments the demons of like power as to the force of truth are strengthened, *and* the pure, good religion of the Mazda-worshippers is itself dissipated and rendered useless for itself—is a habit (dâdô) growing with

---

\(^1\) The phrase is *bârmanô-i dâd*, literally 'son of the created *one*', unless we assume that dâd is taken as a name of God. It is, however, quite conceivable that a priest would be reluctant to admit that a strange god could be anything better than a created being. That dâd is here used as a noun, and not with the meaning of 'gift' or 'law,' appears from the subsequent phrase dâdô-i amîrâkô yakhsenund, 'the created *one* whom they consider undying.'

\(^2\) Owing to the frequent repetitions of the same words in these phrases they are specially liable to corruption by copyists, but as they stand in K\(_{35}\) they can hardly be translated otherwise than as questions. M\(_{14}\) and J have an altered text which may be translated as follows:—'for whomever he did not die, when dead, *he is* as dead; for whomever it is said he died, *he is* so when he is mentioned as dead;' but this seems no improvement of the text.

\(^3\) Referring to those who compile commentaries and mutilate texts to suit their own views.
the fiend; and, as he is seen to be victorious who overturns reliance on changeableness and similar powers, the final disruption of forces is a disruption of peculiarities (khûdûth vishôpisnô).\footnote{1}

94. One is this, that is, even that prodigious devastation of which it is declared that it happens through the rain of Malkôs\footnote{2}, when, through snow, immoderate cold, and the unproductiveness of the world, most mortals die; and even the things attainable by mortals are attended with threatenings of scarcity. 95. Afterwards—as among the all-wise, préconcerted remedies (pês kârîth) of the beneficent spirit\footnote{3} such a remedy was established (and nihâd kâr) that there is one of the species of lands, that is called ‘the enclosure formed by

\footnotetext[1]{The argument is that even heterodoxy, ‘the most mischievous weapon’ of the fiend (see § 87), must fail in the end, because, like other revolutions, it relies on constant change, which implies want of permanency.}

\footnotetext[2]{Malkôsânô, ‘of Malkôs,’ is a denominative adjective derived from Chald. šûpîp ‘autumnal rain.’ The deluging rain of Malkôs is supposed to usher in the dreadful winter foretold to Yima in Vend. II, 46–56, when all, or nearly all, living creatures were to perish, a truly glacial epoch. In a Persian paraphrase of the Bahman Yast (see Byt. Introd. p. lix) this period of Malkôs is described as follows:—‘As three hundred years have elapsed from the time of Hûshêdar (Byt. III, 44–49), the period of Malkôs comes on; and the winter of Malkôs is such that, owing to the cold and snow which occur, out of a myriad of men in the world only one will remain, and the trees and shrubs all become withered, and the quadrupeds, whether carrying, walking, leaping, or grazing, will all utterly die. Then, by command of God, they will come from the enclosure formed by Yim, and the men and quadrupeds from that place spread over Irân, and make the world populous a second time, and it is the beginning of the millennium of Hûshêdar(-mâh).’}

\footnotetext[3]{The formation of the enclosure was ordered, as a precaution, by Aûharmazd (see Vend. II, 61–92).}
Yim, through which, by orders issued by Yim the splendid and rich in flocks, the son of Vtvangha, the world is again filled—men of the best races, animals of good breeds, the loftiest trees, and most savoury (kharegistânö) foods, in that manner came back miraculously for the restoration of the world; which new men are substituted for the former created beings, which is an upraising of the dead.

Likewise from that miracle is manifested the non-attainment of the evil spirit to the universal control of the glory of the creator for every purpose.

One is this, that—when the heterodox (dûstdînö) Dahâk, on whom most powerful demons and fiends in the shape of serpents are winged, escapes from the fetters of Frêdûn, and, through witchcraft, remains a demon even to the demons and

---

1 Reading Yim-kard var, but these words are corrupted in three different ways in the three MSS. consulted. This enclosure is said to have been in the middle of Pârs in Bd. XXIX, 14.
2 Av.Vivanghau (see Bd. XXXI, 2).
3 That is, a type of the resurrection.
4 The Av. Azi Dahâka, 'destructive serpent,' slain by Thraêtaona. In later times he was converted into a usurping king, or dynasty, the Dha'h'hâk of the Shâhnâmah, who conquered Yim (Jamshêd) and, after a reign of a thousand years, was defeated by Frêdûn (Thraêtaona) and fettered under Mount Dimâvard; whence he is to escape during the millennium of Hûshêdar-mâh to devastate the world, till he is finally slain by the hero Keresâsp, who is revived for the purpose (see Bd. XXIX, 8, 9, XXXI, 6, Byt. III, 56-61).
5 That is, attached to the shoulders like wings; referring to the serpents said to have grown from the shoulders of Dahâk.
6 M14 alters shêdûn, 'demons,' into gêhân, 'world,' so as to read 'through the demon of witchcraft remains a destroyer unto the world.' The alteration in the Pahlavi text is small, but seems unnecessary.
a destroyer—a mighty man who is roused up beforehand from the dead, and is called Keresâsp the Sâmân, crushes that fiendishness with a club consisting of a cypress tree, and brings that Dahâk through wholesome fear to the just law of the sacred beings.

98. One is this, that these, which are distinct from those born and the men who have laboured together, Astô-vldâd has not obtained, nor even will obtain, for death; and through the power of immortals, and the action of the good discourses (hû-sakhunagâñîh), they urge on to the sacred beings those who are inquiring (kâv-hômând), even to the immortality which is the renovation of the other creatures. 99. One, which is where the mingled conflict of the meeting of good and evil occurs, is the glorious good-yielding one of the creator which is guarded by purity, so that the fiend has not attained to injuring it, since it is pronounced to be the uninjured ox which is called Hadhayâs. 100. Also the long life which

1 Reading angêzôl-aitô, instead of the unintelligible angîdî-aitô.
2 See Chap. XVII, 6.
3 Dahâk and all other heinous offenders are said to undergo a special punishment for three nights at the resurrection, and are then finally purified by passing through molten metal like the rest of mankind (see Bd. XXX, 16, 20).
4 See § 44.
5 Perhaps referring to the liturgical recitations.
6 In the atmosphere apparently (see Bd. I, 4).
7 Written Hadhayâm here, but Hadhayâs in § 119, Chaps. XLVIII, 34, XC, 4, and Hadhayôs or Hadhayâvs in Bd. XIX, 13, XXX, 25, though always in Pâzand. It is also called Sar-saok, or Srisaok, in Bd. XV, 27, XVII, 4, XIX, 13, always in Pâzand, and this name is converted into Pahl. Srûvô in Zs. XI, 10.
is through its all-controlling power\(^1\) until they cause the end to occur, and the devourers of fires are subdued by it—\textit{besides} the whole strength of the unboasting (\textit{ak\textregistered m}) creatures of the beneficent spirit, after they live even without eating\(^2\)—is because of the H\text{"om} that is white\(^3\) and the promoter (\textit{fr\textregistered sh\textregistered m}) of perfect glory, which possesses the wholesomeness of the elixir of immortality, and through it the living become ever-living. 101. And also as many more specially pure glorious \textit{ones} whose enumeration \textit{would} be tedious\(^4\).

102. One is this, that the struggle of the evil \textit{one} and the demons \textit{with} the creatures is not precisely the existence of \textit{various} kinds of contest, but

---

It is said to be an ox which never dies till it is slaughtered at the resurrection, so that its fat may form one of the ingredients of the elixir of immortality which all men have then to taste; it is also said that mankind, in ancient times, crossed the ocean on its back, when going to settle in the other regions of the earth. From what is stated in the text it may be supposed to be some form of cloud myth, but it is not mentioned in the extant portion of the Avesta, unless ‘the ox Hadhay\text{"os}’ be taken as a corruption of g\text{"a}us hud\text{"h\textregistered}au, ‘the well-yielding ox,’ and Sarsaok as connected with Pers. s\text{"r\textregistered}isk, ‘a drop,’ and referring to showers of rain; but this is very uncertain.

\(^1\) The power of the white H\text{"om} mentioned below.

\(^2\) As, it is said, they will do for ten years before S\text{"o}sh\text{"ans}, the last apostle, appears to prepare for the resurrection (see Chap. XXXV, 3, Bd. XXX, 3).

\(^3\) A tree said to grow in the ocean, the juice of which is the other ingredient of the elixir of immortality; it is also called G\text{"o}k\text{"a}rn, or G\text{"o}k\text{"a}rd, Av. gaok\text{"e}rena, and is guarded by ten enormous fish (see Bd. XVIII, 1-3, XXVII, 4, XXX, 25).

\(^4\) The existence of such immortal creatures, said to be intended for special use at the resurrection, is here taken as a proof of the reality of the resurrection itself. Whether the seven immortals described in Chap. XC are to be included among them is uncertain.
by natural operation and through desire of deceit. And the demon of slander (spazg), whose nature it is to make the indignation (zôhar) of the creatures pour out, one upon the other, about nothing, as he does not succeed in making it pour out among the righteous, he makes the wicked even pour it out upon the wicked; and as he does not succeed even in making it pour out among the wicked, he makes a demon pour it out upon a demon. The impetuous assailant, Wrath (Aeshm), as he does not succeed in causing strife among the righteous, flings discord and strife amid the wicked; and when he does not succeed as to the strife even of the wicked, he makes the demons and fiends fight together. So also the demon of greediness (âzô), when he does not attain, in devouring to that of the good, mounts by his own nature unto devouring that of the demons. So also the deadly Astô-vidâd is ever an antagonistic operator; when there is no righteous one who is mortal, nor any creatures in the world, the wicked dying one (mîrâk) rides to the fiends through a death which is an antagonism of himself.

---

1 That is, the demons do not come into personal conflict with material creatures, but are supposed to influence their evil passions and to pervert the original laws of nature.

2 M14 omits the passage from this word to the same word in § 104.

3 The word sôbârêdô, 'rides, mounts,' both here and in § 106, is possibly only a miswriting of the very similar word dôbârêdô, 'runs, rushes.' Several words in this sentence are accidentally omitted in M14.

4 See § 44.

5 As it is uncertain whether the 'dying one' is a human being or the demon himself, it is doubtful which of them is here supposed to commit suicide. M14 and J have merely: 'nor even among the
107. The means of the united forces\(^1\) are means such as the wise and the high-priests \textit{have} proclaimed, that is, at the time of the renovation of the universe\(^2\) being nigh, when completion has come to generation—those who \textit{were} provided \textit{being} born—and after they occasion freedom from generation (azerkh\textit{\text{"u\text{"u}nisn\text{"i}h}), they cause men \textit{and} animals to exist, though passed away \textit{and} dead. 108. All men, righteous and wicked, who continue in the world \textit{become} immortal, the men are righteous whom Ast\textit{\text{"o\text{"o}v\text{"i}d\text{"a}d} does not obtain for death by evil noosing (d\textit{\text{"u}s\text{"u\text{"u}v\text{"a}d\text{"i}sn\text{"o})\(^3\) from behind, and who have completely attained to the rules of the sacred beings (yang-\textit{\text{"i} yazd\text{"a}n})); \textit{and} the soul of the wicked, which is repentant of deceit, turns back upon the demons and fiends themselves all that previous violence of destruction and perversion, contention and blinding\(^4\) which is natural to a demon, and they fight, and strike, and tear, and cause to tear, and destroy among themselves (ben\textit{\text{"a}f\text{"a}ms\text{"a}n va\textit{\text{"a}l} creatures of the sacred beings those which are an antagonism of himself);' apparently connecting this section with the next. This final argument is that, as the demons by their very nature must injure their friends if they fail with their enemies, they contain within themselves the source of their own final destruction. In other words: 'if Satan rise up against himself, and be divided, he cannot stand, but hath an end' (Mark iii. 26).

\(^1\) The army of angels of §§ 58, 64. The author, having exhausted his arguments in favour of the final triumph of the god\textit{\text{"i} creation, now returns to his description of the issue of the contest, which he was about to commence in § 64.

\(^2\) \text{Mr}14 and J omit the following words as far as 'provided.'

\(^3\) See Chap. XXIII, 3.

\(^4\) Or, perhaps, 'concealment,' as there is some doubt whether aub\textit{\text{"e}n\text{"e}l\text{"a}r\text{"i}th means 'making unseeing, or making unseen.'
benafsman) so long as they are in hell and numerous.

109. The wicked who are penitent become courageous anew as to the demon who perverts, the living occasion strength\(^1\), and the retribution of the hellish existence of the wicked is completed, because the increase of sins\(^2\), owing to the sin which they committed, ceases. 110. They are let out from hell, though their sins are thus accumulated by the demons; they have also prepared\(^3\) the spirit of sin by the three days in molten metal\(^4\), which drives away tears, as its name is owing to the lessening of tears\(^6\), which is all\(^6\) in that which occurs when all the doers of actions for the demon of falsehood\(^7\) pass through that preparation. 111. And he who, for three days, thus bathes (vushakêdô) his sins which are owing to the fiend, and has destroyed the filth (kakhû) of the accumulated sins, is like those who have passed off and turned over a burden.

112. And the impotence of sin is owing to the destroyer of the fiend by the perception of light,

---

1 That is, the wicked who are still living, being penitent, reinforce the host of the righteous.

2 Referring probably to the 'growth of sin' mentioned in Chaps. XI, 2, XII, 5.

3 That is, 'purified.'

4 All men are said to be purifed, at the time of the resurrection, by passing through melted metal, which seems like warm milk to the righteous, but is a final torment to the wicked (see Chap. XXXII, 12, 13, Bd. XXX, 19, 20).

5 This would seem to allude to some Avesta name of this molten metal, which is no longer extant.

6 We should probably read hamât, 'ever,' instead of hamâk, 'all.'

7 Reading zûr, but it may be zôr, 'violence.'
who was their creator; they (men) all see all, they all forgive, and they all are powerful as regards all things for the creator. 113. And, moreover, after the three days, when they occur, all the creatures of the good creator are purified and pure by the perfect washing passed through, by the most amazing preparation ordained (bakhtō), and by the most complete account they render complete. 114. And they are triumphant over the fiend through their own weapons, through their own driving away of their own littleness (kāsvīdārīth), and the glory of the creator and that of the angels; and since he becomes exhausted in resources (dēn kār) they make him become extinct.

115. But previously they are attacked, and dispersed, and subdued, and this even fully painfully and with complete experience; and they aid, through backward goodness, in the antagonism of means which are separated diversely, through scattered resources and subdued strength, like the life from the body of worldly mortals, and this, moreover, confusedly, uselessly, and unmovingly. 116. But the abode for the essential material existence (stī-l kīthāriḵō), about which there is a seeking for interment, is not powerless, and on enquiring the wishes of such numbers they have

1 That is, the destroyer of the fiend was the creator of the men mentioned in § 108. The reading sināsnō, 'perception,' is uncertain; perhaps we ought to read 'in the regions (dīvāgānō) of light.'
2 That is, before the purification in molten metal.
3 The 'body,' apparently, but this section is by no means clear.
4 This must be on the part of the fiend, as burial is unlawful.
5 Perhaps the meaning is that the fiend is at length overcome by the constantly accumulating numbers of the penitent wicked.
cast him out; and no share whatever, nor fragment of a share, of fiendishness, nor even so much as some morsel of unpardonableness sent by fiendishness, remains in this light.

117. Those who are righteous, intelligent through their own glory of religion—which is a spirit in the form of light—are scattered (parvandag-āttā) equally around the sky of skies, when from every single side of it there arises, for the sake of margin, three times as much space as the earth created by Aûharmaezd, in the preparation of the creatures which were created by him. 118. Through his own will he again constructs the bodies of the evil creation, unlaborsiously, easily, and full-gloriously, though their construction is even from the clay of Aûshdâtâr, and their moisture is from the purified water of Arekdisûr the undefiled. 119. And from that which is a good protector through him, and which is also connected with

---

1 The handsome maiden who is supposed to meet the departed soul, and whose form is an embodiment of its own deeds and religion (see Chaps. XXIV, 5, XLIV, 20). Or, perhaps, the angel of religion (Dīn) itself, which is reverenced for its radiance and glory in Dīn Yt. 4.

2 A mythical mountain (see Chap. XXX, 2).

3 The mythical source of pure water which is said to flow from Mount Albûrs into Lake Urvis on the summit of Mount Hûgar, and thence to Mount Aûsindôm in the wide-formed ocean, whence it partly flows into the ocean, and partly rains upon the earth (see Bd. XIII, 1, 3–5). Much the same account of it is given in Chap. XCII, 5, only the lake is said to be on the summit of Mount Aûsindôm. It is the Av. Ardvi sûra of the Âbân Yt., and the Pahl. form Arekdisûr = Aregdvisûr may be explained as a transposition of Aregdisûr, an ordinary mispronunciation of Ardvi sûra. Modern Parsis, who consider the Pahl. k as silent (or merely a soft aspirate) after a vowel, would pronounce Arengdisûr.
him, even from the Hadhayās ox, is the strength of everlasting welfare (vēhgarth) and immortality; and the living are again produced for the body, they have immortal life, and they become hungerless and thirstless, undecaying and undying, undistressed and undiseased, ever-living and ever-beneficial.

120. After the renovation of the universe there is no demon, because there is no deceit; and no fiend, because there is no falsity; there is no evil spirit (angraminō), because there is no destruction; there is no hell, because there is no wickedness; there is no strife, because there is no anger; there is no hatred, because there is no ill-temper (dazīth); there is no pain, because there is no disease. 121. There is also no Dahāk, because there is no fear; there is no want, because there is no greediness; there is no shame, because there is no deformity; there is no falsehood, because there is no desire of falsehood; there is no heterodoxy, because there are no false statements; and there is no tardiness, because it speaks of a dilatory (sustō) race in that which is said thus: 'They are all those of evil thoughts, of evil words, of evil deeds, a race of all evils to be made to tear by the evil spirit.'

122. And on his (the demon's) disappearance every evil has disappeared, on the disappearance of evil every good is perfected, and in the time of complete goodness it is not possible to occasion (andākhtanō) any pain or distress whatever, by any means, to any creature. 123. Those who are present (nunak) sufferers, when there is a blow of

1 See § 99.  
2 See § 97.  
3 M 14 and J omit what follows, as far as 'heterodoxy.'  
4 Literally 'attainers to endurance.'
a fist on the body, or the point of a nail (tēkh būrāk) is driven into a limb, are pained on account of the combination (ham-dâdakīth) of a different nature for the purposes of the fiend in the body. 124. But at that time of no complication (aham-yâkhtīth), when a limb is struck upon a limb, or even such a thing as a knife, or sword, or club, or stone, or arrow reaches the body, there is no pain or discomfort whatever corresponding to that present pain. 125. And at that time one consideration (vustād-aē) occurs, for now the pain from that beating and striking is always owing to that different nature, and on account of their being suitable to it, but at that time everything being of like nature and like formation there is never any distress.

126. And in that most happy time they let the sun, moon, and luminaries exist, but there is no need for a return of the day and a removal of its going forth (frāshm)1, for the world is a dispenser (vakhtār) of all light, and all creatures, too, are brilliant; those luminaries also become as it were perfectly splendid for them. 127. And every creature, too, is of like will and like power; whichever were mortals, unenvious of the welfare of all creatures, are alike joyous, and that share of their position and pleasure rejoices them which has come to them from the glory of all the existences and capabilities of him, the all-good, who is aware of all of everything through his own perfect persistence and complete resources.

128. And he allots, to the doers of good works

---

1 The ‘going forth’ of the day or the sun means its disappearance or going away, and is an Avesta phrase. The sun is supposed to be ‘forth’ when it is absent, not when it appears.
and the suitable ranks, the power of a judge (dadakô), wealthiness, goodness, and the directorship (radîh) of what is intended. 129. He is the designer of what is intended, as it is said about his creatures and capability that fire is producing wind; fire is producing water, and fire is producing earth; wind is producing fire, wind is producing water, and wind is producing earth; water is producing fire, water is producing wind, and water is producing earth; earth is producing fire, earth is producing wind, and earth is producing water. 130. The spirit is both the cause of spirit and the cause of matter (stîs); and the cause of matter, too, is also the cause of spirit, through that perpetual capability.

131. And, moreover, all the angels, the souls, and the guardian spirits are attending to the wishes of the glory of the creator and the commands of the creator, without trouble and fully rejoicing, in likeness unto the forms of seas, rivers, mountains, trees, and waters¹; and they have comforted and decorated the creation. 132. And the angels, souls, and guardian spirits, themselves also the constituted spirits of a former contact with life, are thereby pleased and rejoiced; eternal and thoroughly prepared they are naturalised in that complete joy.

Chapter XXXVIII.

1. As to the thirty-seventh question and reply, that which you ask is thus: The measure that they

¹ All objects being supposed to be represented by guardian spirits in the other world.
measure good works with being revealed\(^1\), how is it then when there is more, or not, done by us?

2. The reply is this, that every thought, word, and deed whose result is joy, happiness, and commendable recompense—when a happy result is obtainable, and the exuberance (āfzûnô) of thought, word, and deed is important—is well-thought, well-said, and well-done\(^2\). 3. And for him the result of whose wish for good works is conclusively joy and exaltation of soul—which are his attainment of recompense from the constantly-beneficial space\(^3\), the immortal and unlimited, which shall never perish—there is no measure of the multitude of good works. 4. For every one by whom many are performed, and who engages in still more, appropriates the result more fully, and is more worthy; but it is not obtained for the completion of that which is a definite measure, therefore he does not obtain still more, and it is not necessary he should; and it is, moreover, not obtained even for the completion of a limit of unlimitedness\(^4\).

---

\(^1\) They are balanced against the sins committed (see Chaps. XIII, 2–4, XXIV, 5, 6); if the good works exceed the sins by a very small quantity the soul is supposed to go to the ordinary heaven (vahistô), but if by a quantity sufficient to balance one unatonable sin it goes to the best existence, or supreme heaven (garôdmânô, see Slts. VI, 3, 4). M\(_4\) and J have merely: 'The measure for good works being revealed.'

\(^2\) The three characteristics of good works.

\(^3\) See Chaps. XXVI, 3, XXXI, 24, XXXVII, 22.

\(^4\) The good works in excess of the quantity necessary for admitting the soul into the supreme heaven cannot affect the destination of the soul, but they add to its future enjoyment (see Chap. VIII, 4), and no limit can be assigned to the quantity that can be thus absorbed.
CHAPTER XXXIX.

1. As to the thirty-eighth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What are the reason and cause of tying on the sacred thread-girdle (kûstîkô)¹ which, when they shall tie it on is said to be so greatly valuable, and when they shall not tie it the sin is so grievous?

2. The reply is this, that the all-good, most spiritual of spirits, and most ruling of rulers is the creator, and there is no need of troubles for men of the poor as to any wealth or anything, for all are his own.

3. And through his will as ruler, and all-powerful, he demands this of men, to remain properly

¹ The Kûstîk (Pers. kûstî) consists of a string, about the size of a stay-lace, which is first passed twice round the waist very loosely, over the sacred shirt (see Chap. XL, 2), and tied in front with a loose double knot (right-handed and left-handed), and the long ends are then passed a third time round the waist and tied again behind with a similar double knot. This string contains six strands, each consisting of twelve very fine, white, woollen threads twisted together, or seventy-two threads in all. Near each end the six strands are braided together, instead of being twisted, and for the last inch they are braided into three separate string-ends of two strands each; these string-ends, therefore, contain twenty-four threads each, and form a kind of fringed end to the string. This fringe is a sort of remembrancer, as its six strands are supposed to symbolize the six Gâhanbârs or season-festivals, the twelve threads in each strand symbolize the twelve months, the twenty-four threads in each string-end symbolize the twenty-four kardâks or sections of the Visparad, and the seventy-two threads in the whole string symbolize the seventy-two hâs or chapters of the Yasna. The girdle has to be re-tied every time the hands have been washed, which, in order to comply with the ceremonial laws, occurs many times in the day; and each time it has to be done with ceremony and a particular formula of prayer (see § 27).
skirted\textsuperscript{1} as a true servant not even bound—which is due to that service, and also the indication of a servant—as is seen \textit{and} clearly declared in the ever-fixed (hamāt-dādō) religion and belief.

4. Formerly men paid homage through the will and worship, as \textit{it were} more effectually, more essentially, \textit{and} more suitably for the discreet; and every day \textit{spent} in worship offered and homage paid they account as \textit{of} the greatest use, particularly for observing the world, and understanding \textit{its} character.

5. And \textit{as to him} of whose offering of homage no worldly advantage whatever is apparent—as fruit is apparent from trees, flavour from foods, fragrance from aromatic herbs, tint (bām) from colours, the good quality of spears from the forest, health from the patient (mōlvarakān), and decision from words—but, audibly speaking, \textit{his} head is lowered in sign of humility—as though the head, which is uppermost in the body and in the most pre-eminent \textit{position}, and is lowered as far even as the sole of the foot, which is lowermost in the body, salutes\textsuperscript{2} \textit{and} is placed on the ground in thought about worship \textit{and} desire of paying homage—and the appearance which exists as regards himself through \textit{that} lowliest (kt-hastō) servitude is \textit{in accordance} with that which is apparent from trees, food, and the many other worldly advantages \textit{before} recited—whoever \textit{has} offered homage and such advantageous (vēsišnakō) appearance

\textsuperscript{1} That is, fully clad, as going about uncovered is a sin (see Chap. XL, 4). On occasions of ceremony, and for the purpose of showing extraordinary respect, the Parsis wear an extra long-skirted robe.

\textsuperscript{2} Reading drudōdēd, but the orthography is unusual and the word, therefore, uncertain.
is manifest—even then that sign of humility and servitude is what great multitudes consider the offering of homage of a man more essential for hypocrisy (shêdô).

6. But owing to that which happens when they plant a tree in the name of a sacred being and eat the produce, and practise other worldly labour of worldly advantage, owing also to work of this kind through the doing of which they preserve all the growing crops of the whole world, and through tillage and multitudinous cultivated plots (khûstakhâ) it is manifest that they should meditate inwardly (dên mînîyên). 7. A token and sign of worship is of great use, and a great assistance (bangîsnô) therein is this belt (bûnd), which is called the Kûstîk, that is tied on the middle of the body.

8. The reasons of the assistance are numerous; and its first assistance is this, that as to him who—as a worshipper of the sacred beings, owing to the undeceitful (akadbâ) religion whose indication is sagaciously propitiating with the purifying cup—wears upon the body that spiritual, customary, and

---

1 The author is here adopting his most involved style of writing, which, in the original Pahlavi, is often hardly intelligible, and particularly apt to be misunderstood; but the object of this section seems to be to depreciate the Muhammadan practice of frequent prostrations during prayer, which are in marked contrast to the slight obeisances made by the Parsis.

2 Whether yêdatô means 'an angel,' or 'God,' is here uncertain.

3 The argument is that the growth of plants is so obviously occasioned by some unseen power that it naturally leads to meditation, and then to prayer.

4 The words dânisntkô levatman-tástîk-shnäîyên seem to refer to the Bareshnûm ceremony of purification, described in Vend. IX, 1-145 (see App. IV), which is a rite eminently characteristic of Mazda-worship.
doctrinal indication of the sacred beings with a wisdom which is truly religion, his steadfastness and religious service of the sacred beings are audibly spoken thereby; even for the religious it is commanded, because it is an assisting motive of beneficial high-priests and such-like submitters to the commands of the religion of the sacred beings.

9. One is this, that, as the lowliest servant and greatest lord are steadily agreed, and it is beneficial\(^1\) when they (the servants) wear a belt upon the body as a sign of service—because it is not the custom to grant that little at any time without guardianship—the lapse of which service is also not a beneficial lapse, then those unbound are without a token of the lord's service.

10. One is this, that it is commanded in revelation to keep thought, word, and deed confined from sin by a belt, and just like a servant; for the sake of confinement of sins from purity of thought, whose dwelling is the heart, one is to wear the same belt, which is the token of a servant, on the middle of the body and before the heart; and the periodical (han-gâmİkânu) sight of the token and sign of confined sins, and of the constant reminder for one's own mind, is the necessity of wearing it as a belt which is very restraining from the sin in thought, word, and deed that is manifest even in experience; which wearing of the same belt is as a reason and cause of much remembrance of much sin, that in the same way is therefore a restraint of it.

11. One is this, that the ancients acquainted with religion have communicated these tidings (srôbô)

\(^1\) Reading sponâk, but it may be sazôâk, 'seemly.'
unto our ancestors and to us:—' When the destroyer came upon the creatures, the demons and witches (parțkō) especially rushed up in the earth and atmosphere, and even to just below the position of the stars; and they saw multitudes of luminaries, and also the barricade and rampart\(^1\) of the glory of the religion, and the girdle (parvand)\(^2\) of the wishes and good works of all, when\(^3\) it is arrayed like a brilliant thread-girdle (kūstīk), and all its luminaries are girded (parvastō) by the girdle as the girdle of the omniscient wisdom has girded the all-intelligent angels.' 12. That great glory of the pure religion, solving doubts, became as beautiful and far-adorning as is stated in the liturgy (mānsar) thus: 'The star-studded girdle (ayīvyahāngānō) of the spirit-fashioned, good religion of the Mazda-worshippers.' 13. All the demons and fiends were terrified by the great glory of the religion, and it is said that, by the recital, practice, and promulgation of the whole routine of the enlightened religion, all those fiends are subdued, and the renovation of the universe is produced by the will of the patron spirits (āhvān). 14. Likewise, on account of that terror, none of the demons and fiends, who are the mightiest of the demons, rushed upon the creatures of that uppermost third of the sky\(^5\), who are in purity and inde-

\(^1\) See Chap. XXXVII, 47. 
\(^2\) It is not certain that parvand signifies 'a girdle,' or that parvastanō means 'to gird,' but they seem to be used in that sense here. The former word translates Av. paurvvanīm, 'leading the Pleiades' (Haug's Essays, p. 182), in Yas. IX, 81, an epithet applied to the belt of Orion. 
\(^3\) Mī4 has 'which.' 
\(^4\) Quoted from Pahl. Yas. IX, 81 (see Chap. XXXVII, 48). 
\(^5\) See Chap. XXXVII, 24-27.
structibility. 15. And it (the girdle) is commanded in revelation for men, more particularly for upholders of the religion\(^1\), to be within the middle third and near to the uppermost third of the body\(^2\).

16. One is this, that Yim the splendid, son of Vīvangha\(^3\), who in his worldly career was most prosperous in worldly affairs, a keeper away of all agitations of temper and all death, and a provider of freedom from decay and exemption from death, when he was deceived by the fiend was thereby made eager for supreme sovereignty instead of the service of Aūharmazd. 17. And about his administration (dādār̥th) of the creatures it is said he himself became cut away from radiant glory by that fiendishness\(^4\), and their cause of wandering

---

\(^1\) Mīrg continues as follows:—‘through that girdle (parvand) of the religion, and a thread-girdle (kūstikō), from the region of the world and religious in character, is put on within the middle third,’ &c.

\(^2\) Some words are evidently here missing in the Pahl. text, including the first word of the next section. The reason here given for the girdle being worn round the waist, just below the uppermost third of the body, is that the impregnable barrier of heaven (of which the girdle is a counterpart) is said to be just below the uppermost third of the sky.

\(^3\) See Chap. XXXVII, 80, 95.

\(^4\) Reading vispō khōi-sōrān, but we might perhaps read vispōān sahorān, ‘all oppressors,’ assuming that sahor stands for Av. sāthra, a term applied to some particular tribe of another religion which was under the rule of Yim and his two predecessors (see Zamyād Yt. 26, 28, 31). Another possible reading is vispōān ye khvarān, ‘all frosts.’

\(^5\) Assuming that khūdakō stands for khūdakō, but the word is uncertain.

The particular kind of fiendishness that led Yim astray in his old age (like Solomon) was lying, that is, denial of the truth of his religion. In consequence of this apostasy the royal glory departed from him, and he allied himself to the demons in the
(garñīznō) is the demon, and mankind perishes in that wandering from plain and hill-side. 18. And his pardon originated from the fully-persistent creator; therefore he spoke and gave advice unto his successors as to the retribution of those who shall abandon the service of the creator; and therein is explained about the fortress of the angels, with the many proper actions which are the strength of the fortress, and about the proportional way it is strengthened when a belt worn on the waist is ordered for men by him—the fully glorious ruler who was lord of the world, and also in gloriousness well-betokening the good creation—and they likewise order it.

19. One is this, that just as through that reason, which is an appointment (padō-dahīznō) that the sacred beings decreed, the sacred thread-girdle was worn even before the coming of Zaratūst the Spitamān, so after the coming of that messenger (vakhsvar) of the sacred beings, the righteous Zaratūst—who enjoined the commands of the good spirits and the exposition of the religion, with discourse praising the sacred beings and scriptures (avistākō) about steadfastness in the good religion—the same religious girdle is put on, with a religious formula, around

617th year of his reign, and remained in their power for most of the remaining century of his life (see Zamyād Yt. 31–38, Bd. XXIII, 1, XXXIV, 4).

1 Assuming that dastō stands for Pers. dast, and varīvakō for Pers. gartvah; otherwise, we may read 'from dignity and the hovel (varīvakō),' meaning that they perish from all ranks, instead of all places.

2 The rampart of heaven (see § 11).

3 His successors.

4 As detailed in § 18.

5 The Nirang-i Kustl (see § 27).
the body, over the garment of Vohûman. 20. Because the same intimation, relative to girding (parvandîsînîk) is wisdom for which the race of the religion is so justly famed that innumerable people, with the same customs and equally proper girding, wear the sacred thread-girdle, the ceremonial belt of the religion and indication of the creator, on the middle of the body; and it becomes more destructive of the power of destruction, more obstructive of the way to sin, and more contesting (kastakhtar) the will of the demons.

21. One is this, that he is unwise that has not worn it when that man has arrived in whose law no belting and no girdling are ordered, and more perplexing and more grievous destruction is so manifested at the time, that it is similar evidence to that exposition of revelation, the purport (aēvâz) of whose question and reply is spoken thus:—"O creator! in whom is the manifestation of secretly-progressing destruction, that is, in whom is its progress?" And Aûharmazd spoke thus: "In him who is the guide of a vile religion; whoever it is who puts on a girdle

---

1 The sacred shirt (see Chap. XL, 2). The garment of a purified man is called Vohûman in Vend. XIX, 76-78, 81-83 (trans. D.).

2 The term seg or sēg, used for 'destruction' here and in §§ 21-23, is the name of 'the fiend who causes annihilation' (see Bd. XXVIII, 26).

3 It is possible that an-aîyâyâgânîh may mean 'no garment,' and refer to the sacred shirt, as the previous term avîbandîh, 'no belting,' refers to the sacred thread-girdle.

4 In Pahl.Vend. XVIII, 21-23, with some variations (see Haug's Essays, p. 367).

5 Instead of rûbâkîh, 'progress,' K35 has rûbânîh, which might mean 'soul-state,' but is probably a clerical blunder.
at most thrice (3-tûmâk) in a year\(^1\), that is, he does not wear a sacred shirt and thread-girdle, and his law also is this, that it is not necessary to wear them\(^2\)—and when the law of no belting is so grievous that, when that law shall be accepted, it is observed that destruction is strengthened.

22. The same belt, kept on after the command of Yim, was the first token as regards which an annihilator of destruction is mentioned and established by law; and on both occasions\(^3\) destruction is more grievously manifest. 23. That which is more particularly important is such as the destroyer of destruction, Yim the splendid, advised, which the high-priest of the good, Zaratûst the Spîtamân, mentioned thus:—The sacred thread-girdle is as a sign of the service of the sacred beings, a token of sin ended, and a presage of beneficence; and one is to put it on and to gird it, in the neighbourhood of the heart and on the middle of the body, with the religious formula accompanying the glorious scripture.' 24. That is also betokened by its equally-dividing (ham-bûr) position and determining fashion; for, as a wise man becomes a discriminator between benefit and injury, between good and evil, so also the place of the sacred thread-girdle is between below and above.

25. With a low sacred girdle there is a passage for one's want of openness (avîshôdanô) and secret ruin, and also a shutting up\(^3\) of life; with a high sacred

---

\(^1\) In the Vendidad it is he who does not put one on for three years.

\(^2\) Both when ordered by Yim and when confirmed by Zaratûst.

\(^3\) Reading azar-vadîsînôh (the first nasal in bandîsn= vandîsn being often omitted); it can hardly be afrandîsînôh, 'magnificence,' because the latter abstract suffix, -îh, would be
girdle there is a way for thought, word, and deed, and no confinement (agirisnōkārth) of life; and tying the sacred girdle with a religious rite (ham-dtnō) is like a glory amid the glories of the angels, for it is itself through the aid of the patron spirit (ahvō). 26. And from the heart, which is the place of thought and dwelling of life, on the upper side (lālāth) are the eye, ear, tongue, and brain, which are the dwellings of sight, hearing, speech, understanding, and intellect; and on its lower side (frōdīth) is the abode of a father's generativeness.

27. When this sacred thread-girdle, whose token, sign, and presage are such, is tied, it is girded on with this glorious rite of the glorious ones, the custom of the learned, the command of rulers, and the decree of apostles.

28. That secretly-progressing destruction, which arises from the fiend of insubordination (asardārth) who was much afraid of Yim, and which is averse to the labour of men and the service of Aṭharmāzd, is a demon and irreligious (dūs-dtnō), who is full of fear of the girdles (parvandīthā) of the glory of

ungrammatical after the former, -isnō, in an uncompounded verbal noun. Some of the other words are also uncertain.

1 The MSS. have merely rōdīth. 2 As stated in § 23.
3 This is the Nīrang-i Kustī, or girdle formula, that has to be performed every time the girdle is re-tied, which happens several times a day. It is fully detailed in Appendix II, at the end of this volume.

4 See § 21; the first letter of nīhān, 'secretly,' is omitted by K.35 in both places.
5 Sēg, the fiend of destruction, is connected with the demon Būt in Vend. XIX, 4, 6; but the characteristic of 'insubordination' is more applicable to the demon Tarōmat, 'the disobedient' (see Bd. XXVIII, 14, 26, 34).
religion, with which both angels and also worldlings have become belted and diligent.

29. Then, because the glory for this belt of ours, which is called the Kûstik and is worn on the middle of the body, remains unreleased (avê-ûkht) from the angels, who are givers of glory, and from men who are glorious—which is explained as a similitude and sample of fortunes (bâhârakôlihâ) among worldlings, even those who are actually primitive creatures likewise—it has, therefore, seemed comely and desirable. 30. And their heart, will, knowledge, and purpose are as much for it as that which is perceptible where, even apart from those of the good religion who shall tie the sacred thread-girdle with the scripture formula, some of the faiths of all countries, except those who are unbelted, possess the religious custom. 31. Also outside the seat of the existence of faith all men have the waist, or the palms of the hands, or similar joints for a girdle (kûstîkô); and it is deemed comely, desirable, and convenient for work to wear it. 32. And it is manifestly the lot (dakô) of the thoroughly-praising one whose own desire is truth and the enjoyment of welfare, it is a token of the service of the sacred beings, and a sign of walking in the commands of religion,

1 The precise meaning is not very clear.
2 Alluding probably to the Brahmanical thread which is worn by the higher castes of Hindus diagonally, over one shoulder and below the other arm, and is so far analogous to the Parsi thread-girdle that it is a religious symbol put on with a religious rite.
3 Reading varôyisnô aû gâs, but K35 has rôyisnô, 'growth,' instead of 'faith.'
4 Reading kafîhâ, or kafagîh. Perhaps the allusion is to a rosary which is held in the hands, or worn on the wrists, by people of many religions.
which they shall tie on account of the superior beings (pāshāman) with the proper formula, more particularly with that which one utters when there is reliance upon the scripture itself.

CHAPTER XL.

1. As to the thirty-ninth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What kind of goodness and want of goodness can there be in the sacred thread-girdle and shirt; and what are the sin of running about uncovered, of prayer offered and prayer not offered, and the purpose of cleansing (mīn)?

2. The reply is this, that it (the shirt) is needful to be perfectly pure white and single, which one fold is because Vohūman also is thus the one creature who was first, and afterwards from him the garment which is innermost and concealed is called in revelation.

3. Proper girdling is double, which two folds are because he also who is in the course of the twofold religious wisdom is intelligent, and the duties due to the sacred beings are themselves in two divisions

---

1 The sacred shirt, constantly worn by Parsis of both sexes (young children excepted), is a very loose tunic of white muslin, with very short loose sleeves covering part of the upper arm (see Sls. IV, 4–5).

2 The archangel Vohūman (see Chap. III, 13) is said to have been the first creation of the creator (see Bd. I, 23).

3 The garment of Vohūman (see Chap. XXXIX, 19).

4 That is, it is passed twice round the waist before it is tied the first time, but then it is passed a third time round the waist (see Chap. XXXIX, 1).
which are called the instinctive and that heard by the ears. 1

4. After a man is in the girding they shall tie on, the symptoms of any sins of the belted body are free from sin which is condemned (vigirintidô); and when he walks uncovered, or naked, or with a twofold garment, there is then no root of the sin of running about uncovered 2 in him. 5. Moreover, on hymns being chanted during a meal an inward prayer is not also necessary 3.

6. The purpose 4 of a cleansing (mîsn-aê) is this, that the suitableness of men for eating is due to worship of the sacred beings and glorification of the sacred beings. 7. And as to their necessary recommendation (sipârîh) 5 of any food for eating, the

---

1 The twofold wisdom of the Avesta comprises the two intellects, the âsnô khratus, 'the durable or instinctive wisdom,' and the gaoshô-srâtô khratus, 'the ear-heard or acquired wisdom,' which are the terms used here.

2 The sin of vishâd-dubârinîth, which would have been incurred in any of these cases if no girdle had been worn, is a venial sin of one Farmân for each of the three first steps, but becomes a Tanâpûhar sin (equivalent to 75 or 400 Farmâns) at the fourth step (see Sls. IV, 8-10).

3 This is mentioned as a further illustration of a greater religious duty superseding a lesser one. When the Gâthas, or hymns, are being chanted, the reciter is already under the protection of the inward prayer (vâg) with which all acts of worship must commence; it is, therefore, unnecessary to take another prayer inwardly before eating. Inward prayer is a short formula which is said to be 'taken' and 'retained' inwardly, as a protective spell, by muttering its commencement before certain necessary acts, and after the completion of the act the remainder of the formula is 'spoken out' aloud, and the spell is dissipated, before the person can converse (see Sls. III, 6).

4 The MSS. have pêm, 'milk,' instead of kîm, 'purpose,' but see § 1; the Pahl. letters p and k are often much alike.

5 Mî4 has sipâsîh, 'praise,' but this and several other emenda-
glorifying of the sacred beings, and the true usages about recounting it, it is commanded, before eating, when the mouth is not soiled with food, that the mouth (dāhān) should proceed with the utterance of the pure glorification. 8. Being thereupon suitably seated, and having properly eaten the food, one is to make the mouth clean with a tooth-pick and water; and after eating, before all words, the praise of the sacred beings is glorified by the mouth cleansed by washing. 9. And between the glorifying before eating and the after glorification one is not to speak other words, and when during a meal a word is spoken by the mouth, that kind of glorification which it is the custom to utter before and after eating is offered by its own organ (andām).

10. And every single organ has one function, but two special functions are connected with the mouth, which are speaking and eating; and because they are together they are mutually opposed, for speaking connects that which is an inward possession with outside teachings (kāshṭhā), and through eating, the outside food comes for the inward further vitality of life. 11. As the ancients have said, where one operation is appointed unto two operators, it is more

---

1 This glorification (stāyisnā) must refer to the inward prayer of § 5, which commences by praising Āūharmād (see Chap. LXXIX, 2, note).

2 Reading là, 'not,' instead of râl, 'on account of.' M14 has altered the passage.

3 That is, when the spell of the inward prayer is broken by speaking before the proper time (see § 5, note), the spell must be renewed before proceeding with the meal.
expressly so that during eating two operations may not both at once (ayag-ik-gun) be produced, by speaking and by eating.

12. To keep those two operations distinct, one from the other, the custom of uttering the praise of sacred beings and the glorification of sacred beings when the mouth remains in the act of eating, until the mouth becomes clean from food, is decreed as inconsistent with goodness (aham-véhíh). 13. And that which remains from the outpouring (rīkh) at the time of a cleansing is called 'a cleansing (mísn-aē).'

14. One means for the retention of knowledge is through not having that retention of knowledge exhausted, but when one thus speaks during that cleansing the words are really originating with the mouth, for he does not retain them; and whenever ( maman) he does not speak anything whatever with the tongue, that religious glorification which it is the custom to utter before and after eating is then offered by him from his own limited resources (sámánō-vímánd), and it will be offered from his own limited resources.

---

**Chapter XLI.**

1. *As to* the fortieth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Of those whose decision is this, that it is not necessary to be steadfast in the religion of the Mazda-worshippers—by which decision this is asserted, that they should abandon the religion of the Mazda-worshippers—some one disparages the religion and goes over to a foreign faith (an-airfíh), then of what nature is his sin
owing thereto, and what does the sin owing thereto, as regards those of the same foreign religion, amount to? 2. Or order some one then to tell us clearly concerning it, how it is, and how is the disobedience due to this sin.

3. The reply is this, that an adult is worthy of death\(^1\) on account of the good religion they\(^2\) would abandon, on account also of the adopted law of the foreign faith he is worthy of death, in whose reliance upon the improper law is also the sin which they\(^3\) maintain and practise by law, and through being in the same law he is equally sinful with them. 4. And also when any one is on that course, and his wish is for the same protection, of which a similitude is in the enduring words of that good law they would forsake, and he adopts that which is vile\(^4\), even through that impropriety he is equally sinful.

5. When he dies, without renunciation\(^5\) of that sin and impenitently, in that improperly-constituted law, the position of his soul is then in the worst

---

\(^1\) That is, he commits a mortal sin, for which he could have formerly been condemned to death by the high-priest (see Sls. VIII, 2, 5–7, 21).

\(^2\) The teachers of infidelity.

\(^3\) The foreigners.

\(^4\) The probable meaning is that if he conforms to the foreign faith merely from politic motives, while retaining a belief in his own religion, he is still equally sinful.

\(^5\) This renunciation is effected by the recitation of a particular formula called the Patit, in which every imaginable sin is mentioned with a declaration of repentance of any such sins as the reciter may have committed. But this formal renunciation must be accompanied by atonement and true repentance; and in order to ascertain the proper atonement all serious sins must be confessed to the high-priest (see Sls. IV, 14, VIII, 1, 2, 8–10).
existence\textsuperscript{1}, and his punishment is that of many sins worthy of death; from the demons also there come grievously, hand in hand, pain and suffering, gnawing and stench of many kinds, stinging, tearing, and lacerating, primary evil and discomfort. 6. And through their\textsuperscript{2} law and faith his distress in that worst existence is thus until the last change of existence, when the renovation of the universe is produced by will among living beings.

7. But reality (aitōth), as regards living, arises from renunciation of that disobedience; it makes those attract to the good law who seduced him to that evil law, that which established him improperly in the law it eradicates from his conduct (rūbākhīh), advancing sins it again restrains, and whatever has advanced it repairs again anew through the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, and he becomes thoughtful, constant, and steadfast. 8. The sin which he set going he restrains and atones for by wealth, trouble, and authorising\textsuperscript{3} commands; even in the body he also undergoes punishment in the three nights (satūth)\textsuperscript{4}; he then obtains forgiveness, and his soul is saved.

9. And as it is said in the persistent law of the sacred beings\textsuperscript{5}, that 'the good religion of the sacred beings, who are the Mazda-worshipping superiors,

\textsuperscript{1} See Chap. XXXIII, 3.  
\textsuperscript{2} The foreigners'.  
\textsuperscript{3} Or, tūbānkār may mean 'lavish.' The ordering of religious ceremonies, as good works in atonement for sin, is probably intended; and these always imply a lavish expenditure upon the priesthood.

\textsuperscript{4} Referring to the three nights' punishment after the resurrection of the body, which is specially reserved for mortal sinners (see Bd. XXX, 16).

\textsuperscript{5} Quoting, with some alteration, from Pahl. Vend. III, 151.
ordains *it* as retribution,* so that the sin it takes away (spayéiti) may not exist in him, his retribution is declared by revelation. 10. And by the same witness *it* is said, that all of the primitive faith have been quite of the same opinion about this, that from the good religion except by the way of renunciation of *sin* there is none unless to hell; but that renunciation *should* be during life, for it is said that ‘whoever *when* living does not become righteous, that is, does not fully atone for sin, *for* him *when* dead *there* is no grant of the best existence.’ 11. To commit no sin is better than retribution and renunciation of sin.

---

**Chapter XLII.**

1. **As to** the forty-first question and reply, that which you ask is thus: **As to** him who remains in the good religion of the Mazda-worshippers, *whom* men shall make the protection and assistance of the good religion, *who* shall save men from a foreign faith and irreligion (akdInóth), and then holds back *some* of those who have the idea that they should go over to a foreign faith and irreligion, *and* they do not go over to the foreign faith, *but* become steadfast in the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, what is then the

---

1 The Avesta verb spayéiti, here used as a technical term, occurs frequently in Vend. III, 142–148.

2 Assuming that barâ, ‘indeed,’ stands for pavan, ‘by,’ (see Chap. VII, 2 n.)

3 Reading bakhshîn-î, but it may be a corruption of bakhshând, ‘they shall grant,’ as assumed in M14. This passage is quoted from Pahl. Vend. V, 173.

4 Some one placed in authority, such as a high-priest or judge, is evidently meant.

5 Reading ēdînas, ‘then of him,’ instead of ayûf, ‘or,’ the
nature of the decision of the angels about him, and what is the nature of their (the men's) good works and sin?

2. The reply is this, that he is much extolled, happy, exalted, of great good works and abundant recompense, and the path to the best existence, prepared (frârâstô) by his righteousness, is wide\(^1\); the delight of his soul becomes complete, and its hope\(^3\) is great. 3. And every good work that is manifested in the good religion by those who are transferred by him from a foreign faith and irreligion, and which they shall do thereafter—when, through the perseverance and praise exercised by him who is protected by the religion, they are saved from irreligion—becomes his as much as though it had been set going by him himself, and he has the same praise and the same good works with them. 4. Of the extent (sâmânô) and amount of such good works there is no writing a second time, unless his acquaintance with the full computation of the good works due to their number is continuous\(^3\); but when in the same way they are practising and steadfast in sin it shall not be assigned to him\(^4\). 5. Then his position in

two words being alike in Pahlavi except in the latter part of the last letter.

\(^1\) That is, his path to heaven over the Kinvad bridge is rendered wide and easy by his good deeds (see Chap. XXI, 5).

\(^2\) Reading aîmdb; M14 has khîm, 'disposition,' and K35 has kîmâmd, which suggests 'shall be greatly celebrated' as a possible translation.

\(^3\) The meaning appears to be that their good works are imputed to him only so long as he continues to exercise some control over them.

\(^4\) That is, their sins will not be imputed to him in the same way as their good works.
righteousness\(^1\) is very grand, and in the world he has himself great eminence, applause, and dignity.

6. And as much as that which is an improper law and a law worthy of death is a punishing of the soul, and the disconnected\(^2\) words and perversion (vastakth), due also to the perfidy (rangisnō) of the fiend who has come, are such that in his time the religious rites (dīnō) performed are rites of grievous vexation and fear, so that which is a proper law, like the great glorification in spirit and the connected words of the high-priests, is the arrival of the good spirit as much as a virtue worthy of recompense and full of hope. 7. Even as that which is said thus: 'Of men who are practisers of good deeds the manifestation is then in their children.'

---

Chapter XLIII.

1. As to the forty-second question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Regarding a man who is consecrating a sacred cake\(^3\), and the fire is his household attendant (khavag-t mānō) from afar, when he sees it, at how many steps is it improper? 2. When they consecrate a sacred cake by light of a lamp, why do they not say the words 'tava àthrō (for thee, the fire),' as by another fire? 3. And of the propitiatory dedications (shnûmanōthâ)\(^4\) to the period of the day (gâh), the day, and the month of the consecration of the sacred cake, which is that

\(^1\) Or, perhaps, aharûbôth may here mean 'the righteous existence' or heaven.

\(^2\) Reading apadvand, instead of va padvand.

\(^3\) See Chap. XXX, 1.

\(^4\) See Chap. XXIX, 1.
which when earlier or later is also then not proper, and which is that which is proper? 4. When they shall accomplish the consecration of a sacred cake with one more dedication than those of the thirty days of the months in the year, how is it necessary to act so that it may not enter too early; and which is the one more dedication which, when they shall make it, is proper, which is that which is not proper, and which is that which is earlier and later?

5. The reply is this, that at forty-eight feet from the sacred twigs to the fire—which would be about nine reeds, if of a medium man—even though one

---

1 K35 has 'forty-seven.' Taking the foot at \(10\frac{1}{2}\) English inches (see Bd. XXVI, 3 n) the 48 feet would be 42 English feet, and the nāf or reed would be 4 feet 8 inches.

2 The baresōm (Av. baresma), or bundle of sacred twigs, is an indispensable part of the ceremonial apparatus; it is held in the hand of the officiating priest while reciting many parts of the liturgy, and is frequently washed with water and sprinkled with milk. It consists of a number of slender rods, varying with the nature of the ceremony, but usually from five to thirty-three. These rods were formerly twigs cut from some particular trees, but now thin metal wires are generally used; and when not in the hand of the priest they are laid upon the crescent-shaped tops of two adjacent metal stands, each called a māh-rū, 'moon-face,' and both together forming the baresōm-dān or 'twig-stand.' The baresōm is prepared for the sacred rites by the officiating priest while reciting certain prayers (see Haug's Essays, pp. 396-399), during which he washes the twigs with water, and ties them together with a kūstīk, or girdle, formed of six thread-like ribbons split out of a leaflet of the date-palm and twisted together. This girdle, being passed twice round the middle of the bundle of twigs, is secured with a right-handed and left-handed knot on one side of the bundle, and is then passed round a third time and secured with a similar double knot on the other side, exactly as the kūstīk or sacred thread-girdle is secured round the waist of a Parsi man or woman (see Chap. XXXIX, 1).
sees the fire and does not say ‘tava ᾽ athrō,’ it is proper. 6. And a lamp also has the same contingency (ham-brāh) as a fire; and by our teaching they do not consecrate a sacred cake at a lamp on which there is no burning of firewood, but they should cause a burning of firewood on that at which they consecrate a sacred cake, and they say ‘tava ᾽ athrō.’

7. And there is a propitiatory dedication for each separate consecration of a sacred cake, and not again from the first to the last; and the first is the nearest to the first day, Aūharmazed, just as Ātūr (‘fire’) and Āvān (‘waters’) are other days in the series; and the last is the day Anīrañ, because in the same series the day Anīran is the latest.

8. When the seven

---

1 These Avesta words, meaning ‘for thee, the fire,’ are used when addressing the fire, or presenting anything to it, such as firewood and incense (see Yas. III, 52, VII, 3, XXII, 10, 22, &c.); they are not to be used, however, when the fire is so far off, or so feeble, that its light cannot be seen by the speaker (see Sls. X, 37).

2 Meaning that in his opinion a lamp is no proper substitute for a sacred fire unless a little firewood is burnt in it.

3 In the liturgy for the consecration of the sacred cakes, which consists chiefly of Yas. III, 1–VIII, 9 (see Haug’s Essays, p. 408), the portion contained in Yas. III, IV, VI, VII is filled with propitiatory formulas, some of which are fixed, but others vary according to the hour, day, and month of the service. Some of the variable propitiatory dedications for the day and month are, however, identical with some of the fixed ones, such as those for fire, waters, &c. And in case of the day or month requiring the use of a variable dedication of this description, the object of the text is to prohibit the use of the corresponding fixed dedication, which would be an unnecessary repetition of the same words. This appears to be the meaning of the words va akhar min zak-1 levino va/akhar lā translated in the text; but it would be hardly possible to express so simple a meaning in a more obscure fashion.

4 The series of propitiatory dedications for the thirty days of the
archangels are in the propitiatory dedication it is proper to put the seven archangels first in their own order, then the period of the day\(^1\), then the day, then the month of the consecration, and, afterwards, the other dedications in such order as they are written.

9. And as to the earlier which they should put later, one is when they shall put a dedication before the seven archangels, one is that when they shall put the day before the period of the day, one is when they shall put the month before the day, and one is that when a dedication, distinct from the seven archangels, the period of the day, the day, and the month, on account of being before the archangels, or before the period of the day, or before the day, or before the month, is accounted as improper a dedi-

---

month (which are also used for months of the same names) constitute the Sirōzah, which is given in two forms, one in which the names and titles are in the genitive case, and the other in which they are in the accusative. From the first form of the Sirōzah the proper dedications for the actual day and month are taken and substituted for Yas. III, 50, 51, IV, 40, 41, VII, 41, 42 (which passages, as they stand, are correct only for the first day, Aûharmazd, of the first month, Fravardin); and from the second form of the Sirōzah they are similarly taken and substituted for Yas. VI, 37, 38; somewhat in the same way as the Collect, Epistle, and Gospel for the day are taken from the complete series of such writings, and inserted in the Communion service of the Church of England. The first day is Aûharmazd, the ninth day and ninth month are Âtûr, the tenth day and eighth month are Âvân, and the last day is Anîrân. Following these variable dedications for the day and month are the fixed dedications for Âtûr, 'fire,' and Âvân, 'waters,' unless they have been already recited for the day or month.

\(^1\) The dedication for the gâh or period of the day occupies the place of Yas. III, 21–37 (in which the formulas for all five gâhs are given); so that when the archangels are to be propitiated the dedications for them must precede Yas. III, 21.
cation as *that of* yesterday, or the day before, is for this day.

10. So that when *it is* the propitiatory dedication for the day Khûr of the month of consecration Āvān¹, the day and month are such that their order and the Ātûr ('fire') and Āvān ('waters') succeeding them are thereby set in reverse order to the proper sequence². 11. Then, too, when in the same month³ its propitiatory dedication for the day and month becomes alike for day and month⁴, it is recited as regards both the month and the 'waters' (āvān), because they are not connected together and have again become non-inclusive; and then one is to consider them as proper.

**Chapter XLIV.**

1. *As to* the forty-third question and reply, that which you ask is thus: *There is* a man who is superintending (a-var-mândakakō) and skilful, in whom great skill as regards religion is provided, and the high-priest's duty and officiating priest's duty (magó-path) are performed by him; or they are not performed by him, but in him great skill as regards

¹ The eleventh day of the eighth month.
² The meaning is that in such a case the dedications for the day and month, and the fire and waters (Yas. III, 52, 53) which follow, will stand in the following order:—Khûr, Āvān, Ātûr (the second Āvān being omitted as directed by §7), which is precisely the reverse order of those names among the days of the month.
³ The eighth month, Āvān.
⁴ That is, on the tenth day of the eighth month, when both day and month are Āvān, in which case there would be three Āvān dedications, but only two are to be used as here directed.

[18]
religion is provided. 2. In a place of that district there is no one who rightly knows the commentary and 'the proper and improper', so that he comes forth into a place of such decay (sapakhân); and the people of the district—who constantly order all the religious rites (dînâ) of many sacred ceremonies from any poor man of the various persons from other districts whose skill and superintending are not like his, but they constantly come to that district—shall constantly receive from him all the many religious rites and many sacred ceremonies. 3. And that man, who is revered and skilful, proceeds not undetectedly (lâ anâskandthâ) and bashfully to his own superintending position, the position of the religion and position of the skill which are his; he does not demand any employment in the district or any award (dînâ) from the district, and does not know how to provide any other employment or award, in which there would be any fitness for him. 4. Are the people of the district—on account of the skill and activity which that man has exercised in religion, due to the performance of all the religious rites and sacred ceremonies which they constantly order—

1 From this it would appear that a treatise called 'Shâyast Lâshâyast' existed a thousand years ago, which probably bore some resemblance to Sls., the work which now bears the same name.

2 The words hamâk dînâ, translated 'all the religious rites' both here and elsewhere, are a technical term which (as I am informed by Dastûr Peshotanji Behramji, the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay) is applied to 'those obligatory religious rites and festivals that every Parsi is bound to observe by performing certain ceremonies, in his or her name, with the assistance of priests engaged for the purpose. These rites and festivals include the Kapithvan, the Gâhâmbârs, the Fravardigân, the monthly festivals, &c.'
thereupon to prepare that man a stipend (bāhar)\1, and is it necessary for them to give a stipend to that man, or how is it necessary to act; and is it necessary for them to collect it for him, or not? 5. And of the much advantage of all the religious rites and work is it necessary to speak thus: 'Until the time that thou hadst come it was not possible for us to order except of him who is inferior to thee,' or how is it to be done? 6. Is it necessary to collect a stipend for him on account of the benefit and reasoning thought (vīrmātā) on other subjects, of which he was the means, or how is it necessary for the superintendent of our people to collect such stipend of skill, position, and religion? 7. The reply is this, that a man of such description as written above, and superintending the exercise of skill and provision of ability, is very worthy of a stipend and courtesy (khūptā); also, through good management of all religious rites and the ceremony of the sacred beings, he is very confident in any uncertainty. 8. Therefore it is necessary to consider that he manages more openly and better than those whose skill and ability are not like his; and also as regards stipend and reasoning thought, owing to the worthiness of the ceremony of the sacred beings, his are more whose skill, ability, and activity in religion are greater. 9. And as to a man who is as written above—when all those religious rites and ceremonies are well-managed by him, and his repeated direction and right continuance of proper duties are an accumulation of his own reasoning

---

1 Literally 'a share' of the produce of the district, analogous to tithes.
thought and great capability, and are ordered of him with great solicitude—one is also to consider him a stipendiary¹ thereby, and a thriving acquirement of ample reasoning thought. 10. And as to him, moreover, who is less skilled than he, and of inferior position, by as much as he is not so worthy, his custom is therefore to produce a want of himself again.

11. But he who has much skill should have² a great stipend, and he of medium ability should have³ a medium one, he having less means of benefiting worthily, maturely, and necessarily. 12. And the value is as it is said in revelation thus: 'The stipend they should announce to him who is an upholder of religion is two shares, and to him who is mediocre only one, to him whose lot is inferior.'

13. That man is a master and high-priest⁴ whose usage also (âtn-têô) is wise, and in ability, goodness, and skill is the best of those of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, which is the religion of wise upholders. 14. And the exercise of his religious disposition—originally possessing a religious stipend—which they shall order of him in that place, and that of the other worthy ones and applicants in the place and coming applying to the place, as much

¹ Literally 'a shareholder.'
² Assuming that the adverbial suffix -thâ may be taken here (as it can be probably in all cases) as the Pâz. conditional form hâê of the verb 'to be;' equivalent to the more usual forms aê, âe, and the Huz. hômanâê (see Chap. XLVIII, 23).
³ Or, rad dastô-bar may mean 'an awarding high-priest;' as he is called rad, 'master, chief,' in virtue of his power of sentencing sinners and governing the religious body, and he is called dastô-bar, 'upholder of customs,' in virtue of his control over rites and ceremonies.
as it is worth and happens to be their own want, one is to altogether thoroughly well consider for him. 15. Good destiny is not fulfilled by granting to those applying, but through forward ability, the forward, kind-hearted, and extreme skill provided, and grand position he is worthy of much stipend, and it is important to make them stipendiary in their own gradation of applying. 16. For the observance of moderation and the granting of applications are mutually destructive, and it is discriminatively said that the high-priest Gāmāsp of the Hvōvas considered, in that mode, the much skill of that good superintendent being without a stipend as not disproportionate, but most justly very moderate.

17. Moreover, to collect for all except for one skilful man, and to provide a stipend for any other applicants, is not right; and the limits should be moderate, for each one really shares the moderate apportionments according to his own want, apart even from the sacred ceremony. 18. But to collect for such a man, who has kind-heartedly superintended by rule during reasoning thought, is a greater good work than to approve even him who is superintending much more authoritatively. 19. And he who has himself requested is to obtain everything last; for, except in that case when a virtuous doer has in any

---

1 Literally 'good-hearted.'

2 The Av. Gāmāspa Hvōgva (or Hvōva) of Yas. XLV, 17, L, 18, Fravardin Yl. 103. He was high-priest and prime minister of Kāvistāsp; but probably the opinion of some much later Gāmāsp is here erroneously attributed to him, much in the same way as the comparatively modern Book of Enoch is attributed to Enoch, 'the seventh from Adam,' in Jude, 14.

3 Reading hāē instead of -īhā, as in § 11.
mode begged a livelihood and is not capable of earning it—so that something even of the righteous gifts of clothing is begged by him—to live in idleness is not the way to be assisted; but he who has not himself requested, and is wise, is to beg a suit of clothes (rakh-hanâ).

20. They give to the good provider of gifts much praise, and for the preservation of the perfect giver are many religious friends, and the position of the upholders of religion; so it is necessary to give, and to consider it as provided for the great female whom revelation greatly celebrates, that patron spirit (ahû) connected with religion, as it is said that in the opinion of Hûmân, the high-priest, the propitious religion is, as it were, the way of saving their souls.

1 Mt has zîvisnô, and K35 has zîvandân.

2 Charitable donations given to the priesthood and poor for the purpose of acquiring religious merit on certain solemn occasions; they often consist of clothing, and are then supposed to furnish the giver, or the person in whose name they are given, with garments in the other world after the resurrection (see Bd. XXX, 28).

3 The angels who assist his soul after death, such as Srôsh, Mitrô, Rashnû, Âstâd, and the good Vâè (see Chaps. XIV, 3. 4, XXX, 2–4).

4 That is, he will occupy the same grade in heaven as the priesthood.

5 Referring to the maiden spirit supposed to meet the good soul after death and to conduct it over the Kînva'd bridge to heaven (see Chaps. XXIV, 5, XXXVII, 117). She is described in Vend. XIX, 98–101, and more fully in Hn. II, 22–32 and the later Pahlavi works. Her beauty is said to be proportional to the religious merit of the soul, and she is here identified with the ahû or patron spirit.

6 Probably some one nearly contemporary with the author, such as Âtûr-pâd son of Hêmtâd (see Bd. XXXIII, 111), who is called hû-manô, 'well-meaning,' and styled 'the leader of the people of the good religion' in the Dinkard (III, ccxcxi.).

7 The maiden spirit, being developed by religious actions, is
21. About upholders of religion, and a more particular rule how the lawful computation should be for glorifying with moderation, a chief of the priests has spoken thus: 'Shouldst thou be our father in wealthiness, I am thy protector in body, and thou becomest thy protector in soul.'

22. The same collection is the way of the friends of religion for begging from the upholders of religion for the preservation of the soul, and for well considering, extremely gracefully and fully reverently, the advantage and pleasure of the position of the upholders of religion, so that they shall properly collect for the preservation of souls by the mode of going to collect thoroughly with great gain.

Chapter XLV.

1. The forty-fourth question is that which you ask thus: Of priesthood (aêrpatth) or discipleship (hâvistth) which is the priest's duty (aêrpatth), and which the disciple's; which is that which it is necessary to have in priesthood, and which in discipleship?

called the soul's 'own religion' in AV. IV, 23; it is, therefore, that spirit's assistance which is probably meant here, when speaking of religion saving the soul.

1 A môbad of môbads.

2 Meaning that the wealthy man can easily protect his own soul by a proper expenditure of his wealth on good works. The connection of this with the first part of the sentence is rather obscure.

3 Mentioned in §§ 17, 18.

4 In heaven (see § 20). To induce the laity to collect ample property for paying the priesthood they are promised a share of the priest's happiness in heaven.
2. The reply is this, that the priesthood and discipleship are connected together; the priests teach the scriptures, and the disciples learn the knowledge of the religion, that is, the Avesta and Zand. 3. The priests have been disciples; through the teaching of his own priest they make the aroused existence of even a disciple become a priest, and in one body with the learner are the priesthood and discipleship. 4. Through that which he has learned as a disciple from the priest he is wiser, and owing to the priesthood in his own person he teaches the disciple who is a learner; the desire which is his craving for learning is also owing to that in his own priest, when he was a disciple unto his own priest.

5. And the disciple and priest are even such as is said thus: 'The director (farmādār) of the profession of priests (āsravōān) of Pārs, and chieftain over the faithful and the officiating priests (magōpatān) of Pārs, is the leader of the religion; and his disciple (ashakardō) is a disciple in a selected foremost position among the priests of the religion, set up (madām āgāst) over those acquainted with the commentary (zand-ākāsānō).'

---

1 The word mádīgān means a treatise upon almost any subject, but it is specially applied to the Nasks or books of the complete ancient literature of the Mazda-worshippers, which are now nearly all lost. It should be noted that 'teaching' and 'learning' are expressed by the same word in Pahlavi.

2 The Avesta is the religious literature in its original language, erroneously called Zend by Europeans, and the Zand is the Pahlavi translation of the same literature, with the Pahlavi commentary (see Bd. Introd. p. x).

3 Reading ham-vikhō yehevūnīh and taking ham-vikhō as equivalent to Pers. angīkht.

4 This was the post held by the author himself (see Chap. XCIV, 13).
more infallible (asaktar) of these is the powerful skill of the priest (aërpatō) put forth through the ritual and Visparad\(^1\), and his skill in the commentary (zand); the skill of disciples in the Avesta is, further, fully understood, and sin recognised as oppressive, through the formulas (nīrang) of the sacred ceremony, ablution and non-ablution, purity and pollution.

7. And both professions are the indispensable preservers of great decisions as to that which the priestly disposition has taught, done, and considered about the perpetual existence of every being, the complete goodness and final success of the non-existent evil and entire good of the sacred beings, the annihilation of the demons\(^2\), and the complete understanding of the friends of the sacred beings.

---

**Chapter XLVI.**

1. The forty-fifth question is that which you ask thus: Is it allowable that those of the priesthood, when there is no daily livelihood for them from the life of the priesthood, should abandon the priesthood, and that other work be done, or not?

---

\(^1\) The term yastō, 'ritual,' means any form of prayer with ceremony, and appears to include the Yasna or chief ceremonial ritual. The Visparad (here written Vispōrēdō) is a particular form of ceremonial prayer, the various sections of which are interspersed among those of the Yasna and Vendidad in the full liturgy of the Mazda-worshippers; it is called Visparad, 'all chiefs,' because it commences with an invocation of all the spiritual chiefs of the universe.

\(^2\) K35 has khasānō, which might stand for khasānō, 'reptiles,' but is more probably a slight alteration of sēdānō, 'demons,' which would correspond to the more modern form, sēdānō, in M14.
2. The reply is this, that there is no loss of reputation to priests from priestly duties (aērpatth), which are themselves the acquired knowledge that is accumulated by the priestly disposition, care for the soul, and the requisite good works. 3. And there is this advantage, that, through acquaintance with the religion of the sacred beings, and certainty as to the reward of the spirit, they make them become more contented in adversity, more intelligent as regards stability of character in difficulty and restriction, and more through knowledge the abode of hope for those saved. 4. So that it is not fit they should abandon the priesthood, which is both harmless and an employment with advantages that has required much trouble to learn.

5. But, indeed, when they do not obtain a daily livelihood from priestly duty, and the good do not give them chosen righteous gifts for it, and they do not let them obtain any from next of kin or the wicked even by begging, a livelihood may be requested from the paid performance of ceremonies, management of all religious rites (dīnā), and other priestly disciple's duty therein. 6. When even by that they do not obtain it, they are to seek a livelihood by agriculture, sheep-rearing, penmanship, or other proper employment among priests; and when it is not possible for them to live even by these, they are to seek it by bearing arms, hunting, or other proper employment in the profession of a virtuous warrior. 7. And when even it is not

1 K35 has 'beg,' both here and in § 6, the difference between the two words in Pahlavi being only a stroke.

2 See Chap. XLIV, 19.

3 That is, from the general funds of the priesthood.
possible for them to maintain their own bodies, which are in requisite control, by that which is cravingly digested, they are to beg a righteous gift\(^1\) authorisedly (dastôbarthâ) as an effectual remedy; by living idly, or not expending strength, their own bodies, which are in control, are without livelihood, but not authorisedly\(^2\).

---

**Chapter XLVII.**

1. *As to* the forty-sixth question *and* reply, that which you ask is thus: At a sacred feast (myazd)\(^3\) of those of the good religion, in which there are fifty or a hundred men, more or less, just as it happens, and seven men who are engaged in the performance of the religious rite (dínô) which is celebrated by them are feasting together with them, of those seven men there are some who are easily\(^4\) able to pray five sections (vídak)\(^5\), and some six subdivisions (vakhshinô), of the Avesta, *but* no chapter (fargardô)\(^6\) of the commentary (zand) is

---

\(^1\) That is, charity.

\(^2\) That is, they are not authorised to beg charity for maintaining themselves in idleness.

\(^3\) The sacred feast consists of the consecration of the sacred cakes (see Chap. XXX, 1), followed by that of wine and fruit with the recitation of the Àfringân or blessings (see Haug's Essays, p. 408), after which the consecrated food and drink are consumed by those present, both priests and laymen.

\(^4\) That is, they know the prayers by heart, which is necessary in reciting the Avesta.

\(^5\) Compare Pers. vâî, vîd, vîdá, 'part, little,' guz, 'a portion, a bundle of folios.' Mîû has nask, 'book,' but this is clearly an unlucky guess.

\(^6\) The chapters of the Vendidâd are called fargardôs, as are also
easy to them; and all seven of them are disputing about the right (rás) to the foremost places. 2. And he to whom thirty chapters in ¹ the commentary are easy speaks thus: 'The foremost place is mine, and it became my place owing to great retentiveness of memory, for I know the commentary well and "the proper and improper\(^2\);" and my place must be good, for whenever I do not indicate this as the place of religion unto the people I am not in the security of religion; but you should not dispute about my place, for it is not becoming to dispute it, because this neglect and outlandishness (an-affīh), which some one brings constantly into the religion, is not due to me.' 3. Those seven men, moreover, speak constantly unto him thus: 'Our place is more important and must ever be so, for every man of us is able to pray several sections in his own officiating priestly duty (zōtīh), and it is ever necessary to consider who is more participating in sharing a reward.' 4. Then as to those whose Avesta is very easy, or him who knows the commentary and 'the proper and improper' well, and their goodness and greatness, as asked by us in this chapter, direct some one to make them clear unto us, for when he demonstrates the littleness and greatness in this

those of the Vistāsp Yāst and many of the lost Nasks or books. The text here applies the term specially to the chapters of some scripture with commentary, and it may be noted that the thirty fargards, subsequently mentioned, are the exact number contained in the Vendidad and Vistāsp Yāst taken together, the learning of which by heart (as the word 'easy' implies) is a very serious task, comparable with learning the whole Greek text of the four Gospel's.

¹ Perhaps 'with' is meant, but the word used is pāvan.
² See Chap. XLIV, 2.
subject his great religion is then completely an advantage.

5. The reply is this, that, as to that which you ask me to write, so that they may decide whether thirty chapters in the commentary are easier, or really the other, be they five or be they six sections of the Avesta, are easier, there is no deciding, because which are the chapters and which the sections? 6. For, as regards more cleverness and less cleverness, it is not clear; there are some of the sections greater than many sections, and there are chapters as great as many chapters, but to understand severally the divisions (buris) and enumeration of him to whom five sections of the Avesta are easy, and also of him whose thirty chapters in the commentary are easy, it is necessary for making the calculation to consider every single division in the commentary as equivalent to seven equal divisions apart from the commentary. 7. And it is thereby thus manifest who has skill in the one and who has skill in the other, and whoever has less, when there is nothing in it regarding which he is otherwise than when the superintending command of rulers (khûdâ-yân) delivered over to him the place of duty—or on account of a new officiating priestly duty or directorship (radîh) of the season festivals, or the

---

1 The reason for this difference is that it is only necessary to learn the words of the Avesta, without understanding them, whereas a knowledge of the Zand, or commentary, implies understanding both texts as well as knowing the Avesta by heart.

2 M14 omits the repetition of the words mûn afzâr, but it seems necessary for the completion of the idiomatic phrase.

3 The six Gâsânâbârs or Gâhambârs are festivals, each held for five days, and severally ending on the 45th, 105th, 180th, 210th, 290th, and 365th days of the Parsi year. They were probably
foremost places being occupied, or like causes he becomes otherwise—is fit for all the great share and very good estimation of the place of one much more skilful, when their being fitting and skilful, or their excess or deficiency, is not specially manifest from their skill. 8. And him to whom the commentary is very easy, having prayed much, it has seemed important to consider more thriving proportionable to his eating.

9. And great and ample respect for both their ways of worthiness is an advantage and fully necessary, skill in the commentary and that in the Avesta being together mutually assisting; for even the solemnizers of the Avesta have need for information from the commentary about the scattered (parvand) ‘proper and improper’ usages of the sacred ceremony.

10. The more efficient information from the commentary is advantageous when the ceremonial is proceeded with by them, and one of those two is one of the skilful, and a friend, provider, glorifier, and aggrandizer for the other; and the friends of religion are good friends and, therefore, also providers of fame for both of them.

intended originally to celebrate the periods of midspring, midsummer, the beginning of autumn, the beginning of winter, midwinter, and the beginning of spring (see Sls. XVIII, 3), when the Parsi year was fixed to begin at the vernal equinox. In later times they were supposed to commemorate the creations of the sky, water, earth, vegetation, animals, and man.

1 The meaning seems to be that a priest once acknowledged as pre-eminent is not to lose his right of precedence merely because others become rather better qualified, so long as he himself does not retrograde, or is not superseded in his official duties. But if through any accidental circumstance he be excluded from the chief seat, he ought not to dispute the matter.

2 Or, perhaps, ‘through being moderate in his eating.’
11. When, too, they are publishing accusing statements, one about the other, from necessity, or from the violence which is owing to the adversary, it is important to become an excuser as regards them, and not a diminisher of their share, nor a bringer (ākhtār) of unhealthiness to their united strength.

Chapter XLVIII.

1. The forty-seventh question is that which you ask thus: How is a liking for the desirableness, joy, and pleasure arising from the sacred ceremony (yāsīn) friendly to Aūhrāmāz, the archangels, and the guardian spirits of the righteous; in what manner is the perfection of him by whom the ceremony is ordered and the people of the country then exalted by them; and how and in what manner does it become the vexation, defeat, anguish, and discomfort of the evil spirit, the demons, and the fiends? 2. How is the purpose of the ceremony, what is the ceremony, where is the place when they shall perform it, what is good when they shall

---

1 The evil spirit.

2 The archangels are usually reckoned as seven in number, because Aūhrāmāz, their creator, is considered as presiding over the six others, whose names are Vohūman, Ardāvahist, Shatvaird, Spendārmād, Horvadād, and Amerōdad. These names are merely corruptions of Avesta phrases meaning 'good thought, perfect rectitude, desirable dominion, bountiful devotion, health, and immortality,' respectively, and the archangels, or 'immortal benefactors,' are personifications of these ideas. They are said to have been the first creatures created, after the guardian spirits or prototypes of creation, the light, and the sky (see Bd. I, 8, 23–26).

3 See Chap. II, 5.

4 Or gās may mean 'time.'
perform *it, and how is it* good when they shall perform *it*?

3. The reply is this, that the great satisfaction of Aûharmazd and the archangels *arising* from the sacred ceremony is in the purity of its formulary (*nîrang*), *and* also in this, that *it* is completely fulfilling his own blessed commands; because he ordered that entire goodness for the complete procedure of those of the good religion (*bûndakû hûdînakânakîth*), *as* the recompense and full allotment of the sure Upholder of religion *among* those who rightly recite *it*. 4. From the performance of the ceremonial of the sacred beings are the propitiation of the good spirits, the destruction (*dûgî- *snû*), of violence, the increase of digestiveness, the growth of plants, the prosperity of the world, *and* also the proper progress of living beings, even until the movement of the renovation *of the universe and the immortality of the creatures arise therefrom.* 5. It became *so*, it is expressly said, because the sacred beings are great; and unitedly opposing it the demons are particularly undesirous of *it*, and owing to it their defeat *and* vexation are severe; its *consecrated* cup (*tâstîkû*)\(^1\) also becomes the express preservation of the ceremony.

6. And its purpose enquired about is this, that religion is transmitted clearly to the intelligent, that is, *it is* not the wisdom whose comprehension *exists* in worldly beings; and as, moreover, even that which is not understood by worldly wisdom is really the

---

\(^1\) Referring probably to the cup of Hûm juice, the preparation, consecration, and use of which are essentially characteristic of the Yasîn or sacred ceremony, and are, therefore, supposed to be very repulsive to the demons.
creature of the spirits, that also which is the spiritual formulary (nfrăng) is for making it intelligible to worldly beings through the body. That religion which is comprehensible by the world and authoritative (nikēzakō) is rightly connected with that which worldly beings are quite able to understand through worldly wisdom; and the understanding about its evidence as to that which is spiritual and powerful, apart from the worldly evidence of superiors (avarīkānō), is the right way of the intelligent. That proper (kānō) purpose—in which, moreover, the ceremonial, owing to timely memory for its own completion, is unique—is this unique exhibition of purity in the pure glorifying of the heavenly angels, as is commanded; just as the purpose of the ceremonial of a season-festival being before the season-festival, and of maintaining (dārān) the exposure of the body of a jackal (sakhāl) or a man, is to make the body clean from the corrupting (nasūstīkō) pollution, and also from outward contamination.

That also which might be written, as to the much retribution appointed as regards washing the limbs outside with clean moisture from clean

---

1 That is, the purpose of the ceremonial is to afford an outward symbol of the spiritual mysteries of the religion.
2 This reading is uncertain, but the reference appears to be to the exposure of the dead. MI4 has the sentence altered as follows:—'just as the ceremony of a season-festival is exhibited more royally (or more joyously) before the season-festival, and a man who is a judge is for the purpose of making the body clean from the corrupting pollution, and also from contamination which is even outside the body, as much as is proper.'
3 That is, the pollution due to the Nasūr, or fiend of corruption, who is supposed to seize upon all corpses (see Chap. XVII, 7).
animals and plants, and then completely washing the body with the purifying water streaming forth; as to the clean scents among those which they rightly perceive, and making the body and clothing sweet-scented; and as to the putting on of the white and proper garment of Vohúman, and supposing the power of avarice to be the sight of distress, is all superfluous. 10. But it is needful still as regards these matters, that is, while engaged in the ceremonial it is not to be hurried owing to any hunger or thirst, owing to liability of punishment for religious practices, or even owing to deficiency of vacant space. 11. And before the ceremonial one is to eat at the appropriate time, and such food, too, as is preparable and only moderately troublesome (navás); and any of that which one has to perform aloud in leaving the heavenly-minded, yet moderate, duty in the abode of fires—which is perpetual light—is proper, pertaining to good works, and good for him, and thereby lodging in him. 12. And they, that is,

1 Referring to ceremonial purification by washing with bull’s urine.
2 Or ‘the clothing of the body.’
3 The sacred shirt (see Chaps. XXXIX, 19, XL, 2).
4 Reading va zórir, but it may be nizórir, ‘weakening.’
5 This seems to be the meaning of min padáfrahíh-ī dínōkīth. At the time this was written the religion was often persecuted, and its ceremonies were liable to interruption; but even when such a misfortune was apprehended, they were not to be hurried over.
6 The word is kamth in the MSS., but it may possibly have been kāmth originally, in which case the meaning would be: ‘or even owing to wishing for evacuation.’
7 The fire temple, where the sacred fire is kept perpetually burning.
the gloomy ones\textsuperscript{1}, thereby see the service (yasāk) for them themselves is short; \textit{and} good are \textit{they}\textsuperscript{2} who come into the world glorified by praise.

13. The position of the \textit{ceremony}-holders\textsuperscript{3} themselves, that is, the position of the officiating priest (zōtō) \textit{and} his co-operators, is the Aūrvēs\textsuperscript{4} place; and, if \textit{it} be the precinct (dargasth) of prayers\textsuperscript{5}, \textit{one} should wash \textit{it} over (madam pasāyād) \textit{with} the water of purification, to make \textit{it} clean. 14. The apparatus of the ceremonial, \textit{together} with its own man, who is a solemnizer, and the two creatures \textit{which} are solid\textsuperscript{6} out of these four: fire, metal, water, and plants, just as \textit{one has} to bring \textit{them} together in readiness, the stone Aūrvēs, the stone \textit{and} mortar Khān\textsuperscript{7}, \textit{and} the Hōm-mortar\textsuperscript{8} (hāvanāth), cups, \textit{and} crescent-shaped (māh-rūpō) stands\textsuperscript{9} set upon \textit{it}, are \textit{all} ceremoniously washed (pādyāvīnīd) with the water of purification. 15. The

\textsuperscript{1} The demons. In M\textsuperscript{14} the sentence, already obscure, is altered so as to be unintelligible.

\textsuperscript{2} The angels. The meaning is that, by the utterance of the proper formulas at the proper times, the demons are discouraged, and the angels are induced to come to the ceremony.

\textsuperscript{3} Perhaps we should read sākhtārān, ‘preparers,’ as in M\textsuperscript{14}, or else yāstārān, ‘solemnizers,’ instead of dāstārān, ‘holders.’

\textsuperscript{4} This is the name of the consecrated space within which the ceremony is performed. It is often written Arvīs, but is probably to be traced to the Av. urvaēsa, ‘goal.’

\textsuperscript{5} That is, when the place is about to be used for a ceremony.

\textsuperscript{6} Literally ‘material,’ meaning the metallic and vegetable portions of the ceremonial apparatus.

\textsuperscript{7} The slightly raised platform or table upon which all the apparatus, except the fire and unconsecrated water, is placed.

\textsuperscript{8} In which the twigs of Hōm are pounded and mixed with water.

\textsuperscript{9} For the Baresōm or sacred twigs (see Chap. XLIII, 5).
bright fire on the clean fire-stand (āṭtstō)\(^1\) is increased by the dry firewood delivered to it purified, and one is to put upon it at appropriate times the wholesome perfumes of various kinds of plants; and the water of purification, which is ritualistically produced\(^2\) by reciting the words of revelation, is in the clean metal cups. 16. The well-grown Hōm\(^3\) through which the world is possessed of creatures, the Hōm through which the production of Zaratūst occurred\(^5\), is a symbol of the white Gōkerānō\(^6\) as

\(^1\) A small stone platform on which the fire vase is placed, now usually called ādōst.

\(^2\) Reading nīrāngīkẖā dād instead of the unintelligible nīrāng ashāyād of K\(^{35}\), which is very similarly written in Pahlavi; M\(^{14}\) has 'which one is to keep pure by the ritual of words of revelation.'

\(^3\) A plant said to grow among the mountains in southern Persia, which has not yet been botanically identified, but Anquetil Duperron was told that it resembled a vine without fruit. Twigs of this plant are brought to India by traders and are, therefore, considered impure until they have been purified, laid aside for a year, and again purified' (see Haug's Essays, p. 399). A few fragments of these twigs are pounded and mixed with water in the Hōm-mortar, and the juice is tasted by the priest who performs the ceremony. The Avesta Hōm and the Sanskrit Soma must have been originally the same plant, but both Parsis and Hindus now use plants which are no doubt mere substitutes for that original. In southern and western India the Soma plant now used by the Brahmans is the Sarcostemma Brevistigma, a leafless bush of green succulent branches, growing upwards, with flowers like those of an onion; when not in flower it can hardly be distinguished from the Euphorbia Tirucalli, or thornless milk-bush, commonly used for hedges in many parts of India.

\(^4\) Reading dām-hōmand; or it may be sem-hōmand, 'renowned.'

\(^5\) Zaratūst is said to have been begotten in consequence of his parents drinking Hōm-juice and cow's milk infused, respectively, with his guardian spirit and glory (see Zs. XI, 10 n). K\(^{35}\) has hōman, and M\(^{14}\) has hōmand, instead of hōm, in this clause.

\(^6\) Av. gaokerena, sometimes called gōkard in Pahlavi, the
regards the immortality of the renovation of the
universe manifest therefrom, and the resting-places
of its vengeance are the various demons; and with
it one is to put attentively (sinvisnō-dahak) in its
appropriate place the pomegranate (hadana pag) plant
of the Aûvarām. 17. The vegetable sacred
twigs carefully girded with the vegetable belt (par-
vand) and girdle, and the metallic crescent-shaped
stands—which are in the position of those who are
sovereigns of the worldly creatures who are inter-
preted as the sacred twigs of the treatises—are
prepared.
18. When arranged (stordō) by the bringing
together of clean worldly productions, so much the
more purely as is possible, the arrival of the pure
renders all the symbols reliable. 19. Those cele-
brators of whom the outside of their own bodies is
defiled with their bodily refuse and in clean cloth-
ing, and their disposition—if in the religion of

mythic white Hôm-tree which is said to grow in the wide-formed
ocean, and from which the draught of immortality is prepared for
mankind at the resurrection (see Vend. XX, 17, Bd. XVIII, 1–4,
XXVII, 4, XXX, 25).

1 Reading ayêṅgh nisîm, but this is uncertain.
2 Av. hadhānaēpata, to represent which the Parsis now use a
twig of the pomegranate bush, but it must originally have been
some sweet-scented plant (see Vend. VIII, 7). The Aûvarām
(Av. acc. urvarām) consists of this twig, a small fragment of which
is pounded with the Hôm-twigs when preparing the Hôm-juice.

3 From this it would appear that the practice of using metal
wires, instead of twigs of trees, for the baresôm (see Chap.
XLIII, 5) was not in use a thousand years ago.

4 Literally 'Shatavrian;' the archangel Shatvāfrō (Av. khsa-
thra vaiyra, 'desirable dominion') having special charge of all
metals (see Bd. XXX, 19, Sls. XV, 14–19).

5 Reading baresom; K35 has basom and M14 btm-ik.
6 M14 substitutes yoshdâsarînīdō for denman higarînīdō,
moderate eating in which is a thirst for lawfully drinking—is customarily sleep and lethargy through the tendency (rûnū) to falsehood of their wisdom, are to consider, even from their innermost hearts and minds, the retribution of the body of wrath, the falsehood, and bad thoughts in that disposition of infamy, and the recompense of their own renunciation of it; they are to atone for their sinfulness, and to seek great purification of mind. 20. And having acquired eyes speaking\(^1\) forth, hands in a state of ablation, and every other member of the body—especially there where well-accomplishable—free from its bodily refuse and covered with the clean clothing, the tongue is preserved and guarded from falsehood and the hand from sin, the mind is established by little preparation with good consideration for knowledge of the sacred beings, and even the good are to recite by direction (rad\(\text{î}\)hâ) the verbal renunciation of sin\(^2\).

21. The officiating priest (z\(\text{dt}\)ô), having directed and purified the place\(^3\) of the fire with liturgical words\(^4\), is to go and walk unto the place of the officiating priests\(^5\) while glorifying the sacred beings,

\(\text{and } p\text{admûkht for } \text{va khîm hat, so as to read 'the outside of their own bodies is purified and attired in clean clothing,' but this can hardly be reconciled with the context. The term hîgar or hîkhar (Av. hîkhra), here translated 'bodily refuse,' is applied to any refuse or dirt from the living body, or any liquid exudation from a dead one.}

\(\text{Reading } g\text{ôvak, but it may be } y\text{ûvak, 'wishing,' or } d\text{ûvak, 'flowing.' M}\text{14 alters it to } v\text{ênâk, 'looking,' which suits the eyes well enough, but hardly seems to express the author's idea.}

\(\text{See Chap. XLI, 5.}

\(\text{M}\text{14 has 'having purified around the place.'}

\(\text{The Átas Nyâyis (see Haug's Essays, p. 403).}

\(\text{This place is at the end of the ceremonial area farthest from}
and to consider invokable the glory given to the luminaries and the guardian spirits of the good. 22. Of those also who, co-operatively, conjointly, and interspersed (ham-rès), have each separately remained in their own places and thought of the sacred beings, with propitiation of Aûharmazd and scornful notice (tar dahisnô) of the evil spirit, the employment stands forth prominently at the ceremonial. 23. As to the position of others co-operating with him who is an officiating priest of good leadership, there are some who are for the Avesta, there is the solitude (khâdûtdârîh) by the fire, there are some who are bringers forward of water, there are some who are for carriers away, there are some who are solitary ones, there are some who are gregarious ones, there are some who are directors of duties, and their own needful arrangement in the place is arranged in the ceremony.

24. In cleanliness, purity, and truth, as much as there is in this mingled existence, if one has to commence a ceremony glorifying the sacred beings, the fire. Here the priest first invokes the spirits in whose honour the ceremony is about to be performed, by reciting their several propitiatory formulas (see Chap. XXIX, 1).

1 Referring to any other priests who may be present.

2 M14 has 'for carriers,' omitting the three clauses about the Avesta, fire, and bringing water.

3 Or, perhaps, 'there is he who may be a bringer;' and similarly in the following clauses. The plural suffix -1há being identical in form with the Pâz. conditional form of the verb 'to be,' which seems to be the origin of the adverbial suffix corresponding to -ly in English when added to an adjective; occasionally it is added to a substantive, as is probably the case here, and can then be only translated by 'may, or would, be' (see Chap. XLIV, 11).

4 This first clause may belong to the preceding section.
when the righteously-disposed temperament is purified along with the apparatus the abundant ritualism (nīrangi-khāth) of the spirit is a symbol and reminder of the will of the sacred beings, undesired by the fiend, and remains a blessing deservedly unto those come together. 25. Then is explained the text (avistāk) of that great scripture (nāskō) which is called the Hādōkhāt, that is itself the best of the chiefs of the scriptures, and of the sublime Dvāzdah-hōmāst that is not recited by any voice with falsehood (ākadbā), and is called 'the origin of every truth.'

26. The pure glorification of the sacred beings is in the light, this is in the morning time (frāyar gās); and even until night the ritualistic and true

1 K35 has drōn, 'sacred cake,' instead of drōg.
2 The twentieth Nask, which is said to have chiefly treated of religious ceremonies and texts (see Byt. III, 25). Two Avesta fragments, published by Westergaard as Ýt. XXI and XXII, are traditionally ascribed to this Nask.
3 Another name for the Dāmdād Nask, from which the Bundahis appears to have originated (see Zs. IX, r). The name is also applied to a particular series of ceremonies, continued for twelve successive days in honour of each of the twenty-two sacred beings whose names are given to the rst-7th, 9th-14th, 16th-22nd, 24th, and 26th days of the month; these ceremonies last, therefore, for 264 days (see Byt. II, 59).
4 It can hardly be akadbā, as that would imply that it 'is not recited by any undeceitful voice.' The use of the prefix ā- in the sense of 'with' is rare, but it occurs in āpūstanā, 'pregnant,' (whence Pers. ābistān), and is noticed by Dastūr Jāmāspji in his Pahlavi Dictionary, p. 2.
5 Reading bun-l kōlā rāstth, apparently a forerunner of the modern name Bundahir.
6 The frāyar period of the day corresponds to the Hāvan Gāh or morning (compare Farh. Okh. p. 42 with Bd. XXV, 9), at which time the Yasna ceremonial should be performed when not accom-
recitation of revelation (dīnā) is unchangeably proceeding, undivided and faultless. 27. This, too, is in benediction of the angels; this, too, is producing restraint of the fiends; this, too, is in praise of the glorious ones, the mighty doers; this, too, is as an admonition for creatures subject to command; this is in the true words of the ancients who have passed away; this, too, is as a suitable servant for the righteous, these good doers; this, too, is to obtain a permanence (patīstān) of requisites; this, too, is suitable for the discreet and is merciful; this, too, is as another way in which the promoters of good (vēh-yāvkārān) are pardoned, as soon as the Ḥôm-juice (parāhōm) is digested, through not having eaten from dawn till night during the pure utterance of the pure glorification. 28. And, moreover, one performs no work\(^1\), nor is even a word uttered; one does not go to sleep, nor should they allow any pollution to the body; the sequence (patīsārth) of the religious formulas is, likewise, not changed from that ordered, nor is even a detached thought away from that truth and purity; but always with phrases rightly consecutive and properly worded (hū-sakh-unagānōthā) the Avesta is uttered; and even the manner of response of one's co-operators is in modes contributing to good (hū-padāyākō), or they utter the scripture (nāsk).

29. Since the production of stench is needing something essentially purifying, many formulas in the ceremonial are tokens and signs which, while they

\(^1\) During the ceremonial.
are strongly manifested, are terrifying and vexing to the demons, and inviting and rejoicing to the angels. 30. Such as, indeed, the pure Ḥōm, which is squeezed out by four applications of holy-water (zōrtāh) with religious formulas, is noted even as a similitude of the understanding and birth of the four apostles bringing the good religion, who are he who was the blessed Zarātūst and they who are to be Hūshēdār, Hūshēdār-māh, and Sōshāns. 31. As also the metal mortar (hāvan) which is struck during the squeezing of the Ḥōm, and its sound is evoked along with the words of the Avesta, which becomes a reminder of the thoughts, words, and deeds on the coming of those true apostles into the world. 32. As also the proper rite as regards the water, that they should perform three times, which is showing the world the glorious seizing of water and formation

1 In preparing the Ḥōm-juice fresh holy-water (zōrt) is added four times to the Ḥōm-twigs which are each time pounded anew, while reciting the Ahunavar formula, and their liquor strained into a cup (see Haug's Essays, p. 402).

2 There is no authority for translating sinvisnō by 'conception,' otherwise that meaning would suit this sentence better. Mīr has yehevūnisnō, 'existence,' which differs by only one extra stroke of the pen in Pahlavi.

3 See Chap. II, 10.

4 The word sikāvi-aftō really means 'is split.' During the pounding of the Ḥōm-twigs the pestle is struck several times against the sides of the mortar, so as to produce a ringing sound (see Haug's Essays, p. 401).

5 Reading vidanāg, instead of gūn-aē, by transposing the first two Pahlavi characters. After the first series of poundings of the Ḥōm-twigs holy-water is added to them three times while reciting, each time, the Ashem-vohû formula (ibid.).

6 The evaporation from the ocean, said to be effected by Tīstār for the production of rain (see Chap. XCIII, 2, 3).
of rain, and the healthfulness of the production of rain. 33. And as the purification of the milk, by the glorious ritualistic product (nīrang) taken from the purifying cattle, is divided in two, by means of which the token is that which is great, glorious, and good; one being for the daughter of Pāurvāgtrīyā the Mazda-worshipper, and from her was Aōshnôr full of wisdom; and one being Farhank, daughter of Vidhirisâ, and from her came Kat-Kavâd.

34. And, as to the high-priests of the glorious religion, it is said many concomitants (padvandthâ) are obtained; such as, much discrimination of scripture (nask), the holy-water which is indispensable as a remedy, the healthfulness which is given in that ceremonial to the sacred fire which the world destroys, that pre-eminent strength which is given at the end of the world from the ox Hadhayās unto the good people scattered about (fravaštân)—it is

1 The delightfulness of rain after an eight-months' drought cannot be adequately appreciated by a dweller in Europe.
2 That is, bull's urine.
3 The reading of this name, as well as that of Aōshnôr, is doubtful; but if these names occur at all in the extant Avesta, they may perhaps be found in the Aōshnara pouru-gûra of Fravardîn Yt. 131, Âf. Zarat. 2; the epithet pouru-gûra, when it occurs after the name, would naturally be considered a patronymic, whence a father or grandfather could be easily created, if he did not exist already in legendary history.
4 This name is written in Pâzand, and is evidently meant for the same person as the Pâz. Vidhârg-âfrâstaka of Bd. XXXI, 31, where Farhank is said to have been the mother of Kaś-Apîvēh and, therefore, the wife of Kat-Kavâd.
5 M14 has 'from him she came unto Kaś-Kavâd,' which would tally better with the statements in Bd. XXXI, 25, 31.
6 Literally 'the fire of Varahrân (Bahrân).'
7 See Chap. XXXVII, 99.
mingled with the fire of men's bodies\(^1\), and they, therefore, become perfect and immortal through it—and there are also other things. 35. There are also in the ceremomial many tokens and signs of spiritual mysteries, glorious matters, and habitual practices of which statements would be very tedious.

36. And if the wish (ayûpî) should be this, that they should be engaged in a single ceremony of the length of a day, a man who is righteous in purification, inside and outside the body, should stay away from all his relations and the worldly transaction of business, from malicious actions and covetous practices, separated from all lying and falsehood of relatives; and his words are to be all those which are serving the angels, glorifying, and begging favours. 37. Then, indeed, the way of the spirit and the harmoniousness\(^2\) of the sacred beings are manifest therefrom; and those which are as much the means due to the primitive good creations as is more purely possible are strengthening as regards the utility (bûn) for offering, encouraging for purity, confounding for the confusers (gûmêgâkân), terrifying for the fiends, and propitiating for the sacred beings.

38. The ceremonial which is good is when they shall perform it for a pure disposition and assured wisdom, a minder of the religion of the sacred beings of the spheres, and with pure thoughts, just thoughts\(^3\), wise deeds, a purified body, a tongue worthy of good

---

\(^1\) The vital heat or Vohu-fryân fire (see Bd. XVII, i, 2).

\(^2\) Reading âhankânakîh, as in K35; M14 has khâdûkânakîh, 'unity,' which is a much commoner word, nearly identical with the other in its Pahlavi form.

\(^3\) So in the MSS., but it was probably 'true words' originally, so as to complete the triad of thought, word, and deed.
(vēh-saṣâk), a scripture (nâsk) made easy, a true text (avistâk), ablutions performed, proper rites, undivided, and faultless. 39. Near which fashion, with like abilities, and innumerable times, it is very purely solemnized in the abode of the ever-growing fire, then in the abode of the other sacred fires, then in the abodes of Mazda-worshippers and other good people, and then in other places pronounced clean. 40. That of the three days is in the abode of the fire-place which is nearest to that of the departed; the ceremony of the guardian spirits of the righteous is solemnized in purity there where the dwelling is which is nearest that of the departed whose soul is honoured. 41. And that for victories in war is then at its times of battle, the husbandry of Sâm and other offenders (vinâsagân) who were for keeping away husbandry, the household attendant's place for a warrior of another rank, the occasion of the outcry of those not possessing (adârtgân) a lodging, unto the rest of the same temperament (mûnôkô), expressly to produce and maintain a proportional resemblance.

1 That is, learnt by heart.
2 Literally 'fires of Varahrân.'
3 The three days after a death, during which ceremonies are performed in honour of the angel Srôsh, who is supposed to protect the departed soul from the demons during that period, while it is still hovering about the body (see Chap. XXVIII, 6).
4 On the fourth day after a death (see Chap. XXVIII, 7).
5 That is, Keresâsp the Sâman (see Chap. XVII, 6); having been a famous warrior his husbandry is said to be battle, the destruction of all ordinary husbandry.
6 That is, the ruin of people by war leads them to demand a share of the property of those more fortunate, so as to produce an equality. The whole section seems to be a bitter sarcasm upon the effects of war, representing the generals as cultivators of
CHAPTER XLIX.

1. As to the forty-eighth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: As to them who shall buy corn and keep it in store until it shall become dear, and shall then sell it at a high price (pavan girâ-nôth), what is the nature of the decision?

2. The reply is this, that when there is nothing therein on account of which I should so deem it otherwise than due to the eating of the requisite amount (avâyîn) of food for one’s self, that which is his controlling impulse (sardârth), and not the teachings of the worthy and good, is the internal instruction which a time of scarcity has taught by means of the occurrences during that time; but clamorous worldly profit is want of diligence (akhapârakânth), for they would buy to make people distressed, and in order that they may sell again dearer. 3. Moreover, the store one keeps, and keeps as closed even unto the good as unto the bad—and though it be necessary for a man of the good and worthy, and they beg for some of the food, they shall not sell at the price it is worth at that time, on account of its becoming dearer—one keeps in store unauthorisedly and grievously sinfully, and every calamity of those good people they shall suffer who would not sell it at the price they beg.

slaughter and rapine, with the soldiers as their domestic servants, driving the people into social democracy.

1 K35 has a blank space for this word, but it is given in M14, and also occurs in a similar phrase in Chap. LIV, 6.

2 That is, so long as one does not lay in a store more than sufficient for one’s own requirements, it is only an act of prudence taught by former experience.
4. On account of that non-obtainment of corn, or that unlawfully heinous sin, and because of dearness of price it is not proper to give it for that non-distribution (an-afsânôlh) unto him himself, or those under his control, or the poor to whom it would be given by him¹; and the distribution (rêsh isnô) which occurs is then retaliative upon him. 5. And if the corn be spoiled², through keeping too long a time in store, he is suffering assault from the hungry man (gûrsnô) who is injured even by that damaging (bôdyôzêdôh)³ of the corn; if through that unlawful want of preservation (adârisnôlh) noxious creatures are associated with the corn, he is overwhelmed also by that heinous sin; and through the profit of improper diligence he is unworthy.

6. But if it be necessary for their own people who are under their control, on account of the fear of a time of scarcity, they should buy at their own suitable time, and should afford protection. 7. Or, because of the teachings of the good and worthy, they should buy corn at a cheap price from a place where the corn is more than the requirements of the eaters, and they should bring it unto there where corn is scarce, provided (va hatô) the good and those requiring corn are sufficient (vasân). 8. So that, while their information of a scarcity of corn is even

¹ That is, corn is not to be sold to a man who keeps it in store for the purpose of raising the price, nor to his people, nor is it even to be given to the poor whom he relieves, so that he may be compelled to support them out of his own stores, as a penalty.
² Reading tapâhî-alt, as in M14.
³ Literally 'destroying the consciousness,' or 'injuring the existence.' Bôdyôzêd is a technical name for sins whereby animals are ill-treated, or useful property injured (see Sls. II, 39).
from him himself to whom the price would become profit\(^1\), or is the persistence of these same teachings of the good—so that it may become more abundant unto them than unto the bad, even in the time of scarcity when it is very much raised in price\(^2\)—they should buy corn at a cheap price during an excess of corn, so that one may keep it until the time of a period of scarcity. 9. When there occurs a necessity for it among the good he sells it at such price as one buys it at that time, that is, the market price (arg-\(\varepsilon\) shatr\(\delta\)t\(\lambda\)k)\(^3\); by that means, in a season of scarcity, much more is obtained in price, and it becomes more plentiful among the good; then a more invigorating (pad\(\delta\)kh\(\upsilon\)tnag\(\tau\)t\(\alpha\)) praise of him is commendable.

10. And, yet, as regards that which is suitable profit—and also apart from the eating of corn, from anything eatable for the maintenance of life, from medicine and remedies for the healthfulness of life, and from whatever is for the preservation of life—it is allowable that they shall buy and shall sell dear\(^4\).

---

Chapter L.

1. The forty-ninth question is that you ask thus: If they should sell wine unto foreigners and infidels what is then the decision about it?

---

1 And, therefore, likely to be correct, as it is given in opposition to his own interest.

2 M\(\delta\)\(\tau\)\(\mu\) has 'begged at a price,' by inserting a stroke.

3 Without holding it back for an exorbitant rise in prices.

4 That is, there is no harm in speculating upon prices, except in the case of necessaries of life.
2. The reply is this, that there is very vehement danger of grievous sin, and it would be an evil occupation. 3. But if through the operation of that wine-selling of theirs the wine is kept more away from those who become worse through immoderate drinking of wine, and comes to those who drink wine in moderation 1—whom they cause to become better through drinking the wine—more than when they shall not practise that selling of the wine, then through that selling of theirs the power which is in the wealth 2, by their keeping away of which a man is confirmed (paday1n1dö) in the good religion and diverted from going into infidelity, the progress of sin is impeded and good works are promoted, becomes the assistance of the good and protection of religion, the hindrance of sin and aid of good works, which, when they shall not practise that wine-selling, do not arise, and which are much more promoted than the various sins that might have arisen from the unlawfully drinking of wine. 4. Or, otherwise, the greater decision—and great are the good works which are assured therein—is thus: ‘They who shall sell wine 3 to foreigners, infidels, and others from whom unlawful conduct arises through drunkenness, act very sinfully and not authorisedly.’

1 That is, when the supply of wine is so limited that by selling it to moderate drinkers they keep it away from drunkards.
2 The wealth they acquire by selling wine, which would have produced evil in the hands of the buyers, and ought to produce good in their own.
3 K35 has vinâs, 'sin,' instead of âs, 'wine,' which is clearly wrong.
Chapter LI.

1. The fiftieth question is that which you ask thus: *As to one* of the good religion who drinks wine immoderately, and loss *and* injury happen to him owing to that immoderate drinking, what is then the decision about him? 2. And how is the measure of wine-drinking *which* when they drink is then authorised for them?

3. The reply is this, that whoever through the influence of opportunity drinks wine immoderately, *and* is adult and intelligent, through every loss *and* injury which thereupon come to him from that immoderate drinking, or *which* occasion anything unto any one, is then his causing such pollution to the creatures, in his own pleasurably\(^1\) varied modes, that the shame owing to it is a help (dastakith) out of that affliction. 4. And even *he* who gives wine authorisedly\(^2\) unto any one, and he is thereby intoxicated by it, is equally guilty of every sin which that drunkard commits owing to that drunkenness.

5. And concerning that drunkenness, what is said is that that is to be eaten *through* which, when *one* eats *it_, *one* thinks better, speaks better, and acts

---

\(^1\) K₃₅ has a blank space here for a word, but no word seems really necessary. M₁₄ fills up the blank by changing *gviđö* into *garđiṇđö*, and reads 'converted unto his own pleasure, and the mode,' &c.

\(^2\) M₁₄ has 'unauthorisedly,' a very natural emendation of the text as it stands in K₃₅, but it does not appear that the author intended to limit the responsibility of the person giving the wine merely to those cases in which his action would be quite unjustifiable.
better; and such even is the food by which, through having drunk wine, one becomes more virtuous, or does not become more vicious, in thought, word, and deed. 6. When an experiment as regards its being good is tried, so that having drunk it in that proportion one becomes better, or does not become worse, then it is allowable to drink it.

7. When an untried person, for the sake of being tried, has drunk a mingled portion, first of one drinking-cup, secondly of two drinking-cups, and thirdly of three drinking-cups, and through drinking it he becomes more virtuous, or does not become more vicious, in thought, word, or deed, he is to increase the drinking-cups, and the experiment is allowable unto those tested just so far as the proportion is such that he becomes better, or does not become worse. 8. To those tested it is authorisedly given to that amount through which the experimenting that is mentioned has extended; and to him who it is proved will become worse through the drinking of wine, that amount, through the drinking of which, when given in the experiment, it was seen that he became worse, is not authorisedly given.

9. In a case of doubt one is to consider him who is orthodox (ḥû-dînû), who has chanted the sacred hymns, and is of good repute, whose drunkenness

---

1 Reading ʻâv gâmakô, 'water-cup;' but it is written like ʻâv simakô in the MSS.
2 K35 has màn, M14 mînînô.
3 Reading yeḥabûntô instead of the unintelligible gân bûdô of K35, the alteration being merely lengthening the bottom stroke of the Pahl. b. M14 substitutes barâ yehevûned for bûdô gân bûdô, which gives the following meaning: 'through the drinking of which, in the experiment, it is seen that he becomes thoroughly worse.'
is not manifest, in this way, that he drinks as much
wine as was tried by him when he became no worse
by drinking it. 10. It is necessary to consider him
whose religion is unseen, whose religion is wrong,
and him who is a child furnished even with the
realities of religion, in this way, that he becomes
worse through having drunk wine. 11. When apart
from the decision there is no assignable (bangisntk)
reason as regards it, the share of wine which they
gave not authorisedly who themselves drank wine,
one considers as some of the wine on its being given
more authorisedly 1.

CHAPTER LII.

1. As to the fifty-first question and reply, that
which you ask is thus: There is a man who hands
over a dirham 2 as regards five bushels (kafta) of

1 The meaning appears to be that, when there is no special
reason to the contrary, the quantity of wine one may have already
drunk elsewhere is to be considered as part of one's allowance.

2 The dirham (δραχμή) is a weight, and also a silver coin of that
weight, but its amount is rather uncertain. According to the Pers.
MS. M5 (fol. 55), written A.D. 1723, the proper dowry for a 'privi-
leged' wife is 2000 dirhams of white silver, or 2300 rūpīs, and 2
dirhams of red gold, or 2½ tolas. The rūpīs formerly current in
Gugarāt were less in value than the present Indian coinage, but the
tola, which is the weight of the present rūpī, was probably much
the same as it is now, or 180 grains; the statement in M5 is, there-
fore, equivalent to saying that the dirham contained 202 grains
of pure silver. This is so much more than the amount deducible from
other authorities that it might be supposed that the str (στράτης) or
tetradrachm was meant, if it were not confirmed, to some extent,
by the Pers. Rivāyats, which state the dowry at 2000 dirhams of
pure white silver and 2 dinārs of red gold of the Nīshāpūr currency;
the dinār being a gold coin containing a dirham weight of pure
wheat, thus: 'I give this to thee as an instalment (bōn-ae)\(^1\) of five bushels of wheat at the end of a month;' and during the month, and at its end, those five bushels of wheat become five times the price; would they authorisedly seize the five bushels of wheat \(\text{when winnedow} \ (\text{pēkhtō} \ kardō)\) by him, through that instalment which he handed over, or not?

2. The reply is this, that when they who shall take his dirham have to intrust the five bushels of wheat, unsuspiciously and by their own will, to him to winnow, even so as they are advisedly and unsuspiciously winnowed by him they should take them just as winnowed; this is the decision authorisedly given. 3. But when it is winnowed by him on account of very grievous necessity for payment, it is more suitable for the soul to beg the giver of the money, who is the purchasing payer\(^3\), for some of that excess of undivided (apår) profit. 4. For \(\text{he has}\) to consider the profit of his successors as among the profit of money on the spot\(^3\)—\(\text{when} \) more than gold. It is safer, however, to rely upon the average weight of the Sasanian dirham coins, which, according to Dr. Mordtmann's statement in ZDMG. vol. xii, pp. 44, 45, is about 63 grains, or \(5\frac{1}{2}\) annas' worth of silver; so that the stir would be 252 grains or \(22\frac{3}{4}\) annas. But the actual value of such coins of former times can be ascertained only from the quantity of corn, or other well-defined necessary of life, which they would purchase.

\(^1\) K\(35\) has vaban twice in this sentence, but bōn in § 4. M\(14\) alters this word and others, so as to make the chapter unintelligible. The money is supposed to be given merely as a deposit, in acknowledgment of a bargain to be carried out after the corn is ready for delivery.

\(^2\) Reading zednunand dúkhār, but, perhaps, this is a corruption of zednuninidār, 'a causer of purchase, a broker.'

\(^3\) That is, 'ready money.'
such instalment demanded—and not as a fresh carrying off of a gift.

Chapter LIII.

1. As to the fifty-second question and reply, that which you ask is thus: If people of the good religion, in their country or out of their country, shall buy and sell with those of a different religion as regards cattle, or shall lay hold of traders (vandkgarān) and shall sell to them, what is then the decision about it? 2. When those of the good religion shall not buy, as they have not come up to the price, but the orthodox dealers shall sell to traders and those of a different religion, what is then the decision about it? 3. And about him, of whom the means of existence (živinšō mindašam) are such, what is then the decision?

4. The reply is this, that it would be very grievously sinful, and it would be an evil occupation to transact such business through the influence of opportunity, and to seek profit unauthorisedly in that manner.

5. But if it be the means of existence of those of the good religion of whom you have written, and they are not able to seek it in any other business and proper occupation which would be a less sinful means of existence, complete purchasers who have acquired

---

1 That is, having made a bargain, he is not to be aggrieved at any unexpected excess of profit made in good faith by the other parties to the bargain; a rather high standard of commercial morality.

2 The word is pûr, but it may be suspected of being a blunder, as tûrâ, 'ox,' would be a more likely word.
the good religion shall sell unto those of the good religion; because it is possible for him to be less sinful to whom it is allowable to beg the life of a comrade, for still the rule of a righteous man, with the righteous who are in his guardianship, is to live.

6. So it is possible, when they shall sell cattle for slaughter and foreign eating, many cattle—amounting even to a diminution of the maintenance of Irân—are more wretched than a righteous man forced to kill them through a living becoming unobtainable and the fear of death.

Chapter LIV.

1. As to the fifty-third question and reply, that which you ask is thus: A man whose wife, daughters, sisters, and relations are many, and who is the master of much wealth, becomes sick, and during the sickness has given this hoard of wealth unto one daughter. 2. And his other sisters and daughters are not contented therewith, and speak thus: 'This wealth ought to have been given during health and consciousness, not during sickness; and now it should not be allowable to give anything whatever unto any one during sickness, for if anything happens the wealth all comes back for division amongst us.'

3. Would it be allowable to give anything whatever of that wealth to any one, during sickness, or not?

---

1 Who would not be likely to kill the animal, and with whom they could come to an understanding as to its good treatment, so as to avoid the sin of bôdyôzêdh (see Chap. XLIX, 5 n).

2 M.4 has 'if he gives anything.'
4. Is it necessary for one of such wife, daughters, and sisters as there happen to be to appoint an adopted son for that man, because of that wealth, or not?

5. Are the wife, daughters, and sisters who shall take their share of the wealth responsible for the religious rites of every kind, and is it necessary for them to order the annual ceremonies for that man at the daily and yearly periods, or not?

6. The reply is this, that, when there is nothing therein on account of which I should so deem him otherwise than a man in sickness and nearly passing away, it is not allowable to give it up, except when it is for his debts, or his wife and children, or an aged person (zarmân) or father who is in his guardianship—whom it is indispensably necessary to maintain—and is such as, or as much as, is discreetly requisite for payment of the debt, or for the food, maintenance, and protection of those that I have written about; then, however, it is allowable to give it up away (btrûnò) from those of whom you have written, as much as during his consciousness.

7. In other sickness, not while passing away, whatever is given up by him himself during consciousness is allowable; when he is not conscious it is not allowable.

8. And on that which he says during unconsciousness one is not reliant and it is not credible (vâvar); but that which he says during

---

1 K35 has 'is it not necessary,' by using lâ, 'not,' instead of râl, 'for,' which latter reading is adopted in the text from M14, but it is doubtful which reading is the better one. The same variation occurs in § 5.

2 Literally 'are the rites on their necks.'

3 Ceremonies for the dead have to be performed on the first four days, the tenth day, and then at the end of a month and a year from the time of death (see Sl. XVII, 5).
consciousness, and that, too, which the same man gave unto a daughter when he was ill, if given by him consciously, are even then proceedings to be granted; if given by him during unconsciousness it is just as though he died without an opportunity of speaking (avâng-ptrûz)\(^1\).

9. Of the property left by will, one share is needful for each separate daughter for whom a husband is not provided, and two shares for a wife who may be a privileged one; and so long as the wife is living she exists as the house-mistress of the family; moreover, it is not needful to appoint an

---

\(^1\) For this uncommon word M\(_{14}\) substitutes avîk-andûrs, ‘intestate;’ but the meaning is that the gift is as invalid as if he had been unable to make a declaration of his intentions.

\(^2\) Levatman andûrs in K\(_{35}\), but M\(_{14}\) has avîk andûrs, ‘without a will,’ which, at first sight, appears the more plausible reading (especially as avîk, ‘without,’ is written very much like avâk, ‘with,’ the Pâz. synonym of levatman). But on further consideration it seems equally probable that this section is intended to limit the power of a testator, so as to prevent him from dividing so much of his property as he leaves to his family in any unfair manner. The rule here laid down would, of course, also apply in cases of intestacy when the testator has no son; and is that given in the Persian Rivâyats.

\(^3\) This does not imply that a man might have more wives than one, but that wives are of five classes, according to the circumstances of the marriage. A pâdakhsâh or ‘privileged’ wife is one who was a maiden married with the consent of her parents who have another child. A yûkân or ‘only-child’ wife differs from the last merely by being an only child, and having, therefore, to give up her first child to her parents. A satâr or ‘adopted’ wife is one who was a maiden enabled to marry by receiving a dowry from the relatives of a man who has died unmarried, on condition that half of her children shall belong to the deceased. A kâkâr or ‘serving’ wife is a widow who marries again. A khûd-sarái or ‘self-disposing’ wife is one who marries without her parents’ consent (see Bd. XXXII, 6 n).
adopted son (satôr), for the adopted son’s duty (satôrûth) remains with her, and she manages to claim guardianship for the family from some man out of the relatives most nearly allied. 10. Out of the portion of the property for food and maintenance the wife should provide the daughters with husbands; and to keep going the necessities in the guardianship, the nurture which the deceased man afforded, and the ceremonies and good works imposed upon the family, and thereby become indispensable, she herself is to take lapfuls and armfuls 1 out of the income (bar).

11. As to the sisters of that man, if they have been necessarily in his guardianship, even as to nourishment, and there is no property for them in any other way, their food and maintenance are also needful to be out of the income of the property, unless 2 that man has otherwise devised, or the appointment of a husband is not provided on account of the non-subjection (lôtô aîrîth) in which they have been unto the guardianship of that man, or anything else opposed to it, so that nothing whatever of the property of that man is needful for them.

12. He who is a husband of one of the daughters is a leader in the management (dastô barîth) of the family, but with the concurrence of the house-mistress of the family, and even so when the action is one which they should not do, and his son is not born, or becomes passing away 3.

1 Literally ‘the bosom size and arm size,’ a Pahlavi idiom for ‘plenty.’

2 In the Pahlavi text this latter half of the section precedes the foregoing provisional clauses.

3 The meaning seems to be that so long as he has no son (who
13. As to a daughter not provided with a husband, should the one whose husband is not provided be an only child, to keep her subject also to the housemistress of the family it is needful for her that there should be an adopted son in it; and when they shall appoint her husband unto the adopted-sonship the property then comes over into his possession.

14. When the house-mistress of the family passes away, and the daughters are provided with husbands, the adopted-sonship is to be appointed.

Chapter LV.

1. As to the fifty-fourth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is the occupation and capacity (giriftar1th) of the person that has to preserve those who are in their three nights' trials, and who is he?

2. The reply is this, that it is said a husband (gabra) is indispensable for preservation through the three nights' trials which shall be for a privileged wife, a father for those of a child, and a master for those of a servant.

would be a member of the family in direct descent through his mother) he can only assist and advise the widow, but on the birth of his son he can act more authoritatively, as the representative of the child.

1 Written aëvök-aë in Pāzand. She becomes a yukan or 'only-child' wife (see § 9 n) until she has given up her first child to her mother, after which she is a 'privileged' wife.

2 The three nights after death (see Chap. XXIV).
CHAPTER LVI.

1. As to the fifty-fifth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is this adopted-sonship and guardianship of the family, and what does it become; in what manner is it necessary to appoint it, whence is it necessary to provide food and clothing for it, and how is it necessary to be for it?

2. The reply is this, that the adopted-sonship is thus:—It is requisite whenever a man of the good religion is passing away, while he is a complete ruler of a numerous household¹, who has no wife and child that may be privileged² and acknowledged, nor associating brother, nor son by adoption, and his property is sixty stîrs³ of income. 3. The controlling (khûdâyînag) of the property is to be publicly provided out of the kindred of the deceased, and is called the adopted-sonship; and he is to be appointed to it who is the nearest of the same lineage (min ham-nâfân), who will manage and keep the property united in its entirety.

¹ Reading vad marak khân shah bundakô, but the phrase can also be read vad malkâân shah bandakô, 'while he is a servant of the king of kings (that is, a subject of the Iranian sovereign),' which is evidently the reading adopted by Mr. in Chap. LVII, 2, where it substitutes the Huz. synonym malkâ for shah, but here the word shah is uncertain. This ambiguous phrase can also be read vad mark-âhangîhâ bundakô, 'while the agonies of death are complete.'

² See Chap. LIV, 9.

³ About 84 rûpîs (see Chap. LII, i n); but the actual value of such an income depends upon the value of silver at that time, or, in other words, upon the prices of the necessaries of life.
CHAPTER LVI, 1–9. 189

4. The guardianship of a family is that when a guardian has to be appointed in that manner over the family of a man whose wife, or daughter, or infant son is not fit for their own guardianship, so it is necessary to appoint some one. 5. And it is necessary to appoint the adopted son and the family guardianship at such time as may be convenient to them; and when the man passes away as I have written it is necessary to appoint at such period as I have written, and to neglect it temporarily, even the length of a year, would not be authorised.

6. Fit for adoption is a grown-up sister who is not adopted in another family, then a brother's daughter, then a brother's son, and then the other nearest relatives. 7. Fit for the family guardianship is first the father of the serving wife (kagar), then a brother, then a daughter, and then the other nearest relations; among brothers he who is the eldest (mas) among them is the fittest.

8. The food and clothing of a wife that may be privileged—who is the house-mistress of the family, and is one kind of adopted son—of a living infant son till he becomes grown up, and of a daughter of the family while she is in the guardianship of the family guardians, are out of the property of the family so long as it exists for the purpose.

9. It has become the custom that the lapfuls and

1 Because she is not a privileged wife, but a serving one (see Chap. LIV, 9), as appears from § 7.

2 A woman or child cannot be adopted by more than one family (see Chap. LVII, 3). The case under consideration is that mentioned in § 2, when the deceased leaves no wife, child, or brother.

3 Referring to the case assumed in § 4.

4 That is, till she is married.
armfuls¹ of the family guardian are every month four stîrs of, it may be, sixteen², which is the dis-
bursement (andâzîsînô), for food, clothing, medicine, and shelter, out of the income (bar), or out of the
capital (bûn), of the property which remains in the family, by a perfect³ wife when she is capable—such
as the former house-mistress—so as want of nourish-
ment (aṭāfḍâdô) may not come nakedly and unlaw-
fully upon them.

Chapter LVII.

1. As to the fifty-sixth question and reply, that
which you ask is thus: Who is suitable for adoption,
and who is not suitable?

2. The reply is this, that a grown-up man of the
good religion who is intelligent, a complete ruler of a
numerous household⁴, expecting offspring, and not
having sins worthy of death is suitable for adoption;
even when he has accepted either one adoption, or
many adoptions, he is then still suitable for another
adoption. 3. And a grown-up woman, or even a child,
is suitable for one adoption, but when adopted in
one family she is not suitable for another adoption.

¹ That is, an ample remuneration (see Chap. LIV, 10).
² So the sentence may be literally translated, but it is not quite
certain that this is the meaning intended, as the language used
is very involved. This would imply that the family guardian is
entitled to one-fourth of the family expenditure.
³ It is doubtful what noun is to be connected with the adjective
pûr; perhaps we should read 'full disbursement' in the foregoing
part of the sentence, and omit the word 'perfect' here.
⁴ Mī₄ has malkâānî malkâ bōndak, 'a servant of the king
of kings;' but see Chap. LVI, 2.
CHAPTER LVII, I—LVIII, 5.

4. A woman requiring a husband—though a complete worshipper—or a foreigner, or an infidel, or one having sins worthy of death, is unfit for adoption; so also those who are demon-worshippers, she who is a concubine (ṣhūsar nēsman) or courtezan, and she who is menstruous are unfit.

CHAPTER LVIII.

1. The fifty-seventh question is that which you ask thus: How many kinds of family guardianship and adoption are there?

2. The reply is this, that it is said there are three kinds, which are the existent, the provided, and the appointed. 3. An adopted son who is existent is such as a wife who may be privileged, or an only daughter is a kind of adopted son owing to confidence in herself, such as happens when there is no wife, and a daughter for whom there is no husband, and none is provided, is the one that has remained.

4. An adopted son who is provided is such as a son that is acknowledged, who is accepted by one's self, and free from being appointed, or from necessity.

5. And an adopted son who is appointed is he who is to be appointed among the relations who are suitable for adoption—and are nearest to him who is to be appointed as adopted son—and the ministers (padān) of religion, and he performs the duty of

---

1 That is, adopted during the man's lifetime.

2 Reading ayāf nīyāsō, but it may be ayāfō eyāvō, 'or from discovery.'
family guardianship; he who is the appointed one is he who is appointed by the men who are the nearest relations (nabân az distânô) on account of proximity.

Chapter LIX.

1. As to the fifty-eighth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: For how much property is it then necessary to appoint an adopted son?

2. The reply is this, that when the property which has remained his for whom it is necessary to appoint an adopted son is as much as sixty stilrs of income, it is then indispensable to appoint an adopted son for him. 3. Even when it is less they should recognise him whose adoption is needful, and who conducts an adopted son's duty; and, similarly, an adoption is to be appointed for him, though it may not come as a possession unto him who is fittest for adoption.

Chapter LX.

1. As to the fifty-ninth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is the sin owing to not appointing an adopted son?

2. The reply is this, that for the man himself it is allowable when he gives up all the property in

1 Mt 4 has 'an existent family guardianship is in the son of him appointed, and a provided one is that when he himself performs the duty in the guardianship;' but the phrase interpolated is hardly grammatical.

2 About 84 rûpîs (see Chap. LVI, 2).
righteous gifts, and when he has no property they should not provide an adopted-sonship for him, and his relations are innocent as regards it. 3. But should they recognise him who has the adopted-sonship of the deceased, or has accepted the position of his adopted-sonship¹, or should they have seized the property for the adopted-sonship in order to appoint an acting adopted son (satñrgar), and he conducts the adopted-sonship, and throws away both the portion (bón) provided for disbursement (višhpó) and the entirety, and quite destroys the property, and thoroughly ruins the adopted-sonship, though, on account of not restraining him, it is said to be a sin worthy of death for every single dirham, it is not said they are killed outright².

CHAPTER LXI.

1. As to the sixtieth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is the propriety and impropriety, the merit and demerit, of family guardianship?

2. The reply is this, that the merit is the appointment and recognition of him who accomplishes more worthily the greater benefit; the demerit is as to

¹ M14 has 'or any one who has accepted the adoption as an adoption.'

² The meaning appears to be that, though, owing to their misplaced confidence and neglect, they have been guilty of many mortal sins, they are not liable to capital punishment. It is evident that the writer had no apprehension that any property would lie neglected through want of administration, but that he had considerable doubts of the prudence and honesty of administrators.
him who is unworthy, or him whose worthiness is not appointed to avert a lesser benefit and the ruinating of a worthy adoption. 3. Nearer details (khūrdakō) of the family guardianship which is proper and which is not proper for an adopted son's duty, of the child of good religion with whose business it is connected, and of the fathers for whom a family guardian is to be appointed, are in the recital of five chapters (fragardō) of the Hūspārūm Nask¹, and in the abstracts (giriftakōthā) of the good ideas in various scriptures (naskō) in which many decisions are together.

Chapter LXII.

1. As to the sixty-first question and reply, that which you ask is thus: How stand the shares in the inheritance (mtrātō) of property among those of the good religion, and how is it necessary for them to stand therein?

2. The reply is this, that in the possession of wealth the wealth reaches higher or lower, just like water when it goes in a stream on a declivity, but when the passage shall be closed at the bottom it goes back on the running water (pūy-āvō), and then it does not go to its after-course².

¹ The seventeenth book of the complete Māzda-worshipping literature, whose sixty-four sections are described in detail in the Dīnkard (see Sl. X, 21). The five chapters here mentioned were evidently in that one of the last fourteen sections which is said to have consisted of six chapters on the ownership of property and disputes about it, on one's own family, acquiring wife and children, adoption, &c.

² This metaphor seems to mean that property, like water, always
3. When there is nothing otherwise in the will and private\textsuperscript{1}, property goes to a wife or daughter\textsuperscript{2} who is privileged; if one gives her anything by will then she does not obtain the share (dâs) pertaining to her\textsuperscript{3}. 4. Whenever\textsuperscript{4} a share for a son is not provided by it, every one has so much and the wife who may be a privileged one has twice as much; and the share of that one of the sons\textsuperscript{5}, or even the wife of a son, who is blind in both eyes, or crippled\textsuperscript{6} in both feet, or maimed in both his hands, is twice as much as that of one who is sound.

5. And it is needful that he who was in the father's guardianship shall remain in guardianship, as when a father or mother is decrepit and causing awe (kagartn), or of a nurture different from that of the guardian\textsuperscript{7}—or a child of his brother or sister, or a father, or one\textsuperscript{8} without nurture apart from him, is

descends until it meets with an obstruction to its downward progress in the shape of the nearest descendants, but, when once in their possession, it can again ascend (like the dammed stream) for the support of the survivors of an older generation (see § 5).

\textsuperscript{1} Or, it may be 'in the provisions (vûyağân) of the will;' or, by omitting two strokes, we have simply 'otherwise (hân) in the will.'

\textsuperscript{2} That is, they have a share of the property when there are other next of kin. M14 adds, 'and they should provide a living son as father and husband unless privileged,' referring to the necessity of adoption when there is no son and the wife is not a privileged one.

\textsuperscript{3} It being assumed that the will provides as much as is intended for any one whom it mentions.

\textsuperscript{4} Reading amat, 'when,' instead of mûn, 'who,' which words are often confounded because their Pâz. equivalents are nearly identical.

\textsuperscript{5} M14 has 'daughters.'

\textsuperscript{6} Armést probably means literally 'most immovable.'

\textsuperscript{7} M14 omits this last clause.

\textsuperscript{8} M14 has 'mother.'
without a guardian—the ready guardianship of a capable man, and the shelter and nourishment that have become inadequate¹ are as indispensably forthcoming² from the possessors of wealth, of those who have taken the property, as that taking was indispensible.³

6. If there be no son of that man, but there be a daughter or wife of his, and if some of the affairs⁴ of the man are such as render a woman not suitable for the guardianship, it is necessary to appoint a family guardian; if there be, moreover, no wife or daughter of his it is necessary to appoint an adopted son. 7. This—that is, when it is necessary to appoint a family guardian and who is the fittest, and when it is necessary to appoint an adopted son and which is the fittest—is written in the chapters on the question⁵.

Chapter LXIII.

1. The sixty-second question is that which you ask thus: Would they authorisedly carry off any property whatever from foreigners and infidels, or not?

2. The reply is this, that wealth and property and anything that foreigners (an-āfrānō) possess and is carried off by them from the good with violence, and which through obstinacy they do not give back

¹ Literally 'not issuing.'
² Mīš has 'are thus forthcoming.'
³ Mīš has 'or have become indispensible to it.'
⁴ Or, it may be 'dependents,' the text is merely va hatō min zak-ī gabrā.
⁵ See Chaps. LVI–LIX.
when it is proper, it is well allowable in that case that they should seize from the foreigners. 3. So long as it is the lawful order of the procurator of its owners it is allowable for a just decider to consider properly, and to demand authoritatively the sending of interest (sûdô) thereon for himself. 4. But if they proceed in their obstinacy he is sent to come up with them in obstinacy, not to dissemble with them.

5. It is the custom to give an infidel (ak-dînô), who is not a foreigner, food, clothing, and medicine, when his renunciation (vâz) has come, for keeping away matters (kîsânô) of death and sickness owing to hunger and thirst, cold and heat; but wealth, horses, accoutrements, wine, and land are not given authorisedly, it is said, unto foreigners and idols.

---

CHAPTE R LXIV.

1. As to the sixty-third question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Whence was the first creation of mankind, and how was the formation of the original race of men? 2. What issued from Gâyômdâ, and what did it really become; and from what have Mashyâlh and Mashyâyôth arisen?

3. The reply is this, that Aûharmazd, the all-

---

1 Reading vad zak amatâs khûdâyân ayâvi-aitâr far-mân-î dádîk. The form of ayâvi-aitâr has not yet been met with elsewhere, but it seems to mean 'one who holds the obtainment,' though whether as agent or officer of justice is uncertain.

2 Mîr has merely 'but should they proceed in their obstinacy, to come with them is not to dissemble.'

3 Literally 'demon-worshippers.'

4 See Chap. II, 10.

5 The same as the Marhayâ and Marhîyôth of Chap. XXXVII, 82.
ruling, produced from the endless light the shape of a fire-priest (āsrūkō) whose name was that of Aūhar-
mazd, and its brilliance that of fire; its incombusti-
bility was like that inside the light, and its expansion like the western (khaṛbarag) land. 4. And in the shape of the fire-priest was created by him the mate-
rial existence (stih) that is called man, and for three thousand years1, when it did not progress and did not eat, it did not speak; likewise, it did not utter, but it thought of, the righteousness of the perfect and true religion, the desire for the pure glorifica-
tion of the creator.

5. Afterwards, the contentious promise-breaker2 injured the life of it, and produced a burdensome mortality; and the mortality is clear from the appella-
tion, Gāyōmard3, of the nature produced. 6. The seed which was the essence of the life of the leader (mtrākō) of life, who was Gāyōmard, flowed forth on his passing away, came on to the earth of the beneficent angel4, and is preserved in the earth until, through the protection of the angels, a brother and

---

1 This is the second of the four periods of three thousand years of which time is said to be composed (see Chap. XXXVII, 11 n). The 'shape of the fire-priest' is one of the spiritual creations of the first period, in which shape man was created during the second period, and this primeval man became Gāyōmard (that is, 'a living mortal') through the persecution of the evil spirit (see § 5) at the commencement of the third period. The first two steps of this creation are not described in the text of the Bundahis known to Europeans.

2 The evil spirit, who is said to be the origin of falsehood (see Chap. XXXVII, 11).

3 Which means 'the living mortal,' or 'the mortal living one.'

4 The female archangel Spendarmad, who has special charge of the earth. Or the phrase may be 'came on to the earth which the beneficent spirit produced.'
sister of mankind\(^1\), connected together, have grown from it, \textit{have} attained to movement \textit{and} walking upon the earth, \textit{and} have advanced even to intercourse and also procreation.

7. The ground where the life of Gáyömédia departed is gold, \textit{and} from the other land, where the dissolution of his various members occurred, as many kinds of decorative metals flowed forth it is said\(^2\).

---

\textbf{Chapter LXV.}

1. \textit{As to the sixty-fourth question \textit{and} reply, that which you ask is thus}: Where \textit{and} from what did the origin of race, \textit{which} they say \textit{was} next-of-kin marriage (khvëtûdâdö)\(^3\), arise; and from what place did it arise?

\(^1\) The Mashyâîh and Mashyâyöîh, or man and woman, of § 2, who are said to have grown up, in the course of forty years, connected together in the shape of a plant; but, after a breathing soul had entered them, they became human beings, and fifty years later they began to be the progenitors of mankind (see Bd. XV, 1–30).

\(^2\) Zs. X, 2 states that eight kinds of metal arose from the various members of the dead Gáyömédia, namely, gold, silver, iron, brass, tin, lead, quicksilver, and adamant.

\(^3\) Usually written khvëtûk-das (Av. hvaëtvadatha, 'a giving of, or to, one's own'). It is a term applied to marriages between near relations, and is extolled as specially meritorious. For centuries past the Parsis have understood it to refer to marriages between first cousins, and all allusions to marriage between nearer relations they attribute to the practices of heretics (see Sls. XVIII, 4 n); though, like the professors of all other religions, they must admit the necessity of such a practice in the first family of mankind, as detailed in the text. Translations of other passages relating to the subject will be found in Appendix III, and it is also mentioned in Chaps. XXXVII, 82, LXXVII, 6, and LXXVIII, 19.
2. The reply is this, that the first consummation of next-of-kin marriage was owing to that which Mashyâh and Mashyâyôôh\(^1\) did, who were brother and sister together, and their consummation of intercourse produced a son\(^2\) as a consummation of the first next-of-kin marriage. 3. So that they effected the first intercourse of man with woman, and the entire progress of the races of every kind of lineage of men arose from that, and all the men of the world are of that race.

4. It is truly said, that it was the joy of the lord and creator after the creation of the creatures, and, owing to that, its consummation, which was his complete accomplishment of the existence of the creatures (dâmânîth), was owing to him. 5. And its occurrence, too, is in evidence that the creator, who is so with unflinching (atórâk) will, is as much the cause of the begetting and entire progress of his own perfect creatures\(^3\), in whom begetting is by destiny, as Hôshâng\(^4\) by whom two-thirds\(^6\) of the demons were smitten, Tâkhmîrûp\(^6\) who overturned Aharman through the power of the angels, Yim by

---

1 See Chap. LXIV, 2. The names are here written Mashyêîh and Mashyêyôôîh.
2 Twins, according to Bd. XV, 22, 24.
3 That is, he is not only the original creator, but also the perpetual promoter of the increase and progress of the creation, as much as those who appear to be such promoters, though merely acting as his agents.
4 Here written Hôshyâng. For the Av. names of these four primeval monarchs, see Chap. II, 10 n.
5 K35 has 'three-thirds,' but see Âbân Yt. 22, Râm Yt. 8, Zam-yâyû Yt. 26.
6 He is said to have subjugated the evil spirit, and to have used him as a steed for thirty years (see Chaps. II, 10, XXXVII, 35).
whom order was arranged and death was driven away (avakāldō)¹, Frēdnun who fettered Az-il Daḥāk² and stripped his blaspheming (ntrangāk) from the world, and the many princes (kayān) and high-priests of grave spirit who were, and are, and will be.

Chapter LXVI.

1. As to the sixty-fifth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: There is a man of wealth of the good religion who fully intends to order a celebration of all the rites of his religion; and a priest of it, to whom the five chapters (frāgarādō) of the Avesta ('text') of the correct law of the Ntrangistān ('religious-formula code')³ are easy through the Zand ('commentary'), is ever progressing in priestly manhood (magōt-gabrāth). 2. And he (the man) goes unto him, and he (the priest) speaks thus: 'All the religious rites are performed for 350 dirhams⁴, as a gift always given beforehand by them who give the order unto me, so that I may come to them.'

3. A man of the disciples⁵, to whom the five

¹ He is said to have kept away cold and heat, decay and death, and other evils from the earth (see Rām Yt. 16, Zamyād Yt. 33).
² See Chap. XXXVII, 97.
³ This was the name of one of the thirty sections of the Hūspārūm Nask (see Chap. LXI, 3), and a portion of it, containing the Pahlavi commentary (or Zand) of three chapters, with many Avesta quotations, is still extant.
⁴ The word gūganō, 'dirham,' is here omitted, but occurs in §§ 16, 20. The sum of 350 dirhams would be about 122½ rūpīs (see Chap. LII, 1 n).
⁵ That is, those who are still learning their priestly duties (see Chap. XLV).
sections (vidag) of the Avesta are easy, and nothing whatever of its Zand is easy\(^1\), then says unto him—unto that man who intends to order all the religious rites—thus: ‘For this gift I will conduct all the religious rites for thee twice, with the appliances in the land of Pârs\(^2\), shouldst thou give the order unto me. 4. For it is quite possible for me to pray so many sections through my own exertion (dastô), but for him\(^3\) it is necessary to order again of an officiating priest (pavân zôtakô), who is himself not able to pray any section, or does not himself pray; and it is not necessary for him to go for the control (parvâr)\(^4\) of all the religious rites when a stipend (bâhâr) is the one consideration within him, and the matter is that he\(^5\) may receive again. 5. He who has always himself prayed is better than he who shall accept readily and orders the work again, and is not able to pray it himself, when a fulfilment is tedious to him; when it is I who \(^6\) receive, I always pray myself better than he who would accept readily and orders again, and it brings on my business to a closing point.’

6. The priestly man speaks thus: ‘The considera-

\(^1\) It being far easier to learn the Avesta by heart than to understand its meaning by aid of the Pahlavi commentary; a competent knowledge of the latter being sought only by advanced disciples, and rarely attained by any but the most learned priests.

\(^2\) Reading pavân bûn-I Pârs, as in § 15; \(K_{35}\) has here pavân bûn-frâs, ‘for opening the beginning,’ which might be understood to refer to the preliminary ceremonies for preparing the ceremonial apparatus, if the phrase were not otherwise written elsewhere. In § 21 \(K_{35}\) has pavân bûn-I Pârs.

\(^3\) \(K_{35}\) omits the last letter of valman.

\(^4\) Or, it may be ‘to the precincts.’

\(^5\) Literally ‘I.’

\(^6\) Reading li mûn, instead of lanman, ‘we.’
tion of stipend is more necessary to arise with me than\textsuperscript{1} other men, owing to the position of religion, not the other portion (s\(\text{\text{"a}n\text{"o}}\)) of all religious rites; therefore, it is more authorisedly received and conducted by me when I accept readily and again intrust the work; but I direct so that they pray thoroughly, and it brings on much business to its closing point; moreover, if I seize upon it, even then I should be authorised, for this is the stipend of religion.'

7. Should they seize this that is authorisedly theirs, or not? And is it the custom of a man who is frequently ordering all the religious rites to reduce his gift for the ceremonial, or not?

8. Order some one to decide for us clearly, when they do not dispute the gift for the ceremonial, or when they do dispute it, how is then its great advantage; and the harmfulness that exists therein, in many ways and many modes, when they give an insufficient gift for the ceremonial.

9. Is the property which is given up as a gift for the ceremonial—so long as it thus becomes the remuneration which one gives to a receiver of remuneration (\(\text{m}o\text{s}d\,\text{\text{"o}}\text{b\text{"a}}\))—that property which they can seize? 10. And is the work which is done, or deputed, and its great advantage, more than they would perform when, in the period of the evil millenniums\textsuperscript{2}, they diminish the gift for the ceremonial; and in how many modes

\textsuperscript{1} Reading li\textsuperscript{m} in, instead of the imperfect word lan\textsuperscript{m}.

\textsuperscript{2} Of the twelve millenniums of time, mentioned in Chap.XXXXVII, in, the most evil one is said to have been that in which the author lived, the millennium of H\(\text{\text{"u}}\text{s}\text{h\text{"e}}\text{\text{"a}}\text{r}\) (about A.D. 600–1600 according to the chronology of Bund. and Byt.), for 'mankind become most perplexed in that perplexing time’ (see Byt. II, 62, 63), a period of great tribulation for the religion of the Mazda-worshippers.
does its harm then proceed therefrom? 11. Of whom are all the religious rites always more autho-
risedly ordered, of that priestly man, or of that dis-
ciple? 12. For what reason, also, is it proper to
diminish the gift for all the religious rites of him
who is a priestly man, or to give it in excess? 13.
When they do not diminish the gift for the cere-
monial, and it is given in excess, in what manner
does its great advantage then arise therefrom; and
why and through what source (bêkh) is it possible
for advantage to arise therefrom? 14. When they
diminish the gift what harm to it (the ceremonial) is
then possible to arise therefrom, and how is it better
when they give the gift for the ceremonial?

15. For when the family householders, with those
of the good religion of Irân, are early (pês) with
every single celebration of all the religious rites with
holy-water, in the land of Pârs, unless they are in
distress, their gift is then 400 dirhams; and we
have given more than this, even 450 dirhams, for it.
16. And now should it be needful, when we diminish
anything from the 400 dirhams, or from the 450 dir-
hams, of their gift, they would then not accept it
from us, and they speak thus: 'For 400 dirhams,
or at least for 350 dirhams; nothing less do we

---

1 About 140 rûpis (see Chap. LII, 1 n). M14 has 300 dirhams.
2 About 157½ rûpis. M14 has 350 dirhams. The actual value
of all these sums depends upon the cost of the necessaries of life
in Pârs in the ninth century.
3 M14 has '350.'
4 About 122½ rûpis. K35 has ângûn, 'so;' instead of gûganâ,
'dirham' (the two words being nearly alike in Pahl. letters); this
would alter the phrase as follows:—'or less; as to 350, so paltry
a thing we do not accept.'
accept.' 17. But there are needy men\(^1\) who always come to us and speak thus: 'For 350 dirhams we will twice conduct all the religious rites with holy-water\(^2\), as you have always ordered us before for 400 dirhams; order it only of us, for shouldst thou have it managed by priestly men, they always say that they should always perform a curtailment (kās-tāṟḥ) of the religious rites and ceremonies of the sacred beings, and that all the religious rites are not authorishly ordered except of them.'

18. Although a priest (aēr paṭō) who becomes a ruler of the ceremonial should be doubly a decider, yet order some one to explain to us clearly concerning these questions, as asked by us.

19. The reply is this, that the man of the good religion who intended to order all the religious rites is he whose desire is goodness, and he should be a decider of questions about it.

20. As to the priest who spoke thus:—'Thou shouldst order it of me for 350\(^3\) dirhams, as you have always given before your business was arranged; and it becomes your own non-religious share of the duty, to be authorishly given, because you have proceeded with the alleged demeanour of the country and for the purpose of intercession; and all the

---

\(^1\) The disciples, who are represented as applicants for employment.

\(^2\) That is, in the most solemn manner, and with all appliances. It appears from Chap. LXXXVIII, 9, that the religious rites without holy-water were then performed for 120 to 150 dirhams, or little more than one-third the fee demanded for those with holy-water; whereas the merit of some rites with holy-water is said to be a hundred times as great as that of the same rites without holy-water (see Sls. XVI, 6).

\(^3\) M\(^1\)\(^4\) has '400' here, but see § 2.
religious rites with holy-water are such as they solemnize repeatedly (pavan dör), among which there are many in which¹ I act and am very well performing’—the gift of 350 dirhams is then not excessive remuneration for him.

21. As to the disciple who spoke thus:—‘For 350 dirhams I will twice² conduct all the religious rites in the land³ of Pārs’—such of them as they then conduct repeatedly are not many in the aggregate (kīnakō), and they certainly damage his (the man’s) property, and all the religious rites of fire, through that deficiency. 22. And they would accept it on this account, that through a love of righteousness they might cause an advantage (khangtnakō) unto all those religious rites by their own inferior eminence⁴. 23. And he extends and impels the ceremonial of the sacred beings into much progress who promotes it through that eminence which is owing to his own wealth, and which is thus more possessed of a share (bn) of the ceremonial of the sacred beings and of the good work of praise—except, indeed, a like good work of praise of his—when they shall cause that manifestation of eminence⁵. 24. So that the orderer of the good work understands that that which is diminished by him⁶ is the eminence

¹ Reading mun, ‘which,’ instead of amat, ‘when’ (see Chap. LXII, 4 n).
² The cipher ‘a’ is omitted in the Pahl. text here, but see §§ 3, 17.
³ K35 has Mun, instead of bmn (see § 3).
⁴ Or, it may be ‘by the eminence of their own wealth,’ as anfr, ‘inferior;’ and khēl, ‘wealth, property,’ are alike in Pahlavi; but neither reading is quite satisfactory here.
⁵ By a proper disbursement of wealth.
⁶ When he diminishes his payment.
of the disciple, which his own wealth has to order for those who are not able to give wealth which is their own property for it; and he makes no curtailment (bangisnō) of those scanty remunerations.

25. And if that disciple should accept as remuneration less than is the custom for all the religious rites, the orderer is not undiminished in wealth, for the reason that the good effect owing to the advantage of holy-water is such as when they conduct them repeatedly, unless it be necessary to conduct them in a manner as if unpaid (pavan agazíd).

26. That curtailment of the good effect is not afterwards demandable (pastn-sakhuntkō), if it has to be accepted by him; and if that acceptance of less remuneration by him be an opposing of him to the malice and ill-temper (vushāl) of the priests, this also is not the way that they should cause progress as regards their own business.

27. And the proximity (nazdith) of a master of the house who keeps away from all the religious rites requested and accepted—more particularly when the accepter accepts all the religious rites of the requester for that remuneration—is itself necessary; he may not be of a religious disposition, but it is yet requisite for him to be where this is requested

¹ M14 has 'it is not eminence in wealth;' but the meaning is evidently that there is no real saving when the expenditure is reduced, because the good effect of the rites is also diminished when they are insufficiently paid for.

² Or, khánōpānō may mean 'a keeper of the sacred table,' or low stone platform on which the ceremonial vessels are placed, which is often called khán. In either case the orderer of the ceremony is meant, and the author evidently contemplates the probability of the order being given as a mere formal matter of duty, without any really religious feeling.
and accepted for that scanty remuneration of his, owing to the extent and impetus of his share of the duty.

28. Moreover, it is perceived by us in Pârs that they who would accept the work for half the remuneration which was requisite as profit for it formerly would seize the remuneration. 29. And the reason of it is this:—The peasants relied upon the corn of the field (khânô) which has not come, and they said: 'We are hurried; we never obtain anything even on a single one of various debts, and by this payment we shall save our lives for the time; so we calculate that whatever we seize in the manner of a debt or two, when the corn arrives and we sell the corn, we shall make as profit on that business';—and it seemed to me very desirable for such a man.

30. If, also, they should approve that scanty remuneration of that disciple, it is an injury of all the religious rites, of which the forgivers have to cast the consideration of the unequally-shared advantage out of the body. 31. All the religious rites ordered of him who is a better performer, owing to not diminishing the proper remuneration, having proceeded unaltered, the remuneration of righteousness one does not approve is important as regards such as they solemnize and conduct in the period.

---

1 This parable justifies the taking of religious stipends by force, in cases of necessity, by a practical appeal to the sympathies of the enquirers; but it really evades the question proposed in § 7, which refers to seizures not justified by necessity.

2 Probably the priests who appoint atonements for sins confessed and renounced (see Sls.VIII, 1, 2, 5, 6).

3 Of those who have obtained a disproportionate share of the profit of the good works by not paying properly for them.

4 There are several doubtful points in the construction of this section.
32. Since, for the 350 dirhams, all the religious rites which they conduct once with holy-water are, it is affirmed, all the religious rites caused to be conducted twice with holy-water in that same place and with the same good effect, it is more important to order of them who shall allow all the religious rites twice; for, with as much wealth, as much efficiency, and as much good effect, more ceremonial is good.

33. The worthiness of the disciple, which is owing to himself, is the preparation; and the priest is worthy, of whose performance in the religion you have spoken¹; therefore, supreme worthiness is unattainable by either of them; so it is more significant when the disciple is the preparer, and the priest, as director, becomes a demander of good effect; both strive for good progress, and through many kinds of participation they may be worthy. 34. And both of them, praising together—whereby the participation is brought to an end—may authorisedly seize²; but that worthiness of theirs is owing to the duty and the praise therein—this one in preparing, and this one in superintendence (avar-maddh) of the recital—and the after discourse and petitioning, and other good done.

¹ See § 1.
² Probably the remuneration, if it be withheld; provided always they do their duty thoroughly, as mentioned in the concluding clause.
Chapter LXVII.

1. As to the sixty-sixth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is this appearance\(^1\) which is girded on the sky?

2. The reply is this, that it is a mingling of the brilliance of the sun with mist and cloud that is seen, of which it is at all times and seasons, moreover, a characteristic appearance, whereby it has become their sign above from spiritual to earthly beings.

3. That which is earthly is the water above to which its brilliance is acceptable; and the many brilliant colours (guna
cán) which are formed from that much mingling\(^2\) of brilliance and water, and are depicted (mânåk-
1-attô), are the one portion for appearing\(^3\).

Chapter LXVIII.

1. As to the sixty-seventh question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is this which, when the sun and moon have both come up, is something\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Reading didanôth; but the word can also be read sad-vânîth, which might stand for sad-gûnîth, 'a hundred-coloured existence,' a possible term for the rainbow, but the Persian dictionaries give no nearer term than sadkas, or sadkès.

\(^2\) M14 has 'that mingling of many portions and few portions.'

\(^3\) Reading didanôkô; but it can also be read sad-vanakô, a similar alternative to that in § 1.

\(^4\) The only probable reading for this word is min davam, 'a thing;' it occurs three times in this question, but is a very vague term for the phases of the moon, probably referring to a supposed body covering the dark part of the moon's disc.
come, and comes on as it were anew when it (the moon) becomes new, and men want the thing to go down from the place where it is becoming apparent? 2. When it has been several times, what is then the thing which comes up and exists, and how is its motion by night and day?

3. The reply is this, that the sun and moon are always seen there where they stand, and they exist for men and the creatures. 4. The sun is swifter-moving than the moon, and every day becomes a little in advance; at the new moon the sun is shining, and the moon owing to diminution backwards, on account of the slenderness of the moon by much travelling, and on account of the brilliance of the sun, is not apparent. 5. As the sun goes down a light which is not very apparent is the moon, and not having gone down the moon is seen; and each day the moon increases, comes up more behind the sun, and goes down more behind, and is, therefore, more seen. 6. When increased to the utmost, which is approaching a likeness of the sun, it comes spherical (aspiharakō), and is seen the whole night; to diminish anew it comes back to the companionship of the sun, and goes into the splendour of the sun.

1 The MSS. have astī-hēnd, 'have remained,' instead of khadītunī-hēnd, 'are seen;' but the difference between these words in Pahlavi letters is merely a medial stroke.
2 Apparently so, as the moon rises and sets about 48 minutes later every day, on the average.
3 A very anthropomorphic mode of accounting for the waning of the moon into a slender crescent.
4 Most Orientals consider the day of the new moon to be that in the evening of which it is first possible to see the moon; this is usually the first, but sometimes the second, day after the actual change of the moon according to European ideas.
CHAPTER LXIX.

1. As to the sixty-eighth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: When something takes hold of the moon or sun what is then its residence (khānād), and whence does it always seize upon it?

2. The reply is this, that two dark progeny of the primeval ox$^1$ move and are made to revolve from far below the sun and moon, and whenever, during the revolution of the celestial sphere, they make one pass below the sun, or below the moon, it becomes a covering which is spun (tād) over the sun, and it is so when the sun or moon is not seen. 3. Of each of those two progeny of the primeval ox—one of which is called ‘the head,’ and one ‘the tail’—the motion is specified among astronomers$^2$; but in remaining upon those luminaries, and producing that covering, they do not attain unto those luminaries

---

$^1$ Supposing the reading should be 2-ân gōštihar-ī tār here, and 2-ân gōštiharān in § 3. Gōštihar is a supposed planetary (and, therefore, malevolent) body, connected with the sun and moon and having a head and tail, which falls on to the earth at the resurrection (see Bd. V, 1, XXVIII, 44, XXX, 18), and is here described as the cause of eclipses. Its name implies that it sprang from, or contained, the seed of the primeval ox, the supposed source of animal life (see Bd. XIV, 3), and in its Av. form, gaoštīhra, it is a common epithet of the moon; in Pers. it has become gōzīhr or gavazīhr. As the words stand in K35 they look more like 2 andūg dālan-ī tār, ‘two dark store-lobbies;’ or 2 andūg gāl-ī tār, ‘two clusters of dark spiders;’ and in § 3 the word hanātūn is substituted for the nearly synonymous andūg. In Mr14 the words seem to be 2 āngūn šīharānō-ī tār, ‘two such dark faces.’

$^2$ Mr14 has ‘in the calculations of astronomers.’
within that covering. 4. There occurs no difference whatever of the descending rays\(^1\) from those luminaries into a place of purity and freedom from disturbance far below those luminaries, except this, that the light which they divert to the world, and their activity as regards the celestial spheres are not complete for so much time, nor the coming\(^2\) of the light to the earth.

---

**Chapter LXX.**

1. As to the sixty-ninth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What are these river-beds\(^3\), and what is the cause of them; whence do they always arise, and why is there not a river-bed everywhere and in every place where there is no mountain?

2. The reply is this, that any place where a mountain is not discernible and a river-bed exists it is a fissure (aškūpō); and it is declared as clear that, even before the growth of the mountains, when the earth was all a plain, by the shaking of the world the whole world became rent (zandakō)\(^4\). 3. Even

---

\(^1\) Literally 'fallers.'

\(^2\) Assuming that mādārīh stands for mādārīh. The meaning is that an eclipse produces no harm beyond a short interruption of the descent of the sun's or moon's rays to the earth.

\(^3\) There is some doubt as to whether the word should be read zōgakō (comp. Pers. zōgā, 'a river'), or zandakō (comp. Pers. zandah, 'fissured'), but the meaning is tolerably certain from the context.

\(^4\) When the evil spirit rushed into the earth it is said to have shaken, and the mountains began to grow (see Bd. VIII, i–5); and at the resurrection it is expected that the earth will recover its original perfect state of a level plain (see Bd. XXX, 33).
Frâşiyâv of Tûr was specially mighty by causing the construction of channels (vidārg) there where it is mountainous, and also in low-lands, in which there is no mountain, and the shaking in its creation was the formation of great sunken springs and river-beds. 4. And if it has been prepared in, or if it be in a ravine (sikâftâ) of, the mountains, the cause, too, of the contraction, thundering, and tearing of a river, if its confinement be in the earth, is the resistance which it meets in seeking a passage; and as it is a spring of the waters of the earth, so also it is in the earth, whose contraction and panting are mighty and full of strength. 5. And when it is a time that they would make a constructed channel at the outside of its ravine, as regards the contraction which is within it, the resistance by which it is contracted at the outside of the ravine is the ground.

Chapter LXXI.

1. As to the seventieth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Is anything which happens

1 Frangrasyan, the Tûryan, in the Avesta; called Afrâsiyâb in the Shâhnâmâh (see Bd. XXXI, 14). He is often mentioned as constructing canals (see Bd. XX, 17, 34, XXI, 6), but being a foreign conqueror he was considered as specially wicked by the Irânians.

2 Assuming that sîftân is a miswriting of sipdân, occasioned by joining two of the letters, just as harvispô, 'all,' is often written harvist.

3 Or, perhaps, 'hidden.'

4 That is, a watercourse which is confined by its natural rocky channel in the mountains, when carried across the plain in a canal, is confined only by softer soil.
unto men through fate or through action, is exertion destiny or without destiny, and does anything devoid of destiny happen unto men, or what way is it?

2. As to that which they say, that, when a man turns unto sinfulness, they ordain anew a new death; as to that which they say, that anything which happens unto men is a work of the moon, and every benefit is connected with the moon, and the moon bestows it upon worldly beings; and as to what way the moon does this, and bestows all benefits, order some one to decide the literal explanation of how and what way it is, by the will of the sacred beings.

3. The reply is this, that the high-priests have said thus, that there are some things through destiny, and there are some through action; and it is thus fully decided by them, that life, wife, and child, authority and wealth are through destiny, and the righteousness and wickedness of priesthood, warfare, and husbandry are through action. 4. And this, too, is thus said by them, that that which is not

---

1 This reference is to a phrase in the Pahl. commentary on Vend. V, 33, which commentary contains a good many of the statements made in this chapter, excepting those relating to the moon. The reading aōsh, 'death,' given by K35, is probably more correct than aūbaš, 'for him,' given by our modern MSS. of the Vendidād; but M14 has amended it, and states 'then many new things are ordained by it for him.'

2 Assuming that vidanāg, 'time,' stands for bidanāg, the Huz. of māh, which means both 'month' and 'moon.' In the following phrases the word māh is used.

3 It may be noted that most Pahlavi writers, when quoting the Pahlavi commentaries on the Vendidād (as the author is doing here) or any other Nask, speak of them merely as the utterances of the high-priests, and reserve the term dīnā, 'revelation,' for the Avesta itself; thus showing that belief in the inspiration of the Pahlavi translations of the Avesta is a very modern idea.
destined for a man in the world does not happen; and that which is destined, be it owing to exertion, will come forward, be it through sinfulness or slothfulness he is injured by it. 5. That which will come forward owing to exertion is such as his who goes to a meeting of happiness, or the sickness of a mortal who, owing to sickness, dies early¹; and he who through sinfulness and slothfulness is thereby injured is such as he who would wed no wife, and is certain that no child of his is born, or such as he who gives his body unto slaughter, and life is injured by his living.

Chapter LXXII.

1. As to the seventy-first question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What are the heinous sins of committing unnatural intercourse, is it proper to order or perform the sacred ceremony for him who shall commit unnatural intercourse, and is it then proper to practise sitting together and eating together with him who shall commit it, and shall commit it with a longing for it, or not?

2. The reply is this, that of the evil Mazda-worshippers—who were the seven evil-doers of sin of a heinous kind ², whose practice of Aharman’s will was as much as an approximation to that of

¹ M14 has ‘which comes forward owing to sickness.’
² M14 has ‘of a like evil practice, in inclination for sins, were the very heinous in the religion of the Mazda-worshippers.’
³ Reading girāī van vinās, and assuming that van is a mis-writing of gun.
Aharmán himself—two are those whom you have mentioned, who are defiled with mutual sin. 3. For, of those seven evil-doers, one was Aź-I Dahák, by whom witchcraft was first glorified; he exercised the sovereignty of misgovernment, and desired a life of the unintellectual (ahangân khayá) for the world. 4. One was Aźt Sruvar, by whom infesting the highway in terrible modes, frightful watchfulness (vīmpag-bārdâr) of the road, and devouring of horse and man were perpetrated. 5. One was Vadak² the mother of Dahák, by whom adultery was first committed, and by it all lineage is disturbed, control is put an end to, and without the authority of the husband an intermingling of son with son⁶ occurs. 6. One was the Vïptak⁸ (‘pathic’)

¹ See Chap. XXXVII, 97.
² A personification of Av. aźi srvara, a serpent or dragon thus described in the Hōm Yt. (Yas. IX, 34–39):—‘(Keresâsapa) who slew the serpent Srvara which devoured horses and men, which was poisonous and yellow, over which yellow poison flowed a hand’s-breadth (spear’s-length?) high. On which Keresâsapa cooked a beverage in a caldron at the mid-day hour, and the serpent scorched, hissed, sprang forth, away from the caldron, and upset the boiling water; Keresâsapa Naremanau fled aside frightened’ (see Haug’s Essays, pp. 178, 179). The same account is given in Zamyâd Yt. 40.
₃ M₁₄ has bım in bımardh, ‘terrifying.’
⁴ See Chap. LXXVIII, 2. There is possibly some connection between this name and the Av. epithet, Vadhaghana, which is thus mentioned by the evil spirit, speaking to Zaratšêt, in Vend. XIX, 23:—‘Curse the good Mazda-worshipping religion! and thou shalt obtain fortune such as the Vadhaghana sovereign obtained;’ and Mkh. LVII, 25 calls him ‘the Vadagān sovereign Dahák.’ The Pahlavi writers seem to have taken this epithet as a matronymic, owing to its form, but whether the mother’s name be really traditional, or merely manufactured from the epithet, is doubtful.
⁶ Reading levatman bârman bârman, instead of levatman bûm bârman. M₁₄ omits bûm.
⁸ Av. viptō (p. p. of vip, ‘to sow, to secundate’), used in the
in the intercourse of males, the infecundity of which is the desire of men; and by him the intercourse of males and the way of destroying the seed were first shown unto males. 7. One was the Vśpintādak (‘pæderast’), the male by whom the use of females was first brought among the errors (khazdag) of the male, and was despised (dûkhtō) by him; he who is a cherisher of seed is delivering it to females, and that which is destroying the seed is the flowing of stenches into the prescribed vessels for it, the delivering it to males by a demoniacal process, and carrying on a practice which effaces (āhāngēdō) and conceals the race of the living. 8. One was Tūr-i Brâdar-vakhsh, the Karap and heterodox wizard, by whom the best of men was put to death. 9. And one was he by whom the religions of apostates were preferred—through the deceitfulness of the perverted text and interpretation which they themselves utter—to the law which the righteous

sense of ‘a pathetic’ in Vend. VIII, 102. This name, as well as the next one, is used here more as representing a class than an individual.

1 The p. p. of the causal form of vīptaṇā, ‘to fecundate,’ used as an equivalent of the Av. vaēpyād of Vend. VIII, 102.

2 Assuming that pavan pavan mūdragānō stands for pavan farmūdragānō; but there is some doubt as to the correct reading of several words in this section.

3 Or ‘seed.’

4 The eldest of five brothers who were wizards of the Karap race or caste, and deadly enemies of Zarāfšt (see Byt. II, 3). He is said to have slain Zarāfšt in the end.

5 Ahārmōkō, Av. ashemaogha, means literally ‘disturbing the right,’ and is a term applied to an ungodly man specially under the influence of the evil spirit, as an apostate is naturally supposed to be.

6 The Avesta and Zand.
has praised, that existence which would have procured a complete remedy, and would have become the eternity of the records which bestow salvation, through the good righteousness which is owing to the pure religion, the best of knowledge.

10. And they who are defiled by a propensity to stench are thereby welcoming the demons and fiends, and are far from good thought through vexing it; and a distance from them is to be maintained of necessity in sitting and eating with them, except so far as it may be opportune for the giving of incitement by words for withdrawing (padālisnō) from their sinfulness, while converting them from that propensity. 11. Should one die, to order a ceremonial for him is indecorous, and to perform it would be unauthorised; but if he were to do so penitently one would then be authorised to perform his ceremonial after the three nights, for it is the remedy for atonement of sin. 12. And so long as he is living he is in the contingencies (vakhtagānō) owing to the sickness through which he is in that way an infamous one (akhamādār), and there are no preventives (bōndagānō) and medicinal powder for it; these are teachings also for the duty and good works of a ceremonial for the soul.

---

1 Who are supposed to seize upon them and pervade them; hence the necessity of shunning such men, to avoid contamination from the demons who possess them.

2 That is, from what is personified in the archangel Vohūman.

3 During which the soul is supposed to remain on earth, hovering about the body, after death (see Chaps. XX, 2, XXIV, 2, XXV, 2).

4 That is, they are warnings to him to repent.
Chapter LXXIII.

1. As to the seventy-second question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Does the stench of him, stinking withal, who commits unnatural intercourse proceed to the sky, or not; and to what place does the wind of that stench go when it goes anywhere?

2. The reply is this, that the material stench goes as far and in such proportion as there are filthiness and fetidness in the stinking existences, and the spiritual stench goes unto there where there are appliances (sāmānū) for acquiring stench, a miserable place; on account of the separation (gārdēh) of the sky, everywhere where it goes in the direction of the sky it does not reach to the undisturbed existences1. 3. Information about the stench is manifest in the omniscient creator, whose omniscience is among the luminaries, but that persistent creator and the primeval angels and archangels are free from its attack; and his information about the deception which is practised upon that labourer for hell and mind allied with the demons2 is certain.

1 The sky being divided into three parts, and the uppermost part being inaccessible to evil (see Chap. XXXVII, 24, 25).

2 Reading avā-śēdā-mīnīnūh, but it is possible that avā may have originally been khavdāk, for the Av. khavzā, 'male paramour,' of Vend. VIII, 99, 103 (trans. D.).
CHAPTER LXXIV.

1. *As to* the seventy-third question and reply, that which you ask is thus: *Is there any discomfiture* (vânidârīth) of the archangels from that stench, or not?

2. The reply is this, that the archangels are immortal and undistressed; their place, also, is in that best existence of light, all-glorious, all-delightful, and undisturbed; and the strength of the stench due to the demons does not reach unto anything pertaining to the archangels. 3. The archangels are omniscient, friendly to the creatures, persistent, and procure forgiveness; they know that heinous practice which is the heinous practice of that wretched dupe (frīstakō) who has become defiled in that most filthy manner (zīstūm ārang), which is like that which is provided and which is applied to him even in the terrible punishment that has come upon him from the demons; and then, on account of their friendliness to the creatures, it has

---

1 Reading āz-sēdāikō, but it may be āz-sēdāikō, 'of the demon of greediness,' or it may stand for khaudak-sēdāikō, 'of a male paramour of the demons,' as mentioned in the last note.

2 Omniscience with regard to what is taking place in the world being an indispensable characteristic of any being to whom prayers are addressed, or whose intercession is implored.

3 These words are thus repeated in K35, and the repetition may be correct.

4 Referring probably to the punishment of such a sinner, detailed in AV. XIX, i–3, as follows:—'I saw the soul of a man, through the fundament of which soul, as it were, a snake, like a beam, went in, and came forth out of the mouth; and many other snakes ever seized all the limbs.'
seemed to them severe, and thereby arises their forgiveness which is according to whatever anguish is owing to the torment which galls him.

CHAPTER LXXV.

1. *As to the seventy-fourth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Do the angels have his dead body restored, or not?*

2. The reply is this, that there was a high-priest who said that the angels do not have his dead body restored, because of the sin of the mutually-polluting, full of stench, and inglorious victims (khvâ-pîdūân)\(^1\), the terrible kind of means for the exculpation of creatures\(^2\), and that practice when males keep specially imperfect in their duty; it being then suitable for mankind to become free from him who—like Az-t Dahâk\(^3\), who wanted many most powerful demons—resists and struggles, and is not possessing the perception to extract (pâtkasistânô) a pardon, owing to the course of many demoniacal causes.

3. But innumerable multitudes (amarakânîthâ), happily persevering\(^4\) in diligence, have with united observation, unanimously, and with mutual assistance (ham-bangînîthâ) insisted upon this, that they have the dead bodies of all men restored; for

---

\(^1\) Victims of the deceptions practised by the demons (see Chaps. LXXXIII, 3, LXXIV, 3); but the reading is uncertain.

\(^2\) Probably the punishment of the wicked in hell.

\(^3\) See Chap. XXXVII, 97.

\(^4\) Reading farukhvî-tûshîrûn, but it may be perkhûntû dahîrûn, 'having begged the boon;' and M14 has pûryîdekshâno, 'of those of the primitive faith.'
the good creator, granting forgiveness and full of goodness, would not abandon any creature to the fiend. In revelation (d1n6) it is said that every dead body is raised up, both of the righteous and of the wicked; there is none whom they shall abandon to the fiend.

5. And this, also, is thus decided by them, that even as to him who is most grievously sinful, when he becomes mentally seeking pardon and repentant of the sin, and, being as much an atoner as he is well able, has delivered up his body and wealth for retribution and punishment, in reliance upon the atonement for sin of the good religion, then it is possible for his soul, also, to come to the place of the righteous.

CHAPTER LXXVI.

1. As to the seventy-fifth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: As to him who shall slay those who shall commit unnatural intercourse, how is then his account as to good works and crime?

2. The reply is this, that the high-priests, in their decision, have thus specially said, that all worthy of death are so by the decision of judges and the

---

1 Except for temporary punishment in hell. All ideas of the vindictiveness of implacable justice are foreign to the Masda-worshipper's notion of the good creator.

2 Compare Bd. XXX, 7.

3 Probably by the 'mulátudes' of § 3.

4 By delivering up his body and wealth to the will of the high-priest, as an atonement, and mentally renouncing his sins, he is saved from hell, and the beneficial effect of any good works he may have performed returns to him (see Sls.VIII, 5).
command of kings, whose business is execution. 3. Whoever shall slay him who has heinous sins\textsuperscript{1} after controversies three times with him, about the decision of those acquainted with the religion and about the command of kings, when he has thus remained in the sin in defiance of his own relations—and not inimically to the man and injuriously to the religion, but inimically to the sin and in order to keep away intercourse with demons—is to consider it as a great good work. 4. No command is given about the decision of what one is to do in the same matter, more heedfully and more authorisedly in cases of doubtful attention, for the good work exists undoubtedly more and more abundantly\textsuperscript{2}.

\textbf{Chapter LXXVII.}

1. \textit{As to} the seventy-sixth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Will you direct some one then to make the heinousness of this sin of unnatural intercourse clear to us?

2. The reply is this, that the first material creature was the righteous man, the smiter of the fiend, the righteous propitiator; so, also, in the world he is more recognising the sacred beings, more completely (\textit{hamâktar}) for the production of creatures,

\textsuperscript{1} Reading \textit{vinâsânô}, as in M14, instead of the doubtful word \textit{vashkîn}, which might perhaps be compared with Pers. \textit{buzhis}, 'opposition.'

\textsuperscript{2} The meaning is that no one is bound to put such sinners to death until they are condemned by the authorities, but should one do so upon his own responsibility, entirely for the good of the faith, and certain of the impenitence of the sinners, he is not only free from blame, but has done a meritorious deed.
and with more provision for the creatures. 3. And with the manifestation of knowledge the best duty is that which exists in lawfully practising procreation, and the complete progression of righteous men arose therefrom.

4. In like manner he who is the omniscient creator formed mankind in the first pair, who were brother and sister, and became Mashyāth and Mashyāyōth, and all races of material life exist by means of acquiring sons and his omnisciently causing procreation. 5. The man and woman were also made to lust (gāmintldō) by him, and thereby became the father and mother of material men; and he naturalized among primitive man the qualities of a desire (ālādanō) for acquiring sons together through glorifying. 6. And the law and religion authorised it as a proper wish, so long as they proceed from those who are their own relations, not from those who are not their own; and with those whom next-of-kin marriages, original duties, and desires for other sons have formed, complete progress in the world is connected, and even unto the time of the renovation of the universe, it is to arise therefrom.

7. And the birth of many glorious practisers of the religion, those confident in spirit, organizers of the realm, arrangers of the country, and even accom-

---

1 Reading val-dām-nīvārisnōthātar; the syllables -ātar being written separately M14 has val dām-nīvārisnīh ayyād-atar, 'more remembering the provision for the creatures.' Promoting the increase of, and providing maintenance for, good creatures are considered to be important good works.

2 Here written Mashyā and Mashyāyōth, but see Chaps. XXXVII, 82, LXIV, 2.

3 See Chap. LXV.

4 See Chap. II, 8.
plishers of the renovation of the universe, which arises from those same to whom that practice shall be law—and when it occurs lawfully—is a miracle and benefit of the world, the will of the sacred beings and the utmost good work discernible, because the complete progress of the righteous arises therefrom, and the great female faculty (nekedîh) is manifested.

8. So when the opponent of the same, by whom the source of seed and procreation is spoiled, is intent upon a way for the death of progeny—and the intention is certain—its annihilation is owing to him\(^1\); and he is the devastating fiend\(^2\), whose will is a desire of depopulation and ruin, and by the power of his Nyâz (demon of 'want')\(^3\) he turns imperceptibly the esteem of the very indispensable production of men from the position of wishing for sons to a creature\(^4\) who is opposed to it, through whom have arisen its ruin and corruption. 9. And the nature and power which are his cherishing of progeny are not suitable for receiving seed, and misrepresented (drôkînîdö) by him is the accompanying evil intercourse, so that emitting the seed (shûdak), in delivering it at that time into that burning place, full of stench, is to produce its death, and no procreation occurs.

10. The dupes\(^5\) turn the living seed from mingling with women and seeking for births, just as in the like vice of any demon, connected with a longing

---

\(^1\) A free translation of agas lôîtö, which phrase is placed at the end of the section in the Pahl. original.

\(^2\) The evil spirit.

\(^3\) See Chap. XXXVII, 52.

\(^4\) M14 has 'to a member.'

\(^5\) Of the fiend.
for the dupes\(^1\), they shall abandon that advantage of the world, the delights (våyågånå) of a son\(^2\). 11. He who is wasting seed makes a practice of causing the death of progeny; when the custom is completely continuous, which produces an evil\(^3\) stoppage of the progress of the race, the creatures have become annihilated; and certainly, that action, from which, when it is universally proceeding, the depopulation of the world must arise, has become and furthered (fråråstå) the greatest wish of Aharman\(^4\).

12. Such a practiser is the greatest wish of Aharman, through the demon’s excretion\(^5\) of doubt in the practice, owing to intercourse with the emitter, which is most filthy and most fetid, and the emitting member, which is causing death; and the demoniacal practice\(^6\) is perceptible even from the same practice, and whatever is the heinousness of the sinfulness is clear to observers of the dead body.

---

**Chapter LXXVIII.**

1. As to the seventy-seventh question and reply, that which you ask is thus: As to the nature of the heinousness and sinfulness of committing adultery, and the worldly retribution specified for it in revela-

---

\(^1\) Such men are said to become paramours of the demons (see Vend. VIII, 102–106), as further alluded to in § 12.

\(^2\) M\(_{14}\) has 'seeking a son.'

\(^3\) Reading dåhåd våd, but M\(_{14}\) has yåityântå, 'brought a,' and may be right.

\(^4\) See Chap. XXXVII, 10.

\(^5\) Reading rìkhìh, but M\(_{14}\) has råsìh, 'course.'

\(^6\) In hell.
tion, will you then direct some one to point out to us the modes\(^1\) of retribution for it?

2. The reply is this, that it is adultery, heinous and vicious, which first Dahâk used to commit, and he is known by the illicit intercourse which was his desire with Vadak\(^2\), who was his mother, in the lifetime of Aûrvadâsp\(^3\), who was his father, without the authority of Aûrvadâsp, who was the husband of Vadak whose practising of sin, unauthorisedly and injudiciously, was itself heinous and very frequent. 3. And its modes of theft or spoliation are just as much more heinous than other theft and spoliation as a man and that which arises from his procreation of man are greater than the position of property.

4. One is this, that it is important to consider with steadfastness the courtezan life of the adulteress and the bad disposition assuredly and undoubtedly therein; she causes pillage unauthorisedly, and in her practice, also, intercourse during menstruation, owing to its resembling the burning of seed, is a frightful kind of handiwork (dastâd).

---

\(^1\) M\(_{14}\) has 'the various modes.'

\(^2\) This is evidently the name written Udaî in Pâz. in Bd. XXXI, 6, who was, therefore, the daughter of Bayak; the fact of her being the mother of Dahâk is more clearly expressed in the Pahlavi text of Chap. LXXII, 5.

\(^3\) This is the name written Khrútâsp in Bd. XXXI, 6, which is a Pâz. reading, though confirmed by the Pahl. form in TD (as Udaî is, to some extent, by the Pahl. Aût of TD). This Aûrvadâsp, whose name can also be read Khûrûtâsp, must be distinguished from his namesake, the father of Vîstâsp, whose name became corrupted into Lîharâsp (see Bd. XXXI, 28, 29).

\(^4\) K\(_{35}\) omits azîk, 'without,' here, but has it in Chap. LXXII, 5. Without this particle the meaning would be 'who was the high-priest of his father, Aûrvadâsp.'
5. One is this, that it may be that she becomes pregnant by that intercourse, and has to commit on her child\(^1\) the murdering of progeny.

6. One is this, that it may be in pregnancy, by her coming to intercourse with another man, that the living child which is in her womb has died through that intercourse.

7. One is this, that it may be that she becomes pregnant by that intercourse, and the pregnancy having given indications, through shame or fear she swallows a drug\(^2\) [and seeks a remedy, and murders the child in her womb.

8. One is this, that it may] be that a woman who is foreign or infidel, and becomes pregnant by that intercourse, gives birth to a child, and it has grown up with the child which is known to belong to the husband of the woman, and remains in foreign habits (an-afrth) or infidelity. 9. The committer of the illicit intercourse is as unobservant and grievously sinful as he who shall lead his own child from his native habits (afrth) and the good religion into foreign habits and infidelity; as to the sin which that child may commit in childhood he is the sinner, and as to that which it may commit in manhood he is equally sinful with it. 10. Also, if that child be put to death in childhood, and be passed through water, rain, or fire, or be buried in the well-yielding earth\(^3\), he is an equally vicious murderer, and is defiled thereby through being the invisible causer.

---

\(^1\) M\(_{14}\) has ‘and with the assistance of another man she has so to commit on her child of that pregnancy.' The interpolation is clumsy, and does not make the sentence easier to translate.

\(^2\) The passage which follows, in brackets, is from M\(_{14}\); there being evidently something omitted from K\(_{35}\) at this point.

\(^3\) The contamination of water, rain, fire, or earth, by contact with
11. Likewise, if he who is a man of the good religion accustoms a woman to illicit intercourse, and through adultery a child is born and grows up, even then to practise undutifully that which undutifulness committed is to make a wretched and clandestine connection. 12. On account of the birth having occurred through illicit intercourse it is grievously sinful; through propriety it is praiseworthy, and through falsity it is sinful, and it is said that a bastard is not appointed in superintendence over any one. 13. If it be done so that pregnancy does not occur, even then every single time—not to mention the text (avis tâk) as to the matter regarding the destruction of his own living seed—it is a sin of two Tanâpûhars, which are six hundred stîrs; and regarding that emission it is inexpiable (atanâ-pûhar).

a corpse, being considered a heinous sin (see Sl.s. II, 9, 50, 76, XIII, 19).

1 That is, procuring the birth of a legitimate child is highly meritorious, but an illegitimate birth is sinful.

2 Referring probably to Vend. VIII, 77–82, which states that the voluntary waste of seed is an inexpiable sin, as mentioned at the end of this section.

3 A Tanâpûhar (Av. tanuperetha) sin was originally one that required the sinner to place his body at the disposal of the high-priest, in order to atone for it; but it was not necessarily a sin worthy of death, or mortal sin. At the time when the Vendidâd was written, such a sin was punished by two hundred lashes of a horse-whip or scourge (see Vend. IV, 72). Subsequently, when the Vendidâd scale of punishments was converted into a scale of weights, for estimating the amounts of sins and good works, a Tanâpûhar sin was estimated at three hundred stîrs (svarînp) of four dirhams (dpeîxû) each (see Sl.s. I, 1, 2). The weight of 600 stîrs was probably about that of 840 rûpîs, or 21 1/2 lbs. (see Chap. LII, 1 n).

4 That is, a sin which cannot be atoned for even by giving up one’s body for execution. Anâpûhar in Pahl. Vend. VIII, 82.
CHAPTER LXXVIII, 11-17.

14. As much on account of the conversation as on account of the companionship of the man who goes unto various women, for the sake of a man's sin, and is unatoning, should his own body be also defiled with bodily refuse (ḥīgar-hômônd)\(^1\), or should those kinds of harm be not kept away from another\(^2\), even then every single time of the bodily refuse bringing harm to his own body is a sin of sixty sîrs\(^3\), and through making his own body defiled with bodily refuse is each time a sin of sixty sîrs; and if he washes with water that defilement with his own bodily refuse, or that which is harmed thereby, every single time it is a sin of six hundred\(^4\) sîrs.

15. And if it be a foreign or infidel woman, apart from the sinfulness about which I have written, it is a sin of sixty sîrs on account of not controlling the sins and vicious enjoyment of the foreign woman.

16. And, finally, the other various sins which are owing to this sin are very numerous, and grievous to thousands of connections, and it is thereby contaminating to them in a fearful manner.

17. The retribution is renunciation of sin in procuring pardon; and the renunciation in his turning from equally grievous disobedience\(^5\), every single

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XLVIII, 19.

\(^2\) M\(14\) has 'or he does not wash those harmful kinds of bodily refuse,' which is inconsistent with what follows.

\(^3\) This is the estimated weight of a Khôr sin, originally the crime of inflicting a severe hurt, ranging from a bruise to a wound or broken bone not endangering life (see Sls. I, 1, 2). The weight was probably equal to that of 84 rûpls.

\(^4\) M\(14\) has 'three hundred.'

\(^5\) Reading asrûstîh as in M\(14\), instead of the aîtrôistôih of K\(35\). Possibly the latter word might be read 3-trôistôih, the
time that he turns from similar viciousness, and as an atonement for the sin, is to arrange, or order, four (arbâ) marriages of the next of kin to his own wife, lawfully, authorisedly, and most hopeful of offspring. 18. Through fear of the grievous sinfulness which I have recounted, in case of a child of those of the good religion who has no giver of shame, and to keep lawfully in subjection a child who is under control, he who is unnurtured is lawfully given nurture, and is nominated for lawfully bringing up. 19. And to turn a man or woman of bad disposition, by eulogy and entreaty, or by distress (vangtm) and fear and other representations, from that bad disposition and vicious habit; to order next-of-kin marriage and all the religious rites (hamâk dînô), the Dwâzdah-hômâst, the ceremony in honour of the waters, and the presentation of holy-water to the fires; to remove the burden of offspring which is distressing those of the good religion, and to force them from the infidelity acquired, which is a very atoning atonement for such sins, are extremely proper proceedings (avîr-farhakhtîkth).

passing away of the three nights, referring to the Av. phrase thrityau khshapô thraotsa, 'on the passing away of the third night,' in Hn. II, 18; the three nights are those immediately after death, while the soul is supposed to remain hovering about the body, thinking over its sins, and dreading the approaching judgment of the angel Rashnu; but previous renunciation of sin would relieve it from much of this dread.

1 That is, one not born in shame, but a legitimate child. M14 has shfr, 'milk,' substituted for sharm, 'shame.'

2 M14 has 'woman of family with extending sins or bad disposition.'

3 See Chap. LXV.

4 See Chap. XLVIII, 25.

5 Probably the Âbân Nyâyîs.

6 Probably the Âtâr Nyâyîs.

7 By assisting in their support.
CHAPTER LXXIX.

1. As to the seventy-eighth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is the decision about water with the word Ithâ \(^1\) and him who shall drink it? 2. When a man has performed his ritual and does not take the prayer (vâgô) inwardly, but drinks water with the word Ithâ, what is the decision about this efficacy \(^2\) of which he takes up one half and abandons one half, how is it necessary, or not, to consider it, and what is the sin of it? 3. As to him who performs half, or less than half, of the efficacy, and drinks water with the word Ithâ, what is the retribution for this sin when he shall commit it occasionally, and what is good in order that this sin, when he shall commit it, may depart from its source?

\(^1\) The first word of Yas. V, 1, 2 which forms the first portion (after the invocation) of the inward prayer, or grace, to be muttered before eating or drinking. This first portion may be translated as follows: 'Here then we praise Ahura-mazda, who gave (or created) both cattle and righteousness, he gave both water and good plants, he gave both the luminaries and the earth, and everything good.' This is followed by three Ashem-vohûs, each meaning as follows: 'Righteousness is the best good, a blessing it is; a blessing be to that which is righteousness to the angel of perfect rectitude.' After muttering these formulas, or 'taking' them inwardly as a protective spell, the mutterer can eat or drink, and after washing his mouth he 'speaks out' the spell or vâg by reciting certain other formulas aloud. This chapter refers to those who mutilate the vâg by muttering only its first word or words, which matter is also treated in Sls. V.

\(^2\) Supposing that this word, which may be twice read mâñâê and four times mâñâê, represents the Ar. maʼhînî, but this is by no means certain.
4. As to him who has performed his Nâbar ritual, and drinks water with the word Ithâ, not muttering (andâkô) the inward prayer (vâgô), and performs a ceremony (yastô), though he does not order a ceremony of Gê tô-khartô for himself, is the decision then about him anything better, or not; and does the good work of this ceremony of Gê tô-khartô become just the same as that of the Nâbar ceremony, or not? 5. As to him who orders a ceremony of Gê tô-khartô for himself, what is then his good work, and what is the value of his worthiness when he does not himself perform because he orders that they should perform for him? 6. And as to him who has not performed his ceremony, and is fifteen years old, what is then the decision about him?

7. The reply is this:—When a man who has chanted the Gâthas (‘hymns’).drinks water with the word Ithâ, if, moreover, being preservable from suffering, he be not a righteous one overwhelmed by impotence, it is thus said that, when in order to consecrate the sacred cake (drôndô) it is not possible

---

1. The initiatory ceremony of a young priest, written nâîbar or nâqbar in this chapter, and sometimes nônâbar (Pahl. navak nâîbar).

2. This ceremony, which means ‘the world-purchased,’ and by which, according to the Sad-dar Bundahish, ‘heaven is purchased in the world, and one’s own place brought to hand in heaven,’ lasts three days, and is performed by two priests; the first day’s ceremonies are those of the Nônâbar, those of the second are of the angel Srôsh, and those of the third are of the Stôzah, or angels of the thirty days of the month (see Bd. XXX, 28 n).

3. Reading râf instead of lâ, ‘not.’

4. Reading varkâ, instead of va neked, ‘female,’ which is much like it in Pahl. letters.

5. And is, therefore, an initiated priest.

6. M14 has ‘from impotent suffering.’

7. See Chap. XXX, 1.
to take the prayer inwardly, and there are no presentations of it for the tasting of the virtuous with inward prayer 1, or for the sake of relieving the sickness of a righteous person, which has come severely, when it is possible for him to say 'Ithâ and one 'Ashem-vohû 2,' or it is possible for him to say 'Ashem,' he is to recite that which it is possible for him to speak, and he is to drink or eat 3 the water, or food, or medicine which is discreetly his, and may be the custom of his body and life 4.

8. But the sinfulness of him who has drunk water with the word Ithâ, not owing to suffering, is much the most sinful, except this efficacy of which you have written that, having taken up 5 one half, they shall abandon one half; for, when in eating the efficacy is possessed in that manner, it is then a chattering meal which is a very grievous sin 6. 9. Every single drop (pashan) 7 which in that manner comes to the

---

1 Reading vâgō atâdâdâgân-i nadûgânâd, which M14 has altered to mean 'and if in his state of hunger and thirst.'
2 Merely the first words of the two formulas which constitute the inward prayer, or vâg (see § 1 n).
3 M14 has only 'he is to eat.'
4 M14 has 'and is authorisedly to preserve his own body.'
5 Reading frâg, as in M14 and § 2, instead of pavan, 'in;' though the reading 'in taking up' is quite possible.
6 The sin of drâyân-gûyisnîh, 'eagerness for chattering,' which arises from talking while eating, praying, or at any other time when a prayer (vâg) has been taken inwardly and is not yet spoken out. The sin arises from breaking the spell of the inward prayer (see Sls. V).
7 Comp. Av. parshuya and Pers. pashang, bashang. This word has been misread yâzîn, 'ceremony,' in Sls. V, 3, 4, which ought to stand as follows:—'It is unseasonable chatter for every single drop; for him who has performed the ritual it is a Tanâ-pûhar sin; for him who has not performed the ritual it is less,
mouth as a new taste is a sin of three stîrs¹, and every single thing which is spoken like that word² is a sin of three stîrs, which is mentioned as the minimum.

10. The retribution is that way well perfected when, in renunciation of that sin which attacks, a proper efficacy is prepared and becomes a vestige (vûnakî) of the sin of the performer. 11. Whoever is not able to arrange it in this manner is to entreat the prayers of three men with a donation of wealth, and is to solemnize his Nônâbar ceremony³, or he is to consecrate a sacred cake every day in the ceremonial place, to eat food lawfully, and to order the proper maintenance of the efficacy. 12. The assistance of performing the proper rituals through ordering the Nâbar ceremony, and the helping existence of discharging the burden of the trouble of a populous household seem to me suitable for the atonement of such-like sin, through the will of the sacred beings.

some have said three Srôshô-âranâms. The measure of unseasonable chatter is a Tanâpûhar sin; this is where every single drop, or every single morsel, or every single taste is not completed.'

¹ The stîr is evidently taken here as equivalent to the Srôshô-âranâm of Sls. V, 3 (see the last note). A sin of three Srôshô-âranâms, 'lashes with a scourge,' is called a Farmân, and is usually the least degree of sin of which notice is taken; its amount is variously estimated (see Sls. IV, 14, X, 24, XI, 2, XVI, 1, 5), but the value given here, in the text, is very likely correct, and is equivalent to about 4½ rûpûs, either in weight or amount (see Chap. LII, 1 n).

² The word Ithâ. M14 has 'every single time it is spoken in tasting with an efficacy like that word,' but the meaning of this is not clear.

³ See § 4.
CHAPTER LXXX.

1. As to the seventy-ninth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Concerning him who does not order ceremonies what is then the decision?

2. The reply is this, that, excepting those among which is specially the selected religious rite (dīnā) of him whose ceremony is not performed—who, even though having many good works, does not afterwards attain unto the supreme heaven, which is determined¹—this, moreover, is thus said, that he who is not able to perform his ritual himself, when he orders a Gētō-kharid² ceremony and they shall perform it, can become fit for the supreme heaven (garōdamāntkō); this is greatly to be commended.

CHAPTER LXXXI.

1. As to the eightieth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is the purpose of this ceremony for the living soul³, and why⁴ is it necessary

¹ It is the general opinion that if the proper ceremonies are not performed during the three days after a death (see Chap. XXVIII) the deceased cannot attain to the highest grade of heaven; this is, however, denied by some of the commentators (see Sls. VI, 3–6).

² See Chap. LXXIX, 4 n.

³ Dastūr Peshotanjī Behramji, the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay, informs me that every Parsi is bound to perform, or get performed, every year during his or her lifetime, ceremonies for three days in honour of his or her soul, analogous to those performed during the three days after a death. These Zindah-ravān, or Srōsh, ceremonies are generally ordered on the first three Fravardīgān holidays, extending from the twenty-sixth to the twenty-eighth day of the last month of the Parsi year.

⁴ Reading māman rāf, as in M14; K35 has là 'not,' instead of rāf, 'for.'
to order it? 2. And, whenever one orders it, how is it necessary then to order it, how is it best when they celebrate it, and what is its great advantage as a good work?

3. The reply is this, that worship with the ceremonial for those newly passed away, during the three days which they spend in the account, is suitable for the discreet, just as the protection with nourishment of those newly born, in their infancy, is also much more suitable for the discreet. 4. He is a truly discreet man through whom there is ceremonial for the three days, on account of his own father, and privileged wife, and infant child, and well-behaved servant, on their passing away; and it is indispensable to order the triple ceremonial of the three days.

5. This, too, is said: where it is not possible to solemnize his three days, or they solemnize them afterwards, when information of the death arrives, three days are to be solemnized as a substitute for those three. 6. For the good work of the ceremonial which is ordered by him himself, or bequeathed by him, or is his through consenting to it by design, exists—even though it is thus possible that it will be conducted afterwards—whenever it comes into progress; therefore he is exalted for it at his account

1 See Chaps. XXIV, XXV.
2 M14 has 'or they do not solemnize them, after which the information arrives,' which is clearly inconsistent with the context. When a person dies away from home, and the ceremonies are not performed on the spot, they must be performed at his home immediately after information of his death arrives, and the three succeeding days are considered as representing the three days after the death (see Sel. XVII, 6).
3 Comp. Chap. VIII, 5.
in the three days, and it comes on for his being exalted. 7. When that which is conducted afterwards comes on for aiding his being exalted in the three days of the account, that which was conducted by him himself beforehand is more hopeful and more certain of being exalted in that position.

8. On account of there being also a diminution (altō-k gahīdārth) of risk about their own souls, in the event of (min zak aţgh hat) their children not ordering the three days’ ceremonial, or it not being possible to solemnize it at that time, it is desirable to order, in their own lifetime and at their own convenience, the ceremony for their own living souls, advisedly, without doubt, and having appointed the mode of life of the three days, and also to appoint by will him who is to conduct it in the end. 9. And when both are conducted, the increase of good works and exaltation, though the end is not possible, or is not proceeded with—and the previous good works are commendable, and, therefore, preservatory—has reached even unto the most lordly wishes.

10. As to the man with great and powerful children, to whom the ceremonial of the three days for himself at the final day, and also the progress of many good works have seemed certain, but on account of yet another way to freedom from doubt effectually (frārāstthā) existing, he has bequeathed the conduct of the three days’ ceremonial, and also other good works, unto his children, in order that the ceremony for the living soul may be conducted at the final day, with him the angels are in triumph, the glory of the religion in the most lordly glory, and the solemnizers of ceremonial worship are many.

11. Then, moreover, owing to the contest of the
demons—so unjust that on the day of his passing away it is due to the uncleanness (apâdyâvîth) which has attained unto its full extent—all the solemnizers in the country, of the acts of worship solemnized, may have become thoroughly doubtful of the worship, and until it goes on to the disciples, and the ceremony is prepared, it is not proper to perform the whole ceremonial; in that way is manifested the great advantage and commendableness which arises from that ceremony for his living soul.

12. The nature of the ceremony ordered for the living soul is a counterpart of the three days, so it is needful that at all times of the three days and nights, successively emancipative (avadîgtinisnik), a ceremonial in honour of Srôsh² be always conducted, and that it proceed; and a fire is lighted in the ceremonial, and the clean ligature of the limbs is to be tied. 13. As a rule it is so considered that³ in the three days there are fifteen⁴ ceremonies (yastanô) in honour of Srôsh, and three sacred cakes (drôn)⁵ which are consecrated in each dawn (bâm-i) with various dedications; and the fourth day they solemnize the Visparad⁶, the portion⁷ of the righteous guardian spirits (ardât fravardô). 14. And there

¹ The corpse being considered utterly unclean.
² See Chap. XIV, 4.
³ The following clause, about the three days, is omitted in M14, which skips from 'that' to 'the fourth day.'
⁴ The Pers. Rivâyats merely say that four priests are employed, two at a time, so as to relieve each other in the continuous series of ceremonies for three days and nights.
⁵ See Chap. XXX, 1.
⁶ Here written Visparêdô (see Chap. XLV, 6).
⁷ Reading bôn, instead of nûb; M14 omits the word.
are fugitives of families of the period, and other still further diminishers of good works, who have wished to produce the wealth which is necessary to perform advantageously, as a custom of the soul in those three days, one celebration of all the religious rites (hamâk dinô) in honour of Srôsh, and the consecration of three sacred cakes for Srôsh every day; and the third night, at dawn, the consecration of a sacred cake dedicated in three modes. In accomplishing the consecration of the sacred cake specially for the righteous guardian spirits, on the fourth day, one is supposed to order a Dvâzdah-hômâst in honour of the righteous guardian spirits, and the rest of the ceremonial.

16. And he who has intended much more laudably is declared as the more devout and more judicious of worshippers; and for the sake of the ceremonial he is cleansed by the Bareshnûm ceremony, and is to practise other descriptions of cleanliness as regards his body and clothing. In the performance of the ceremonial, bread made from corn which is ground by those of the good

1 M14 has 'there are ghostly observers of the families of the period, and many other teachers.' But the original meaning was, no doubt as in K35, that there were many persons at that period who would have been glad to possess the means of ordering even a small portion of the proper rites for the dead.

2 That is, at dawn on the fourth day. The rites here mentioned seem to have been considered as the minimum that could be approved.

3 See Chap. XLVIII, 25.
4 A tedious ceremony of purification, lasting nine nights and detailed in Vend. IX, 1-145 (see App. IV). Its name is the Av. word which commences the instructions for sprinkling the unclean person (Vend. IX, 48), and means 'the top' of the head.
religion, wine from that made by those of the good religion, and meat from the animal\(^1\) which is slaughtered in the ceremonial are eaten; and one is to proceed into the abode of fires\(^2\) and of the good, and to abstain from the rest of the other places which are dubious\(^3\) and food which is dubious. 18. And with that thorough heedfulness one is to conduct and order that ceremonial in the abode of the ever-growing fire, or other fire of Varahrân\(^4\); whereby his numerous good works are effectual, and the path of good works\(^5\) is very broad. 19. Concerning\(^6\) the suffering of him whose capability in that which is his preserving efficacy\(^7\) is less, it is thus revealed, that not he who is righteous is overwhelmed, as it were unwilling, by incapability\(^8\).

---

**Chapter LXXXII.**

1. As to the eighty-first question and reply, that which you ask is thus: As to a man who shall order a ceremonial and shall give the money (diram), and the man who shall undertake his ceremonial

---

\(^1\) A goat or sheep is meant by gôspand here.

\(^2\) The fire temple, in, or near, which the priests ('the good') reside.

\(^3\) Or, var-hômand may mean 'open to choice,' but it is generally used as the opposite of aêvar, 'certain.'

\(^4\) Sacred fire (see Chap. XXXI, 7).

\(^5\) Over the Kinvad bridge (see Chap. XXI, 5).

\(^6\) Reading râf, instead of lâ, 'not,' here, and vice versa further on in the sentence, as in M\(^1\)4.

\(^7\) That is, in good works. M\(^1\)4 omits the word 'less.'

\(^8\) The construction of this quotation is suggestive of its being a literal translation from the Avesta.
and shall take his money, but has not performed the ceremonial, what is then the decision; and what is then the decision about the man who ordered the ceremonial?

2. The reply is this, that the merit of a ceremonial not performed is not set going; and does not come to the soul of the undertaker who shall take money for it, nor even to that of the orderer who gave money for it. 3. But, as to him who is the orderer, since his mental meritoriousness is so steadfast that he gave his money, the efficacy (tuban) of the good work, mentally his own, has not stayed away from him, because he gave money authorisedly for the good work; the decision, then, about him is such as about him to whom harm occurs in performing a good work for the religion. 4. It is said that the angels so recompense him that he does not consider it as any other harm; and as much as the good money given for the sacred feast and ceremonial is then the pleasure which comes unto his soul, as much as would have been possible to arise in the world from that money.

5. And he who shall take his money, and did not perform his ceremonial, is just as though he had abstracted from the angels and the righteous guardian spirits, and destroyed, as much propitiation as would have been possible from that ceremonial; and he is, therefore, overwhelmed by it, and expiates it in the soul.

1 M14 has 'the money given by him,' which may be correct.
2 See Chap. XLVII, 1.
3 K35 has 'the good.'
4 Or, we might perhaps read 'thereby it is his overwhelming (astarfdo),' supposing astarfdo to be a technical term implying a
Chapter LXXXIII.

1. As to the eighty-second question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Is it necessary for a priestly man\(^1\) that he should undertake all the religious rites and other ceremonials, or in what way is it?

2. The reply is this, that a priestly man should necessarily undertake all the religious rites and other ceremonials, because the deciding and advising performers of the ceremonial, these same priestly men, well understand the merit or demerit, the propriety or impropriety, of the ceremonial. 3. When the undertaker and conductor of all the religious rites is a priestly man, one is more hopeful of their progress in merit.

4. As to the priestly man who shall undertake all the religious rites, if he be living comfortably (hû-zivisnô) on a share of our house-rulership\(^2\),

flogging, as appears probable from a passage in Farh. Okh. p. 34, ll. 1, 2, which, when restored to its form in the oldest MSS., runs as follows:—Astarîdânô âskârîh astaraspân snas pavan vinâs, which may be translated 'the manifestation of "overwhelming" is the blow of horsewhips for sin;' assuming that astarasp is equivalent to aspô astar, the usual translation of Av. asphâh astraya, 'with a horsewhip.'

\(^1\) The term magavôg-gabrâ probably means strictly 'a man of a priestly family,' as distinguished from a priest appointed from the laity, an appointment that seems to have been occasionally made in former times (see Bd. Introd. p. xxxiii, note 1). According to the Nirangistân any virtuous man or woman can perform certain priestly duties under certain circumstances (see Sls. X, 35), but would not, of course, be magavôg, 'priestly, or of priestly family.'

\(^2\) Reading mânpatîh, instead of magôpatîh, 'priesthood,' which words are often confounded in Pahlavi, being written very nearly alike. And assuming that hatôm, 'if my,' stands for hatômân, 'if our;' Mi\(_4\) has at tâk sh, 'without exertion,' but hatôx, 'if his,' would be a more probable emendation, as it occurs in the next section.
village-rulership, tribe-rulership, and province-rulership, and his needful support of religion remain the consideration as to his living comfortably, and he have no need for the stipend of all the religious rites, then the rule for him is to distribute properly that recompense of the sacred feast\(^1\), which is to be given for all the religious rites, among the solemnizers\(^2\). 5. If it be needful for him, the priestly man, as he is suitable, is not changed—whereby good management is not attained—and if it be needful even for his consideration of all those religious rites, his performance in the duty and ministration is then an approval of worthiness and management. 6. When they shall act so, all those religious rites are more meritoriously managed; and one day the solemnizers are brought from the fag-end (sar) into the rank of priestly manhood, which is the stipend for all the religious rites that they shall expressly take authorisedly, and are, therefore, worthy of it\(^3\).

Chapter LXXXIV.

1. As to the eighty-third question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Is it desirable to give

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XLVII, i.

\(^2\) That is, if the chief priest has already a sufficient income, he is not to appropriate the fees for such occasional ceremonies, but to distribute them among his assistants, who are the actual solemnizers.

\(^3\) That is, when the chief priest requires the fees for his own support, the reward of his assistants must be the fact that they are rendering themselves competent to undertake the responsibility of the chief priest at some future time.
in excess the gift for the ceremonial which it is not desirable to diminish?

2. The reply is this, that it is proper not to diminish a gift where it is the gift for a ceremonial, and the reasons for it are many. 3. One is this, that a gift is the money which in another good work suffices for the accomplishment of the good work, and the good work of a righteous gift is a great good work, and not to diminish it is sure worthiness among the explainers. 4. When the sacred feast and the gift for the ceremonial are supplied in excess, even that which is an excess of gift is an excess of liberality to the performers of the ceremonial, and has realized (frārstō) an excess of good works that is commendable.

Chapter LXXXV.

1. As to the eighty-fourth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: As to a gift for the ceremonial which they do not reduce, and while they give it in excess, in what manner is then its great advantage, and how and in how many modes is it possible to occur?

2. The reply is this, that the advancement of the ceremonial of the sacred beings is by so much as the gift is more fully given; and the great advantage of the good work is more, and its reasons many, therefrom. 3. The desire of this wealth, which has come for the sake of the good work, is an experience

---

1 M14 omits the repetition of the words aīgh dahisnō-f.
2 See Chap. XLIV, 19.
3 See Chap. XLVII, 1.
of the comfortable living of the angels, by whom the solemnizers are aggrandized, and is proper apart from its great judiciousness; to diminish it is improper.

4. When the gift for the ceremonial is abundantly given, the performers of the ceremonial, who, with much trouble annoying them, have solemnized the Avesta and chanted the hymns (Gâthas), and obtain the stipend of their solemnizing from the remuneration of the solemnization, are living comfortably, thriving, and blessed. 5. And also the undertakers of all the religious rites who, by means of the hope of rightful religion, render one certain as to the way to the distant awful place¹, and tempt the longers for righteousness into the religion², undertake all the religious rites and ceremonial of the sacred beings for the sake of the stipend of proper diligence.

6. And reasoning thought is cognizant as regards the advantageousness due to the undertakers and solemnizers of all the religious rites, and a great stipend is more obtained and observed for them than for any other profession. 7. The sons, too, of priests and disciples strive for the words prayed³, and are more eager for their prayers; and many, likewise, shall engage for all the religious rites, and become more diffusive of the religion (dînô bâlis-nîktar); and, in like manner, the proper, more attainable, and more propitious path of the good for saving the soul becomes wider⁴.

¹ The place of account (see Chap. XX, 3). Or, it may be, 'render one certain, in the course of time, regarding the awful place (hell).'</n
² M14 adds 'and acquire good works.'
³ That is, they are more diligent in learning the prayers by heart.
⁴ Referring to the Khîvad bridge (see Chap. XXI, 5).
Chapter LXXXVI.

1. As to the eighty-fifth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: What is possible to become the harm of a gift that is reduced?

2. The reply is this, that since those things are to be properly given which are for the religious rites of the ceremonial\(^1\), and are the consideration of the undertakers of all the religious rites, and are also the stipend of some solemnizers, both\(^2\) are living comfortably by the ceremonial. 3. The sons of the disciples who wanted approval for the words prayed, become so much the more to be ordered and to be accepted; and the ceremonial of all the religious rites becomes more progressive.

4. So, moreover, when they go to undertake the well-operating activity of the ceremonial for a diminution of remuneration and gift, and owing to undertaking and ordering again\(^3\), by way of routine (pav\(\mathfrak{v}a\)n d\(\mathfrak{o}\)r r\(\mathfrak{\ddot{a}}\)s), they do not request so much stipend, it is as though they should buy my linen and should sell it again for their own payment (d\(\mathfrak{\ddot{a}}\)dan\(\mathfrak{o}\)). 5. As to the performers of the ceremonial, likewise, who have to acquire approval with much trouble and words prayed, and obtain a remuneration which, for the soul even, is as little for the ceremonial as though one were annoyed—whereby

---

\(^1\) Ma\(\mathfrak{i}\) has merely 'since the proper donation for the ceremonial.'

\(^2\) That is, both the undertakers and solemnizers, the chief priest and his assistants.

\(^3\) Referring to a priest who undertakes ceremonies and then directs inferiors to perform them (see Chap. LXVI, 4, 6).
living is difficult—they become sorry for enduring the trouble, owing to lukewarmness (afṣurđō-minisnth) in the same profession. 6. And even the sons of the disciples shall sell linen for wages, and they rejoice that it is possible to learn other callings with less pains; and thus they make them become lukewarm and meditating retreat (avāz-āhang) from the words of fresh paragraphs continually prayed\(^1\), from the approval requested of the learned (āzān), and from all the religious rites they should undertake for the contented.

7. As to those, moreover, who, through fervent-minded undertaking of what is ordered, request less for all the religious rites, and have not obtained\(^2\) even that which is due to them, it is not even as though they ordered of them for the fiends\(^3\). 8. And the disgrace, too, of the orderers of good works of lukewarmness is the exaltation of the profession of the disciples; and its deficient progress becomes the paralysation of the ceremonial of the sacred beings for saving the souls of the good from the deadly one (mar).

---

**Chapter LXXXVII.**

1. As to the eighty-sixth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: How is it good when they give a gift for the ceremonial?

---

1 Literally 'prayed and prayed.'

2 Reading ayāft, instead of the unintelligible ayādt, as d has, no doubt, been written for f.

3 Meaning that the orderers would act more liberally if they wanted a ceremony even in honour of the fiends.
2. The reply is this, that as it is necessary, so that the ceremonial of the sacred beings *may* be more advanced, and such wealth *may* more come on to the good work, for the proper stipends of the undertakers *and* solemnizers—*that* they *may* become less lukewarm as regards the accompanying proprieties, and thereby diligent *in* performing *them*—and there is not in *it*¹ an express connection manifested with different work, and with that *which has proceeded* from so many previous good *people, I deem the introduction of *it*² more expressly better.

---

Chapter LXXXVIII.

1. *As to* the eighty-seventh question *and* reply, that which you ask is thus: *As* family householders we of the good religion of Irân, before each *celebration of* all the religious rites with holy-water³ which they have provided in the land⁴ of Pârs, have then always given for it a gift of 400 dirhams, *or* 350 dirhams⁵ *at* least. 2. And now if *we* should be needy, when we deduct something from the 400 dirhams, or from the 350 dirhams, of the gift for them, they would then not accept *it* from us, and speak thus: 'Less than 400, or than 350, dirhams we do not⁶ accept.' 3. *But* there are needy *men*

---

¹ The ceremonial.  
² The gift.  
³ Reading bûm, as in M₁₄, instead of the barmanô, 'son,' of K₃₅.  
⁴ About 140 or 122½ rûpis (see Chap. LII, 1 note). As in Chap. LXVI, the actual value of these sums of money depended upon the price of the necessaries of life in the ninth century.  
⁵ K₃₅ repeats the negative, but whether this is a blunder, or intended to intensify the negation, is uncertain.
who always come to us themselves and speak thus: 'For 350 dirhams we will always twice conduct all the religious rites and ceremonial with holy-water such as those which you have always ordered before for 400; only order us.' 4. Would a needy one, apart from the priestly men who always say that they are not, be authorised, or not?

5. The reply is this, that the priest to whom your predecessors have given a gift of 400 or 350 dirhams, for all the religious rites with holy-water, it is proper to consider particularly virtuous and faithful, when there is nothing else about him, on account of which he is otherwise. 6. A celebration of all the religious rites with holy-water, in which they shall use four pure animals—and just according to the teaching of the high-priests they present to every single fire from one animal and one holy-water—and the offering of holy-water unto the fire whose holy-water it is, and bringing it on to another fire apart from that holy-water, and the ceremonial cleansing of the holy-water they maintain by agreement in thy name, the superiors solemnize with approval, faithfully, and attentively; and the remuneration of 350 dirhams would be a balancing of when they conduct the religious rite at the place of undertaking it, and when it is undertaken as regards a distant district.

7. In Artakhshatar-gadman, within my memory,

---

1 Sheep or goats. 2 That is, it is a fair average charge. 3 The Huz. form of Ardashir-khurrah, the name given by Ardashir son of Pâpak, the first Sasanian king, to the city and district of Gór, subsequently called Piruzâbâd (see Nöldeke's Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden, pp. 11, 19), about seventy miles south of Shihâz.
they who would accept less than 300 dirhams\textsuperscript{1} for it made a memorandum (farhāṅg), to keep in remembrance that 350 dirhams for all the religious rites performed was to be the rule declared by those of the religion in Artakhsatar-gadman. 8. Likewise, the glorified Ātūr-frōbag\textsuperscript{2}, son of Farākhūzâd, who was the pre-eminent leader of those of the good religion, decided in the same manner.

9. And now, too, they always conduct those rites which are without holy-water for 150 dirhams, or even for 120 dirhams\textsuperscript{3}; and the reason of it is the neediness of the disciples who, owing to that need, and in hope of obtaining more employment, always diminish their demands, and through deficient remuneration always become more needy, more importunate, and more moderate in desiring remuneration; and, in the course of the employment of resources and requesting the charge of all the religious rites, the labour and endurance of discipleship are exhausted.

10. And as to him who undertakes to conduct all the religious rites twice for 350 dirhams, if he be properly working and thoroughly reliable for the 350 dirhams which are always given him for the ceremonial of all the religious rites—just like those who would always undertake them once—and all the religious rites are conducted and secured twice, on

\textsuperscript{1} About 105 rūpis.
\textsuperscript{2} The name of an early editor of the Dīnkard, whose selections from various religious writings form the fourth and fifth books of that extensive work in its present form. He lived after the Muhammadian conquest of Persia, and probably in the eighth century of the Christian era.
\textsuperscript{3} That is, 52\frac{1}{4} or 42 rūpis.
account of the merit due to the continuous ceremonial of the sacred beings it is more authorisedly ordered of those who solemnize all the religious rites twice. 11. But as to him who would undertake all the religious rites twice for 350 dirhams, but is not able to conduct them unless he puts to it some of his own wealth, so that the progress may be acceptable to him as they conduct them through repetition, he should not undertake them owing to the reasons written in another chapter of ours, since it tends much more to neediness.

12. And more like unto the ancient sceptics (vimânakô) have become the disciples, among whom disagreement and enmity are produced, as is written in the same writing (khadû-gûn nâmakô); and, owing to admonishing words, these become enviousness and maliciousness unto the disciples, and trouble and disagreement less becoming among you and more contentious about you.

13. And at the time in which a great stipend existed, they contended with him through whose greatness and abundance of stipend their conflict was caused, one with the other, through envy; and now, too, they aways squabble about his deficient stipend, by which they will tempt them, on account of its inadequacy, for the sake of a way for preserving life, as was shown by my metaphor in the other chapter. 14. When those who, through need of employment in the rites of religion, or the recitations

---

1 This is also stated in Chap. LXVI, 32.
4 See Chap. LXVI, 28, 29.
8 It is uncertain whether these are the correct technical meanings of kēsh and dōr.
which are its wisdom, would at once produce enmity, and the friends of religion, are for each of two sides, it is important to look to the procuring of forgiveness, kind regards, and the progress of the elect (pasandakânô) in the duty of the faithful.

Chapter LXXXIX.

1. As to the eighty-eighth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: When a man resolves within himself thus: 'In the summer time I will go into Pârs, and will give so much money for the high-priesthood, on account of the fires and other matters which are as greatly advantageous,' though he himself does not come into Pârs, but sends the money according to his intention, or in excess of it, unto the high-priests—so that he is like the great who send in excess of that unto the high-priests—that, as the benefit is greater which is more maintained, they may provide for the fires of every kind and other matters, is then his proceeding of sending to Pârs, for that purpose, a sin, or not?

2. The reply is this, that if his coming be indispensable for the design he would undertake, then it is indispensable for him to accomplish his own mental undertaking; but in suffering which is excited and not avoidable, when there is really no possibility

1 Assuming that hâmân stands for hâmînô.
2 M14 omits this phrase.
of his travelling himself, any one whom he sends in his place, more particularly on that account, is not acceptable by the approval of the angels who have realized the affliction in his good thought, but the good work is to be eagerly well-considered. 3. Good gifts, and every office (gâs) about good works which it is possible to perform, are what are commendable in the well-housed man that is not able to work himself; they are avoidable by him when not of good race, and are not indispensable for him whenever the good work is not announced. 4. When able to manage it himself it is better; and when otherwise, his appointment of a faithful person over its preparation, and his accomplishment of the work of selector are expedient.

CHAPTER XC.

1. As to the eighty-ninth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Who, and how many are they who are without the religion (adînîth) but are made immortal, and for what purpose is their immortality? 2. Where is the place they, each one, possess sovereignty, and in the place where they possess sovereignty are there people of the good religion of every kind, or how are they; are there sacred fires and appointed worship, or how is

1 Mi.4 adds, 'he longs for good giving and good consideration; important and virtuous is he when able to do it;' but the sentence is hardly grammatical.

2 Literally 'fires of Varahrán' (see Chap. XXXI, 7).
it; and for what purpose is each one of their sovereignties?

3. The reply is this, that the immortal rulers of the region of glory, Khvanîras\(^1\), are said to be seven: one is Yôstô, son of Fryân\(^2\); the Avesta name of one is Yakhmâyûsad\(^3\), son of the same Fryân; the name of one is Fradhakhstô, son of the Khumbîks\(^4\); the name of one is Ashavazang, son of Pôrûdakhstôlôh\(^5\); one is the tree opposed to harm\(^6\);

---

\(^1\) The central one of the seven regions of the earth, which is supposed to contain all the countries best known to the Irâniâns, and to be as large as the other six regions put together (see Bd. XI, 2–6). The name is here corrupted into Khvanîras.

\(^2\) Av. Yôstô yô Fryanañâm of Âbân Yt. 81, Fravardin Yt. 120, who had to explain ninety-nine enigmas propounded to him by the evil Akhtya. In Pâz, this name is corrupted into Gôst-i Fryânô, whose explanation of thirty-three enigmas propounded by Akht the wizzard, and proposal of three enigmas in his turn form the subject of a Pahlavi tale published with AV. He is not included among the immortals mentioned in Bd. XXIX, 5, 6, and Dk. (see § 8, note), but is one of those specified in Byt. II, 1.

\(^3\) No doubt, the Av. Ashem-yahmâi-ustâ ('righteousness for which be blessing') who precedes Yôstô in Fravardin Yt. 120. He is the Asâm-i Yamâhurst of Bd. XXIX, 5, who is said to reside in the district of the river Nâîtvâk; but he is not mentioned in Dk. The names Yakhmâyûsad, Fradhakhstô, and Ashavazang are written in Pâzand, which accounts for their irregular spelling.

\(^4\) Av. Fradhakhstî Khumbîya of Fravardin Yt. 138. In Dk. he is said to be ruler on the Nâîtvâk waters, but in Bd. he is called Parsadgâ Hwembya residing in the plain of Pêryânsâf.

\(^5\) Av. Ashavazdang the Pourudhakhstîyan of Âbân Yt. 72, Fravardin Yt. 112. He is the Ashavazd son of Pourudhakhst in Bd., and is said to rule in the plain of Pêryânsâf in Dk.

\(^6\) The many-seeded tree, said to grow in the wide-formed ocean, and also in Aîrân-verg, on which the Saêna bird (simurgh) is supposed to sit and shake off the seeds, which are then conveyed by the bird Kamrös to the waters gathered by Tîrist, who rains them down on the earth with the water; hence the growth of fresh vegetation when the rainy season commences (see Rashnu Yt. 17, Bd. XXVII, 2, XXIX, 5, Mkh. LXII, 37–42).
one is Gôpatshah\(^1\); and one is Peshyôtanû\(^2\), who is called after the Kîtravôkô-mlyânô\(^3\).

4. The reign of Gôpatshah is over the land of Gôpatô\(^4\), coterminous with Aîrân-vêg\(^5\), on the bank (bâr) of the water of the Dâtîth\(^6\); and he keeps watch over the ox Hadhayás\(^7\), through whom occurs the complete perfection of primitive man\(^8\). 5. The reign of Peshyôtanû is in Kangdez\(^9\), and he resides in the illustrious Kangdez which the noble Styâvash\(^10\) formed through his glory, he who is called the erratic youth\(^11\) of the illustrious Kayânians.

6. And through his powerful spirit arose increase of cultivation and the ruler Kaf-Khûsrôt\(^12\) among the highest of the mountains in the countries of

---

\(^1\) Either a title or son of Aghrêrad, brother of Frâsîlyâv of Tûr (see Bd. XXIX, 5, XXXI, 20–22). He is a righteous minotaur according to Mkh. LXII, 31–36.

\(^2\) Here written Patshâyôtanû, but he is the Peshyôtanû of Chap. XXXVII, 36.

\(^3\) The Kâtru-mlyân river in Kangdez (see Bd. XX, 31).

\(^4\) Which is a non-Aryan country according to Dk., but Bd. (XXIX, 5) calls it ‘the land of the Saukavastân,’ and Mkh. (XLIV, 24–35, LXII, 31) places Gôpatshah in Aîrân-vêg.

\(^5\) See Chap. XXI, 2.

\(^6\) Av. Dâlîya, a river which flows out of Aîrân-vêg (see Bd. XX, 13).

\(^7\) See Chap. XXXVII, 99.

\(^8\) Referring either to the complete peopling of the earth by emigration on the back of this ox in ancient times, or to the immortality produced at the resurrection by tasting an elixir, of which the fat of this ox is one of the ingredients.

\(^9\) A settlement east of Persia formed, or fortified, by Styâvash (see Bd. XXIX, 10, Byt. III, 25).

\(^10\) See Chap. XXXVII, 36.

\(^11\) Or kâng-tî raftâr may mean ‘jaunty youth;’ but it is evidently an attempt to account for the name Kangdez as ‘the fortress of the kâng (“youth”).’

\(^12\) The son of Styâvash (see Chap. XXXVI, 3, Bd. XXXI, 25).
Irân and Tûrân; the purity of the sacred fire\(^1\) of great glory and the recital of the liturgy exist there, and the practice of religious rites (dînô) is provided. 7. The custom, also, of him (Peshyôtânû) and his companions and coadjutors (ham-bâr), in the appointed millenniums, is the great advancement of religion and good works in other quarters likewise\(^2\).

8. But, secondly, as to the whereabouts of the places which are theirs—just like his—of which there is no disquision by me, this also is even owing to my not remembering\(^3\).

---

\(^1\) Literally 'fire of Varahrán.'

\(^2\) He is expected to be summoned by the angels to restore the religious rites to the world, after the conflict of the nations in a future age (see Byt. III, 25-42).

\(^3\) In the detailed account of the contents of the Sûdkar (or Sûdgar) Nask, given in the ninth book of the Dînkar, the latter part of its fifteenth fargard is said to have been 'on the seven immortal rulers who are produced in the region of Khvanîras, and also about the determination of their glory, and the goodness, too, of their assistants and living sovereignty in both worlds. The tree opposed to harm is on Atrân-vég in the place of most excavations (frîh-nigânân?). Gôk-pâtô is in the non-Aryan countries. Peshyôtânû son of Vîrstasp is in Kangdez of the hundred-ribbed shape (sad-dandâkô kerpih?), in which a myriad of the exalted, who wear black marten fur (mûn sîyâh samûr yakhsen und), are righteous listeners out of the retinue of Peshyôtânû son of Vîrstasp. Frâdakhštô son of the mortal Khûmbîks, who is sovereign on the water of Nâîvtâk. Ashavazd son of Pûrûdakhštô, who is sovereign over the most manifest among uplands, the plain of Pêrinâs. Barâzd the causer of strife. And of the father-in-law's race (khâst-tômâmagâ?) of the famous Vîrstasp is he who is called Kàh-Khûsrôf, who produces even an advance of thy religion of the Mazda-worshippers, and also understands about it; and who gives my good practices further blessings, so that the world maintains my doings with benedictions. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.'

In this list of the immortal rulers of ancient times, the names of Barâzd and Kàh-Khûsrôf are substituted for those of Yôristô and
CHAPTER XCI.

1. As to the ninetieth question and reply, that which you ask is thus: From what is the sky made, and with what is it prepared?

2. The reply is this, that the sky is a dome (gardûn), wide and lofty; its inside and whole width and boundaries (ākhyaktâ), besides its material existence, are the stone of light, of all stones the hardest and most beautiful; and the grandeur of its spirit and even its internal bow are like those of mighty warriors arrayed. 3. And that material of the sky reached unto the place where promise-breaking words exist, and was without need of preparation; as it is said of places such as those—where wisdom is a witness about them—that which is not even itself a place, and its place does not yet exist, is without need of any preparing.

4. The light is for existing things, and they cherish a faculty (nîyûth) of motion also of two

Yakhmâyûrad in our text. Barâzâd is the I Bairaz of Bd. XXIX, 6, and, possibly, the Av. Berezyarsti of Fravardin Yt. roi.

1 The same notion as that indicated in Genesis by the word 'firmament.'

2 The rainbow.

3 Probably meaning that the sky extends downwards, below the horizon, as far as the second grade of hell, that for 'evil words,' Dûr-hûkht (see Sl. VI, 3, note).

4 The word dîvâk, 'place' (zîvâk in the Sasanian inscription of Naqšt-i Rustam, but traditionally pronounced gînâk), seems to be here taken in the etymological sense of zîvâk, that is, 'a living-place.' The text refers to the period, in the beginning, when the sky was indefinite space unprepared for the residence of creatures and merely a region of light (see Bd. I, 2), the light mentioned in § 4. Its preparation is referred to in §§ 8, 9.
kinds, *that* causing motion *and* *that* of moveables\(^1\); as mobility is mentioned about thought\(^2\) and immobility about material things. 5. Immovables are not moved, while moveables are moved by their power of movement; and those moveables, that way causing motion, are afterwards themselves a moving secret cause of motion, and then a cause of motion is not moving the movable, since *it* is not incapable of causing motion secretly by movement of itself. 6. Just as the force (*kûnisnô*) of a movement exists *and* does not become a force; only then it is declared by wisdom, that the causers of motion have been the causing of motion by force before movement, *and*, being unmoved, they are subsequently made to move by the force; later on, the causers of motion *have* to cause motion, by their power of causing motion, *in* the non-causers of motion, from which it is certain though the force of a movement exists it does not become a force; but, finally, that *which is* prepared with a source of activity\(^3\), before force, becomes unmoved.

7. Natures without need of the trouble of a preparer are distinguished from such; where movement occurs through every force, the championship of a position (*gâh*) not made to move—except, indeed, of *that* whose force, when it is unmoved by other force, is its own—is unmoving and thirstless\(^4\). 8. *It*  

---

\(^1\) M14 has ‘movables and immovables’ instead of this clause.

\(^2\) Perhaps we should read ‘the spirits,’ by inserting an additional medial stroke in the Pahlavi word.

\(^3\) Reading *tûkhshînîkîhâ*, instead of the unintelligible *tûkhshîtîkîhâ*. The author has so nearly lost sight of his argument in the mazes of his verbiage that there is some uncertainty about the translation of this paragraph.

\(^4\) That is, the guardians of a place exposed to all attacks (as
was restored immovably when there was an approach to the sky of that actual contender for the place, the fiend, and the sky was shaken by him; for connected with the sky were arranged so many possessors of all resources, dignified (a franktā) by their own all-powerful position and that well-operating, mighty, undrawn bow¹, righteous and well-discoursing (hû-fravakḥshsh), and many good spirits, gloriously cooperating for the preparation of the sky. 9. For that which was not even itself a place², when it is thus henceforth really a place, is in want of preparing; and, in the preparation of that visible³ place, with the material of the sky is mingled that triumphing, powerful spirit who made its existence a seeking for principle and seeking for intention, drawing up from below and drawing down from above, so that through that seeking for principle it becomes a concord, the resting-place of united champions, and unadmonishable through that power of seeking for intention; such as this it is if, indeed, it be the will of him, the creator of all goodness.

10. And it is said summarily that the sky was shaken in the period of disturbance and restored with trouble; and, if the guardian spirits are in freedom from disturbance through the glory of the creator, when there is not even a place for it prepared by themselves⁴, and their nature and own

the sky is supposed to be), unless it is a stronghold in itself, must be always on the alert.

¹ The rainbow; reading atāng darūn.
² That is, 'a living-place' (see § 3 n).
³ Reading dīdō, 'seen'; but it may be stō for stī, 'material.'
⁴ That is, while the sky was still indefinite space, the region of light, but no dwelling-place; although the guardian spirits had
strength are approving the trouble of preparation, it is not moved\(^1\), except by the creatures of his will, a will which is subduing.

---

**Chapter XCII.**

1. *As to the ninety-first question and reply, that which you ask is thus: Of waters and rivers, and whatever water is good, is Arekdisūr\(^2\) the greatest (mas), or some other water or good river; and, again, where is the place of Arekdisūr?*

2. The reply is this, that *it is* the water of Arekdisūr; and *what has* gushed from Arekdisūr is as large a mass as all the water in the world\(^3\) except the Arvand\(^4\); within the wide-formed ocean\(^5\) *it is* dominant over the thousand cascades (pashan) *and* thousand lakes\(^6\) of the waters, and its place is most renowned throughout the spheres. 3. There flows the water of Arekdisūr in a forest, the source of all seeds, whereby the species *which* plants possess are assimilated (aēdānagtdō) by it, *and* healing existences of all kinds are mingled *with it* from medicinal plants. 4. The abundant power of the

---

been created as representatives of the creatures, both spiritual and material, which were to be afterwards produced (see Bd. I, 8).

\(^1\) That is, when afterwards prepared as a dwelling-place the sky remains unmoved by evil beings.

\(^2\) See Chap. XXXVII, 118.

\(^3\) Compare Yas. LXIV, 12, Ābān Yt. 3.

\(^4\) A name of the river Tigris (see Zs. VI, 20).

\(^5\) As this ocean is supposed to encircle the world, the whole earth is within it.

\(^6\) Compare Yas. LXIV, 17, Ābān Yt. 4, 101.
coming of healing to the purifying water is like the nature of the existences which it acquires, and then the nature which it thus acquires for its own the water draws up by the power which is drawing water to itself.

5. The water of Arekdvisûr is on Albûrz¹, and flows even to the summit of the star station during the coming of the healing of purification, even unto Hûkhîr the lofty ², all-gorgeous and brilliant; thence its flowing is effected ³ into the lake of a summit to Albûrz, Mount Aûs,hîndûm ⁴, which is in the middle of the wide-formed ocean. 6. And from that flowing of waters that destined river, the utter destruction of every night, comes on in the light of a dawn; by the sprinkling of spray (pash-pashanô) it extends through the seven regions of the earth, and from it arise the growth of their plants and the coming of the healing of purification; that which is called a drop (srîśk) of the primeval creatures being a particle (aham) of water of the bulk of a horse ⁶.

¹ The chain of mountains supposed to surround the world and reach to heaven (see Chap. XX, 3, Bd. XII, 1, 3); owing to its height any water from its summit must flow downwards to reach the lowermost grade of heaven, called the star station.
² Av. Hukairya berezô, the Hûgar of Bd. XII, 5, XXIV, 17, probably a western summit of the mythic Albûrz.
³ Mi4 and J have nikûnî-aitô, ‘is precipitated,’ instead of kûnî-ait.
⁴ The Av. us Hindvad, ‘up the Hindva,’ of Tîstar Yt. 32, a mountain summit where the clouds gather; it is the Aûsindôm mountain of Bd. XII, 6, XIII, 5, said to be of the ruby material of the sky. In Bd. XIII, 4 the lake is said to be on the summit of Hûgar.
⁶ Referring to the term aspô-kehrpa applied to waters in Haftân Yt. 13, Tîstar Yt. 8, 46.
CHAPTER XCIII.

1. As to the ninety-second question and reply, that which you ask is thus: From what place should Tīstar\(^1\) seize the water? How does it pass into a cloud, and how does he make the cloud move on? How does it rain upon the world? How can he carry on a struggle with demons, and with which demon can he carry it on? How does this always happen with the hail and snow, whenever hail and snow occur? And who can force away that hail and snow?

2. The reply is this, that the high-priests have thus said, that Tīstar seizes a place which is called 'abysmal' (vārūnak)\(^2\), that is the last place of filtration in the ocean, and there are no removal of any kind and causing rain from any other place. 3. And the cause of its (the rain's) establishment is spiritually active, more particularly, however, through two kinds of material agency: one is that which is the rule (mang) in the atmosphere of the earth, whereby it is drawn up in atoms similarly to smoke, and in larger masses, well-soaring from the rivers; and one is that which blows with the power of the well-operating wind, and the blowing of the great united breath (ham-vâê) and strength of the com-

---

1 The angel who is supposed to produce rain, being a personification of the star Tīstar or Sirius. His production of rain and conflict with the demons of drought and thunder are detailed in Bd. VII, 1–13.

2 Assuming that the word is meant as a translation of Av. vairya, a term which is applied to the depths or depressed basins of the ocean in Yas. LXIV, 17, 18, Ābân Yl. 101, Zamyâd Yl. 51.
munity (καντιγάνοθ) of spirits\(^1\), from the fully perfect distillation (πûr-hû-zûhtûth) of the mighty ocean to the upper regions, and thereby the clouds are blown.

4. Afterwards, it (the rain) speeds in the cloud, through the great strength of the mighty wind, to where there is a necessity for it, to divert it from where there is no necessity; and so long as there is a necessity for it it (the cloud) discharges. 5. And when there is a necessity and it causes rain, and the necessity is for no more acquisitions of water, and the advantage is the effect of water upon the place, and it distributes it to the existing rivers for the use of the sea, and it causes rain again, it thereby produces even new water, new flowing, new coming of healing to plants, new growth, new golden colouring to lands, new purification to animals, new procreation, new proper breathings for other creatures, new dawn, and new things of that description.

6. The thriving of the world makes the advantage and perfection of the good creation increase; and, apart from a great craving for the effect of the glory of the spirits in the operations of cultivation and the performance of spiritual mysteries, it is said labours are aided even for one gloriously destined.

7. And Tîstar in seizing the water should seize upon the great strength of the wind of whirlwinds (gârdînâkân), which is figuratively (mîtînîthk) the dragging and blowing that follow the whirling; and the purified water is expanded and carried up aloft to the higher regions of the atmosphere, just as that

---

\(^1\) Altering mînînô, 'thought,' into 'spirits' by inserting an extra medial stroke, as in Mr.4 and J.
which is seen where it reaches up with the heaviness and weight of earth, and then is discerned in the plain\(^1\) accompanied by the dragging of the swirling wind \textit{which} would carry \textit{it} afar to settle like \textit{that} which is owing to dust; it (the atmosphere) is called Andarvâê ('the intermediate air'), and the wind is a whirlwind. 8. As the water is lighter, and owing to the more strongly dragging wind on the ocean than that which exists on the plain, so, also, the water from the ocean is much more in proportion, and transportable farther up than the dust\(^2\) from the plain. 9. And as in the midst of a plain a medium whirlwind of wind is expanded into the wide plain by a medium dragging of the wind, and plenty of much buffeting is the violence of the dragging of winds, a whirlwind of wind which is seen very lofty and large is unknown; so, also, one is ignorant of what is spreading among the movements of the sea. 10. The water of that full and abundant flowing—which is through the power and glory of the heavenly angels and Tîstar's control of the work—is blown up, both by the well-characterised water-drawing power, and also by the force of \textit{various} kinds, the dragging, and upward blowing of the winds, into the atmosphere; and thence it rains the complete rain, as they have recounted from observation and much full evidence.

11. The demon who resists the \textit{doings} of Tîstar—and the glorious Tîstar, meeting him, properly drives back such improper resistance of his—is

\(^{1}\) Referring to the frequent small whirlwinds, sweeping up the dust, which accompany every complete change of wind in dry climates.

\(^{2}\) K\textsuperscript{35} omits the first two letters of afrâ, 'dust,' by mistake.
a demon of the name of Apâôsh\textsuperscript{1}, which is interpreted as 'the destruction of water' (âp-aôsh). 12. He contends, moreover, with the uppermost and lowermost water; and desirous of its destruction that demon contends at three periods: first, for the non-existence of rain; secondly, for converting it into a cause of damage to a place; and thirdly, at the place of producing it with advantage; and the struggling is like a tree (vanô) which is set moving.

13. The seizers of the feminine\textsuperscript{2} pure water are a benefit for the existences of the whole world; and the formation of rain, and the triumph and ascendency of Tîstar over the demon, through that seizing (falânth) of water, are due to the creator who strengthens him\textsuperscript{3}, the archangels who have him assisted\textsuperscript{4}, the religious who reverence him, and the worldly beings who glorify him. 14. Very properly do the archangels propitiate him, and mankind promote the strength and power, which are engaged about the business, by glorifying and invoking the good spirit who increases them in consequence of glorifying and worship, and through which

\textsuperscript{1} Av. Apaôsha, the demon of drought, who, in the form of a black horse, is said in the Tîstar Yast to fight with Tîstar in the ocean. Here his name is written Apâôsh, but see Bd.VII, 8–12.

\textsuperscript{2} Reading mâdagîk. According to Bd. XVI, 6 the sky, metal, wind, and fire are always male, while water, earth, plants, and fish are always female, and all other creations are of both sexes. Water and earth are also personified as female angels.

\textsuperscript{3} In his first encounter with Apâôsh, Tîstar is vanquished, and attributes his defeat to his not being invoked by name in the ceremonies, whereupon Aûharmazd invokes him by name so as to give him enormous strength, when he returns to the conflict and conquers the demon (see Tîstar Yt. 20–28, Bd.VII, 8–10).

\textsuperscript{4} Reading alyyârinênd, as in M14 and J; in K35 it is written like ayênd rivênd, 'they come and liberate.'
arises that advantageousness\(^1\) of his—which owing to that benefit is the benefit of every one else—for this advantageous business.

15. And Tlstar shall gradually (padmaṅkthā) seize upon the water to distribute it liberally, assiduously a similitude of that which a learned ruler said, in extolling a wise high-priest, that, 'just as the wind draws the up-flying water from rivers and springs and from seas, Tlstar, through his own liberality, bestows the prepared apportionments of the whole production for the advantage of the creatures by the will of the sacred beings, and makes it rain. 16. And through that which he shall purposely seize to distribute suitably he distributes the water purified, he moistens the pleasant existences of animals and plants and spares\(^2\) the polluted, he provides for the thirsty\(^3\), he causes harm to the dye-like bloody one, and he makes the world thrive. 17. When that wide-spread liberality of his, the production of rain, is from the pure, healing water which he shall thus seize gradually and with just apportionment, and when through that acquiring of water-seizings the rivers, springs, and other existences (shavandagānō) are well-expanding, and even the diminution which is owing to the wasting (ātrikh-tagth) of rivers and springs does not occur thereby, it is thus, too, the lordly, by a law (dādō) moderate and varied—if the regulation (gūn) is to reach away from the region—are as much contributing, as

\(^1\) Reading sūdakīh instead of ḫ yūdakīh, 'which is unity.'
\(^2\) Or 'forbids' (bakhshēdō).
\(^3\) Ml\(_4\) and J have 'he causes the thirsty to drink.'
Tīstar is by causing rain for the region and the good, to the aggrandizement of the many grades¹ and the replenishment of the region and creatures².

CHAPTER XCIV.

1. And³ those of the primitive faith, the ancients of those acquainted with the religion⁴, thus considered, that in the spirit of life (ahvō)⁵ there is

¹ Or 'to the great aggrandizement of the grades.'
² Reading dām, as in Mr. and J, instead of gadman, 'glory.' The chapter appears to break off here, without any reference to the queries about hail and snow; but it is uncertain if any portion of the work be here omitted (owing to loss of folios in some older MS.) because the author does not always reply to all clauses of the questions, as may be noticed in Chap. XXXVII. One reason, however, for supposing that some of the text is here lost is the allusion, in Chaps. XVII, 20, XVIII, 2, to a chapter no longer extant in Dd.
³ The first eleven sections of this chapter are quoted from the beginning of the sixth book of the Dīnkard, which commences as follows:—'The propitiation of the creator Āharmāsād is even in the benedicitions of the religion of Māsadā-worship; this, too, was the settled decision of those of the primitive faith. The sixth book is on a compendium (vasāng) which was prepared by those of the primitive faith to maintain about the sayings of the religion of Māsadā-worship;' and then proceeds as in our text, with the variations and additional matter mentioned in the foot-notes. It is hardly probable that these quotations were intended as a conclusion to any reply, the beginning of which may be lost, as they refer to a variety of subjects; but they may have been selected by the author as authoritative opinions sufficiently comprehensive for his general peroration. At any rate they show that-the Dīnkard must have been in existence in its present form before the Dādスタン-ī Dīnk was written. All the MSS. have this peroration written continuously with the preceding chapter, without stop or break of any kind to indicate a change of subject.
⁴ Dk. has 'the ancients of the wise.' ⁵ Dk. adds 'of men.'
a thought and one appointed who holds the position (gâs), and there is a fiend who stops the way; and in the thought there is a word appointed which holds the position, and there is a fiend who stops the way.

2. In the spirit of life is a thought and Spendarmad ('bountiful devotion') holds the position, and the fiend Tarõmat ('scornful thought') stops the way; in the thought is a word and Ard ('the righteous') holds the position, and Varenâ ('lust') stops the way; in the word is a deed and Dînâ ('religion'), the good, holds the position, and self-conceit.

1 Dk. has 'which is appointed and,' &c.
2 Literally 'holds.'
3 It is evident from the context that something is omitted here, and Dk. supplies the following:—'and in the word there is a deed for the appointed position, and there is a fiend who stops the way. And in the spirit of life is a heart (vâlôm) and Vohûman ('good thought') holds the position, and Akômânâ ('evil thought') stops the way; and in the heart is a will and Srôsh ('attention') holds the position, and Aeshm ('wrath') stops the way.' It seems probable that the author did not mean to quote the latter sentence of this passage.
4 Dk. has 'and in the will.'
5 The female archangel, who is a personification of Av. spênta ârmaiti, and has special charge of the earth and virtuous women (see Bd. I, 26, Sls. XV, 20–24).
6 Here written Tarôkmaitû (Av. tarômaitû); he is the archdemon of disobedience, also called Nâûnghas (see Bd. XXVIII, 14, XXX, 29).
7 Av. areta, a title of the female angel Arshirang or Ashirang (Av. ashîs vanguhi, 'good rectitude'), whose name is given to the 25th day of the Parsi month (see Bd. XXII, 4, XXVII, 24, Sls. XXII, 25, XXIII, 4).
8 Av. varena, 'desire,' personified as a demon (see Bd. XXVIII, 25).
9 Av. daêna personified as an angel whose name is given to the tenth month and 24th day of the month of the Parsi year, and is also coupled with the names of other angels to form appellations.
(khūd-dōshagth) stops the way. 3. We men of all descriptions\(^1\) have to become very\(^2\) cautious that, while we do not desist from that way\(^3\), we do not go on to the way of the demons and fiends\(^4\).

4. For the struggling of men\(^5\) is in these three\(^6\) ways and paths; and whoever is saved in these three\(^6\) ways and paths is saved from every place, and whoever is misled there comes into the hands of the demons and fiends\(^7\), and is thenceforth not master (salltā) of himself, except when he shall do that which the fiends order him\(^8\).

5. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that that nature only is good when it\(^9\) shall not do unto another whatever is not good for its own self\(^10\); and that wisdom only is good when it thoroughly\(^11\) understands how to utilize the advantage\(^12\) of that happiness which has occurred, and shall\(^13\) not suffer vexation on account of harm which has not occurred; and that intellect only is good which

---

for the 8th, 15th, and 23rd days (see Bd. XXV, 3, 11, 20, Sls. XXII, 8, 15, 23, 24, XXIII, 4). Dk. omits the epithet 'good.'

\(^1\) Dk. omits the words 'of all descriptions;' it also places § 3 after § 4.

\(^2\) Dk. omits 'very.'

\(^3\) Dk. has 'from the way of the angels.'

\(^4\) Dk. has 'go after the fiends.'

\(^5\) Dk. has 'and the struggling of the fiend with men,' and places this section after § 2.

\(^6\) Dk. has 'such' instead of 'three' in both places.

\(^7\) Dk. has 'comes then to the hands of the fiends.'

\(^8\) Dk. then proceeds with § 3, 'and we men have to become cautious,' &c.

\(^9\) Dk. has 'which,' instead of 'when it,' both here and in the next clause.

\(^10\) Dk. has 'for itself.'

\(^11\) Dk. omits 'thoroughly.'

\(^12\) Literally 'to eat the fruit.'

\(^13\) Dk. has 'does.'
understands that it does not understand that which it does not understand.

6. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that one is to become¹ a friend of every one, and this is thy nature²; also, bring them on into³ goodness, and this is thy wisdom; also, consider them as thine own, and this is thy religion; also, through them it shall produce⁴ happiness, and this is thy soul⁵.

7. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that, when⁶ one shall do even that which he knows to be sin⁷, that is disobedience, and disobedience is the nature of the adversary; when one shall not do even that which he knows to be a good work, that is cupidity (varenôîkîh), and cupidity is the wisdom of the adversary⁸; and when one shall do⁹ even that which he does not know to be a good work or a sin, until it comes fully to¹⁰ his knowledge,

¹ Dk. has 'it is the becoming.' ² Dk. has 'wisdom.'
³ Or 'through.' Dk. omits this clause, substituting 'and this, too, was thus considered by them.'
⁴ Dk. has 'do thou produce.'
⁵ Dk. continues as follows:—'And this, too, was thus considered by them, that nature is that which deceives no one, wisdom is that which does not deceive itself, and religion is that which is whatever knows where one should perform good works.'
⁶ Reading amat, instead of mûn, 'which,' in all three clauses (see Chap. LXII, 4 n); Dk. omits the word altogether.
⁷ Dk. has 'shall not do even that which he knows to be a good work,' as in the second clause which it omits.
⁸ This clause is omitted by M14, J, BK, and the oldest MS. of Dk.; later MSS. of Dk. give it as follows: 'should they do even that they know to be a sin, that is lustful (varenôîk), and lustful is the wisdom of the adversary.'
⁹ Dk. has 'does.'
¹⁰ Dk. has 'before it comes unto.'
that is self-conceit, and self-conceit is the religion of the adversary. ¹

8. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that Aharman ² would do everything for the injury of Aûharmazd, but when it is done by him ³ it is then an injury of him himself, and an advantage of Aûharmazd; and Aûharmazd would do everything for his own advantage, and when it is done by him it is then, indeed ⁴, an advantage of him himself, but an injury of Aharman ⁵.

¹ In Dk. the following is here inserted:—'And this, too, was thus considered by them, that in one's nature there is no wisdom, but in wisdom there is nature, and in religion are both wisdom and nature. It is known how to manage the affairs of the spirit by the nature, they are preserved by wisdom, and the soul is preserved by a union of both. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that shame is that which should not allow one to commit sin, and disgrace is that it would not allow to cause. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that the essential thing of the primitive faith is freedom from sin. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that one becomes diligent about that with which he is conversant. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that the good thoughts that are in the records of the religion of every kind one should always put fully into practice, so far as he understands them. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that Aûharmazd, the lord, produced these creatures through his nature, maintains them through wisdom, and forces them back to himself through religion.'

² The evil spirit (see Chaps. II, xi, XIX, 1).

³ Or 'when he has done it,' which would be expressed by the same words.

⁴ Dk. omits 'indeed.'

⁵ In Dk. the following is here inserted:—'And this, too, was thus considered by them, that people are to keep an eye most diligently on the world for these three things: that which is realisable by a sinner through sin, a follower made famous, and to beg the recompense of good works from the spirits: and keeping their eye on the world is said to be this, that it is he who observes himself, so that a part of whatever he really desires he should always perform. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that three
9. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that a person of whatever description is to be kept in remembrance of the affairs of the spirit at every period and time, and of the happiness of heaven and misery of hell at that period when comfort, happiness, and pleasure have come to him.

10. And this, too, was thus considered by them, that happiness, indeed, would be there, in the heaven of light, when even here it is so happy, though, owing to many things, Aharman—with whom the happiness there is not connected—is even here so happy at the time when distress, vexation, and misery have come hereto; and this, too, was thus considered, that evils, indeed, would be there, in hell, when here is such misery, though even here much of the earthly happiness of Aûhar-

things which are very difficult to do are even such as these: one is not to render the sinfulness famous by the sin; one is not to exalt the opinions of the fiend, and the various sovereignties of the evil one, for the sake of wealth; and one is to beg the recompense of good works from the spirits, and not from the world.'

1 Dk. has merely 'keeps.'

2 Dk. has 'this, too, is to be considered,' as a continuation of the preceding section.

3 Dk. omits 'of light.'

4 The oldest MS. of Dk. has 'though some of the much happiness of Aûharmazd, &c., as in the latter part of the section, omitting the passage referring to Aharman and hell; later MSS., however, insert a modified version of the omitted passage, and read as follows: 'When even here it is so happy at the period when it should be distressing and the mischievous vexation of much pain has come; this, too, is to be considered, that misery, indeed, is the calamity (âfatô) there, in hell, when even here it is so, though some of the much happiness of Aûharmazd, &c., as before. This interpolation in Dk. is evidently modern (as the word âfatô is Arabic and not Pahlavi), and was probably composed by a copyist in India who was acquainted with the text of Dk.'
mazd—with whom the misery there is not con-
ected—is here so evil.

11. And this, too, was thus considered by them,
that that person is the more fortunate, in whom
are soundness of body, happiness, and energy
(râytnisnô); who has done those things about
which the last wish of him who departs from
the world is then thus: 'I will strive to do more,;
and who shall have exercised much complete abstinence
from those things about which his last wish, when
he departs from the world, is then such as 'I will
strive to do less, and it would have occurred more
comfortably for my soul.'

12. Do you good people of those of the good
religion of these countries of Irân keep in use the
laws appointed by those of the primitive faith who
were high-priests, so that your bodies may become
more renowned, and your souls more perfect, in
the radiant supreme heaven which is the seat of
Aûharmazd and the archangels, of the angels and
all the guardian spirits of the righteous. 13. So these
are so many answers of the questions provided, and
are given explanatorily from the exposition of the
religion and the statements of the high-priests of

1 Dk. has 'that a person is most fortunate in that.'

2 M14 and J have 'are the appearance of health of body and
pleasure;' Dk. has 'is the appearance of perfection.'

3 Dk. concludes as follows: 'who has done those things which
are done, about which on his last day—when the things of the
world depart—his wish is then thus, that 'more endeavour should
be made by me;' and has exercised much abstinence from those
things about which his last day's wish is this, that the endeavour made
should not be made.' The quotations from Dk. end at this point.

4 Reading mân, as in M14 and J, instead of amât, 'when,' (see
Chap. LXII, 4 n.)
those of the primitive faith, and are the nature of the teachings that Mânûskîhar, son of Yûdân-Yîm, pontiff (râdô) of Pârs and Kirmân, and director (farmâdâr) of the profession of priests, ordered to write.

14. Steadfast in the propitiation and praise of the creator Aûharmazd is the righteousness of obtainments of prayers, perfect is Zaratûst, and one only is the way which righteousness obtains, the others are no ways; homage to the exalted pontiff sent from the creator Aûharmazd, the heavenly, most righteous Zaratûst the Spîtamân.

15. Completed in peace and pleasure, joy and delight; happy for him who reads, and happier for him who keeps it in use and shall take his duty therefrom, if they exist unto time eternal.

1 See p. 3, note 2.
9 The two southern provinces of Persia, bordering on the Persian Gulf.
* This title seems to be always spelt in Pahlavi with â in the middle syllable, so that the form farmâdâr in Nöldeke’s Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden, p. 9, must be looked upon as an Arabic corruption, and the idea that it means ‘a pre- ceder or one who has precedence’ can hardly be maintained. It probably stands for farmâdâr, ‘a director or commander,’ not in a military sense. It occurs also in Bd. XXXIII, 2, where the title ‘great farmâdâr’ is evidently equivalent to ‘prime minister, or grand vazîr,’ but applied to a priest, as farmâdâr is here and in Chap. XLV, 5.
4 Reading râs, as in M14, instead of ra, which is merely an imperfect word. This clause of the sentence is a slight modification of a well-known quotation (said to be taken from the lost part of the Hâdôkht Nask) which is often used in perorations.
* Or ‘who keeps to duty and shall do his duty thereby.’
EPISTLES
OF
MĀNŪSKĪHAR.

I. TO THE GOOD PEOPLE OF SĪRKĀN.
II. TO HIS BROTHER, ZÂD-SPARAM.
III. TO ALL OF THE GOOD RELIGION IN IRĀN.

A.D. 881.
OBSERVATIONS.

1. For all divisions into chapters and sections the translator is responsible, as the manuscripts are written continuously, with very few stops marked, and even those are often misplaced.

2–6. (The same as on page 2.)

7. The manuscripts mentioned are:

BK, an old imperfect copy of K35 written in Kirmân, but now in Bombay.

J (about 60 years old), belonging to Dastâr Jâmâspji Minochiharji in Bombay.

K35 (probably written A.D. 1572), No. 35 in the University Library at Kopenhagen; upon the text of which this translation is based.

M 10 (about 150 years old), a Persian Rivâyat, No. 10 of the Haug Collection in the State Library at Munich.
EPISTLES OF MÂNÛSKÎHAR.

EPISTLE I.

TO THE GOOD PEOPLE OF SĪRKĀN.

Through the name and assistance of the creator Aûharmaéd and the whole of the sacred beings, all the angels of the spiritual and the angels of the worldly existences.

A copy of the epistle of the priest Mânûskîhar\(^1\), son of Yûdân-Yim, which was composed by him for the good people of Sîrkân\(^2\), on the contents of the precepts (vigîr-kardô) which the priest Zâd-sparam\(^3\), son of Yûdân-Yim, prepared.

Chapter I.

1. In the name of the sacred beings, who sent you a soul with long life, with provision for proper progress, and with the protection of increase of righteousness and wisdom, may such works and

---

\(^1\) The high-priest of Pârs and Kirmân (see the heading to Dd., p. 3).

\(^2\) Written Sîrkân once, Sîrkânô twice, and Sîrgânô four times, in these epistles. It was a town of considerable importance in former times (see Ouseley's Oriental Geography, pp. 138-145), about thirty parasangs south of Kirmân.

\(^3\) He was high-priest of Sîrkân and brother of Mânûsêîhar (as expressly stated in the heading to Ep. II), both being sons of the same father.
mysterious dignity, encompassed with 1 happiness, now possess increasing prosperity and a complete share of pre-eminent welfare and great exaltation in both worlds.

2. The epistle 2 which was wisely, properly, and with religious demeanour ordered by you, and sent by a courier (paṭkō), has come, and has enveloped and assailed (gastō) me, indeed, with appalling intelligence on other subjects; and if even a portion 3 of the vast importance and great value, as regards your heavenly concerns, arrangements, and natural and unpremeditated (avarīk) prodigies 4, which are for my knowledge, for the sake of courteous (drūdīk) information, be owing to intelligence for which the courtesanous and proper courageousness are among you, special pleasure is received therewith. 3. And praise is, thereupon, recited by me to the sacred beings, as regards the conflicting affairs even of this disordered (gūmē zisntōkō) existence; worldly possessions, as much as are suitable for the assistance of wisdom, are proper 5, and the gift of virtuous pleasure is the gain of the undeserving good work or prayer they (the sacred beings) shall accept; it causes aggrandizement and is as deserving as even that which the decision of

1 Or, 'sent down in,' according as we read parvastō or frōstō.
2 An epistle complaining of certain heretical teachings of their high-priest, Zād-spāram, which is no longer extant.
3 Reading va hat vāhar-īk.
4 The epistle which he had received from his brother, Zād-spāram, some time before, seems also to have mentioned certain omens (see Ep. II, i, 3).
5 J omits shāyedō, 'are proper,' because it follows the other shāyed, 'are suitable,' but it is not always safe to assume that the repetition of a word is a blunder.
the wise has said about it, that even from the management of disordered possessions which are impaired there is advantage through the power of wisdom; and they (the sacred beings) select and cleanse and uplift the good works in such manner as a precious stone (sag khêl) from the water, and gold brocade\(^1\) from the dust.

4. My pleasure, also, is as much increased through the information due to the same courtesy, and I have a new and great desire for the arrival of information, continuously from henceforth, about the perfect courageousness, enduring humility, good works, worshipping, favouring position, and eagerness of soul of you who have recounted your great thoughtfulness for religion and have provided good works.

5. On account of the universal renown (aspôha-rakânîth) of the good people of Khvanîras\(^2\), which is yours, owing to the favour that is your complete happiness, ardently and joyfully most desired, and constantly so, when there are opportunities of seeing you—though it is supposed to be the advantage of your own religion, joy of soul, courteousness, and proper constancy—since my will resides among you, you make known and command my actions, through the will of the sacred beings.

\(^1\) Reading dipakô-î zahabâ.

\(^2\) The central region of the earth, containing all the lands best known to the Iranians (see Dd. XC, 3).
CHAPTER II.

1. Then comes that itself\(^1\) which is dictated in the middle of your epistle, and, thereupon, it lays hold of me, and, owing to its hellish gloom, pallid appearance, and hellish effect, benediction is perplexedly dispensed by me in terror for my heart and mind; I have, also, grievously repented, as regards my own former arrangements in my warfare of violence—which were undeceptive in the balance pertaining to Rashnû\(^2\)—of any real falsity of the co-existent one\(^3\) I may have produced.

2. Responsible for the malice and annoyance of unjust kinds which are encountering us is the fiend of great strength, who is unobserving, seductive, astute in evil, eager for causing annihilation (ga\(st̄\)k\(ū\)n-varen), and full of deceit, so that it is possible for him to render doubtful, when so deceived, even him who is most a listener to essential righteousness, most desirous of steadfast truth, most performing proper religious customs, most acquainted with good ideas, most amazingly careful of his soul, most approved in the most wounding hell-brought conflict, and most at home (khānagkt\(ū\)m) in truth of all kinds, and to show him a semblance of reality in unreality, and of unreality in reality. 3. Just as even that similitude which is mentioned in revelation thus: 'He intends righteousness and considers

\(^1\) J has 'the writing.'

\(^2\) See Dd. XIV, 4.

\(^3\) The evil spirit who is supposed to be, for a time, co-existent with the beneficent spirit of Ātharmad.
about it thus: “A good work is done by me,” and he acquires fiendishness—that is, it becomes a source of sin for him—who shall bring forth water without holy-water to one contaminated by dead matter (nas-hômând), or who shall bring it forth without holy-water on a concealed or dark place in the night."

4. And about this I have no doubt, that the wish of that spirit is not coincident with righteousness, for it is realised, understood, and known that, as regards his own creatures, he is not careful for the proper movement of body and for the long living of life; so that the furtherance and continuance of these, which are his original resources of body and activities (khapsrânô) of life, become, for him who is among them (the fiend’s creatures), an increase of the propitiation of the sacred beings, of the practice of religion, and of the advancement and benediction of the teachings of just high-priests. 5. It is also manifest from the constantly-operating arrangement of manuscripts and synodical statements, about which Afarg wrote without falsifying the religion and apart from controversies; because among them (the fiend’s creatures) is he who has said they are like unto that which is now written

---

1 Quoted from Pahl. Vend. VII, 194-196, with some slight variations from the existing text. The meaning is that it is quite possible to commit sin by doing a good action in an improper manner.

2 That is, even the wicked, when they seek welfare, have to take to religious practices.

3 A commentator whose opinions are frequently quoted in the Pahlavi translations of the Avesta (see Sls. I, 3). J has ‘about which the splendour (afrând) of the religion is without falsehood.’
by him himself about it, and it has arranged much deliverance from sin\(^1\).

6. Of this, too, I am aware, that, except there where a purifier is in no way reached, his great duty—which is just the purification in which there is a washer who is cleansed (mastdō) in the religious mode for the profession of the priesthood—is then a means which the high-priests should allow\(^2\). 7. A washing which is not religiously ritualistic is ranked as an operation among the useless ones; it is vicious and grievously criminal, because the special means which, by preserving the soul\(^3\), is the perfect happiness of men, is the puri-

---

1 That is, any one who explains the scriptures in a new fashion to suit his own purposes, which he thereby represents as beneficial, is merely carrying out the wishes of the fiend. The author is here, referring to the heretical teachings of his brother, regarding purification, which are further described in the sequel.

2 That is, whenever a properly-qualified purifier is procurable, the priests should require him to purify any one who happens to be defiled by contact with dead matter by means of the Bareshnûm ceremony (see App. IV). It appears from the sequel, and from Eps. II and III, that the heresy of Zâd-spəram consisted chiefly of a misinterpretation of Vend. VIII, 278–299 (see App. V), which passage directs that a man in the fields, who has touched a corpse not yet eaten by dogs or birds, shall wash himself fifteen times with bull's urine, that he shall then run to some village, asking three different men on the way to cleanse him with the proper ceremony, and if they decline they each take upon themselves a share of the sin; when arrived at the village he shall ask a fourth time to be cleansed, and if no one will perform the ceremony he must wash himself with bull's urine and water in the ordinary manner, and shall be clean. The erroneous teaching of Zâd-spəram was that the fifteen times' washing was sufficient, without the subsequent ceremonial cleansing; and the object of these epistles was to combat that view of the law.

3 The ceremonial purification is supposed to cleanse the soul,
fication of men. 8. It is said: 'The purification of men cleansingly is a something (āltō) for the soul that should be after perfect birth; when they have been fully born the purification of others is the one thing which is good for the soul.'

9. And it is shown in another place that it is possible to obtain possession of purification also for the soul through purification of the body, even as it is said that a purifier is requested by him. 10. And it is necessary for him to speak thus: 'I have thus stood close by the body of him who is dead; I am no wisher for it by thought, I am no wisher for it by word, I am no wisher for it by deed; which is the reason—that is, on account of pollution—it is not possible to seek good works by thought, word, or deed, and it demands purification for me, that is, wash me thoroughly.' 11. As it is thereby declared that when he whose body is not purified, until they thoroughly wash him, is not able to seek good works by thought, word, or deed, and is not able to purify his soul, it is then a matter for the truly wise to seek even for purification of the soul by the purification of the body, for whose religious purification are those things which are unsubdued (asikand) in the religious ritual.

12. When these are thus the statements of former upholders of the religion and high-priests of the religion, he who is more intelligent and more active

whereas ordinary washing cleanses the body only, and is spiritually useless.

1 In Pahl. Vend. V, 65, X, 35, being a translation of a quotation from the Gāthas or sacred hymns (Yas. XLVII, 5, c).

2 Quoted, with some variation, from Pahl. Vend. VIII, 283, 284 (see App. V).
in the religion of the Mazda-worshippers in every house, village, tribe, and province—and, very much more the man who is righteous, of fluent speech, speaking the truth, who has chanted the sacred hymns, acquainted with the ritual, trained for the work, of renowned disposition, and a friend of the soul—is competent for the purification which it is very important to prepare, to think of, and to promote.

13. When the period is so unworthy, the fiend so abundantly contentious, and the hasty preparer of holy-water of such base origin (dûs-vêkh) which happens, moreover, when the good are equally low-minded (ham-bâstô-mînisnô)—we strive for what encourages the preparation of that even which is a collectively virtuous profession. 14. Then, too, there remains such rising in strength of many new things from very many countries, which is particularly grievous distress and danger to us; they deliver tokens of them to us applaudingly, and the expansibility of the words of the delivering diffuser of these and also other religious customs, as the sacred beings’ own persistency and complete glory, is a great and powerful capability.

Chapter III.

1. This, too, I am begging of you, that you may be desiring the truth, and that Vohûman, who,

---

1 This seems to be an allusion to the unworthiness of some of the priests of the period (compare Ep. II, i, 13; v, 14).

2 The archangel personifying ‘good thought’ (see Dd. III, 13).
when a ruler (shah) of yours, is an interpreter (pâ-kûkô) about the writing which¹ I write, may as regardfully and accommodatingly observe and direct as the variety of dispositions permits. 2. For you are of like opinion with me, to inform again the most initiated²; so that I am more steadfastly-determined (âusttîkânô-minîntar) thereon. 3. And if there be anything that seems to you otherwise, direct some one to point it out again, with the reason for maintaining it which occurs to you, just as a household companion is a responder and has spoken again for the sake of pointing out again; for there are many reasons, on account of which your kindly-regardful observation is needful, which are to be written about.

4. The first is this, that the penmanship of the spirits is not the profession of me and others³; and as to him by whom a theory (farhâng) not universally operating is disseminated, which is distinct from his more indispensable occupation, there is then no command for his teaching and apostleship therein. 5. On that account, too, the wise and the seekers for truth uphold the body of opinion about the statements of the writing of the spirits⁴, and, therefore, direct less of the ingenuity of preparing again the penmanship of various tidings.

6. The second is this, that, in the distress (dâhyakô) of this grievous time, he to whom

---
¹ Reading 1 instead of va, 'and.'
² That is, to severely admonish their high-priest, as he does in Ep. II.
³ That is, he disclaims all pretensions to inspiration on the part of himself and his contemporaries.
⁴ The inspired scriptures.
adherence and much indebtedness even as to his forefathers have remained, is well-lamenting, owing to the proposals (dādanō) of the unfriendly, and much harm has occurred through the conflicting (ārdākō) offer of remedies and lawful provision of means, full of trouble, except, indeed, to the upholder of religion who is more worldly-managing; and investigation by opponents is grievous danger, full of things inopportune and unnecessary for accomplishment.  

7. The third is this, that a wise man who is a high-priest of the spirit-retaining religion and acquainted with opinions, when also himself properly humble, fearless, and benedictive in the world, is then even, owing to his estimating pardonings and long-continued dexterity (dēr zīvakakīh), united with the good creations in affliction and vexation. 8. And, on account of information about the worldly and spiritual misery of former evils of many kinds—always as much in the religion, and in the thoughts of others, as one delivers up his heart to ingenious verbiage and for the preparation of phrases—he speaks as in the question in revelation, thus: "Who in the bodily existence

---

1 Referring to the risk of unfriendly and destructive criticism of the scriptures.
2 J has 'spirit-observing,' by changing giršnō into nigiršnō.
3 Reading andāsīh; the reference being to the sympathy acquired by a high-priest through performing his duty of appointing atonements for sins confessed to him.
4 Assuming that asānō stands for ašānō.
5 J has only 'as one speaks out his heart for ingenious verbiage and phrases, thus.' The question and reply here quoted seem to be no longer extant in the Avesta.
is more quickly fortunate?" and it is answered thus: "The youth who is observant and humble, O Zaratust! who, as regards both that which has happened and that which happens, also sees that which is evil and good with gratitude, just like that also which happens unto another;" because he knows this, that from this is a benefit, for he knows happiness and also misery. 9. The glorified leader of those of the good religion, Hêr-Frôvag, son of Farukhûzâd, wrote: 'It is he understands the consequence of his own action; and it is his great household attendant, and the worldly desire provided at the Kïnvad bridge becomes less watchful.'

10. The fourth is this, that I am more universally hoping about the property of the profession and the much duty fit for the truly wise, in such manner as even that in which the glorified and greatly-learned leader of those of the good religion, Yûdân-Yim, son of Shahpûhar, always urged on a priestly man with many sons and equally clever discourse.

---

1 It is doubtful whether this last clause be a portion of the quotation, or not.

2 This name is corrupted into Hê-Frôvag in the MSS., but Âtûr-Frôbag is probably intended. He was the compiler of a great part of the Dinkard, and is also mentioned in Dd. LXXXVIII, 8. The names Âtûr and Hêr are synonymous, both meaning 'fire.' The passage quoted in the text has the same form (beginning with the word hûman dô, 'it is') as nearly all the sections of the third book of the Dinkard, but it has not yet been discovered among them.

3 Here written Kîr-vidâr (see Dd. XX, 3).

4 So written in J, but K35 and BK have the syllable dân somewhat corrupted. The person meant, both here and in Chap. VII, 5, was probably the author's father, though Bd. XXXIII, 11 seems to make Yûdân-Yim the son of Vâhrâm-shâd.

5 Reading ham-gûkô, but J has ham-dûdakô, 'of the same family;' it also omits several other words by mistake.
11. That was through my instigation, alone and with little assistance, in the beginning; and, on account of the deficiency of warriors, the abundance of opponents, the very rapid arrival of disturbance, and the fourfold supplication for keeping away the ruin or hasty unlawful maintenance of the fires of the Mazda-worshippers, my constant distress is such that most of my time speaks of the same subject. 12. They may leave the abundance of despondency and thoughtfulness of the bodily existence to such remedial writing of his, unto whom the pleasantly comfortable thought of an evaded (vtrikhtô) seizure is requisite, but there is little worldly leisure for me for writing more in this direction (hanâ-runtar). 13. And specially in this passing time—when, alike limited by the coming of the period of giving daily supplies to the performers of worship, and by the ever-triumphant fire and its produce, it was necessary for me to go to Shiráz on account of some indispensable provision of means—the work was much and the leisure little.

1 From this and Ep. II, v, 14 it would appear that the priests at that time maintained a body of troops for the protection of their followers.

2 That is, regarding the proper maintenance of the priesthood, which had already engaged his anxious attention during the lifetime of his father.

3 The word var may either mean 'ashes' (see Sls. II, 49), alluding to clearing out the fire, or it may mean 'ordeal' (see Sls. XIII, 17).

4 See Dd. I, 17. This name is written Shirāzō once, Strāsō thrice, and Sirāsō four times in K35. Mānūskīhar appears to have come to Shirāz on this occasion to hold a general assembly of the priests and leading members of the community, and he wrote this epistle from that city (see Ep. II, i, 11; v, 10).
14. The fifth is this, that the custom of providing for all the duties even of the sacred fire (ātûr) by me, and my own desire¹, trained hand², unhardened mind, and unhardened heart for managing many things should have become the joy of my mind. 15. Then, too, from having read such writing and such news the healer of distress would be thoroughly connected with my heart and mind, owing to which my intellect would have become quickly fatigued (mândakô) by a limited preparation of phrases.

16. The sixth is this, that even he who is a rescued³ and better-operating (hû-dâgtar) man—when, owing to the writing of a learned man of the realm who is desiring the truth, he is so perplexed⁴ on account of a doubt of increasing the after-tearing of the same perplexity—has no doubt of the falsity and little training existent in the worldly.

17. The seventh is this, that if none of these six of which I have written should exist, even then your approved cleverness (stvagdårth), extolled freedom from strife, hereafter-discerning and complete mind-

¹ Reading kâmakô, instead of the unintelligible kâmûn.
² The MSS. omit the last letter of yadman.
³ That is, delivered from contamination or sin; vîrikhtô is probably to be traced to Av. vi+îrikhta, rather than to vi+rikhta (Pers. gurêkht).
⁴ K35 has a blank space here, and again a few words further on, but it is doubtful if any words be missing. The spaces are filled up in J and BK, apparently by guess, as follows: J has ‘he sees so perplexing a chance, concerning which, owing to the increase of after-tearing of the same perplexity and the arrival of evil, he is doubtful, has no doubt,’ &c. And BK has ‘he is so perplexed on account of no doubt of the falsity and little training that existed in the worldly for increasing the after-tearing of the same perplexity, has no doubt, &c.’
fulness, practised for the faithful—so kindly regarding, truly judging, and with a liking for praising (srdanō), as regards whatever I write truly and with true conviction—are, I consider, to make provision, and have realised a preparation striven for.

---

Chapter IV.

1. I have also seen the spiritual life in the writing which is in such statements of incompleteness, and owing to the same reason they should not cease from the operation of washing you—whom may the angels protect!—with the Bareshnûm ceremony.

2. Because the ancients have said that, when it shall be discarded from use, every water, fire, plant, righteous man, and animal, and all the creatures of Aûharmazd are afflicted, diminished, and made to leap away.

3. As it is said in revelation that, as to him who stands by a dead body upon which the Nasû has rushed, 'anusó zt, Spitama Zara-

---

1 J has bûrśidarkö, 'extolled,' instead of varśidarkö, 'practised.'
2 Reading dûkhs哈佛h as in J; the other MSS. have m instead of n.
3 Reading díd ahevÔth; but it can also be read stihahnôth, in which case the translation would be:—'And my worldly condition.'
4 Meaning the incomplete kind of purification which their statements complained of, or his referred to.
5 K35 and BK omit the r in kardakõ.
6 See App. IV.
7 The fiend of corruption (see Dd. XVII, 7).
8 The three Avesta passages here quoted, with their Zand (Pahlavi translation), are from Vend. IX, 161–163, and are freely translated (trans. D) thus:—'It grieves the sun, indeed, O Spitama
thustra! aësha yâ¹ paiti-irista avad² hvare á-tápayéiti³, anusô hâu mau, anusô avê stårô⁴ —discontentedly, moreover, O Zaratûst the Spittamân! does the sun shine upon him who has been by the dead, so discontentedly [does the moon]⁵, thus discontentedly do the stars—khshnâvayéiti zt, Spitama Zarathustra! aëshô ná yô yaoedâthryô, yaî aëtem⁶ paiti-iristem frâ-nasûm kernenaoiti—the man who is purifying propitiates them, O Zaratûst the Spîtamân! when he operates on him who has been by the dead, on whom the Nasûs is put forth, and he has become parted from the sacred twigs⁷—he propitiates fire, he propitiates

Zarathustra! to shine upon a man defiled by the dead; it grieves the moon, it grieves the stars. That man delights them, Θ Spitama Zarathustra! who cleanses from the Nasu those whom she has defiled; he delights the fire, he delights the water, he delights the earth, he delights the cow, he delights the trees, he delights the faithful, both men and women.⁸ The Avesta text is given according to the standard edition of Westergaard (IX, 41, 42), and all variants of any importance, in the three MSS. here used, are mentioned in the notes. These passages are also referred to in Ep. II, iii, 5. ⁹ K35 and BK insert the last three words, anusô âvâ stårô, here.

¹ J inserts yâ here.
² J has á-tápayaêta, but K35 and BK omit the word.
³ K35 and BK have khshathrô-chinanghô, 'of a desire of authority' (which occurs in Fravardin Yt. 112 as the name of a man) instead of avê stårô, which they have inserted earlier. They also leave a blank space for the words mamân akhûrsandîhâ, 'moreover, discontentedly' (which begin the Pahlavi translation), as if they were descended from a damaged original.
⁴ All three MSS. omit the words in brackets, which are necessary to complete the Pahlavi version.
⁵ K35 and BK omit aëtem.
⁶ J has 'who has become polluted,' which separation from the sacred twigs (see Dd. XLIII, 5), or other ceremonial apparatus, implies. The phrase is omitted in Pahl. Vend. IX, 162.
water, he propitiates animals and plants, he propitiates the righteous man, he propitiates the righteous woman, both of them, as in the Avesta of it:—khshnâvayêiti âtarem, &c.

4. When there is no purifier all the angels of the worldly existence become afflicted and dissatisfied; and religious purifiers who are intelligent are even now not to keep backward the work of purification, just as it has come to them by practice from those of the primitive faith, and are not to diminish it. 5. To change a good work properly appointed they shall not accept a law which is not right, a good work not properly appointed; not to do the work thereof is accounted very sagacious and perfectly wise; and through your freedom from inferiority the glorifying, commendation, praise, and blessing are your own. 6. For it is said that in all the work of forming and maintaining the law (dâdistânô) those of the primitive faith were very greatly particular about every single thing; and as to the whole operation of that proceeding into which they have entered, those of the primitive faith have become aware of the power which resides in true authority. 7. But, otherwise, the routine which is brought out

---

1 J has 'he propitiates plants,' as in Pahl. Vend. IX, 163.
2 Literally 'male.'
3 The initial words of which here follow their Pahlavi translation, instead of preceding it.
4 J omits these six words.
5 Reading afrôtarîh, as in BK; K35 had originally awartarîh, 'pre-eminence,' as in J, but the copyist wrote afrô (= aparva) over the awarta, as a correction, leaving it doubtful whether he meant afrôtarîh or aparvarîh, 'want of education.'
6 That is, unless confirmed by the decisions of the ancients.
from revelation\textsuperscript{1} and the teaching of the high-priests is then not authorisedly changed by that priestly man whose decree of the fifteen\textsuperscript{2} washings is written in your epistle\textsuperscript{3}; because, on account of the whole and any perversion (ga\textsuperscript{4}stak\textsuperscript{1}h) of the same writing, not of similar utterance with revelation, before which the custom did not exist, I am without doubt as to that decree.

8. And in it\textsuperscript{4}, moreover, is written, declared, and contained (va\textsuperscript{5}ng\textsuperscript{1}d\textsuperscript{0}) that once washing is mentioned\textsuperscript{5}, until a purifier comes who is acquainted with the ritual, who washes just as declared in revelation. 9. To be so washed I consider just as a thing for which he is even now as it were a purifier who is a good washer\textsuperscript{6}, that of which it is written below and clearly realised that it should not be decreed; and through the scanty deliverance written therein\textsuperscript{7} it is manifest it would not be the statement above\textsuperscript{8}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{1} J has 'which is brought out with knowledge of the purifying cup (t\textsuperscript{2}stä\textsuperscript{k}), with preservation of faith, and with manifestation from revelation.'
  \item \textsuperscript{2} All three MSS. have 'sixteen' in ciphers, but it is evident that Z\textsuperscript{d}-sparam and his erroneous teaching of the sufficiency of fifteen washings (see Ep. III, i, 2) are here referred to.
  \item \textsuperscript{3} Reading semag, a Huz. hybrid for nāmak.
  \item \textsuperscript{4} The decree of Z\textsuperscript{d}-sparam, apparently.
  \item \textsuperscript{5} Referring probably to Vend. VIII, 299, which provides a washing for the polluted person by himself, if he can find no one willing to purify him (see App. V).
  \item \textsuperscript{6} That is, for such a purpose any ordinary washer would be sufficient.
  \item \textsuperscript{7} In Pahl. Vend. VIII, 299, which states that, although pure enough for ordinary purposes, he must still abstain from engaging in ceremonies for others (see App. V).
  \item \textsuperscript{8} That is, it is very different from the propitiation mentioned in § 3.
\end{itemize}
10. If learned knowledge, relating both to that about inferior matters (agîr tarîthâ) and that about superior matters, be\(^1\) true authority praised and declared by the great primitive faith, former high-priests and those newly arisen (navâk gañdakâñô) would be and would have been similarly forward; then, too, it would exist not so much with the priestly men of the time as with the learned officiating priests (magô patân) of Aûharmazd who have been before. 11. And when, moreover, all the Avesta and Zand are easy to a priest\(^2\), pre-eminently acquainted with the liturgy and a supreme Zarâtûst, he has attained unto, and should remain with, Aûharmazd and \(^3\) the officiating priestship of Aûharmazd, and the supreme, world-managing, religion-observing (hû-dîn-nikâh) sovereignty as to religious treatises\(^4\). 12. To change then their practice in the law would be entirely an outcry apart from deliberation, and a like violation of the unanimity of the spirits who are the heads and guardians\(^6\) of the religion, and of the unanimity of the source of opinion of the good themselves, for the sake of what is not acceptable.

13. But the statement above\(^6\) is, was, and will be that which remains a good idea well considered by them with the centre of thought, as to its well-

\(^1\) J has 'because if even for that about superior matters, acquaintance with religion, and learned knowledge there be,' &c.

\(^2\) That is, when he knows all the scriptures and commentaries by heart.

\(^3\) J omits 'Aûharmazd and.'

\(^4\) That is, he has full authority to interpret the scriptures.

\(^6\) Reading sarân sar-dârân, but in K35 the two words overlap, so that sar-sar-dârân, 'head guardians,' might be intended.

\(^6\) Probably referring to the quotation from the Vendidâd in § 3.
operating characteristics, just contention, and complete powerlessness. 14. Also from the teaching of just high-priests, through the preservation of much evidence, and ascertained for the members of the assemblies of various provinces (šatrō šatrō), are shown the opinion and experience of most priestly men; and to make the various districts (kūstakō kūstakō) thrivingly steadfast, an unperverted one should be set up in all four quarters (pādkōs) of the same province.

15. And a semblance of it is apparent even from that which the glorified Nishahpūhar, the supreme officiating priest¹, and also other officiating priests of Ahrarmacd have said, that one is not to change any teaching of theirs thereon after it is provided, and not to render useless the statements of other authority thereon. 16. But that which they should accept from them as a certainty is to maintain the statements of other high-priests as pre-eminent; and not to change the operation of statements of another description has appeared lawful. 17. Even so it was as that same Nishahpūhar, in the council of the glorified (anōshakō rûbānō) Khūsrō², king of

¹ This mōbad of mōbads is mentioned in Pahl. Vend. III, 151, V, 112, VI, 71, VIII, 64, XVI, 10, 17, AV. I, 35, and twenty-four times in the Nīrangistān (see Sls. I, 4 n). His name is spelt in various ways.

² King Khūsrō, son of Kavād, who is best known by his title Nōshirvān, or Anōshirvān, ‘immortal-souled,’ reigned A.D. 531–579; and the statement that Nīshahpūhar was one of his councillors (made little more than three centuries after his death, and, therefore, probably correct) is of considerable importance for fixing a limit to the age of those Pahlavi books in which he is mentioned. These books are the Pahlavi Nīrangistān, a late recension of the Pahlavi Vendidād, and the Book of Ardā-Vīrāf, in which last it is
kings and son of Kavâd,—by preserving old things (ligânô)—showed that way on whose thoughts they are established, and wrote them unaltered, so that such thoughts thereon became as it were decided; and their thoughts thereon, after such decree of his, have so become unanimous. 18. Through the importance of his assured rank, and the rest which was said by him in the work of sustaining the faithful, he maintains as much as the other statements, one by one, from the deliberative teaching of those high-priests.

Chapter V.

1. That writing which comes amid the writing of your epistle is a correct fragment 1 as regards the nothing in which one is to change the operation properly maintainable, and it is becoming; because, if it be even for him, by whom it is written from the

stated that Virâf was called by the name of Nikhshâpûr by some. From the statements made in our text it seems probable that the council was employed in revising the Pahlavi Vendidâd, in which they were careful not to erase the opinions of older commentators, and thus confirmed their statements by their own authority. It is possible that this council was that mentioned in Byt. I, 7, where the name Nishâpûr also occurs, but whether it refers to a man or a city is not quite certain. This council, which seems to have been summoned for condemning the heresy of Mazdak, was held probably two or three years before Khûsrô came to the throne (see Nöeldeke: Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sassaniden, p. 465).

1 Reading buĝisnîth, but it may be buĝisnîth, ‘deliverance from contamination.’ The reference is to the decree of Zâd-spâram mentioned in Chap. IV, 7, the ‘writing’ alluded to in Ep. II, ii, 1; iii, 1.
statements of Médyôk-mâh, Afarg, and Sôshâns¹, the several statements and teachings of the same high-priests, yet then the elaboration and publication thereof are not such as that which is sent down by his further elaboration². 2. And thereby it has seemed manifest that it is sent so that a wish for the spirit may proceed from the truth of its minister (pâdô), or from his thought for the desired decision; or his understanding may be of that kind which is warped (vûkûstô), as though he believed it as other than the exposition of the religion and the teaching of the high-priests. 3. But until the unparalleled arrival of Sôshâns³ any one not sharing in complete knowledge is not appointed unto a patron spirit (ahvô), and the fiend specially contends more experimentally with the thoughts of the high-priests of the religion for a religious decision.

4. And even the recompense of community⁴ of property is that when one gladly observes pure thoughts; and the swift action of voluble (pûr) speakers and kind regard of religious characters for deliverance⁵ and for the noticeable undeceitfulness of the same spirit⁶—which is itself the desire of settled observation that is in it for the sake of the

¹ The names of three of the commentators whose opinions are most frequently quoted in the Pahlavi Vendidâd (see Sls. I, 3). Each of them appears to have written a complete ‘teaching’ or dissertation upon the ceremonial laws, from which the quotations are taken (see § 6).
² That is, in collecting the opinions of the ancients, he has twisted them so as to suit his own views.
³ The last of the future apostles (see Dd. II, 10), not the commentator of the same name mentioned in § 1.
⁴ Literally ‘fraternity.’
⁵ From pollution or sin.
⁶ See § 2.
same kind of full religious diffusion—are the swift action of the patron spirit, which, for the sake of preparing him for a deliverance that is not falsifying revelation and is without disputants, is a kind regard for the deliverance itself of him whose spiritual life (hûkô) it is.

5. As to that which is thought by him¹ of those deliverances sent down, completed, and announced, I consider more particularly about the meaning of one thing, which is their solemnized observance. 6. The solemnized observance of Mêdyôk-mâh is in the teaching² of Mêdyôk-mâh, and those of Afarg and Sôshâns are each one meditated and indicated in a teaching; and the pointedly superior position of each one of them is mentioned by him in his statement of any teaching and of the decision set up. 7. Also with a kind regard for his own choice he has thought it (the former teaching) imperfect, and, on account of what was not attained by it—which was a re-explainer of the same good ideas provided—its dissimilarity to it is not unnoticed ³. 8. But when one hears the re-explainers of a true reply he is well protected (hû-zinhârtô) by complete mindfulness ⁴, and is himself confident that the teaching of Mêdyôk-mâh is not the whole statement of Mêdyôk-mâh, for there are many opinions of

---

¹ Zad-sparam the writer of the decree mentioned in § 1.
² The word kâstakô means usually a written course of teaching or exposition, a commentary, dissertation, or manual of instruction.
³ Implying that Zâd-sparam had been more inclined to enforce his own opinions than to examine those of the commentators.
⁴ The Pahl. translation of Av. ârmaiti, 'devotion,' which is usually personified as a female archangel protecting the earth.
Mēdyōk-māh₁ which have decided in another manner; not that whatever Mēdyōk-māh said is not good, but in the teaching of Mēdyōk-māh it is certain that even what is not proper is mentioned many times as a possibility ².

CHAPTER VI.

I. As to that which is written in that epistle, that in the teaching of Sōshāns he thus states, that 'of both the purifiers necessary he is suitable by whom the ritual is performed ³', they have been similarly very unanimous that when one is incapable (atū)⁴ it is the other that is suitable, who is written of in connection with him; and that, moreover, because the statement of Afarg is in a teaching of his ⁵, and, on

---

₁ I inserts 'rules which are mentioned in the special teaching of Mēdyōk-māh.' It appears probable that the author had access to much more complete commentaries than the fragments now extant in the Pahlavi version of the Vendidad.

² Meaning, probably, that Mēdyōk-māh was disposed to relax the rigid enforcement of the law in cases of doubt or difficulty, as the Avesta itself does in several cases.

³ Quoted from Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, 6, where it may be read either as an opinion of Afarg (as mentioned in our text), or as a statement of the Pahlavi translator, who would, therefore, appear to have been Sōshāns. A complete translation of the Pahlavi version of Vend. IX, 1–145 and the commentaries relating to the Bare-shnūm ceremony, which are frequently alluded to in these epistles, will be found in App. IV.

⁴ Perhaps 'impotent,' as the Rivāyats (M 10, fol. 103 a) provide that a purifier shall be neither aged nor youthful, not less than thirty years of age.

⁵ See note 3, above; from this it appears that Afarg was the earlier commentator.
that account, that declaration of his seemed to be from him, which is as though it were decided by him. 2. Then, when one reaches the eulogistic (afrāstånākō) reply of his re-explainer, owing to his just will it is itself well perceived that Afarg comes into account as one of the high-priests; and that which is the special teaching of Sôshâns has mentioned that they have been very unanimous that when there is one he would be suitable.

3. That evidence, too, which many high-priests, and especially one teaching, are alike diffusing, is stated also in the teaching of Mêdyôk-mâh, that when he who is washing understands the profession, then one purifier is plenty for him. 4. When it is abundantly declared, in particular by two teachings, that when there is one he is suitable, it is then not to be rendered quite inoperative through the solitary statement of Afarg; for Afarg only said, as it appeared so to him himself, that two purifiers are requisite.

5. The customs of another high-priest are not declared to exist with like evidence; and this is set aside (spēg1dō) even by him himself, that another custom is not suitable to exist, because his own view is mentioned as it appeared to him.

6. Those of the primitive faith have been fully of the custom that other one selected, as to this, where it is the performance of the Vîkaya ("exorcism")⁵; because its explanation is this, that an

---

¹ See Pahl.Vend. IX, 132, 6, but the earlier part of the section refers to statements no longer extant.
² That is, the person undergoing the purification.
⁴ J inserts 'of the same opinion.'
⁵ That is, they have considered one purifier sufficient for reciting.
opinion upon which the priests (magavôgânô) are without dispute is that which he says is the custom of a priest, and the business of the two priests, of whose other custom he speaks as much, is a performance by those two witnesses indicating the same as the priest.

7. This, too, is evident, that, by confession of Afarg, when there is only one purifier he is to be considered as being suitable; and an attainment to more evidence is that which is written by you, that Mêdyôk-mâh has said that every customary part (ptôrakô) is to be washed three times, and now the purifiers do it once. 8. That teaching remains in the same manner as written by him, but the three-fold washing of Mêdyôk-mâh is not a washing to be striven for, but one to be well considered, of which he spoke; and this, too, is not said by him, that when one shall not wash three times it is not proper. 9. Afarg said that when one shall wash once it is proper, and about this once the opinion of Mêdyôk-mâh is the after statement, and the opinion of Afarg is the prior statement; and since in the life of man the first thing to be considered is about purity, not the indispensability of washing, and, further, the

the passages from the Avesta (see Vend. VIII, 49–62, IX, 118) which are supposed to drive away the fiend (comp. Ep. II, ii, 7).

1 See Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, b.

2 See Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, j, where, however, the statement as to three times washing is attributed to Afarg, who is the prior authority quoted (as mentioned in § 9), and that as to once washing is attributed to Mêdyôk-mâh, who is the after authority.

3 Reading là khâhelûnêdô-ae là šâyêdô instead of là khâhelûnêdô a-lâ šâyêdô.

4 Reading aê instead of va a. This statement is attributed to Mêdyôk-mâh in Pahl. Vend. (see note 2, above).
pollution diminishes, about which it speaks in the religious cleansing, during so many times washing as is declared, then the consideration of it is a consideration about the one time which is the first computation. 10. That which mentions more than once washing is a contradiction of the prior deponent, not a declaration; and the consideration of that operation, so long as it is declared, is about the statement of him who has mentioned once washing with the opinion of a prior deponent, owing to the same reasons. 11. But if it be even that much washing which is the merit of the operation, then the statement of Afarg about these times is manifestly very preservative, and that of Mēdyōk-māh is a necessity for declaration.

Chapter VII.

1. And as to that which is written, that 'in the teaching of Afarg it is thus declared, that "for every single person, at the least, one cup of water and

---

1 In Vend. IX, 48–117 the washings of the several parts of the body are mentioned only once, which is 'the first computation' here mentioned.

2 Reading pēsmāl, as equivalent to the pēsmāl or pēsīmal previously used; but the word can also be read pāsīmal, 'after deponent,' which would be inconsistent with the context. The two terms are very liable to be confounded in writing Pahlavi, and in Ep. II, ii, 6 they are again written alike, though put in opposition to each other. The 'prior deponent' is Afarg.

3 That is, 'about this one time,' as J has it.

4 In the epistle to which he is replying.

5 The words pavān kāmīstīth, both here and in §§ 5, 6, would be better translated 'as a desideratum, or desired quantity;' but in
one cup of bull's urine, which are well alike (vēh-māl)\textsuperscript{1}, are requisite;" and in the same manner it is said in the teaching of Mēdyōk-māh, that "the water and bull's urine, when it is possible, are all to be thoroughly consecrated; when not—and, at the lowest, one cup of water and one cup of bull's urine, which are well alike, for every single person—they are to be set down in that place, and are afterwards to be mingled together\textsuperscript{2}." 2. And since two teachings have so stated, are we to perform the operation more preservatively\textsuperscript{3} and according to a more correct opinion than this?

3. Also, 'a correct apportionment is not understood by us, and clear reasons have not come to our knowledge that a less measure of the thing is proper.' 4. But I well imagine (hū-mīnām) this is not the operation of the purifying cup (tāstīkō), where a less thing is not proper, because the information with which they have existed—owing to that information of theirs, of which a former high-priest and deliberator was the communicator—is that which was heard by me, that there are some who, for the sake of diminishing the measure of water and bull's urine, speak of this apportionment thus: 'Vīkithrekid', in everything the operation

Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, c the phrase is pavan kamistīh, which can mean only 'at the minimum, or least.'

\textsuperscript{1} In Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, c, where this statement occurs, the first letter of this word is omitted, which converts it into shumār, 'alike.' Either word may be correct, but vēh-māl occurs twice in this section.

\textsuperscript{2} This statement of Mēdyōk-māh seems no longer extant in the Pahlavi Vendidād.

\textsuperscript{3} That is, in a way more delivering from pollution and sin.

\textsuperscript{4} This word, which probably means 'in whatever is varied,' was
which accomplishes this, that is, when *there is* as much as is discernible from his body\(^1\), is proper.\(^5\)

5. And the saying is not perceived by me as a correct apportioning, because the judgment of the greatly-learned leader of those of the good religion, the glorified Yûdân-Yim\(^2\), and of other deliberators, the opinion of good thinkers, was thus, that that saying is spoken about that of which the measure is not declared as the least by the high-priests’ teaching of revelation. 6. Finally, when it is really of the same origin *and* suitable, then less than the least of that, of which the measure is declared as the least, is not proper, if, owing to much evidence in the teaching which has mentioned *it* as suitable, *it be* more of a blessing, and the operation performed thereby *be* more legitimate; because that teaching is for confessing that the statements of high-priests are most evidence of the practice.

7. This is that which is equally perpetual: it is very important *for* the purifiers to keep the intellect of life in operation, *and for* the good to become mentally a powerful giver of aid to them; and now, too, a purifier is ordered to keep in use his own most universal equal measure. 8. That which is perceived by me, and *has* come to my knowledge, more particularly when washed by myself, is the keeping in use an equal measure\(^3\). 9. And even if there be a purifier who does not completely keep in use the

---

1 That is, just sufficient to wet the body.

2 His father (see Chap. III, 10).

3 That is, the two liquids should be provided in equal quantities,
consecrated water and bull's urine, still then it is not worse than when it does not really arise from the same origin\(^1\), and its religious rite also does not take place.

10. Also the words of both the solemnization of the Vendidâd and the recitation of the Avesta are likewise to be uttered by him; because \(^2\) 'Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd about it thus: "How shall I purify\(^3\) where he does not attain unto the Airyemā \(^4\) —there are some who say where everything is anusḍ ('discontented')? 11. How as to the fire, how as to the water, how as to the earth, how as to animals, how as to plants, how as to the righteous man, how as to the righteous woman, how as to the stars, how as to the moon, how as to the sun, how as to the endless light, how as to the independent light\(^6\), how as to all the prosperity, created by

which differs from the present practice, as stated in the Persian Rivâyats; thus, MÍo, fol. 104 a, mentions 3½ mans of water and 1½ man of bull's urine as suitable quantities to be provided. This section is omitted in J, probably by mistake.

\(^1\) Apparently deprecating the use of mingled liquids derived from various sources.

\(^2\) The passage quoted here is from Pahl. Vend. XI, 1–5, with a few variations.

\(^3\) Pahl. Vend. inserts 'as to the abode.'

\(^4\) The Airyemâ (written Airyêmê in the MSS.) is Yas. LIII, which commences with the words 'â airyemâ ishyô,' and is the last of the Gâtha spells mentioned, in Vend. X, 22, as having to be recited four times in order to exorcise the fiend. The meaning of the question in the text, therefore, is: how is the purification to be effected when all the spells are not recited?

\(^5\) Referring to Vend. IX, 161–163 (see Chap. IV, 3).

\(^6\) This clause is omitted in Pahl. Vend., being merely a repetition of the preceding one, the Av. anaghra raÔtâu being first translated by asarag rôshanôih, and then partially transliterated by
Aûharmazd, which is a manifestation of righteousness?"
12. And Aûharmazd spoke to him thus: "Thou shalt chant the purification liturgy, O Zaratûst!—that is, fully solemnize a Vendidad service—then he becomes purified, &c.," as mentioned by me above. 13. Where they do not make them solemnize a Vendidad so that they keep in operation that which is written of it as a rite, this does not drive pollution from any one; and then, too, they should abandon the commands of a decree of leaders who are not over them.

14. Keep the Bareshnûm ceremony in operation, so that the consecrated water and bull's urine are in the proportion which is taught by the high-priests of the religion, unless a scarcity occurs as regards these. 15. Then together with it, also, this is to be observed, that what is mentioned in two teachings is certainly more correct; afterwards, too, where a possibility for it is not obtained by them, there is what is mentioned as suitable by one teaching, and I do not decide that it is not an expediency.

16. And as to that, also, which is written concerning the three hundred pebbles that, sprinkled

anagrąg rôshanô. As sar means 'head, end' in Pahlavi (hardly ever 'beginning'), the only meaning common to the two terms asarag and anagrąg seems to be 'without a head or superior, independent,' that is, independent of the light of other luminaries.

1 K35 has 'righteousness, created by Aûharmazd,' but this is evidently a mistake, as 'righteousness' does not translate the original Av. vohû.

2 That is, as to the fire, &c. mentioned in § 11.

3 Referring to the heretical decree about which he is writing.

4 See App. IV.

5 See also Ep. II, iii, 12. The word generally used in these
EPISTLE I, CHAPTER VII, I2–VIII, I. 309

in *ceremonial* ablution (pāḍyāvāḍ), are cast into (val) the bull’s urine and water, that is taught even *in* the same manner; the *inward* prayer (vāgṛō)\(^1\), even for when *one* does not cast *them*, is in the existing teaching, which is proper. 17. Then, too, on account of the cheapness\(^2\) and harmlessness of the pebbles the purifiers are less curtailing *as* to them, *and* to drink the thing so is well-curative in performance. 18. In the existing teaching of imperfect purifiers it should be very advantageous to maintain it as easy; moreover, it is not said of it *that* it is not suitable, and in the teaching of Afarg it is said that it is proper.

---

**CHAPTER VIII.**

1. *As to* that which is written\(^3\), that it is declared in the Sakādūm *Nask*\(^4\), that the consecrated bull’s epistles is sang, ‘stone,’ but Chap. IX, 6 has sagṭakṑ, and Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, c mentions sagṭak, ‘a pebble,’ as being cast into (dēn) the consecrated water and bull’s urine, without specifying any number. The practice appears not to be mentioned in the Persian Rivāyats, and seems now obsolete; the addition of a small quantity of the ashes of the sacred fire to the bull’s urine, which is tasted at the beginning of the rite, is, however, mentioned in the Rivāyats.

\(^1\) See Dd. LXXIX, 2. The prayer or grace has to be taken inwardly, that is, murmured, before the drinking mentioned in § 17. According to this text provision seems to have been made for not using the pebbles, by means of a special prayer.

\(^2\) Or ‘value,’ as argānṭh means both.

\(^3\) In the epistle to which he is replying.

\(^4\) This was the eighteenth of the lost books of the Masdā-worshippers (see Sls. X, 25, note). It was one of the seven law books, and treated of many legal matters. Among the contents of its first thirty sections the following items are mentioned by the Dinkard,
urine, when it becomes fetid, is to be stirred up (barā agārdōnānā), and they should not carry it forth so to the fire, so that the stench extends to the fire; because, if that stench extends to the fire, on account of the moisture and through carrying bodily refuse (hūgar) on and forth to the fire, it overwhelms it; that is taught in like manner lest, and owing to what is said, it then seemed to one that the bodily refuse and pollution of fetid bull’s urine is on account of the stench. 2. But it is proper to observe it more fully mindfully, perfectly completely, and with better understanding, because that which is said by it, that the carrying of bodily refuse forth to the fire overwhelms it, is not on account of the pollution of the bull’s urine, but the proportion of the sin through this; so that it becomes the origin of as much sin for him as that pollution of the bull’s urine; but the stench, on account of moisture, is like him even who shall bring clean and purified water into the fire, and thereby becomes sinful.

and one of these passages probably contained the statement quoted in our text:—‘On carrying forth the holy-water and also the pot (dīgān-k) to the fire, that is, with purified and thoroughly-washed hands; and the sin of carrying them forth with unpurified and imperfectly-washed hands. On preserving the pot and the other things, whose use is with the fire, from defilement with bodily refuse; when, through want of care, defilement occurs, and any one shall carry it unwares to the fire, he who is careless overwhelms it thereby. . . . On lawfully warming the bull’s urine on the fire, and the sin when it is not done lawfully.’

1 See Dd. XLVIII, 19, note.

The argument is that the urine being a consecrated liquid, its corruption is not contaminating (provided it be not occasioned by foreign matter, as alluded to in § 7); but if the stench be sufficient to extinguish or injure the fire, it is as sinful to expose the fire to its influence as it would be to injure the fire with holy-water.
3. This, too, is a saying, that the proportion of the sin is mentioned not on account of the pollution of the bull’s urine; it is said to be a counterpart even of that which is declared of the care of the flesh of the ass and pig, so that when they shall now carry unto the fire more than the proportion which is ordered, it overwhelms it through carrying bodily refuse forth to the fire, and even then that flesh, investigated as to purity, is mentioned as a supply for the season-festival.

4. The fetid bull’s urine is itself likewise prepared, so that on this account it is ordered that it is to be stirred up, that so long as it is stirred up they may thereupon order the use of it; if then it is to be rendered quite useless, there is afterwards no necessity for stirring it. 5. The stirring is declared a purification as regards polluted things, where bodily refuse is only such that it is not endless, and so pure that it purifies even that of another.

6. When it is written of it itself, that it is thus declared in the Sakâdûm Nask, that consecrated bull’s urine which is fetid is to be stirred up for the fire, it is afterwards declared that it is not speaking only of the bull’s urine which is provided those three days; but that, too, which is old and consecrated,

---

1 So the damage to the fire is not occasioned by any impurity of the flesh of the ass or pig (which could be used for a sacred feast), but by the excessive quantity brought to it. The pig was formerly domesticated by the Parsis (see Sls. II, 58), but they have long since adopted the prejudices of the Hindus and Muhammadans as regards its uncleanness.

2 Referring probably to the times of the three washings, subsequent to the chief ceremony, which take place after the third, sixth, and ninth nights, respectively, (see Vend. IX, 136, 140, 144.)
become fetid and is stirred again, when they keep it in use, is proper. 7. And that which the Sakadûm has declared is, specially, that one of the high-priests has individually said: 'That stench is mentioned with reference to the occasion when a stench reaches it of a different kind from that which exists naturally in it.'

CHAPTER IX.

1. And as to that which is written¹, that 'the teachings of Mêdyôk-mâh, Afarg, and Sôshâns² have all three come and remained, and, on that account, whoever has washed just as they always wash therein is certain that he is worthy.' 2. Also, 'should it have been as it were proper to them, would Mêdyôk-mâh have said that "not even the purifier is single?"' 3. And the rest as written on that subject, which, on account of its acute observation, has seemed to be from their statements; they, however, have not decided it so by the teaching which is in their names, as was indicated by me before³.

4. But I do not so understand that 'if those should have been all the particulars of the peculiarity of all three teachings, would the teachings of Mêdyôk-mâh and Sôshâns have said, concerning any one who should have so washed that the purifier was single, that it is suitable, because the high-priests have been thus very unanimous that when

¹ In the epistle to which he is replying.
³ See Chap. VI, 2–4.
there is one he is unsuitable\(^1\)? 5. And when it should be to them as it were proper that, apart from the hands, the other\(^2\) customary parts (pirak\(\ddot{\text{o}}\)) should be washed once by them, would Afarg have said it is proper\(^3\), because washing them three times is not mentioned in the Avesta? 6. And when it would have been as it were proper that the three hundred pebbles (sang) should not be cast into the water and bull's urine, would Afarg's teaching have said that it is proper\(^4\), because there is not a single use for a pebble (sag\(\ddot{\text{k}}\)ak\(\ddot{\text{o}}\))? 7. And when it would be as it were proper that he who is washed at the ablution seats (mak) at which any one has been washed during the length of a year, is not injured thereby—only they shall take them away and they are again deposited\(^5\)—would Mëdyôk-mâh's teaching have said that it is proper, because, when the stones (sag\(\ddot{o}\)) are again deposited by one, it is to effect the cleansing (vistarîs\(\ddot{n}\)) of some one,

---

1 The writer says he does not understand this argument of his correspondents, because it differs from the view he takes in Chap. VI, 2, but it must be confessed that the meaning of the passage in dispute (Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, b) is not very clear, as the word ashâyêd, 'he is unsuitable,' can also be read ae shâyêd, 'he would be suitable,' both there and in our text.

2 K\(35\) has one line blank here, but this was probably owing to the state of the paper, or some inadvertence of the copyist; as it is evident that none of the text is omitted.

3 Compare Chap. VI, 9–11.

4 Compare Chap. VII, 16–18.

5 This shows that the places for ablution during the Bareshnûm ceremony were, a thousand years ago, the same as now, namely, stones deposited on the ground, not holes dug in the ground, as directed in Vend. IX, 13, 14, 16. They are, in fact, the stones or hard material directed to be deposited at the holes in Vend. IX, 29, 30, but they go by the old name for the holes (magh).
and when a shower of rain occurs thereon so that the whole place shall be thoroughly wetted, inside and outside, it is proper? 8. And if some one says that this is the case of a rite by a teaching of authority, and the rule is by a teaching of private authority, is not the whole rite by any teaching proper, that consists in this washing which is thoroughly preserved as they keep it in practice? 9. The reply is even this, that every rite (ntron) is to be performed in such manner as that which is said to be most preservative, and most connected with the declaration of revelation and the testimony of the high-priests concerning it. 10. And not for the reason that Médyôk-mâh’s teaching is more preservative as to one rite, and after that something of Afarg is more preservative, is the operation to be performed by the statement of Médyôk-mâh; but whatever is the more preservative of Médyôk-mâh’s is collected from Médyôk-mâh, all the more preservative of Afarg from Afarg, and that which is the more preservative of any other high-priest from that which has the most preservative approval of the high-priest. 11. That which those high-priests have said, which they decide by just authority, is the commandment of the learned of the realm, which has lawfully arisen over the provinces (shôhârânô); but even that statement opposing it which is much testified and manifestly more of a deliverance, or which is declared as an exposition

1 This string of arguments appears to be quoted from the epistle to which the writer is replying, but as they are separated from their context it is difficult to understand the exact line of argument, or to be sure that they are translated correctly.

2 From pollution or sin.
of the teaching of high-priests of the religion in a dissimilar case, they shall then wholly accept, and they are to perform the operation authorisedly and preservatively thereby.

12. This, too, I so consider, that even if each separate teaching should be as it were proper, it would then not be determined by them as to the impropriety of the purifying cup, for Médyǒk-mâh has stated, only as it was apparent to him, that every single customary part is to be washed for three times, and has not specifically determined that when all shall be so once it is not proper.

13. By the special teaching of Médyǒk-mâh and the washing which is in the law that says—concerning those interpreting revelation—that whoever becomes quite polluted shall thoroughly wash by that law, so that his being washed is to be considered as being washed, it (the rite) is not performed by me if, also, that other high-priest has said, that every one who becomes quite polluted, and washes not by the law of the primitive faith, is not to be considered as washed. 14. Then, too, in the special teaching of Médyǒk-mâh it is not said, of that washing which is washed by the law of those of a portion of the religion (părak-dīnôân), that it is not proper.

15. He who washes by the law of those of the primitive faith, which many high-priests maintain as excellent, because it is suitable, and imagines that regarding the threefold washing it should be said that it is not proper, even he—when he also

---

1 That is, when the dissimilar case arises, or when it is manifestly more efficient.

2 See Chap.VI, 7.
has become of the same opinion as to this, that the statements of the high-priests are on an equality, and the most evidence of the high-priests is the right course—would have attained to confidence about this, that in a doubtful matter there should be a high-priest¹, and also that of which Afarg and Sôshâns have alike understood a similar thing is proper.

Chapter X.

1. And as to the many other matters to which an explicit reply is not written by me—be it the determinableness of it, be it the flow of inward prayer², be it the pouring of the water, and likewise the rest which is written to me—the statements, when deliberation and conjecture about such arrangements become needful, are not to be made unto the multitude, but unto the priestly at once³. 2. And this much, also, which is written by me is on this account⁴, that when a writing has come to you which is the purport of my re-explanation, and it has seemed that it is written after well-weighed (sakhtakî) observations⁵, even so they would cause some of those of good desires to understand, who are thoughtful friends of the soul and observers of

¹ To consult about the matters in doubt.
² Reading väg-rêgisnôîh; but J omits the first letter, and thereby converts the word into apardasînîh, 'want of leisure.'
³ J has merely 'the statements are when deliberation and conjecture become at once needful.'
⁴ Reading hanâ râî, as in J; the other MSS. have hanâ lâ.
⁵ Or, perhaps, 'strict observations' here, and 'strict observers' further on.
well-weighed ideas, in whose heart and mind, owing to that other writing, the existence of doubtfulness may fully remain; and, owing to that, this much re-explanation has, indeed, seemed to me good.

3. And then the desire to sprinkle in many modes is also an incorrect presentation, on which same subject there is this in consideration, that afterwards, peradventure, the same priestly man by whom it is written may come—whose assured wisdom may the angels make steadfast! and whom my approaching causing a purifier to travel for various quarters has occasioned to write it—so that while they are, therefore, awed by him, and shall provide more completely for use the full measure of water and bull's urine, the complete words of the Avesta, and other proper rites, they shall proceed more approvably. 4. And if it be even not auxiliary for the same purpose (âhanô) that it was written by him—except, indeed, through consideration of its details—no reason for a writing of that kind is to be assigned.

5. But if for the reason it was written by him it be manifest as an existence which is very little threatening, then I consider his opinion, which is in his decree, not so perplexing; and, till now, the perplexing consideration was more particularly as

---

1 To which he is replying.
2 Reading a dîn gâm, but this is doubtful.
3 The Huz. verb zerfântanô, 'to sprinkle,' is not found in the glossaries, but is readily traceable to Chald. Pŋ.
4 Reading arâshnkô-â-dö-dahisâth.
5 Meaning his brother, Zâd-sparâm.
6 The usual Pahlavi phrase for the Av. âsnô khârâtus or instinctive wisdom (see Dd. XL, 3).
7 Assuming that val stands for val.
to that, when, owing to the great learning thereof to be seen by me, this was not doubtful, that as to the great opinion of the world about the existing law of the profession of the priesthood, and the practice of all those of the good religion of the realm, they should make a decree only by the deliberation of me and other priestly men and religious observers. 6. For if even he retorts a further statement as to the appointed observance, its origin is then also a propagation from the diverse teachings of those great high-priests of those of the primitive faith, who were they who have been formerly great.

7. On account of the depth and much intricacy of the religion they mention many opinions and well-considered decrees which were likewise formed devoid of uniformity, and the utterance of the different opinions of the priests is with the reciters of the Nasks; but even among themselves the most supremely just high-priests were of a different opinion, different judgment, different teaching, different interpretation, and different practice only in the peace, mutual friendship, and affection which they had together. 8. Just as that even which was prominent about these chief priests (magōpatānō magōpatō), whose names were Ātūrō-Īrōbagvindād and Ātūrō-būgēd, who have been, each separately, the high-priest of the realm of the true religion and the scholar of the age.

1 Implying that the more learning there is manifest in an erroneous teaching, the more necessary it is to submit it to careful examination.

2 Reading fragō vak patō-yekāvīmūnēd, and assuming that the last word stands for patō-īstēd.
9. To many, when an opinion is afterwards so obtained, pertaining to the high-priests in the spiritual existence\(^1\), it is as is said about Zarata\(\text{t}\)št the Spitamân, that 'the first time when the archangels are seen by him, the Spitamân, it is then supposed by him that they are Alndar, Sâru, Nâki-styyâ, Tâutrêv, and Zârtk\(^2\), who are most mighty.'

From such as those the decree and its original perversity (bân-gâstıkôl\(\text{h}\)) and scanty preservative ness are so written and prepared, and afterwards, also, your opinion is that way irritated by the habit of good thinking—of which there is so much manifest\(^4\) from those of the primitive faith and the high-priests—because even its words and those written with it, and the completeness of will and religion which is written, inclined the mind away from the teaching of the high-priests.

11. But as the same decree, or that which is resembling the same decree\(^6\), is appointed (vakhtô)

---

\(^1\) That is, such as have passed away.

\(^2\) These are the last five of the arch-demons who are the special opponents of the archangels, being corruptions of the Avesta names Indra, Sauru, Nungraithya, Tauru, and Zairika (see Bd. I, 27). The name of the first arch-demon, Akônman, is omitted here, probably by the mistake of some copyist, as six names are wanted to make up the number of the archangels exclusive of Aûharmazd himself.

\(^3\) J continues as follows:—"of the demons."

\(^4\) Written with the wretchedness (vakharîh) and savageness of such as those, the oppressiveness and disaster of a decree of that description, and its original perversity,' &c. (as in the text).

\(^5\) In the decree, which was so written as to appear to be directly derived from the teachings of the commentators, but, at the same time, so warped their statements as to lead astray. Hence, it might be compared to the conversion of an archangel into an archfiend through a mental hallucination, as mentioned in § 9.

\(^6\) J omits these last eight words.
and specially decided, and is not to be accepted from him, and the operation is not to be performed thereby, its position is then to be considered, by those steadfast in the practice of the pre-eminent religion, with the most advanced understanding and discernment, which are the thought of its true station in the religion of the Mazda-worshippers. 12. And other religious decrees, intelligently preservative of the soul, which are made known and declared from the teaching of truthful high-priests of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, are to be suitably accepted and fulfilled. 13. And since this opinion (dâstakô) of mine is, moreover, from the writing of Asarg, even about the preservation of different interpretations and different teachings, not specially owing to unobtainable statements of this shattered religion of the Mazda-worshippers, nor even to distress through simultaneous strife, but owing to the desire of true opinions which has existed, there is safety abundantly, but temporarily, from the scribbling of the opposing, partial, and injurious writing of that priestly man.

Chapter XI.

1. For completion little is observed by me; and a man of my own, in a position of authority (sông gâh), comes with a second epistle for that priestly man, opposing, disputing, showing the harm, making

---

1 Reading hanâ giring, but it can also be read ân adarog, 'that undeceitful.'
2 Zâd-sparam.
3 Not Ep. II, but one which preceded it (see § 5, note).
aware of the deliverance\(^1\), and applying for arrange-
ment. 2. And the man who comes as a co-operator
is announced by me, and the rite which is accom-
plished by him is so till further notice, which is for
my further epistle\(^2\); because a double elucidation
about that which it is necessary to arrange from afar
is a custom more suitable for the discreet.

3. If that same priestly man\(^3\) should have been
in the vicinity, then interviews with me, with a few
words, would have been more preservative than try-
ing to convert that wretchedness (vakhâr) into that
which is customary (pîsakô) even by further writing
and much information. 4. And even now my pros-
ppect is a well-considering demand for explanation, so
that, if the duties which are suitable for the discreet
be really disposable for it, it is proper so to arrange
what it is possible for me to complete for three
months; and I may go myself into the presence of
that same priestly man for the arrangement of the
indispensable duties, and may diffuse this arrange-
ment properly\(^4\). 5. But there are many reasons
for private reflection (nâhîdô) on account of which
a descent from position is an evil resource; and this
once a temporary epistle is written by me to him,
and comes with this epistle\(^5\). 6. And Yasdân-

\(^1\) From pollution, by means of the Bareshnûm ceremony.

\(^2\) Probably referring to Ep. II, till the arrival of which (or that of
Ep. III) they were to act as directed by the priest he sends with
this epistle.

\(^3\) His brother Zâd-sparam.

\(^4\) This intended visit to Sîrkân is also mentioned in Ep. II, v, 5;
vi, 4, 6; vii, 3.

\(^5\) Being apprehensive that personal interference might lead to
altercations derogatory to his dignity, he prefers trying the effect of
writing in the first place. The temporary epistle, here referred to,
pānak\(^1\), a man who is instructed\(^2\), shall come to him, who is friendly to custom (ātnag-īyār), and of like rank with his own man who is faithful; and I will write further and more controversially to him, and give the information advisedly with which I shall acquaint him, so that it may be more explanatory to him.

7. But if through this which is written by me, or through myself\(^3\), he should come immediately (dīgandyts) unto Pārs, I shall then be seeking an opportunity even for the retirement of him himself; I do not abominate it (madam lā manusūm) when it is necessary for them and private, as is better.

8. As to these other diffusions of arrangements which are pre-eminently the resources of that priestly man, and the acquaintance with revelation which is sought by him, for the sake of the advantage of the religion they should not be molested before\(^4\).

9. May the arrangement and restoration and benediction of the revelation (dīnūdo) of the Mazda-worshipping religion reach a climax! and may the

could not have been Ep. II, as that was written after Ep. III, and was the further epistle promised in § 6.

\(^1\) Or, perhaps, Yazdān-pahnak. This was a common Parsi name in former times, as it is found in two of the Pahlavi inscriptions in the Kanheri caves, dated A.D. 1009 (see Indian Antiquary, vol. ix, pp. 266, 267), and the very similar name, Yazd-panāh, occurs as the name of a Parsi convert to Christianity who was put to death about A.D. 541 (see Hoffmann's Auszüge aus syrischen Akten persischer Märtyrer, p. 87).

\(^2\) Assuming that dinhārdūdō stands for zinhārīdō.

\(^3\) If I should come personally.

\(^4\) Referring probably to further matters of complaint, which he did not think it advisable to notice seriously until the present controversy was settled.
eminence of you listeners\(^1\) to the primeval religion consist in long-continued, supreme prosperity, through all happiness! then, through such thoughtful friends, the acquaintance \(\textit{with}\) its difficult teaching and mighty words, which is to increase that gratitude of yours to me for my decisions, is made a blessing to you, if you observe therein a good idea which seems to you important, when it reaches your sight.

10. The correct writer \(\textit{and}\) scribe is ordered that he do not alter \(\textit{any}\) of \(^8\) the words (m\(\text{\textregistered}\)r\(\text{\textregistered}\)k), while he writes a fair copy of this epistle of mine, which is written by me to you, and he orders \(\textit{some one}\) to give \(\textit{it to that same man, Yazd\(\text{\textregistered}\)n-p\(\text{\textregistered}\)nak, along\textit{ with that epistle, so that it may}\) come to him\(^3\), for there are \(\textit{times}\) when I seem aware that \(\textit{it is better so.}\) 11. And may the angels increase \(\textit{and}\) enlarge your many new \(\textit{things}\) with full measure and complete exaltation! the pleasure, peace\(^4\), righteousness, prosperity, commendation, \(\textit{and}\) happiness \(\textit{of the powerful}\)^\(^5\) who are all-controlling \(\textit{and}\) happy-ending.

12. M\(\text{\textregistered}\)n\(\text{\textregistered}\)sk\(\text{\textregistered}\)th\(\text{\textregistered}\), son of Y\(\text{\textregistered}\)d\(\text{\textregistered}\)-Yim, \(\textit{has written it in the day and month}\) of Spendarm\(\text{\textregistered}\)\(\text{\textregistered}\), in the

---

\(^1\) Reading ny\(\text{\textregistered}\)khsh\(\text{\textregistered}\)d\(\text{\textregistered}\)r\(\text{\textregistered}\)n\(\text{\textregistered}\), as in J, instead of avakhsh\(\text{\textregistered}\)-d\(\text{\textregistered}\)r\(\text{\textregistered}\)n\(\text{\textregistered}\).

\(^8\) Reading m\(\text{\textregistered}\)n, instead of m\(\text{\textregistered}\), ‘who.’

\(^3\) To Z\(\text{\textregistered}\)d-s\(\text{\textregistered}\)r\(\text{\textregistered}\)m. This copy was that mentioned in Ep. II, vii, 1.

\(^4\) Reading sl\(\text{\textregistered}\), as in J; the other MSS. have sh\(\text{\textregistered}\)num\(\text{\textregistered}\), ‘pro-
p\(\text{\textregistered}\)pitation,’ the two words being nearly alike in Pahlavi letters.

\(^5\) Reading pat\(\text{\textregistered}\)g\(\text{\textregistered}\)n\(\text{\textregistered}\); J has pad\(\text{\textregistered}\)v\(\text{\textregistered}\)d\(\text{\textregistered}\)n\(\text{\textregistered}\), ‘connections,’ by inserting a stroke.

\(^6\) The fifth day of the twelfth month of the Parsi year; and, as Ep. III (which was evidently written after further consideration) is dated in the third month of A. Y. 250, this must have been written in A. Y. 249. The date of this epistle, therefore, corresponds to the 15th March, 881.

Y 2
enjoyment of righteousness, the glorification of the
religion, trustfulness to the angels, and gratitude
unto the creator Aûharmazd, the archangels, and
all the angels of the spiritual and the angels of
the worldly existences. 13. Praise to the month
(mâh) of like kind which is exalted in its name
with this.
EPISTLE II.

TO HIS BROTHER, ZĀD-SPARAM.

Copy of an epistle of the priest Mānūskēhar, son of Yūdān-Yim, which was prepared by him for the priest, his brother, Zād-spāram.

CHAPTER I.

1. In the name of the sacred beings who shall keep exalted the pre-eminent success of your priestly lordship, accomplishing your wishes in both worlds, I am longing for the children—formerly promoting health of body—and for activity, and fully desirous, and in every mode a thanksgiver unto the sacred beings, for the well-abiding eyesight, peace, and understanding of your priestly lordship.

2. The epistle that came from you in the month Āvān, which Nīvshahpūhar was ordered to write,

---

1 See the heading to Ep. I.
2 The eighth month of the Parsi year, which must have been A.Y. 249 (see Ep. I, xi, 13, note). This month corresponded to the interval between the 11th November and the 10th December, 880; but it is evident from Chaps. VII, 2, VIII, 1 that this reply was written about the same time as Ep. III, that is, in the interval between the 14th June and 13th July, 881.
3 This appears to have been the original form of the name Nikhsahpūhar or Nīshahpūhar, applied both to a man (see Ep. I, iv, 15, 17) and to a city in Khurāsān, and in this place it is not quite
and . . . . by me from 1 . . . . and . . . . , would have been quite desirable to increase my gratitude unto the sacred beings for the health and salutation of your priestly lordship, though it had been merely to write intelligence of your own condition; for your writing of the epistle is not such as that of the distant who write in duplicate, but like that of neighbours who think that everything new should always be really mutual information. 3. As to that, too, which you ordered to write about omens and such occurrences—for which my form of words is not as is twice specified within the epistle, and from henceforth one should order to write intelligence more clearly—moreover, on account of want of leisure on many subjects, my heart is not disengaged even for the understanding of omens.

4. I apprize your priestly lordship that in this
certain whether a man or a city is alluded to. The text, as it stands in the MSS., is as follows:—'Nāmakò zītanò dēn bidanā Āvānā mūn Nivshahpūhar nipīstanā farnūdō va mado.' This can be translated as in our text, if the word va be omitted; but, if this word be retained and mūn be changed into min, the translation would be as follows:—'The epistle which some one was ordered by you to write in the month Āvān from Nivshahpūhar, and which came.' Now it is evident from Ep. I that Zād-spāram must have been in Sīrkhān for some time previous to the date of that epistle, 15th March 881, and, therefore, probably in the previous November; but, at the same time, it must be noticed that there are allusions in this second epistle (see Chaps. I, 12, V, 3) to his having been formerly at Sarakhs and among the Tughazghuz, that is, in the extreme east of Khurāsān; it is, therefore, just possible that he may have been at Nivshahpūhar, on his way to Sīrkhān in the south, in November.

1 J and BK attempt to fill up the blank with the words kēshvar arg, 'the value of the realm;' but the original text probably stood thus:—'and was received by me from so and so,' the names having been torn off in some intermediate MS.
interval (tâhîkō)\(^1\) a written statement has come unto me that the good people of Strkân are, indeed, so enveloped by you in distress, despondency, and trouble that its counterpart was when there was a liberation of our glorified fathers from the state of material existence. 5. For such as the insufficiency of the whole life of such was then to me, so even is the wounding and damage which comes now to my understanding and intellect. 6. The whole life of such is on the confines of the pure existence, a contest with the complete incorrectness that remains contaminating the liturgy by which the greatest intelligence of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers is aided; a little also, finally, of sagacity and observance of the apportionment of the more grievous impostures and more frightful delusions.

7. And, first of all, as to when your completely vile idea first destroyed your own enlightenment, and quite subdued your seconding of me, is inopportune (avidanâ) for me; and that ordinance\(^2\), which though it be also right, is then even grandeur, because it is a law of the realm and an opinion of the world. 8. When even in the mansion of various thoughts, the residence of the assembly of Pârs, and many other conventions to deliberate, and the united opinions of a thousand priestly men (magâvôg) of the good religion thereon, it could remain unaltered, then, also, the various good thoughts and opposing considerations that, along with me, the

---

\(^1\) Since he heard from his correspondent. The word cannot be tâsgakō, 'nine days,' as that would not tally with the dates of Eps. I and III.

\(^2\) Referring probably to the Bareshnûm ceremony which Zâd-sparâm wished to dispense with in many cases.
minds of other heads of the religion have promoted, and shaped or altered decisions thereon, and settled and issued orders thereon, could not have seen a grievance (seq) therein. 9. And this, too, should be observed among your requirements, that when the fattiness of the body is in wrinkles (kîn), so that four perfect ones of the period are provided, even then the opinion of a high-priest of the religion is greater than every opinion, but the law of the realm of various kinds is only through the deliberation of the same perfect ones; to make him decide then is not proper.

10. And it would be desirable for you to take account of that which is said thus: 'Thou shouldst not practise that, O Zaratûst! when thou and three or four companions, in the village of a thanksgiver of the assembly, shall say this: "Such is an evil notion."' 11. These words of his are then not taken into account by you; and it is firmly and with acute observation determined by you, and thought preservative for yourself, that even the sin be not privately (and arg) declared by me unto the assembly which has deliberated at Shirâz. 12. You order this, and

1 J omits this phrase.
2 Reading mîrakh or mîskhâ; but it may be masagîh, 'squeezing.'
3 J has merely the words, 'even then the opinion of the high-priest for the realm,' which gives a reverse meaning to the text.
4 It appears from this, that when a supreme high-priest became very old, his worldly duties were put in commission, by being intrusted to a committee of four of the most learned priests; but the opinion of the supernanniated high-priest was still supreme in spiritual matters, though not to be trusted in worldly affairs.
5 Whither Mânûskîhar had specially gone to hold this assembly before writing Ep. I (see Ep. I, iii, 13).
it is known that if it were a statement of yours in
the assembly of the Tughazghuz, you would have
been still less a speaker in private.

13. I consider that you are as much under-hand
(afr) about this, as regards yourself, as Zarauttšt the
club-footed (apavrbd) when he arranged his gar-
ments (vakhshakttha), and his club-foot is itself
overspread thereby even to himself, so that he was
then approved as good by some of those of Kirmân
when they heard of it, and those of Rât (Râzikânô)
wrote a reply that, if he should be appointed by you
also at a distance, he would then be approved by
them likewise as good. 14. This idea of yours is
more heinous than that act of his, the reply from
various sides is more mischievous, the disgrace
among the people is more unslumberable, the load
upon the soul is more consuming heavy, and the

1 The MSS. have Tughazghuz in Pâzand. Mas'ûdî states (A.D.
943) that the Taghazghaz were a powerful Turkish tribe who
dwelt between Khurâsân and China, in and around the town of
Kusân, and not very far from the supposed sources of the Ganges.
They had become Manicheans, having been converted from idolatry
to the heretical form of Mazda-worship taught by Mazdak (see
Mas'ûdî, ed. Barbier de Meynard, vol. i, pp. 214, 288, 299,
quoted at length in a note to Sîs. VI, 7). It would seem from the
allusion in our text that Zâd-sparâm had recently been among these
Taghazghaz, and might have imbibed some of their heretical
opinions, so as to lead to this controversy with his brother and the
orthodox people of Sîrkân. That he had recently been in the
extreme north-east of Khurâsân is further shown by the allusion to
Sarakhs in Chap. V, 3.

2 Evidently some recent pretender to the supreme high-priest-
hood, who had endeavoured to conceal the deformity that disquali-
fied him for that office.

3 That is, fit for the dignity he aspired to.

4 Here written Girmân (see Dd. XCIV, 13).

5 Near Teherân.
severance, from, and contest with, Aḏharmazd and Zaratûst become more incalculably perplexing. 15. And this, too, is my summing up (ḵapīr)\(^1\)—when your own acquaintance with the religion and salvation of soul are in such force—by the parable (āngunt-āltakō) of that physician of the body who, when they asked about destroying the toothache, thereupon gave his reply thus: 'Dig it out!' and they rejoined thus: 'He is always wanted as our physician, so that he may cure even a tooth which is diseased;' I would extract its teeth\(^2\) more plentifully and with more suspicion than he.

16. And if, also, those of the good religion in the country of Irān be, therefore, always in want of the learning and acquaintance with religion of his priestly lordship, so that he disperses the profession and the preparation and management of the remedy\(^3\) of many diseases, then he throws it away as a profession, and there is not much of a necessity for the wisdom and learning of his priestly lordship. 17. For there are some of the present time would never vouchsafe approval of a presiding fire\(^4\), which is in many modes an advance of foreign habits; and of many things which are in writing, of a nature easier and more comfortable in a worldly sense, they offer and

---

\(^1\) J converts the phrase into 'very heinous to me,' by reading azīr and adding girān.

\(^2\) That is, he would drive the morbid ideas from his brother's mind.

\(^3\) Meaning the practice of the Bareshnûm ceremony, for which the priests were specially required.

\(^4\) Probably because they saw no necessity for the presence of the fire at the sacred ceremonies. He is warning his brother that his heretical teachings would soon make the people imagine that they could dispense with the priesthood altogether.
always give more than he who is a priest; and, at last, no one ever accepts any except him who is astute in evil and wicked\textsuperscript{1}.

Chapter II.

1. I have also examined that writing\textsuperscript{2} in detail, and it is very unprepared for the remarks of the learned and those acquainted with the religion, for the sentences concocted have to be divided, and the slender demonstration is disconnected (aparvan-dıdö); so I consider that it is not sent to be seen, as regards which such a course would, indeed, be a cause of terror to purifiers. 2. It is so written that, while on account of that same terror they are very much alarmed, and are thorough in maintaining the duty of the continuance of care for water and bull's urine\textsuperscript{3}, and of the formula of the operation, they shall more fully perform it as a duty provided for high-priests; even from that I am more fully of opinion that your like judgment and own concession have produced this explanation.

3. When I saw in the decree, such as that which you have written, that each time one comes unto a purifier who washes in such manner as is declared

\textsuperscript{1} That is, some priest who teaches such heresies. These terms are those applied to the demons themselves in Pahl. Vend. XIX, 140, 141, 147.

\textsuperscript{2} The decree of Zād-sparam, a copy of which had been sent to him by the people of Sirkān (see Ep. I, iv, 7).

\textsuperscript{3} The two liquids used in the purifying ceremony of the Bareshnum (see App. IV).
in revelation—which is evident, indeed, from his existence when he is a religious purifier, and also from your priestly lordship’s knowledge of the rite; indeed, there is no use of that same decree unless the scripture of revelation, likewise, be so—he is to do it with very strict observation, now, since, owing to the reception of terror by the purifiers, that preparation is evidently to produce, as regards their own disposition and movements, much harm and irregularity, and perplexed thoughts among the people, the discredit of the decreer is generated therefrom, and it would have been more reasonable to consider the terror and doubt of the purifiers in another way.

4. That which is so explained by you as though it would remain accomplished and would be in notice—and this is written by you like as it were from a teaching of some description—is not proper; because, thus, every rite in the performance of the desired operation, even by one single teaching, is suitable, which, like the preparation for the statements of lying litigants, is very like, but not correct.

5. For when there are some who have furthered Médýök-māh better than the teaching of Afarg, it is well when every single rite in the teaching is right; and as to his rite it is not very clear that deliverance is promoted by maintaining it. 6. Even on that occasion when Médýök-māh has mentioned threefold washing, and Afarg once washing, Médýök-māh is the after deponent and Afarg the prior

---

1 See Ep. I, v, 1.
2 From pollution.
3 In Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, j (see App. IV), where the threefold washing is connected with the name of Afarg, and the once washing with that of Médýök-māh; but Ep. I, vi, 7–9 agrees with the statement here.
deponent; and, on that account, the statement is to be made as long as Mēdyōk-māh is preserved, but as regards the opinion of the words of Afarg it is to be maintained in a state of preservation.

7. As to that which Afarg has said, that 'two purifiers are requisite,' Mēdyōk-māh has also said that one is plenty; and, since the teaching of Sōshāns is similar evidence to his, as to that which is said by him, they have thus been more unanimous that when there is one it would be proper; and as several high-priests have announced just the same evidence, and Afarg himself and other priests have been of the same opinion where it is the performance of the beginning of the Vīkaya ('exorcism'), Mēdyōk-māh is preserved. 8. Not on this account, that Afarg is more preservative through once washing, is the operation to be performed according to the teaching of Afarg, but the once washing from Afarg who is the prior deponent, and the one purifier from Mēdyōk-māh who is the most corroborated are to be accepted and to be conducted.

9. And even the computers of the stars would make the position of the stars which exists when that of the sun and moon is from the direction (min z1k) of Satvāharān, that of Saturn from the direc-

---

1 The words pasīmal, 'after deponent,' and pēsmāl, 'prior deponent,' are here written alike (see Ep. I, vi, 10, note).
3 See Ep. I, vi, 1.
5 From pollution (see § 6).
6 The high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay is of opinion that the names of the three 'directions' mentioned in this section are the Pahlavi forms of the names of three of the lunar mansions, whose
tion of Avēnak, and that of Mars from the direction of Padramgōs, a position which sends much good, and is said to be capable of undoubtedly (aṅārangak) bringing on maturity of strength. 10. That this is to be seen as an occurrence (gastō) is a conjunction (nazdakō) which is not possible 1, because, if the conjunction of Satvāharān be exact, yet, since Saturn and Mars are not at their conjunctions (mīn nazdak), its effect is not a good configuration (khūp tanā); if the conjunction of Avēnak be exact, yet, since the sun, moon 2, and Mars are not at their conjunctions, its effect is not good; and if the conjunction of Padramgōs be exact, yet, since the sun, moon, and Saturn are not 3 at their conjunctions, the effect is

Pāzand appellations are given in Bd. II, 3; and he identifies Satvāharān with Kahtsār, Avēnāk with Avdem, and Padramgōs with Padēvar. The reading of all these names is, however, very uncertain. Satvāharān is written Satāharān three times out of the five occurrences of the name, and the first syllable might easily be read Gaht=Kaht, so as to correspond with the Pāzand; on the other hand, the reading Sat corresponds with Sata-bhishag or Sata-tārakā, the Sanskrit name of the 25th lunar mansion, Kahtsār. As Pāz. Avdem seems to be merely Pahl. afdūm, 'last,' I prefer identifying Avēnāk (which can also be read Avērāk) with the ninth lunar mansion, Avra (Avrāk in Bd. VII, 1, Avrāk in Zs. VI, 1), the Sans. Āršeshā. Padramgōs is also written Padramgōs twice out of the three occurrences of the name; its identification with Padēvar makes it the first lunar mansion, the Sans. Ārvīnt. The aspect of the heavens, therefore, which is here mentioned as very auspicious, has the sun and new moon in the latter part of Aquarius, Saturn in the first part of Aries, and Mars in the latter part of Cancer, that is, twice as far from Saturn as the latter is from the sun and moon.

1 That is, it very rarely happens; as rarely as the exact agreement of three different commentators, whom these three conjunctions are intended to represent.

2 Reading mitrō mah, instead of Mēdyan-māh.

3 The MSS. omit lā, 'not,' by mistake.
not good; on account of which, in any conjunction which is not exact, they believe it possible for a firm mind also to accomplish this auspicious labour (sukh-varzisnā), but they say the just and wise should make the decision. So that this one is a very good position, because that which is truly issuing (rāst-tag) through the conjunction of Satvāharān is from that mighty Satvāharān, and that of Satvāharān being better through the conjunction of Padramgōs, that is done.

12. You should understand that of the same kind is the similitude of the three teachings, of which you have written, with this similitude which I have portrayed and ordered to form and scheme, so that you may look at it more clearly, from a proper regard for your own deliverance, for the sharp

---

1 Reading rāt, as in J, instead of the lā, 'not,' of K35 and BK.
2 That is, the circumstances are too unpropitious for any one to come to a decision without consulting those who are better qualified to judge, as is also the case when commentators disagree.
3 Reading min zak rabā Satvāharān, but this is doubtful, because K35 has min rabā āharān with zak Sat written above min rabā; BK has min zak Satō (or dādō) rabā āharān (or khārān), which is merely reading the same characters in a different order; while J omits most of the doubtful phrase, having merely min zak-i, which, with the alteration of rāst-tag into rāsttar, changes the meaning into the following:—'because that which is through the conjunction of Satvāharān is more correct than that of Satvāharān, and that which is through the conjunction of Padramgōs, that is done.'
4 Or 'that remains the effect.'
5 Reading nīsānīnīḍō; K35 and BK omit the first letter so as to convert the word into dīḥānīnīḍō, which might mean 'presented.'
6 From pollution. There is some temptation to use the word 'salvation' for būgīn, but this would introduce ideas that were, no doubt, foreign to the author's mind.
intellectuality of the re-explainers of what is not well-considered in connection with its purpose (āhan-kō), and for the accumulation of opinions that is steadfast in the law of the ancients and orders you to heed it. 13. For, owing to the miraculousness and pre-eminence of that, he who thinks to restore the good ideas of the ancients does not himself understand the knowledge in that wisdom of the ancients, and does not keep his own presumption (mīhθ) lowly and teachable; much, too, which is through his own learning is declared to be out of it (the law), and how he orders us to understand it is by his own opinion.

---

CHAPTER III.

1. It is disquieting about this, too, which is declared in your writing, as regards your vehement desire and embarrassment (rûzdθ) for a new law, and your wish and longing for the establishment of the law of the apostles; as also that which you have done about the gathering of the details of statements from the three teachings, and about

---

1 The ancient law, as contained in the difficult language of the Avesta.
2 That is, commentators are apt to attribute to the scriptures many opinions which really originate in themselves.
3 The decree mentioned in Chap. II, 1.
4 That is, the new law which the future apostles, Hûshêdar, Hûshêdar-mâh, and Sôshâns (see Dd. II, 10) are expected to bring, so as to restore the religion in preparation for the resurrection.
5 Those of Mêdyôk-mâh, Afsârg, and Sôshâns (see Ep. I, v, 1, 6).
causing the rapid bringing of the new law. 2. And on account of your embarrassment and wrong-doing (vâdâg) they would give up the Frasnâtê (‘washing upwards’) and Upasnâtê (‘washing downwards’), to bring the fifteen times which are without ordinance (bârâ âtnakô), that are after it, back to the fifteen which are a portion of the ordinance (âtnakô vât).

3. As to the three times, each of which times one runs a mile (hâsar) even until he obtains a purifier, since peradventure thy mile (parasang), too, might become more, all the good work is written purposely (ag-karthâ) of three miles and more. 4. And that, too, which the high-priests have so appointed, when he has striven in that manner for three persons, or that sin and retribution of his is apportioned unto them and brought to the balance (sangag-âtnidô), is because that commission and retribution of sin might now, peradventure, be

---

1 These terms are quoted from Vend. VIII, 276, 279 (see App. V), and are thus explained in Pahlavi in Chap. IV, 2.

2 Referring, apparently, to the second mention of the fifteen washings, in Pahl. Vend.VIII, 281, which does not occur in the Avesta text (‘the ordinance’), but refers to its previous occurrence in § 279 of the Avesta. But, perhaps, the author means that they would confound the final washing appointed in Vend. VIII, 299 with the preliminary washing appointed in the previous § 279.


4 After the polluted person has thrice run a mile, he is to run further (see Vend. VIII, 294) to some inhabited spot; from which directions the author concludes that any excess of distance is immaterial. K35 and BK have ‘four miles and more,’ but this seems to be a copyist’s blunder.

5 To purify him, and, if they refuse, they each take a share of his sin (see Vend. VIII, 280–293).
allotted unto the priest; for if he were impure (palistō) there would be no one whatever who would properly perform the purification as it is necessary.

5. Then it has become indispensable for you to perform the purification, for that operation—so suitable for the discreet where 'he who has been by the dead,' so that he has become polluted, and even 'the stars and moon and sun shine upon his life discontentedly'—is just as fit for the exalted when there is great 'propitiation of fire, water, earth, cattle, righteous males, and righteous women' thereby. 6. So great is its value that where there is no purification of the body it is not possible to purify the life and soul; and when there is a man in a realm who is able to perform it, that man is not justifiable except when he shall perform it.

7. Finally, when that pre-eminent operation is being accomplished, over which there is in revelation and the perfect information due to revelation that supreme control which you are so disputing in the religion—which even through your trifling (khūrdakō) in the name of authority is becoming a struggle (patkār-yehēvūn)—then, though it may not be possible for you to perform it yourself, it should thereupon be the duty of some one of your disciples to perform it in your sight, so that you may be aware of the rite, even apart from the great resources in that most learned (āstūm) acquaintance

---

1 Who is to purify him finally with the Bâreshnûm ceremony.
2 Referring to Vend.IX,161—163, quoted at length in Ep. I,iv, 3.
3 Reading mahîstō, but it can also be read Maṣdayâstō, 'Maṣda-worshipping.'
with revelation which is associated with you. Also from that which is repeatedly written by you with understanding of the rite, as regards all three teachings, it is manifest those rites are mentioned even as those which are more maintained, and are not those which are unnecessary to perform. You are a something therein that tends to preserve a little of what it is not possible for thee to attain fully in any mode; when thou shalt obtain the operations of the voice, and the water and bull's urine, as well as the three men, or thou shalt give a man to wash therein, the intellect of those controlling is then, indeed, not preservative therein.

10. It is proper also for you to consecrate the water and bull's urine by that ritual which is in all three teachings, to prepare your own ritualistic liquid and other things which are approved among you with mutual assistance, and to appoint a purifier who has performed fully acceptably and been wanted.

11. Then, to give out properly to the country that the purification is according to my order, I always

---

1 That is, even when not performing the ceremony himself, his presence would be desirable, for the sake of securing due attention to all the details, with which his superior knowledge must make him better acquainted than his subordinates.

2 See § 1.

3 Reading bûkhtanō; the MSS. divide the word, so as to convert it into barâ tanû, 'without a body.' The meaning is that by his presence he is, at all events, able to secure some efficiency in the ceremony, when he is compelled to intrust its performance to subordinates who are not fully competent.

4 In the prayers and exorcisms.

5 See § 4.

6 That is, one thoroughly qualified (the priest mentioned in § 4) who requires no special supervision.
perform it more acceptably than that of other purifiers. 12. For the water and bull’s urine are all consecrated by me, and the three hundred pebbles (sang') are cast into them (aùbas) by me, just as it is directed; the operation is also directed by me in the three days when it is performed, and all the customary parts are washed three times by me; the ablution seats (makô) are also arranged by me anew for every single person, and the use of washed seats is not ordered by me therein; every rite of the washing by the purifier is also so performed by me as all three teachings have mentioned as perfection. 13. You become the best of the district, as regards the minutiae (bârîk†dôàn) of the purification that is within your duty, so long as they excite the sight, but which are curtailed (kazd) by you in the way of washing disclosed to me, while, when it should be performed by you in this manner, your performance would be equally constantly exolated and your writing praised.

14. When, then, you write of it that they should always perform it just as now, the falsity therein is

---

1 See Ep. I, vii, 16.

2 The ‘three washings’ mentioned in Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, 6 (see App. IV); referring probably to those after the third, sixth, and ninth nights (see Vend. IX, 136, 140, 144), that is, on the fourth, seventh, and tenth days of the Bareshnûm ceremony. Most of this clause is omitted in J.

3 As said to have been directed by Mēdyôk-mâh (see Chap. II, 6, Ep. I, vi, 7), though the extant Pahlavi Vendidâd (IX, 132, 7) attributes the order to Afarg.


5 J has ‘so long as they advance the purification as much as possible by a resemblance so approved.’

6 In the heretical decree under consideration.
grievous (yagār), and I know none worse; for this washing and professional purification which one is to keep in operation—as is declared by revelation, the teaching of high-priests, and those of the primitive faith who are esteemable ¹—you withdraw (madam dārēdē) from the midst of us. 15. That which you understand yourself is that unto Aūharmazd the confederate good creatures are as it were defiled, and in the eyes of the good and wise they are as it were propitiatory towards the mischievous Vāē². 16. And your words about it are just as they say concerning a beggar³, where a garment is given to him, thus: 'Wash the dirt (ālūg) on him thoroughly clean;' and that garment they shall take is put upon the fire and burnt; and he spoke thus: 'My dirt was a comfort.'

Chapter IV.

1. It ⁴ is both explained again and summarized thus:—If the decree be from a law of Zarátūst, is it so decreed as he spoke it? and if they should never perform by that, do not bring the Avesta and its exposition into the midst of it. 2. For the fifteen times of which you have written, if from the revelation of Zarátūst, are his mode of washing fifteen times upwards and fifteen times downwards ⁵, a rule

¹ That is, by the Avesta and Zand.
² Reading anākō Vāē; he is the demon that carries off the soul (see Dd. XXX, 4). Even the best creatures are imperfect in the eyes of Aūharmazd and the righteous.
³ Reading niyāskar, instead of the niyāsar of the MSS.
⁴ His own line of argument.
⁵ See Chap. III, 2.
which is fulfilled. 3. *It* is said, if one's defilement be owing to depositing any bodily refuse (hīgar-1), then nothing of this is ever necessary for him, for one reckoning (mar-1)¹ will smite that which he takes hold of with a finger and *it* is clean, or it will smite a golden yellow clean, or whatever² it shall smite is clean; but nothing merely clean is purified, unless a demon be clean³.

4. And this, too, is very amazing to me, that when this is not taken into account by you, that when there should be, and one should obtain, no purifier⁴ it would then be necessary for him to operate himself⁵, how then is this knowledge obtained by you, on which information (āgāhīth) has reached you, that the purifying of all the purifiers of the country of Irān is just as they should always perform *it*. 5. When, as I consider, there is then no complete acquaintance with the management of a house in you, its own master, in what manner then is your account of the gossip⁶, and your information, about all the purifiers of the country of Irān

¹ That is, a single washing, which is sufficient for ordinary defilements unconnected with the dead.

² This is doubtful; the word seems to be ḥīkā in Pāzand, but, as the Av. ḡ and ū are much alike in Iranian MSS., it may be read ḥūk-ē, and the phrase would then be 'or it will smite a penis clean.'

³ That is, cleanliness can no more be considered purification than a demon, who is supposed to be an embodiment of impurity, can be considered clean.

⁴ J has 'when there should be no purifier it would be necessary to beg the help of a chief of the religion, and when one should not obtain that.'

⁵ As directed in Vend. VIII, 299 (see App. V).

⁶ Reading vaḥsakhūn, but this is uncertain.
obtained? 6. If your *people* should abandon that *which is* most indispensable, and your account of
the gossip, as regards that which the whole realm *has* done, *be* not according to the commands of reli-
gion and to sound wisdom; and if it has not come completely to your knowledge as the washing of the
purifiers of the country of Irân—because, when you
do not fix the number even of their footsteps¹, *it is*
certain that *your* understanding of their disposition
and virtuous practice is even less—then it was
necessary for you to determine the reason that all
the purifiers in the country of Irân always wash that
way that is declared as improper, with whatever
certainty *it be* uttered *or* written.

---

**Chapter V.**

1. If this which is said by you be a knowledge
that is replete (*āv kār*) with advantage, why was it
then necessary for you to keep *it as it were* con-
cealed² from me, when I thus consider that, if a
knowledge should be rightly obtained by you, it
should then have been needful for you to report
unto me on the first rumour³ from every *one* who
is well-enlightened (*hā-bām*)? 2. If this decree

¹ Referring probably either to the distance of the Bareshnûm
place from pure objects, or to the distances between the holes or
ablation seats, and from them to the furrows, mentioned in Vend.
IX, 12, 14, 18, 22 (see App. IV).
² Reading *nīhānō*, as in J, but K₃₅ and BK omit the first
letter.
³ Assuming that *māyāg* is a pseudo-Huzvâris equivalent of
*āvāg* (Pers. *āvā*); *māyā* being the true Huzvâris of *āv*, 'water.'
seemed so to you before, between when you have
been in Pârs and this time when in Sîrkân, it was
not well considered with those acquainted with the
religion, the wise and the high-priests, and not even
reported. 3. If not conceived by you before, then
what learned acquaintance with the religion was
acquired by you in Sarakhs and Shirāz, about
which you are enlightened? 4. And before it was
to be well considered amid observation and medita-
tion what high-priest was obtained by you in Shirāz,
who, when it was well considered with him, in com-
pletely securing himself, kept you away from delib-
eration to be decided with me and other priestly
men and high-priests?

5. If not decided by you in Pârs on account of
breaking away from me, that is as though you your-
self understand that I am to keep, in my own person,
not even in the rank of discipleship unto you, but
in that which is like servitude; and my coming,
which is on your account, is even an accumulation
of harm and distrust (tars) which you have amassed
for yourself by having written and acted, and has
made me suffer sorrow (vâdvarîntâdô) in my own
person. 6. If it had been shown to me by you that
it would be the preservation of the religion, it would
then have incited me to accept it steadfastly. 7. If,

1 A town in the extreme north-east of Khurâsân, between Nishah-
pûhar and Marv, but nearer the latter city. When in this town
Zâd-sparâm probably came in contact with the Tughazghûz men-
tioned in Chap. I, 12.

2 J inserts the words ‘by you, and through your good considera-
tion it was more properly undeceiving, if done, then.’

3 Referring to his intended visit to Sîrkân, mentioned in Chaps.
for the sake of co-operation with me, a lawful decree had been even more privately propagated by you, and if the religious demonstration about it were conservative and correct, it would then have been less vexatious for you to explain it to me than to others who have less acquaintance with the decrees and declaration of revelation; and if a difference had arisen thereon, a correct reply would then have come to you more fully from me. 8. And if you conceive that it is not necessary to demonstrate it to me through the declaration in revelation, that deliverance which it is not necessary to announce is not to be so decreed, even in another place. 9. And, just as even in Pârs, if it were not decreed by you in Sîrkân on that account, when your conception was that they would not accept it from you, it was necessary for you to know that, because it was not possible for you to provide much interval for demonstration.

10. If its purport be now considered by you, when you are moving as to the writing from Shirâz— which writes fully of your acquirement and interpretation of it, and of a mutilated deliverance—the arrangements for iniquity on this subject are many. 11. And one of them is the erroneous writing which is with me, for you conceive that they would accept from me your view, as it were swearing (sôkan dîkô) that it does not go to the filth accumulated for

---

1 Referring probably to Ep. I, which appears to have been written from Shirâz after holding a general assembly (see Chap. I, 11, Ep. I, iii, 13); but this epistle, judging from the remark in the text, was probably written after Mânûšîîhar had left Shirâz, as was also Ep. III (see Chap.VIII, 1).

2 From pollution.

* See Chap. II, 1.

* Assuming that the Pâz. pgsâhu stands for pas sâkh. but,
Zaratûst, and does not contend with him; and that the opposition (hamêma1îh) does not strive for a new law, and does not increase the evil of the spirit and the world, since it labours for the hoard of the soul.

12. And, persistently concealed, that was done by thee, owing to which is the anguish of my life; for it is annoying when a wound of the soul is not actually realised by means of the decree; but if, too, it should be really avoidable, it is then even said that ignorance itself would be regenerative (navazû-dârîthâ), since it is not dubious to me, unless a matured knowledge of creation and some of that even of the angels should be in sight¹. 13. Also through their much talking, which is like Vîsari's⁵, and much affliction, which is like the eradication of life, there is a perpetual demonstration then in every place of the country of Irân, where this information about its religion shall arrive, that they then consider thee as an apostate and an enemy of the religion.

14. And through this eager procedure of yours many troops in the provinces, who have to horse (aspîndanî) themselves, have joined Âtûrû-pâd⁶; 

as Av. g and d are much alike, it may be pâsâhu, which, when written in Pahlavi letters, can also be read pâd gêhân, 'protector of the world;' or pâsâhu may be merely a corruption of pâd-shâh=pâdakhshah, 'sovereign.'

¹ Meaning that he should have preferred being ignorant of such a decree, unless it exhibited far more knowledge of the truth than it actually did.

⁵ So written here in Pâzand; but, no doubt, the demon Vîzaresha (the Vîzarâsh of Dd. XXXII, 4, XXXVII, 44), who carries off the souls of the wicked, is meant.

⁶ The name, apparently, of some rival of his in authority, who is also mentioned in Chap. IX, 11.
for, inasmuch as those most mounted on horses\(^1\) are the washers\(^2\) of Srīkān, who would have always thought about their abundance which is due to the archangels, they have spoken with opponents about this interpretation of the section of scripture (vīdak)\(^3\), and so become similarly testifying\(^4\), thus: ‘We do not conceive it is necessary to demand thy reason for this most grievous disaster\(^5\), a thing which is more complete through your elucidation of doubt and the power of the enemy, owing to this way which is appointed by thee.’ 15. And on that account, too, it is more disquieting unto me, when I am aware both of the origin of this perplexity and the surpassing contamination which is possible to arise from it.

16. And you always so observe as not to leap (lā atyyūkh tānō) without looking before; but temporary observation is nothing really of that which, by a well-stinging similitude, is what one observes, with the eyesight looking well forward, when dust of many kinds is domesticated with the sight of the

---

\(^1\) Reading asp-vārakāntum, and this meaning tallies well with the previous mention of troops horsing themselves; but J, by prefixing a stroke, changes the word into vaspōhārakāntum, ‘those most renowned among the spheres.’

\(^2\) The ceremonial washers or priests.

\(^3\) The term vīdak is applied to sections or chapters of the Avesta in Dd. XLVII, 1, 5, 6, LXVI, 4; and here it must be applied to the Avesta of Vend.VIII or IX, to which the misinterpretations of Zād-sparām specially referred.

\(^4\) J has ‘and’ so given similar testimony, which is written by them of a priest of your fame, and written by them to me.’

\(^5\) The diminution of their means of livelihood by the decrease of ceremonial washing, more than their apprehension of the sinfulness of such decrease.
eye; and if his intellect be not judicious he is wonderfully deceived by it; and should it be even when he mentions the existence of two moons, has it become more proved thereby? 17. It is a custom of the most provoking in itself, and presented disquietingly when I, who believe with a fervent mind, would have delivered the life even of my body over to the perplexing bridge\(^1\) for your happiness and enjoyment. 18. Also, on account of my want of leisure, even the information which is presented, asking peace, is information I believe with a generous mind; and being aware regarding my want of leisure is both an advantage and harmful, and the heart to write of them\(^2\) is, therefore, miraculous. 19. Then it is always necessary for me, who am in want of leisure, to write unto you so much writing of the harassing of annoyers and against disputes, of whose end there is no conception in my heart.

Chapter VI.

1. When at any time I write more pleasantly, this directs you to understand that still with the steadfast are my affection and natural lowly-mindedness; afterwards, too, that which happens when you have kept me wide away from the way of brotherhood, and higher even than a father, master, leader, ruler, or high-priest, is due to the fame and happiness of

---

1 The \(K\)invad bridge, or passage to heaven (see Dd. XX, 3); meaning that he would have been ready to lose his life for the sake of his brother.

2 The heart to write of the 'happiness and enjoyment' of § 17.
my body and life, not to affection of character, but the position of religion and the command of the sacred beings. 2. On that account, when you have seen the pure religiousness, the learned knowledge, and the repose-promoting truth of the invisible (avēnāpīh) of which my heart is leaping with evidence, so that you are steadfast even unto the nōid asta-ka (‘not though the body’) of which Zaratūst the Spītamān spoke—and, because, turned by me to the religion which is thy passport (parvānakō) to the best existence, you have understood that it is the organizer of the greatest protection, even that is supposed by me—I undergo all the terror of the period in hope of the supreme recompense.

3. And the position that that religion has given, which on that account is mine, you have that way considered as supremacy; and if, sent from you or another person, the opposition of one of the same religion is seen to be the dispersion and disruption of the appointed profession, I act against the continuance of the opposition, and as steadfastly as the series (za rah) of submissiveness and gratification of your priestly lordship has done to me. 4. And this will be undoubtedly realised by you, that if you do not turn away from this decree which is not preservative, but, being appointed, I reach out from

---

1 The MS. J ends at this point, but the continuation of the text, as far as the word ‘important’ in Chap. IX, 7, is interpolated in Dd. XXXVII, 33 in the same MS.
2 In Vend. XIX, 26, ‘not though the body, not though the life, not though the consciousness should part asunder,’ would he curse the good, Mazda-worshipping religion.
3 He now proceeds from persuasion to an assertion of his authority, accompanied by threats.
the country of Irân ¹, then I shall become its greatest attacker of you. 5. And so I consider that from my opposition it is possible for more harm to happen unto you than from many accusers who are like the leader of those of the good religion, the many who are as it were of like fame with me.

6. And also from my departure, and the non-existence of one that is a friend of yours, who, like me, is less able to be for your harm than he who is one of the many accusers of whom it is I who am the restrainer, you know this, that my coming is on account of the affection of some and the reverence of others. 7. From the exercise of religion I do not at all fall away, and for the sake of the position of the religion I am maintaining opposition ² to any one; even when he is a friend who is loved by me, I am then his antagonist. 8. Fate (zīkō) ³ is the great truth of the vacant, the form (andām) ⁴ which has procured the light of life.

Chapter VII.

1. A well-reflecting person, moreover, is able to understand that which is written by me, in private, in writing unto the good people of Strkân, as perhaps a legitimate copy ⁵ of a writing of that kind from

¹ Referring to his intended visit to Strkân (see Chaps. V, 5, VII, 3, Ep. I, xi, 4).
² J has 'I am an opposition.'
³ Or 'living.'
⁴ Or 'the time (hangām).'
⁵ The MSS. have pīnō, instead of paṅīnō. This copy of Ep. I is mentioned in Ep. I, xi, 10.
me may be near you; and it was like the production of some one for the tearing and rending of his own limbs, and for the purpose of bringing on that remedy—the burning, torturing medicine that is religious—whose purpose is to remain away from the steadfast while abiding by the commands of religion. 2. This same epistle, which was one of very great incompleteness, and one as it were thinking very severely, was similar to the decision (azad) to which I have come on the same subject, which is written of below and again; and accompanying this epistle was a man of my own with a further epistle. 3. I am discharging (vigrārakō) my own duty as regards it, where I so arrange affairs of every kind which it is possible for me to complete for a period of three months, and come myself to where you are, and that mastery (kīrīth) which is prepared is again arranged when it is wanted by them.

4. You have already become a reserver (khāmo-stādār) and rapid preparer of the adaptation of words in which cogency exists, and have clearly explained

---

1 Probably meaning 'remorse.'
2 Ep. I.
3 Chald. 2lN, referring to his general mandate (Ep. III) mentioned again in Chap. VIII, 1.
4 The temporary epistle to Zâd-spārām (mentioned in Ep. I, xi, 1, 5), of which no copy has been preserved.
5 I begins as follows:—'And I will come later on and more combatively, when it is requisite for the sacred beings (or for them); I am also myself in possession of an opportunity as regards it.'
6 This period for his visit to Sîrkân is also mentioned in Ep. I, xi, 4.
7 Or 'by the sacred beings;' the words yāsdān and sān being written alike.
as much as is in sight about the reason of altering that decree, concerning which your opinion is written with great judiciousness. 5. But as to the understanding which prompted you to write properly, and not to alter the rites and purifications of the Avesta, and about the duty of purifying the purifiers¹, such as has entered into the practice of the good, the propriety is declared in the teaching of the high-priests; and to do it better, so far as is possible, is to strive forwards in goodness.

6. Also, as regards changing the law of the fifteen times washing², just as it is for Irân in which purifiers are to be found, it is ordered for places to be found without purifiers; and it is in the countries of Irân that the order is given regarding purifiers not thus appointed for the work.

Chapter VIII.

1. To arrange again for approval the other matters, of which a portion is written about by you, an epistle³ is again prepared in advance for Srîkân, Shirâz, and other places, so as thus to make your decree a writing of bygone offence. 2. Because, if your despatch (firft) prepared this new proceeding, and you do not turn away from it, and do not recede through opposition and accumulation of vexation, and these others, too, like thee, shall

¹ J has 'and not to alter the purification in the rites of the Avesta.'
³ Ep. III, also mentioned as a 'decision' in Chap. VII, 2.
not now abandon routine of that kind, then your children, your own precious ones who are beloved—of whom I know that you make them love you, and do not, moreover, diminish in your protection of them—shall be your accusers; and they shall abandon confidence in me as refuge and guardian, and in the sacred beings, through want of advice and want of guardianship. 3. The fires of the sacred fires whose manager is a guard and protection such as I, lest they should not obtain such an officiating priest (zōtō), will have in defence and guardianship of themselves to make back to their Shirāz abode. 4. And I myself shall have to retire (agviraztdanō) from the countries of Irān, and to wander forth to far distant realms where I shall not hear a rumour about your evil deeds. 5. In my occupation, moreover, my fortune (sukūn) may be to wander forth by water even to China, or by land even to Arūm¹; but to be carried off by Vâē², that uplifter, is much more my desire than when I am there where, owing to you, I hear that, as regards the glorifying of the sacred beings, which, because of my reply obtained above, would then be as much as death to me; it would also be the ending of that internal strife, so distasteful (aparvârakō) to me, which is like his who has to struggle with his own life.

¹ The eastern empire of the Romans, that is, Asia Minor and the neighbouring regions.
² The bad Vâē, who carries off the soul (see Dd. XXX, 4).
CHAPTER IX.

1. This, too, this aged one (aûzvârdô) orders, that, as to the polluted of the countries of Irân, when they do not obtain another washer, their way is then through thoroughly washing themselves.  
2. For you who are understanding the rite and capable of washing, and are the most forward and intelligent of the religious, so long as your previous washing is a way of no assistance, there is this tediously-worded epistle; moreover, all their sin you assign for your own affliction, whose after-course is thus for their Pankadasa (‘fifteenfold’) washing, at the time they shall abandon, as distasteful, that sin which is a new development by way of Upas-nâteê (‘washing downwards’); and the sinfulness is his who established that law for them.

3. And yours are truly creatures of a fetid pool (gand-âvô), who, as regards my motive, always speak about it just as they spoke thus to a priest: ‘Why has the savoury meat-offering not become forgotten by thee, while the firewood and incense, because it is not possible to eat them up, are quite

---

1 From this it appears clearly that Mânûsîhar was an aged man when these epistles were written, though not too old to travel. The previous allusion to old age, however, in Chap. I, 9, may not have referred to himself.
2 As provided in Vend. VIII, 299 (see App. V).
3 J omits a lag, ‘affliction;’ and in K35 it is doubtful whether it be struck out, or not.
4 See Chap. III, 2 for both these terms.
5 Implying that the laity were inclined to attribute his own strict enforcement of ceremonies, requiring the employment of the priesthood, to interested motives.
forgotten? 4. Also, as a similitude of your affairs, they are saying that it is as though the stipend of guardianship were always to be demanded just in accordance with omissions of duty (avâg mânî-d’thâ)¹. 5. So that even while the trifle of trifles which exists as an interval from the title of leadership unto that of high-priestship—in which, except a title that is no joy of the strictly religious, there is nothing whatever—is, that way, to prepare a source of dispute as to the work which you do for the guardianship, it should, therefore, be a sufficiency (khvâr-bâr), where your own supreme work is purification itself; and to do either what is taught, or is advantageous, would be withdrawing from the country a demand which has caused disturbance (balûbâkînd’d’); to subdue it thou shouldst always so decide the daily allowances².

6. And, to-day, I have, on that account, written everything sternly, because that which another person arranges and speaks so opposed to me in evil appearance—which is little fit to be prepared—when I write seasonably, and with friendly and brotherly exaltation, you direct and persevere more expressly in preparing, so that portion upon portion is thus brought forth. 7. In good old age³ the great law of after-restoration is a harsh remedy, and, on that

¹ That is, the laity attributed his brother’s laxity, on the other hand, to sheer neglect of duty, and had, therefore, begun to consider his supervision hardly worth paying for.
² Meaning that by adherence to long-established custom, as regards both priestly work and priestly allowances, the laity would be better satisfied and more easily managed.
³ Reading hû-kahôbanîh; J has merely kahôbanîh, ‘old age, antiquity.’ He appears to be referring rather to the antiquity of the Avesta law, than to his own old age.
supposition, where a rule is shown to descend from their three teachings, and is itself regarded as true, and the wisdom of the period as impotent (anōzō-harīkō), you yourself fully imagine (hū-minēdō) that further restoration is not an important and foremost thing. 8. Those of different faiths of various kinds have many usages and perplexing kinds of doubt, even about the accomplishment and explanation of the statements of the high-priests, for on this subject, about old age (gūnānth), and even about sprinkling and about yourself accomplishing the religious rites, you are wisely for a preservation of the equally wise experience of the profession; and as to the heterodox, that writing which realised that even now memory is opposing you is itself evil-wishing, and you know it is your own arrangement.

9. This, too, they say that, if it be on that account that the purifiers shall not always so perform the purification by all three teachings, or every rite which is proper according to one teaching, it will be necessary that the purifiers shall abandon purification. 10. Then about old age, the performance of the ceremonial, and the many times of this which

---

2 J has khavītūnēd, 'you know.' He deprecates all further investigation into the meaning of the scriptures, which had already been explained by three old commentators, as he doubted the religious wisdom of the age in which he lived.
3 The continuation of the text in J ends at this point.
4 The commentators.
5 That is, the decree of Zād-spāram, though itself objectionable, was opposed to the heterodox who wished for further innovations.
6 The heterodox.
7 Referring perhaps to the performance of the Vendīdād service.
are mentioned as though this were proper, it is stated as regards how it is proper that, when on account of those of the good religion they always proceed just as is mentioned in the Zand teaching of the Avesta\(^1\), it will then be necessary that they shall abandon the religion. 11. And many other sayings of things like unto these are scattered about (zerkhûñl-aftô), and are named near Âtûrô-pâd\(^2\) as hints from you; for this reason they are reckoned (khaprag-aftô) in the thoughts of men.

12. And this much is written by me in distressing haste; I consider it complete, and may peace and every happiness perpetually become hospitably attainable and accomplishable for you thereby, through the severe anguish and discomfort, and the eternal distress and despondency of the healer of affliction, Mânûskthar, son of Yûdân-Yim, director of the profession of priests of Pârs and Kirmân\(^3\).

13. Written in propitiation, praise, and benediction of the creator Aûharmazd and the archangels, all the angels of the spiritual and the angels of the worldly existences, and every guardian spirit of the righteous. 14. Homage to the exalted pontiff (radô) sent from the creator Aûharmazd, the most heavenly of the heavenly, Zaratûst the Spîtamân. 15. The

(which includes the Yasna ceremonial) as directed in Pahl. Vend. IX, 132, b, 9 (see App. IV).

\(^1\) It is possible also to read 'in the teaching of the Avesta and Zand;' but this would ignore the fact that the 'teaching' is the Zand itself.

\(^2\) The same rival as is mentioned in Chap. V, 14.

\(^3\) According to Dd. XLV, 5 the farmâdâr or 'director' of the profession of priests of Pârs was the pêšûpât or 'leader' of the religion.
most prayerful and gainful of things is righteousness; great and good and perfect is Zaratûst; and one only is the way of righteousness, all the others are no ways.

1 Compare Dd. XCIV, 14, Ep. III, 23.
EPISTLE III.

TO ALL OF THE GOOD RELIGION IN IRÁN.

In the name of the sacred beings.

A copy of the notification (vishādakō) of his priestly lordship Mānūsēkhār, son of Yūdān-Yim, regarding the grievous sinfulness of assuming the propriety of washing for fifteen times.

In the name of the sacred beings.

1. It has come unto the ears (vasammūnisnō) of me, Mānūsēkhār, son of Yūdān-Yim, pontiff (raḍ) of Pārs and Kirmān, that, in some quarters of the country of Iran, they whose chance happens to be so much pollution, such as is decreed unto so much washing of the customary parts (pīsakō), always wash themselves fifteen times with bull’s urine and once with water, consider themselves as clean, and go to water, fire, and ceremonial ablution, the ablution

1 See Dd. XCIV, 13.
2 Reading hāvan; but it may be ‘pollution of the spiritual life (ahvō),’ though this is hardly possible in the next phrase, where the same word occurs.
3 By confounding the preliminary washing appointed in Vend. VIII, 279 with the final washing appointed in Vend. VIII, 299 (see App. V, and compare Ep. II, iii, 2, ix, 2).
of the sacred twigs. 2. Such,—although they say that Zād-sparām², son of Yūdān-Yim, has ordered, and the high-priests have appointed, washing of this kind—has appeared to my well-reflecting (hū-min) opinion, apprehension, and appreciation very marvellous and grave, and merely a rumour. 3. And it is needful for me to keep those of the good religion in all quarters of the country of Irān informed concerning the placing reliance upon their washing with the Bareshnūm ceremony³, and to make my own opinion clear also as regards the writings collected.

4. And, first of all, about the indispensability of the Bareshnūm ceremony I write several such copies of a well-matured writing of mine⁴ as may even be new light to the intelligent. 5. That my opinion of the information provided by revelation, the decisions of high-priests, and the teachings of those of the primitive faith is thus, that washing by the polluted with water is pollution for the life and spiritual life (ahvō)⁵; they render the material body clean thereby, but that which is known as the handiwork⁶ of the immortals, and is also professionally called the Bareshnūm, when there is the protection of a ritual of various kinds, shall make the body clean from endless worldly attacks.

6. It is in the nine ablution seats (magākō)⁷ and the furrow⁸, even with prayer, bull’s urine, water,

---

¹ Reading amat, instead of the very similar word hamāl, ‘ever.’
² See the headings to Eps. I, II.
³ See App. IV.
⁴ Meaning this epistle.
⁵ Because it pollutes pure water, which is considered a sin.
⁶ Reading yadman; but it may be gadman, ‘glory,’ which is written in precisely the same manner.
⁸ See Vend. IX, 21-28 (App. IV)
and other appliances, and the ritual which is such as is declared in the teaching of revelation; and even now the purifiers, who are just as written about below, keep it in use. 7. When there is a washing they wash just as in the well-teaching statements which are known as those of Mêdyôk-mâh, of Afarg, and of Sôshâns, or in the statement of one of those three teachings, or in the statement of one of the high-priests by whom those three teachings are declared as propriety, or has come unto me as the practice of those same three teachings by those of the primitive faith.

8. I deem this deliverance one wholly approvable, and the washer in a washing of that kind, with the Bareshnûm ceremony—which is lawfully of that description—I consider as a purifier who is approvable. 9. And the polluted of every description, as above written, who have obtained, for any indispensable reason whatever, a purifier, as above written, whom even now various districts and various places have appointed and approved, are able to wash with the Bareshnûm ceremony as above written. 10. Then their washing fifteen times is no deliverance in any way, and to wash them quickly with the Bareshnûm ceremony as above written is indispensable.

11. Owing to a washing of the same kind through the Bareshnûm ceremony, as is intended, water, fire, and other things, not to provide care for which is un... authorishly is grievously sinful.

---

1 See Ep. I, v, 1. 2 From pollution. 3 At this point there is a blank page in K35, and also in the MS. belonging to Mr. Tehmuras Dinshawji, which is supposed to be older; and one line is left blank in BK. It is not, however,
12. When, on account of a cleansing through another washing, distinct from the Bareshnûm ceremony, quite certain that any text is really missing, as this section can be read continuously and translated as follows, without much difficulty:—‘Apart from a washing of the same kind through the Bareshnûm ceremony, as is intended, there would be a grievous sin against water, fire, and other things, not to provide care for which would be unauthorised.’

If some folios of text are missing, as seems quite possible from the terms applied to this epistle in § 4, the question arises whether a portion of the missing text may be contained in the following fragment on the subject of the Bareshnûm, which is appended to the passage (Ep. II, vi, 2–ix, 7) interpolated in Dd. XXXVII, 33 in the MS. J:

‘As it is declared in revelation that, if a man who has chanted comes upon a corpse, whether a dog, or a fox, or a wolf, or a male, or a female, or any creature on whose corpse it is possible that he may come, that good man becomes so that a man may become defiled by him, and it is necessary to wash the polluted one, so that it may not make him a sinner. In order that they may act so to the polluted one it is necessary to wash him, it is necessary to perform that Bareshnûm ceremony of the nine nights. If the man that is spoken of has worked about carrying the dead and contact with dead matter (nôsâ hâmâlîh), so that they know about his defilement to whom he comes, then he who has done this work in contact with dead matter becomes afterwards disabled for that worship of the sacred beings which they perform. So, also, some one says (compare Vend. VIII, 271–299), where in a wilderness (vyâvân) are several priests (âsrûvô) and a man lies on the road, there he who carries the dead body of the man who passes away— as those others remain and stand away helpless, without offerings of inward prayer (vâgô vakhtagân) over that person (kerpô) according to the religious way—having washed his body, comes into the town and performs the nine nights’ Bareshnûm ceremony twice; afterwards, his Gê tô-khartid ceremonies (see Dd. LXXIX, 4) are performed, and he has acted well according to the religious way; then he comes into the ceremonial of the sacred beings. “How are those men purified, O righteous one! who shall stand up by a corpse which is very dry and dead a year?”’ (See Pahl. Vend. VIII, 107, 108.) The reply is this, that “those men are purified;
they consider themselves as clean it is more grievously sinful; just as when they do not wash with the Bareshnûm, as above written, but consider themselves as clean through washing fifteen times, as above written, or on account of any washing whatever distinct from the Bareshnûm, it is more grievously sinful; because, when they do not wash with a Bareshnûm, as above written, but wash for fifteen times, as above written, or any washing whatever distinct from the Bareshnûm, as above written, they do not become clean, through the professional washing which is decreed, from that pollution which remains.

13. When without similar trouble and great judiciousness they go unto water and fire, the sin is grievous; and when they go to the bowl (padmānḍ) for ablution of the sacred twigs it is non-ablution advisedly, and to perform the ceremonial therewith would not be authorised. 14. And, in like manner, the washing of polluted Hûm twigs, for any indispensable purpose, with the Bareshnûm ceremony, as above written, is not possible.

15. Therefore, so that we may obtain as it were a remedy for it, I wash with the Bareshnûm ceremony, as above written; to keep the mind steadfast and to attain to a remedy I wash with the Bareshnûm, as above written; and to bestow the indispensable, comprehensive Bareshnûm, as above written, is indeed a good work suitable for the discreet and liberated

for it is not to the dry from that dryness—that is, it would not act from this polluted thing—that the existence of dry diffusion has arisen.”

1 Even after the best ordinary washing.
2 See Dd. XLIII, 5.
3 See Dd. XLVIII, 16.
from bonds, and the purification of body and soul is connected with it.

16. These things those of the primitive faith, who provided for the moderns, have communicated, whose position was above us moderns who are now the law (gûn) of others, and are teachers and rulers; our station as regards them is the position (gâsth) of disciples to spiritual masters, that of listeners and servitors to form and hold the opinion, about the same and other things, which those of the primitive faith formed; and the teaching of even one of those high-priests is greater and higher than our sayings and decisions.

17. And as to every custom there may be in the country of Irân, about casting away the Bareshnûm ceremony, as written by me, and about all the polluted, as above written—whom it is possible to wash, for any indispensable reason whatever, with the Bareshnûm as written by me, and one does not wash with the Bareshnûm as written by me, but is ordered to wash for fifteen times, as written by me, and to pronounce as clean—and which is established as a rule one is urged to practise, if Zâd-sparam or any one else has ordered, said, or decided in the name of authority that one is to do so, or has established it as a rule, or set it going, this is to give authoritatively my opinion, decision, and enactment upon it likewise. 18. That those same sayings are short-sighted (aê-vênakô), that same order is unlawfully given, that same decision is false teaching, that same rule is vicious, that same setting going is grievously sinful, and that same authority is not to be accepted; it is a practice, therefore, not to be performed, and whoever has performed it, is to
engage quickly in renunciation of it. 19. And he who has decreed in the country of Irân, in the name of authority, washing of other kinds as all-remedial for the polluted, as above written, and has established a rule of that description is to be considered as a heretic (a hārmôkô) deserving death.

20. So, when through his wilfulness that kind of injury without enlightenment (bām) is decreed, and a rule of that description is established, as above written, and one rendered polluted is washed fifteen times with bull’s urine and once with water, or in whatever other mode that is distinct from the Bareshnûm ceremony as written by me, though it is possible to wash him, for any indispensable reason whatever, with the Bareshnûm as above written, then, his renunciation of sin being accomplished, he is to be washed again at the nine ablution seats (māgh)1 with the Bareshnûm as written by me; and until washed again, as written by me, he is not to go to water and fire and the bowl for ablation.

21. And this epistle is written by me, in my own hand-writing, for the sake of all members whatever of the good religion of the country of Irân becoming aware of the opinion, apprehension, and appreciation of the commands of religion entertained by me, Mânûskêlhar, son of Yûdân-Yim; and several copies are finished in the month of the triumphant Horvadad of the year 250 of Yazdakard2.

22. In trustfulness and gratitude to the sacred beings, and homage to the exalted pontiff sent from8

---

1 See § 6.
2 The third month of the Parsi year 250, which corresponded to the interval between the 14th June and 13th July, 881.
3 Reading min, as in Ep. II, ix, 14, instead of mûn, ‘who.’
the creator Aûharmazd, the heavenly, most righteous, and glorified Zaratûst the Spîtamân. 23. For the sake of obtainments of prayers the one thing is the righteousness of the Spîtamân; great, good, and perfect is Zaratûst; one only is the way of perfect righteousness, which is the way of those of the primitive faith; all the others, appointed afresh, are no ways.

1 Compare Dd. XCIV, 14, Ep. II, ix, 15. This epistle is followed, in K35, by the Selections of Zâd-sparam, of which the first portion is translated in the fifth volume of the Sacred Books of the East.
APPENDIX.

I. LEGENDS RELATING TO KERESÅSP.
II. THE NĪRANG-I KUSTĪ.
III. THE MEANING OF KHVĒTŨK-DAS.
IV. THE BARESHNÛM CEREMONY.
V. FINDING A CORPSE IN THE WILDERNESS.
OBSERVATIONS.

1. For all divisions of the translations into sentences or sections the translator is responsible, as such divisions are rarely made in the manuscripts.

2–6. (The same as on page 2.)

7. The manuscripts mentioned are:—

B29 (written A.D. 1679), a Persian Rivât, No. 29 in the University Library at Bombay.

BK, J, K35, M10 (as described on page 278).

L4 (written about A.D. 1324), a Vendidad with Pahlavi, in the India Office Library in London.

M7 (written A.D. 1809), miscellaneous Parsi-Persian writings, No. 7 of the Haug Collection in the State Library at Munich.
APPENDIX.

I. LEGENDS RELATING TO KERESĀSP.

The Avesta informs us that Keresāspa was a son of Thrīta the Sāman, and the brother of Urvākhshaya. From the name of his father's family he is sometimes called Sāma Keresāspa, but his more usual title is Naremāna or Nairimāna, 'the manly-minded.' He is described as 'a youthful hero, wearing side-locks and carrying a club,' to whom the witch Knāthaiti attached herself; she whom Zarātūst promised to destroy by means of the apostle Saoshyāns, who is to be born hereafter. And his body is watched over by 99,999 guardian spirits.

1 See Yas. IX, 30, 31.
2 See Fravardīn Yt. 61, 136. Hence he is often called Sām in Pahlavi works (see Bd. XXIX, 7, 9, Byt. III, 60, 61); and, in a passage interpolated in some manuscripts of the Shāhnāmah, we are informed that Garsāsp was son of Atrat, son of Sām, which is evidently a reminiscence of Keresāsp being a son of Thrīta the Sāman (see also Bd. XXXI, 26, 27).
3 See Ābān Yt. 37, Rām Yt. 27, Zamyād Yt. 38, 40, 44. Hence we have Sām, son of Nārimān, as the grandfather of Rūstam in the Shāhnāmah.
4 See Yas. IX, 33. M. de Harlez converts the side-locks into some weapon called gaēsus, but this word still survives in Pers. gēs or gēsū, 'ringlet, side-lock.'
5 See Vend. I, 36. Or it may be 'the witch whom one destroys, or to whom one prays,' if we translate the name.
6 See Vend. XIX, 18.
7 See Fravardīn Yt. 61. For the reason of this watchfulness, see Dd. XVII, 6 n.
Of his exploits we are told that he 'slew the serpentine Srvara, which devoured horses and men, which was poisonous and yellow, over which yellow poison flowed a hand's-breadth high. On which Keresâspa cooked a beverage in a caldron at the midday hour, and the serpent being scorched, hissed, sprang forth, away from the caldron, and upset the boiling water; Keresâsp, the manly-minded, fled aside frightened.' We are further told that he slew the golden-heeled Gaândarewa; that he smote Hitâspa in revenge for the murder of his brother, Urvâkhshaya; that he smote the Hunus who are the nine highwaymen, and those descended from Nivika and Dâstayâni; also Vareshava the Dânayan, Pitaona with the many witches, Arezö-shamana, and Snâvidhaka; and that he withstood many smitters or murderers.

The details of these exploits, still extant in the Avesta, are very scanty; but some of them appear to have been more fully described in a legend about the soul of Keresâspa which formerly constituted the fourteenth fargard of the Sûd'kar Nask, the contents of which are thus summarized in the ninth book of the Dînkard:

'The fourteenth fargard, Ad-fravakhsht', is about

---

1 See Yas. IX, 34-39, Zamyâd Yt. 40 (translated in Haug's Essays, pp. 178, 179).
2 See Ábân Yt. 38, Zamyâd Yt. 41. A monster in the wide-shored ocean, who is also mentioned in Râm Yt. 28.
3 See Râm Yt. 28, Zamyâd Yt. 41.
4 See Zamyâd Yt. 41. For 'Hunus' some read 'sons.'
5 See Zamyâd Yt. 41-44. See Fravardîn Yt. 136.
6 The name of Yas. XLIV, being the first two words, ad fravakhshyà, of that chapter of the Gàthas. In the detailed account of the contents of each fargard of the first three Nasks, given in the ninth book of the Dînkard, each fargard is distinguished.
Aůharmazd’s showing the terrible state of the soul of Keresâsp¹ to Zaratûst; the dismay of Zaratûst owing to that terrible state; the sorrowful speaking of Keresâsp as regards the slaying of multitudes, for which mankind extol him, whereby abstentions from sin occurred; and the recognition of him by the creator, Aůharmazd, as extinguishing his fire. The supplication of Keresâsp for the best existence from Aůharmazd for those exploits when the serpent (gaz) Srôbar² was slain by him, and the violence of that adversary; when Gandarep³ with the golden heels was smitten by him, and the marvellousness of that fiend; when the Hunus of Veskô⁴, who are

by the name of some section of the Gâthas. The names thus employed are composed of the first one, two, or three words of the Yathâ-ahû-vairyõ, the Ashem-vohû, the Yêshê-hûûûm, Yas. XXVIII–XXXIV, the Yasna haptanghâîti, Yas. XLII–L, LII, LIII, which supply the twenty-two names required. When the Nask contains twenty-three fargards, as in the case of the Varstmânsar, the first fargard remains unnamed. Whether these words were used merely as names, or whether their insertion implies that the fargards of these Nasks used to be recited (somewhat like those of the Vendidâd) alternately with the sections of the Gâthas, can hardly be determined from our present information. It may be noted that the three Nasks (Sûâkar, Varstmânsar, and Bakô), whose contents are thus detailed in the Dînkard, all belong to the so-called gâsânîk or Gâtha class of Nasks; but whether that term implies that they were metrical, or merely that they were connected in some way with the Gâthas, is also uncertain.

¹ Written Kerêśâspô, or Gerêśâspô, throughout the Pahlavi text of this paragraph.
² The Srvarão of Yas. IX, 34, Zamyâd Yt. 40.
³ The Gandarewao of Âbân Yt. 38, Râm Yt. 28, Zamyâd Yt. 41.
⁴ Reading Hunû Veskô, but it is also possible to read khûnû-dâkô, ‘blood-producing,’ which is fully applicable to these highway-robbers. The ‘Hunus in Vaēska’ are mentioned in Âbân Yt. 54, 57 as opponents of the warrior Tusa, but the Hunus in Zamyâd Yt. 41 have no country assigned to them. 

bb2
descendants of Nivîk and Dâstânîk\(^1\), were slain by him, and the grievous harm and disaster owing to them; and when the mighty wind\(^2\) was appeased by him, and brought back from damaging the world to benefiting the creatures; and for that which happens when, owing to confinement\(^3\), Dahâk becomes eager, rushes on for the destruction of the world, and attempts the annihilation of the creatures; and his being roused to smite him and to tame that powerful fiend for the creatures of the world. The opposition of fire to Keresâsp, through his causing distress to it and keeping away from it, which were owing to his seeking hell; the supplication of Zarâtûst to the fire to have compassion upon him, which was owing to his sin; the compliance of the fire with that request; and the departure of the soul of Keresâsp to the ever-stationary existence\(^4\). Perfect is the excellence of righteousness\(^5\).

Although the Sûd'kar Nask has long been lost, the legend contained in this fourteenth fargard still survives in its Pahlavi form, though probably somewhat abridged, and a Persian paraphrase of this Pahlavi version is also to be found in the Persian

---

\(^1\) The Nivika and Dâstâyâni of Zamyâd Yt. 41.

\(^2\) The wind (vâdō), though an angel when moderate and useful, is supposed to become a demon in a gale or hurricane; and is mentioned as such in Vend. X, 24.

\(^3\) In the volcano, Mount Dimâvand (see Bd. XII, 31, XXIX, 9, Byt. III, 55–61). This exploit is expected to be performed hereafter.

\(^4\) The hamîstîkō ahvânō, intermediate between heaven and hell (see Dd. XX, 3).

\(^5\) The Pahlavi equivalent of the Av. aśhēm vohū, here translated, follows each summary of the contents of a fargard or Nask in the Dinkard, in the same way as aśhēm vohū follows each fargard of the Vendîdâd and each section of the Gâthas in the Vendîdâd sâdah or liturgy.
I. LEGENDS RELATING TO KERESÂSP.

Rivâyats\(^1\). The Pahlavi legend is included among a series of quotations, regarding the importance of fire, contained in a Pahlavi Rivâyat preceding the Dâdîstân-\(^1\) Dînk in some manuscripts\(^2\); and its close correspondence with the above summary of the fourteenth fargard of the Sûd'kar Nask will be seen from the following translation of it:—

. . . . ‘And it is declared that fire is so precious that Aûharmazd spoke unto Zaratûst thus: “Of whose soul is it that the actions\(^3\), position, consciousness, and guardian spirit seem best when thou shalt behold it?”

‘And Zaratûst spoke thus: “Of him who is Keresâsp.”

‘Aûharmazd summoned the soul of Keresâsp, and the soul of Keresâsp saw\(^4\) Zaratûst and, on account of the misery which it had seen in hell, it spoke unto him thus: “I have been a priest of Kâpûl\(^5\), which should be a power in support of me; and for the sake of begging life I have ever travelled through the world, and the world would have become hideous in my eyes, the world which should have feared my splendour\(^6\).”

---

\(^1\) In B\(29\), fols. 167–169, where it is quoted from a work called the Sad-darband-i Hûsh.

\(^2\) In BK and J; but in K\(35\) this portion of the Rivâyat has been lost, with the first 71 folios of that MS.; it also appears to have been similarly lost from the older MS. belonging to Mr. Tehmurâs Dinshawji Anklesaria.

\(^3\) J omits this word.

\(^4\) J omits the seeing.

\(^5\) Kâbul. One of the three most sacred fires, the Frûbak fire, is said to have been removed by Virtâsp from Khvârism to Kâvulisân (see Bd. XVII, 6). The Persian version has ‘would to God (kârkê) I were a priest!’ and alters the rest of the sentence to correspond.

\(^6\) Reading râ-î li; J has 100 var, ‘a hundred lakes (or ordeals or results).’
'And Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Stand off, thou soul of Keresâsp! for thou shouldst be hideous in my eyes, because the fire, which is my son, was extinguished by thee, and no care of it was provided by thee."

'And the soul of Keresâsp spoke thus: "Forgive me, O Aûharmazd! and grant me the best existence! grant me the supreme heaven! The serpent (azô) Srôvbar is slain outright, which was swallowing horses and swallowing men, and its teeth were as long as my arm, its ear was as large as fourteen blankets (namadô), its eye was as large as a wheel, and its horn was as much as Dahâk in height. And I was running as much as half a day on its back, till its head was smitten by me at the neck with a club made for my hand, and it was slain outright by me. And if that serpent had not been slain by me, all thy creatures would have been completely annihilated by it, and thou wouldst never have known a remedy for Aharman."

'Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Stand off! for the fire, which is my son, was extinguished by thee."

'Keresâsp spoke thus: "Grant me, O Aûharmazd! that best existence, the supreme heaven! for by me Gandarep was slain outright, by whom twelve

---

1 Fire is often called 'the son of Ahura-mazda' in the Avesta, as in Yas. II, 18, Vend. V, 9, &c.
2 The Srvara of Yas. IX, 34, Zamyâd Yt. 40. The Persian version has merely azdahâ, 'a dragon.'
3 Or it may be shâk, 'a bough.' The Persian version has 'eighty cubits.'
4 The Persian version adds 'and as I looked into its mouth, men were still hanging about its teeth;' which was evidently suggested by what is stated in the account of the next exploit.
5 See p. 371, note 3.
districts were devoured at once. When I looked among the teeth of Gandarep, dead men were sticking among his teeth; and my beard was seized by him, and I dragged him out of the sea; nine days and nights the conflict was maintained by us in the sea, and then I became more powerful than Gandarep. The sole of Gandarep's foot was also seized by me, and the skin was flayed off up to his head, and with it the hands and feet of Gandarep were bound; he was also dragged by me out to the shore of the sea, and was delivered by me over to Ākhrūrag; and he slaughtered and ate my fifteen horses. I also fell down in a dense thicket (aśakō), and Gandarep carried off my friend Ākhrūrag, and she who was my wife was carried off by him, and my father and nurse (dāyakō) were carried off by him. And I took under my protection (dinhāri-gtnīdō) and raised all the people of our pleasant place, and every single step I sprang forward a thousand steps, and fire fell into everything which was struck by my foot as it sprang forward; I went out to the sea, and they were brought back by me,

1 The Persian version says 'horses and asses.'
2 For this clause the Persian version substitutes 'the sea was up to his knee, and his head up to the sun.'
3 This is merely a guess. The word can also be read khārvara, 'thorny, or a thorny brake;' but it seems to be the name of some person, being followed by the word dōstō, 'friend,' in the next sentence. Ākhrūra, son of Haorsavang, is mentioned in Fravardin Yt. 137, next after Sâma Keresâspa, as 'withstanding Hāshidava (or daēva), the wicked and covetous one destroying the world.' The Persian version omits from the dragging out of the sea in this sentence to the slaying in the next (p. 376, line 1).
4 BK has 'by me,' which must be a blunder.
5 J omits these last seven words.
and Gandarep was taken and slain by me. And if he had not been slain by me, Aharman would have become predominant over thy creatures."

'Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Stand off! for thou art hideous in my eyes, because the fire, which is my son, was extinguished by thee."

'Keresâsp spoke thus: "Grant me, O Aûharmazd! heaven or the supreme heaven! for I have slain the highwaymen who were so big in body that, when they were walking, people considered in this way, that 'below them are the stars and moon, and below them moves the sun at dawn, and the water of the sea reaches up to their knees.' And I reached up to their legs, and they were smitten on the legs by me; they fell, and the hills on the earth were shattered by them. And if those fallen highwaymen had not been slain by me, Aharman would have become predominant over thy creatures."

'Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Stand off! for thou shouldst be hideous in my eyes, because the fire, which is my son, was extinguished by thee."

'Keresâsp spoke thus: "Grant me, O Aûharmazd! heaven or the supreme heaven! When the wind was weakened (rakhtō) and paralysed by me, the

---

1 The Persian version says, 'I slew him, and as he fell down many villages and places became desolate.'
2 The 'nine highwaymen' of Zamyâd Yt. 47. The Persian version says 'seven.' BK has 'walked,' instead of 'slain.'
3 Instead of this sentence the Persian version has 'through fear of them people could not go on any journey, and every one whom they might see, on the road that he went, they would instantly eat up; and in three years they reckoned three hundred thousand men they had slain and destroyed. And I fought with them and slew all the seven.'
4 J omits the word 'fallen.'
demons deceived the wind, and they spoke unto the wind thus: 'He is more resisting thee than all the creatures and creation, and thou shouldst think of him thus, that "there is no one walks upon this earth more resistant of me than Keresâsp;" he despises demons and men, and thee, too, who shouldst be the wind, even thee he despises.' And the wind, when those words were heard by it, came on so strongly that every tree and shrub which was in its path was uprooted, and the whole earth which was in its path was reduced to powder (payangânôî-altô kardô), and darkness arose. And when it came to me, who am Keresâsp, it was not possible for it to lift my foot from the ground; and I arose and sallied forth (barâ yehâbûnd) upon the earth, and I stood upon it, with both feet on an equality (mirîh), until a rampart (pûstô) of it was completed, so that I might go again below the earth; that which Aûharmazd ordered thus: 'Should I appoint a keeper of the earth and sky, they would not forsake me.' And if that thing had not been done by me, Aharman would have become predominant over thy creatures.'

'Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Stand off! for thou shouldst be hideous in my eyes, because the fire, which is my son, was smitten by thee."

'Keresâsp spoke thus: "Grant me, O Aûharmazd! heaven or the supreme heaven! for it is thus

---

1 The Persian version has 'and as it arrived near me, it was not able to bear my foot from the spot; and I seized the spirit of the wind, and overthrew him with my own strength, until he made a promise thus: "I will go again below the earth." And I did not keep back my hand from that work less than Aûharmazd and the archangels ordered me.'
declared by revelation, that, when Dahâk has escaped from confinement¹, no one is able to seek any other remedy against him but me; on that account grant me heaven or the supreme heaven! And if it be not possible to grant me heaven or the supreme heaven, give me again the strength and success which were mine during life! for when thou shalt give me again so much strength and success as were mine when I was produced alive, I will slay Aharman with the demons, I will eradicate darkness from hell, I will complete the beautiful light, and within its sole existence (tanû-aê)² you shall sit and move³.

‘Aûhrmaezd spoke thus: “This I will not give thee, thou soul of Keresâsp! because men shall commit sin; and until men commit no more sin, it is not possible to make thee alive again, and thou wouldst also not be able to make other men alive again, for they produce the resurrection thus, when all men become quite innocent. When men shall die, and their souls are wicked, all comfort shall forsake them, and all the misery and discomfort occasioned by them shall remain.”

‘When Keresâsp and his exploits were spoken of in this manner, the angels of the spiritual and the angels of the worldly existences wept aloud, and

¹ See Byt. III, 55-61. The Persian version substitutes a legend about the gigantic bird Kamak (also mentioned in Mkh. XXVII, 50) which overshadowed the earth, and kept off the rain till the rivers dried up; it also ate up men and animals as if they were grains of corn, until Keresâsp killed it by shooting it with arrows continuously for seven days and nights.

² That is, when there is only light, and no darkness.

³ J has ‘I will sit and move alone within it;’ and the Persian version has ‘I will sit alone in that place.’
Zarathûst the Spîṭamân wept aloud\(^1\) and spoke thus:

"Though there should be no deceiver, I would be the deceiver in thy eyes\(^2\), O Aûharmazd! as regards the soul of Keresâsp; for when Keresâsp should not have existed as a bodily and living existence, there would have been no remnant of anything whatever, or of creature of thine, in the world\(^3\)."

'When Zarathûst had become silent therewith, the angel of fire\(^4\) stood upon his feet\(^5\), and the sinfulness of Keresâsp unto himself was fully mentioned by him, and he spoke thus: "I shall not let him into heaven."

'And the angel of fire, having spoken thus many

---

\(^1\) The Persian version does not mention the angels and the weeping.

\(^2\) This can also be translated thus: 'Though thou shouldst be no deceiver, thou wouldst be a deceiver in my eyes;' the words hûmanâyê, 'would be,' and hûmanês, 'thou wouldst be,' being written alike.

\(^3\) The Persian version of this speech is, 'O good creator! I know that hatred and anger are not in thy path, and when any one indulges in hatred of another, there is no acquiescence of thine therein, yet now I see this matter as though some one maintained hatred against another.'

\(^4\) The Persian version says 'the archangel Ardibahist,' who is the protector of fire (see Sîrs. XV, 5, r2, r3).

\(^5\) The Persian version proceeds, and concludes the sentence, as follows: 'and Keresâsp groaned unto Zarathûst the Spîṭamân, and Ardibahist, the archangel, said: "O Zarathûst! thou dost not know what Keresâsp has done unto me; that in the world, formerly, my custom and habit would have been so, that, as they would place firewood under a caldron, I would send the fire, until that caldron should be boiled, and their work should be completed, and then it would have come back to its own place. As that serpent that he speaks of was slain he became hungry, and because the fire fell one moment later upon the firewood which he had placed below the caldron, he smote the fire with a club and scattered the fire, and now I will not pass the soul of Keresâsp to heaven.'
words, desisted; and the angel Gōs-aūrvan\textsuperscript{1} stood upon her feet, and spoke thus: "I shall not let him into hell, for the benefit produced by him for me was manifold."

' Gōs-aūrvan, having spoken thus many words, desisted\textsuperscript{2}; and Zaratūst stood upon his feet, and homage was offered by him unto the fire, and he spoke thus: "I shall provide care for thee, and shall speak of thy exploits in the world, and I shall speak to Vistāsp\textsuperscript{3} and Gāmāsp\textsuperscript{4} thus: 'Observe fully that a place is made for the fire as it were at once!' when Keresāsp has engaged in renunciation of sin, and you shall forgive him\textsuperscript{5}."

The Pahlavi legend breaks off at this point, leaving

\textsuperscript{1} Av. gēus urva, 'the soul of the ox,' that is, of the primeval ox, from which all the lower animals are supposed to have been developed. This angel, who is usually called Gōs, is said to be a female, and is the protectress of cattle (see Bd. IV, 2-5); in this capacity she is supposed to be friendly to Keresāsp, whose exploits had chiefly consisted in slaying the destroyers of animal life.

\textsuperscript{2} The Persian version omits these words, and the preceding paragraph, proceeding in continuation of note 5, p. 379, as follows: 'And as Ardībāhist, the archangel, spoke these words, the soul of Keresāsp wept and said: "Ardībāhist, the archangel, speaks truly; I committed sin and I repent." And he touched the skirt of Zaratūst with his hand, and said: "Of mankind no one has obtained the eminence, rank, and dignity that thou obtainedst; now, through this grandeur and glory which is thine, do thou entreat and make intercession of Ardībāhist, the archangel, for me! so that it may be that I obtain liberation from this distress and torment."'

\textsuperscript{3} See Dd. XXXVII, 36.

\textsuperscript{4} See Dd. XLIV, 16.

\textsuperscript{5} The Persian version continues as follows: 'And as Zaratūst the Spītāmān made intercession, Ardībāhist, the archangel, said: "Thy reputation is immense, and thy will is great." And after that he made no opposition to the soul of Keresāsp, but pardoned it for Zaratūst the Spītāmān; and the soul of Keresāsp obtained liberation from that discomfort.' This version then concludes with an admonition as to the necessity of treating fire with proper respect.
the reader to infer that Zaratûst's request was granted. It is succeeded, however, by the following further remarks about Keresâsp, which are evidently connected with the same legend:

'Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmażd thus: "Whose is the first dead body thou shalt unite (varâzés)?"

'And Aûharmażd spoke thus: "His who is Keresâsp."

'And it seemed grievous to Zaratûst, and he spoke unto Aûharmażd thus: "When the business of Keresâsp was the slaughter of men, why is his the first dead body thou wilt prepare?"

'Aûharmażd spoke thus: "Let it not seem grievous to thee, O Zaratûst! for if Keresâsp had not existed, and thus much work had not been done by him, which has been stated, there would have been no remains of thee, nor of any creature of mine."

Besides the Persian paraphrase of this legend, in prose, the Persian Rivâyats contain another version in metre, which consists of 173 couplets. The exploits of Keresâsp are also mentioned in the Mainyô-i Khard (XXVII, 49-53) as follows:

'And from Sâm the advantage was this, that by him the serpent Sruvar, the wolf Kapôd which they also call Pêhan, the water-demon Gandarfi, the bird Kamak, and the bewildering demon were slain.

1 J omits the following words as far as the next 'thus.'
2 Referring to the revival of Keresâsp from his trance, in order to destroy Dahâk, which is expected to take place before the general resurrection (see Bd. XXIX, 8, Byt. III, 59-61).
3 In B29, fols. 169-171, it is quoted from 'the book of Bahirâm Firûz.'
4 Written Pêhinô, or Pârinô, in the Pahlavi text.
5 See p. 378, note 1. 6 Or 'seducing,' or 'desolating.'
And also many other great actions, that were more valuable, he performed; and he kept back much disturbance from the world, of which, if one of those special disturbances had remained behind, it would not have been possible to effect the resurrection and the future existence.'
II. THE NĪRANG-I KUSTĪ.

The Nīrang-i Kustī, or girdle formula, is a religious rite which a Parsi man or woman ought to perform every time the hands have been washed, whether for the sake of cleanliness, or in preparation for prayer; but it is not always strictly performed in all its details.

The Kustī, or sacred thread-girdle, is a string about the size of a stay-lace, and long enough to pass three times very loosely round the waist, to be tied twice in a double knot, and to leave the short ends hanging behind. It is composed of seventy-two very fine, white, woollen threads, as described in Dd. XXXIX, I, note, and is tied in the manner there mentioned, but with the actions and ritual detailed below.

The ceremonial ablution having been performed, and the Kustī taken off, the person stands facing the sun by day, or a lamp or the moon at night; when there is no light he should face the south, as he should also at midday, even when the sun is northerly. The Kustī is then doubled, and the loop thus formed is held in the right hand, with the thumb in the loop; while the left hand holds the two parts of the string together, some twenty inches horizontally from the other hand; and the ends hang loosely from the left hand.

---

1 For most of the details which follow I am indebted to Dastūr Jâmāspji Minochīharji Jâmāsp-Āsā-nā.

2 As it is, in Bombay, for about two months in the summer.
Holding the Kustl in this fashion, the person recites the following prayer in Pâzand, bowing and raising to his forehead the horizontal portion of the string at the name of Aûharmazd, dashing the string loosely and sharply downwards towards the left when mentioning Aharman, and repeating this downward jerk to the left, less violently, as each of the other evil beings is named:—'May Aûharmazd be lord! and Aharman unprevailing, keeping far away, smitten, and defeated! May Aharman, the demons, the fiends, the wizards, the wicked, the Klks, the Karaps¹, the tyrants, the sinners, the apostates, the impious, the enemies, and the witches be smitten and defeated! May evil sovereigns be unprevailing! May the enemies be confounded! May the enemies be unprevailing!'

Bending forwards and holding the doubled Kustl up, horizontally, as before, he continues: 'Aûharmazd is the lord; of all sin I am in renunciation and penitent, of all kinds of evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds, whatever was thought by me, and spoken by me, and done by me, and happened through me, and has originated through me in the world.'

Then, holding the Kustl single with both hands near the middle of the string, but as far apart as before, while the loose ends of the string are short-

¹ These two Pahlavi names are merely transliterations of the Av. Kavi and Karapan, the names of certain classes of evil-doers, traceable back to the earliest times, and, probably, to the Vedic kâvi and kalpa, which would naturally be used in a bad sense in the Avesta (see Haug's Essays, p. 289). The Pahlavi translators of the Yasna explain these names by the words kûr, 'blind,' and kâr, 'deaf,' which are merely guesses.
ened (to prevent their touching the ground) by being partially gathered up in a large loop hanging under each hand, like a pair of spectacles, he proceeds: 'For those sins of thought, word, and deed, of body and soul, worldly and spiritual, do thou pardon this one! I am penitent and in renunciation through the three words.'

He then continues to recite the following Avesta phrases: 'Satisfaction for Ahura-mazda!' bowing and raising the Kustî to the forehead; 'scorn for Angra-mainyu!' jerking the Kustî to the left, without altering the mode of holding it; 'which is the most forward of actual exertions through the will. Righteousness is the best good, a blessing it is; a blessing be to that which is righteousness to perfect rectitude.' Applying the middle of the Kustî to the front of the waist at the first word, 'righteousness,' of the last sentence, it is passed twice round the waist during the remainder of the sentence, by the hands meeting behind, exchanging ends, and bringing them round again to the front.

The following Avesta formula is then recited: 'As a patron spirit is to be chosen, so is an earthly master, for the sake of righteousness, to be a giver of good thought of the actions of life towards Mazda; and the dominion is for the lord whom he has given

---

1 The Pəzand word is ukhê or aokhê, which the Gujarâti Khurdah Avesta translates by khudâtâelâ, 'most high God;' but it seems more probably a misreading of Pahl. hânâ-ı, 'this one.' These phrases are a portion of the Patit or renunciation of sin.

2 That is, in thought, word, and deed. So far the phrases are recited in Pəzand, but the following recitations are in the Avesta language.

3 This last sentence is the Ashem-voht formula (see Bd. XX, 2).

[18] c c
as a protector for the poor.' At the first word the long ends of the Kustī, hanging in front, are loosely twisted round each other at the waist, with a right-handed turn (that is, with the sun), and the reciter, holding his hands together, should think that Aûhar-\textit{mazd} is the sole creator of the good creation, until he comes to the word 'actions,' after which the twist is drawn closer to the waist during the remainder of the recitation.

The same Avesta formula is then repeated. At the first word the second half of the knot is formed, by twisting the long ends of the Kustī loosely round each other with a left-handed turn (that is, against the sun), so as to complete a loose reef-knot, and the reciter, holding his hands together, should think that Mazda-worship is the true faith, until he comes to the word 'actions,' after which the complete double knot is drawn close during the remainder of the recitation.

Then, passing the long ends of the Kustī round the waist for the third time, from front to back, the previous Avesta formula, 'Righteousness is the best good,' &c., is recited. At the first word the ends of the Kustī are loosely twisted round each other behind the waist, with a right-handed turn as before, and the reciter should think that Zarat\text{"ust was the true apostle, until he comes to the first occurrence of the word 'blessing,' when the twist is drawn close. During the remainder of the formula the second half of the knot is formed, with a left-handed twist as before, while the reciter thinks that he must practise

\footnote{This is the Ahunavar, or Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formula (see Bd. I, 21, Zs. I, 12–19).}
good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, and
avoid all evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds;
the double knot being completed behind as the last
word of the formula is uttered.

Afterwards, bending forward and holding the
front knot of the Kustī with both hands, the person
recites the following Avesta formula: 'Come for my
protection, O Mazda! A Mazda-worshipper am I,
a Zarathustrian Mazda-worshipper will I profess my-
self, both praising and preferring it. I praise a well-
considered thought, I praise a well-spoken word, I
praise a well-performed deed. I praise the Mazda-
worshipping religion, expelling controversy and
putting down attack, and the righteous union of
kinsfolk, which is the greatest and best and most
excellent of things that exist and will exist, which is
Ahurian and Zarathustrian. I ascribe all good to
Ahura-mazda. Let this be the eulogy of the Mazda-
worshipping religion.' And the reciter then repeats
the formula, 'Righteousness is the best good,' &c.,
as before, bowing reverently, which completes the
rite.

---

1 What follows is from Yas. XIII, 25–29, and is the conclusion
of the Mazda-worshipper's creed.

2 The meaning of the original term fraspāyaokhedhrām is
rather uncertain, and the Pahlavi version is not easy to understand
clearly; it translates this sentence, as far as the next epithet, as
follows: 'I praise the good religion of the Mazda-worshippers, from
which the disunion cast forth and the assault put down are manifest
(this is manifest from it, that it is not desirable to go to others without
controversy, and with that which arises without controversy it is
quite requisite to occasion controversy).'

3 This is one of the earliest references to ḫvaētvadathā, or
marriage among next-of-kin; the passage being written in the later
Gāthā dialect.
During the rite the person performing it must remain standing on the same spot, without stepping either backwards or forwards, and must speak to no one. Should anything compel him to speak, he must re-commence the rite after the interruption.
III. THE MEANING OF KHVĒṬŪK-DAS OR KHVĒṬŪDĀD.

That the term Khvēṭūk-das is applied to marriages between kinsfolk is admitted by the Parsis, but they consider that such marriages were never contracted by their ancestors within the first degree of relationship, because they are not so permitted among themselves at the present day. Any statements of Greek, or other foreign, writers, regarding the marriage of Persians with their mothers, sisters, or daughters, they believe to be simply calumnies due to ignorance, which it is discreditable to Europeans to quote¹. Such statements, they consider, may have referred to the practices of certain heretical sects, but never to those of the orthodox faith.

The Parsis are, no doubt, fully justified in receiving the statements of foreign writers, regarding the customs of their ancestors, with proper caution; a caution which is quite as necessary when the statements are agreeable as when they are disagreeable to present notions. The Greeks, especially, had such a thorough contempt for all foreign customs that differed from their own, that they must have found it quite as difficult to obtain correct information, or to form an impartial opinion, about oriental habits as the average European finds it at the present time. On the other hand, the Parsis have to consider that the ancient Greek writers, whose statements they repudiate, were neither priests nor zealots, whose accounts of religious cus-

¹ See Dastūr Peshotanji's translation of the Dīnkard, p. 96, note.
toms might be distorted by religious prejudices, but historians accustomed to describe facts as impartially as their information and nationality would permit. It is quite possible that these writers may have assumed that such marriages were common among the Persians, merely because they had sometimes occurred among the Persian rulers; but such an assumption would be as erroneous as supposing that the marriage practices of the Israelites were similar to those of their most famous kings, David and Solomon, forgetting that an oriental sovereign is usually considered to be above the law and not subject to it.

Rejecting all statements of foreigners, as liable to suspicion, unless confirmed by better evidence, it seems desirable to ascertain what information can be obtained, on this subject, from the religious books of the Parsis themselves. This matter has hitherto been too much neglected by those best acquainted with the original texts, and must be considered as only partially exhausted in the following pages.

The term Khvētūk-das¹ is a Pahlavi transcription of the Avesta word ḫvaētvādatha, 'a giving of, to, or by, one's own,' and is sometimes partially translated into the form Khvētūk-dād, or Khvētū-dād, in which the syllable dād, 'what is given, a gift,' is merely a translation of the syllable das (Av. dat ha).

The Avesta word ḫvaētvādatha is not found in any of the Gāthas, or sacred hymns, that are still extant and are usually considered the oldest portion

¹ Occasionally written Khvētūk-dat, as in Pahl. Vend. VIII, 36 (see p. 392).
of the Avesta. But its former component, ḫvaētu, occurs several times therein, with the meaning 'one's own, or kinsman,' as distinguished from 'friends' and 'slaves.'

The earliest occurrence of the complete word is probably in Yas. XIII, 28, where it is mentioned as follows:—'I praise ... the righteous Hvaētvadatha, which is the greatest and best and most excellent of things that exist and will exist, which is Ahurian and Zarathustrian.' This merely implies that Hvaētvadatha was a good work of much importance, which is also shown by Visp. III, 18, Gāh IV, 8, and Vistāsp Yt. 17, where the Hvaētvadatha (meaning the man who has accomplished that good work) is associated with youths who are specially righteous for other reasons. But there is nothing in any of these passages to indicate the nature of the good work.

In Vend. VIII, 35, 36 we are told that those who carry the dead must afterwards wash their hair and bodies with the urine 'of cattle or draught oxen, not of men or women, except the two who are Hvaētvadatha and Hvaētvadathi,' that is, male and female performers of Hvaētvadatha. This passage, therefore, proves that the good work might be accomplished by both men and women, but it does not absolutely imply that it had any connection with marriage.

Turning to the Pahlavi translations of these passages we find the transcription Khvētūk-das, Khvētūk-dat, or Khvētūk-dasth, with explanations which add very little to our knowledge of the nature of

---

1 See p. 387, note 3.
the good work. Thus, Pahl. Yas. XIII, 28 merely states that it is 'declared about it that it is requisite to do it'; Pahl. Vistâsp Yt. 17\(^1\) asserts that 'the duty of Khvêtûk-das is said to be the greatest good work in the religion, that, owing to it, Aharman, the demon of demons, is becoming hopeless, so that the dissolution of Khvêtûk-das is worthy of death;' and Pahl. Vend. VIII, 36 speaks of 'the two who are a Khvêtûk-dat man and woman\(^2\), that is, it is done by them.'

Another reference to Khvêtûk-das in the Pahlavi translations of the Avesta occurs in Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 4, as follows:—‘Thus I proclaim in the world that [which he who is Aûharmazd made his own] best [Khvêtûk-das]\(^3\). By aid of righteousness Aûharmazd is aware, who created this one\(^4\) [to perform

---

\(^1\) The age of this Pahlavi version of the Vistâsp Yart is doubtful, and it is even possible that it may have been composed in India. The only MS. of it that I have seen belongs to Dâstûr Jâmâspji Minochiharji, who kindly gave me a copy of it, but seemed doubtful about the age of the translation. He was aware that his MS. was written some forty years ago, but he did not know from what MS. it was copied. This version is, however, mentioned in the list of Pahlavi works given in the introduction to Dâstûr Peshotanjî's Pahlavi Grammar, pp. 18, 31, so that another MS. of the Pahlavi text probably exists in the library of the high-priest of the Parsis in Bombay.

\(^2\) Or, perhaps, 'man and wife'; as gâbârâ, 'man,' is occasionally used for 'husband,' though shûî is the usual word, and nêrân means both 'woman' and 'wife.'

\(^3\) Written Khvêtudass or Khvêtûdas in the very old MS. of Dâstûr Jâmâspji Minochiharji, the text of which is followed in this translation. The phrases in brackets have no equivalents in the original Avesta text, and, therefore, merely represent the opinions of the Pahlavi translators.

\(^4\) Spendarmad apparently, as indicated by the sequel.
III. MEANING OF KHVETUK-DAS.

Khvêtûk-das]. And through fatherhood Vohûman\(^1\) was cultivated by him, [that is, for the sake of the proper nurture of the creatures Khvêtûk-das was performed by him.] So she who is his daughter is acting well, [who is the fully-mindful] Spendarmad\(^2\), [that is, she did not shrink from the act of Khvêtûk-das.] She\(^3\) was not deceived, [that is, she did not shrink from the act of Khvêtûk-das, because she is] an observer of everything [as regards that which is] Aûharmazd’s, [that is, through the religion of Aûharmazd she attains to all duty and law.] The allusions to Khvêtûk-das in this passage are mere interpolations introduced by the Pahlavi translators, for the sake of recommending the practice; they have no existence in the Avesta text, but they show that the Pahlavi translators understood Khvêtûk-das to

---

\(^1\) The Pahlavi translator seems here to understand Vohûman not as the archangel (see Bd. III, 13), but as a title (‘good-minded’) of the primeval man, Gâyômard, who is supposed to have been produced by Aûharmazd out of the earth (compare Gen. ii. 7), represented by the female archangel Spendarmad. The term vohûmanô is used in Vend. XIX, 69, 76–84 for both a well-intentioned man and his clothing.

\(^2\) The female archangel, a personification of the Avesta phrase spenta ármaiti, ‘bountiful devotion;’ she has special charge of the earth and virtuous women (see Bd. I, 26, Sls. XV, 20–24). She is called the daughter of Aûharmazd, even as the fire and Vohûman are called his sons, because devotion (representing the earth), fire, and good thought are considered to be his most important creations. And, as the earth is also, metaphorically, the mother of man, and the creator Aûharmazd is figuratively his father, this unfortunate combination of anthropomorphisms has induced later superstition to take these statements literally, and to quote them as a justification of marriage between father and daughter.

\(^3\) This seems the most probable nominative to the verbs in this sentence, but it is by no means certain.
refer to such relationship as that of father and daughter, as will appear more clearly from further allusions to the same circumstances in passages to be quoted hereafter. Regarding the age of the Pahlavi translation of the Yasna we only know for certain that it existed in its present form a thousand years ago, because a passage is quoted from it by Žâd-sparam, brother of the author of the Dâdîstân-ı Dinîk and Epistles of Mânûskihr, in his Selections, and we know that he was living in A. D. 881. But it was probably revised for the last time as early as the reign of Khûsrû Nôshîrvân (A. D. 531–579), when the Pahlavi Vendîdâd was also finally revised.

The Pahlavi versions of the lost Nasks must have been nearly of the same age as those of the extant Avesta, but of the contents of these versions we possess only certain statements of later writers. According to some of the modern Persian statements the Dûbâsrûged Nask contained many details about Khvêtûk-das, but this is contradicted by the long account of its contents given in the eighth book of the Dînkard, which was written more than a thousand years ago, and in which Khvêtûk-das is not once noticed. The practice is, however, mentioned several times in the Dînkard, as an important good work noticed in the Nasks, but no details are given, except in the following passages from the ninth book:

First, regarding the latter part of the eighteenth fargard of the Varastmânsar Nask:—'And this, too,
that thereupon they shall excite a brother and sister with mutual desire, so that they shall perform Khvêtûk-das with unanimity, and before midday are generated a radiance which is sublime, centred in the face, and peeping glances (vēṇkō ālūs); and they make the radiance, which is openly manifest, grow up in altitude the height of three spears of a length of three reeds each; and after midday they have learned expulsion (rānakīth), and shall renounce the fiend who is before the destroyer.’ This is clearly an allusion to the Khvêtûk-das of brother and sister, as it can hardly be considered as merely referring to the arrangement of marriages between their children.

Second, regarding the earlier part of the fourteenth fargard of the Bakō Nask:—‘And this, too, that the performance of whatever would be a causer of procreation for the doers of actions is extolled as the perfect custom of the first Khvêtûk-das; because causing the procreation of the doers of actions is the fatherhood of mankind, the proper fatherhood of mankind is through the proper production of progeny, the proper production of progeny is the cultivation of progeny in one’s own with the inclinations (kḥmīthā) of a first wish, and the cultivation of progeny in one’s own is Khvêtûk-das. And he who extols the fatherhood of mankind, when it is a causer of the procreation of the doers of actions, has also extolled Khvêtûk-das. And this, too, that the proper nurture for the creatures, by him whose wish is for

1 A height of about 42 English feet (see Dd. XLIII, 5).
2 That is, the capability of expelling the fiends that try to take possession of man.
3 Reading gām (=kām), but it may be dām, ‘creature.’
virtue, has taught him to perform Khvêtûk-das. Virtue is its virtue even for this reason, because, for the sake of maintaining a creature with propriety, he reckons upon the proper disposition of the multitude, that which is generated in the race by innumerable Khvêtûk-dases. And this, too, that Spendarmaed is taught as being in daughterhood to Aûharmaezd by him whose wisdom consists in complete mindfulness. Even on this account, because wisdom and complete mindfulness are within the limits of Aûharmaezd and Spendarmaed; wisdom is that which is Aûharmaezd's, complete mindfulness is that which is Spendarmaed's, and complete mindfulness is the progeny of wisdom, just as Spendarmaed is of Aûharmaezd. And from this is expressly the announcement that, by him who has connected complete mindfulness with wisdom, Spendarmaed is taught as being in daughterhood to Aûharmaezd. And this, too, the existence of the formation of that daughterhood, is taught by him whose righteousness consists in complete mindfulness. This quotation merely shows that Khvêtûk-das referred to connections between near relations, but whether the subsequent allusions to the daughterhood of Spendarmaed had reference to the Khvêtûk-das of father and daughter is less certain than in the case of Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 4, previously quoted.

Third, regarding the middle of the twenty-first

---

1 That is, the useful peculiarities of a particular breed of domestic animals are maintained and intensified by keeping up the purity of the race.

2 'Complete mindfulness' is the usual Pahlavi explanation of Av. ārmaïti, 'devotion,' the latter component of the name Spendarmaed.

3 See pp. 392, 393.
fargard of the Bakô Nask:—'And this, too, that a daughter is given in marriage (nēsmanth) to a father, even so as a woman to another man, by him who teaches the daughter and the other woman the reverence due unto father and husband.' The reference here to the marriage of father and daughter is too clear to admit of mistake, though the term Khvêtûk-das is not mentioned.

Next in age to the Pahlavi versions of the Avesta we ought perhaps to place the Book of Ardâ-Vîrâf, because we are told (AV. I, 35), regarding Vîrâf, that 'there are some who call him by the name of Nikhshahpûr,' and this may have been the celebrated commentator of that name, who was a councillor of king Khûsrô Nûshirvân¹, so that we cannot safely assume that this book was written earlier than the end of the sixth century. It gives an account of heaven and hell, which Ardâ-Vîrâf is supposed to have visited during the period of a week, while he seemed to be in a trance. In the second grade of heaven, counting upwards, he found the souls of those who had 'performed no ceremonies, chanted no sacred hymns, and practised no Khvêtûk-das,' but had come there 'through other good works;' and it may be noted that the two upper grades of heaven appear to have been reserved for good sovereigns, chieftains, high-priests, and others specially famous. In hell, also, he saw the soul of a woman suffering grievous punishment because she had 'violated Khvêtûk-das;' but this passage occurs in one MS. only. We are also told (AV. II, 1-3, 7-10) that 'Vîrâf had seven sisters, and all² those seven sisters

¹ See Ep. I, iv, 17.
² The word translated 'all' is the ordinary Huz. ko/lâ, equivalent
were as wives of Vîrâf; revelation, also, was easy to them, and the ritual had been performed . . . . they stood up and bowed, and spoke thus: "Do not this thing, ye Mazda-worshippers! for we are seven sisters, and he is an only brother, and we are, all seven sisters, as wives of that brother." This passage, supposing that it really refers to marriage, seems to attribute an exaggerated form of the Khvêtûk-das of brother and sister to Vîrâf, as a proof of his extraordinary sanctity; but it can hardly be considered as a literal statement of facts, any more than the supposed case of a woman having married seven brothers successively, mentioned in Mark xii. 20–22, Luke xx. 29–32.

In another Pahlavi book of about the same age, which is best known by its Pûzand name, Mainyô-i Khard, we find Khvêtûk-das placed second among to Pers. har, but a Parsi critic has suggested that it ought to be read kanîk, 'virgin,' so as to get rid of the idea that the sisters were married to Vîrâf. This suggestion is ingenious, because the difference between kolâ and kanîk is very slight, when written in Pahlavi characters; but it is not very ingenuous, because the substitution of kanîk for kolâ, both here and in the similar phrase at the end of the passage quoted in our text, would render the sentences quite ungrammatical, as would be easily seen by any well-educated Parsi who would translate the phrases literally into modern Persian words, which would give him the following text: ân har haft 'âvâharân Vîrâf kûn zan bûd and for the first phrase, and haft 'âvâhar ân birâdar zanî êm for the second. To substitute any Persian word for 'virgin' in place of the pronoun har, in these two phrases, would evidently produce nonsense. The really doubtful point in these phrases is whether zan and zanî are to be understood as 'wife' and 'wifehood,' or merely as 'woman' and 'womankind;' but it would be unusual to use such terms for the unmarried female members of a family.

1 Or 'the womankind.'
2 From a facsimile of the only known MS. of the original Pahlavi
seven classes of good works (Mkh. IV, 4), and ninth among thirty-three classes of the same (Mkh. XXXVII, 12); and the dissolution of Khvêtûk-das is mentioned as the fourth in point of heinousness among thirty classes of sin (Mkh. XXXVI, 7).

In the Bahman Yast, which may have existed in its original Pahlavi form before the Muhammadan conquest of Persia, it is stated that, even in the perplexing time of foreign conquest, the righteous man 'continues the religious practice of Khvêtûk-das in his family.'

The third book of the Dīnkard, which appears to have been compiled by the last editor of that work, contains a long defence of the practice of Khvêtûk-das, forming its eighty-second chapter, which may be translated as follows:—

'On a grave attack (hû-girāyisnô) of a Jew upon

the text of this work, recently published by Dr. Andreas, it appears that its Pahlavi name was Dînâ-i Mînavad-i Khard (or Mainôg-i Khird), 'the opinions of the spirit of wisdom.'


2 See Byt. II, 57, 61.

3 The name of this editor was Âtûr-pâd, son of Hêmîd, as appears from the last chapter (chap. 413) of the same book. He was a contemporary of the author of the Dâdistân-i Dînk (see Bd. XXXIII, 11).

4 Chap. 80 in the recent edition of Dastûr Peshtanji Behramji, because his numbers do not commence at the beginning of the book. His translation of this chapter (see pp. 90-102 of the English translation of his edition) differs considerably from that given in our text. This difference may be partly owing to its being translated from the Gujarâtî translation, and not direct from the original Pahlavi; but it is chiefly due to the inevitable result of attempting a free translation of difficult Pahlavi, without preparing a literal version in the first place. The translation here given is as literal as possible, but the Pahlavi text is too obscure to be yet understood with absolute certainty in some places.
a priest, which was owing to asking the reason of the custom (âhankô) as to Khvêtûk-das; and the reply of the priest to him from the exposition of the Mazda-worshipping religion.

'That is, as one complaining about wounds, damage, and distress comes on, it is lawful to dispute with him in defence begirt with legal opinion (dâdistânô parvand), and the consummation of the accusation of an innocent man is averted; so of the creatures, the invisible connection of their own power to fellow-creations and their own race, through the propitiousness of the protection and preserving influence of the sacred beings, is a girdle, and the consummation of the mutual assistance of men is Khvêtûk-das. The name is Khvêtûk-das, which is used when it is "a giving of one's own" (khvēs-dahîsînth), and its office (gâs) is a strong connection with one's own race and fellow-creations, through the protection and preserving influence of the sacred beings, which is, according to the treatises, the union of males and females of mankind of one's own race in preparation for, and connection with, the renovation of the universe. That union, for the sake of proceeding incalculably more correctly, is, among the innumerable similar races of mankind, that with near kinsfolk (nabânazdistânô), and, among near kinsfolk, that with those next of kin (nazd-padvândânô); and the mutual connection of the three kinds of nearest of kin (nazd-padvândtar)—which are father and daughter, son and she who bore him¹, and brother and sister—is the most complete (avârîtar) that I have considered.

¹ Literally 'bearer' (bûrdâr), which is not the usual word for 'mother,' but equivalent to the Av. bâretar that is used in that sense.
'On the same subject the exposition of the obscure statements of the good religion, by a wise high-priest of the religion, is this:—"I assert that God (yêdatô) is the being, as regards the creatures, who created any of the creatures there are which are male, and any there are which are female; and that which is male is a son, and, similarly, a daughter is that which is female. The daughter of himself, the father of all, was Spendarmad¹, the earth, a female being of the creation; and from her he created the male Gâyômard², which is explained as the name for him who was specially the first man, since it is Gâyômard living who is speaking and mortal, a limitation which was specially his, because of these three words—which are 'living, speaking, and mortal'—two of the limitations, which are 'living and speaking,' were through the provision of his father, the creator, and one, which is 'mortal,' was proceeding from the destroyer; the same limitation is upon all mankind, who are connected with that man's lineage, until the renovation of the universe. And now I say, if the aid of the father has produced a male from the daughter, it is named a Khvêtûk-das of father and daughter ³."

'This, too, is from the exposition of the religion, that the semen of Gâyômard—which is called seed—when he passed away, fell to Spendarmad⁴, the earth, which was his own mother; and, from its being united

---

¹ See p. 393, note 2.
² See Dd. II, 10, XXXVII, 82, LXIV, 5.
³ It is uncertain whether the high-priest's statement continues beyond this point, or not.
⁴ See Bd. XV, 1, 2, Dd. LXIV, 6.
therewith, Mashya and Mashlyot were the son and daughter of Gâyomard and Spendarmad, and it is named the Khvetük-das of son and mother. And Mashya and Mashlyot, as male and female, practised the quest of offspring, one with the other, and it is named the Khvêtük-das of brother and sister. And many couples were begotten by them, and the couples became continually wife and husband; and all men, who have been, are, and will be, are from origin the seed of Khvêtük-das. And this is the reason which is essential for its fulfilment by law, that where its contemplation (andâgisnō) exists it is manifest from the increase of the people of all regions.

'And I assert that the demons are enemies of man, and a non-existence of desire for them consists in striving for it when Khvêtük-das is practised; it then becomes their reminder of that original practice of contemplation which is the complete gratitude of men, and has become his who is inimical to them. Grievous fear, distress, and anguish also come upon them, their power diminishes, and they less understand the purpose of causing the disturbance and ruin of men. And it is certain that making the demons distressed, suffering, frightened, and weakened is thus a good work, and this way of having reward and of recompense is the property of the practisers of such good works.

'And I assert that the goodness of appearance and growth of body, the display of wisdom, temper,
and modesty, the excellence of skill and strength, and also the other qualities of children are so much the more as they are nearer to the original race of the begetter, and they shall receive them more perfectly and more gladly. An example is seen in those who spring from a religious woman who is gentle, believing the spiritual existence, acting modestly, of scanty strength, who is a forgiver and reverential, and from a mail-clad (gāpar) warrior of worldly religion, who is large-bodied and possessing strength which is stimulating (āgār) his stout heart while he begets. They¹ are not completely for war—which is a continuance of lamentation (nās-ravan-dth)—and not for carefulness and affection for the soul; as from the dog and wolf—and not the ruin (seg) of the sheep—arises the fox, like the wolf, but not with the strength of the wolf like the dog, and it does not even possess its perfect shape, nor that of the dog. And they are like those which are born from a swift Arab horse and a native dam, and are not galloping like the Arab, and not kicking (padā-yak) like the native. And they have not even the same perfect characteristics², just as the mule that springs from the horse and the ass, which is not like unto either of them, and even its seed is cut off thereby, and its lineage is not propagated forwards.

¹ And this is the advantage from the pure preservation of race. I assert that there are three³ species

¹ The offspring of such a match, which the apologist evidently considers an ill-assorted one, as tending to deteriorate the warlike qualities of the warrior’s descendants, although he himself is no advocate for war.

² As their parents.

³ Dastūr Peshotanji has ‘four,’ because the Pahlavi text seems
(vāg) and kinds of affection of sister and brother for that which shall be born of them:—one is this, where it is the offspring of brother and brother; one is this, where the offspring is that of 1 brothers 2 and their sister; and one is this, where it is the offspring of sisters 3. And as to the one of these where the offspring is that of 4 a brother, and for the same reason as applies to all three 5 species of them, the love, desire, and effort, which arise for the nurture of offspring of the three species, are in hope of benefit. And equally adapted are the offspring to the pro-creators; and this is the way of the increasing love of children, through the good nurture which is very hopeful.

'And so, also, are those who are born of father and daughter, or son and mother. Light flashed forth (gastō) or unflashed (aparvākhtō) is always seen at the time when it is much exposed, and pleased is he who has a child of his child, even when it is from some one of a different race and different

to speak of four species in the next sentence; here it seems to have 'six' in ciphers, but the first cipher can also be read aē, the conditional suffix to the verb which immediately precedes the ciphers in the Pahlavi text, and the second cipher is merely 'three,' which corresponds to the three possible kinds of first cousins that are about to be detailed in the text.

1 Reading zak-ī instead of zīs (which might be read zakīth if there were such a word).

2 Literally 'brother.'

3 Literally 'sister.'

4 Reading zak-ī instead of zīs, as before. This is Dastūr Peshotanji's fourth species of cousinship, which he understands as meaning second cousins.

5 Reading i3, by dividing the Pahlavi cipher for 'four' into two parts, both here and near the end of the sentence. This paragraph can hardly be understood otherwise than referring to the present form of Khvētūk-das, the marriage of first cousins.
country. That, too, has then become much delight (vāyag) which is expedient, that pleasure, sweetness, and joy which are owing to a son that a man begets from a daughter of his own, who is also a brother of that same mother; and he who is born of a son and mother is also a brother of that same father; this is a way of much pleasure, which is a blessing of the joy, and no harm is therein ordained that is more than the advantage, and no vice that is more than the well-doing (khûp gâr). And if it be said that it is of evil appearance, it should be observed that when a wound occurs in the sexual part of a mother, or sister, or daughter, and she flees (frâvêd) from a medical man, and there is no opportunity for him to apply a seton (pâltô), and her father, or son, or brother is instructed in similar surgery, which is more evil in appearance, when they touch the part with the hand, and apply a seton, or when a strange man does so?

'And, when it is desirable to effect their union, which is the less remarkable (kam hû-zanâkhkîktar) in evil appearance, when they are united (ham-dvâdî-hênd) by them in secret, such as when the hearing of their written contract (nipîstô) of wifehood and husbandhood is accomplished in the background (dar pûstô), or when the sound of drums and trumpets acquaints the whole district, where

---

1 Reading amat instead of mûn, 'who,' (see Dd. LXII, 4 n.)
2 Showing that the practice advocated was understood to be a regular marriage (performed in private probably on account of the authorities being of a foreign faith) and not any kind of irregular intercourse. It is here approvingly contrasted with the noisy celebration of a marriage with a person of foreign faith, in accordance with foreign customs.
these people are renowned, that such an Arūman¹ intends to effect such a purpose with the daughter, sister, or mother of such a Pārsī man?

'On this account of less evil appearance is even the good appearance which is to be mutually practised; and after the mode is seen, even the advantageousness in the accomplishment of the daily duty of concealing disgrace, the mutual desire, the mutual advantage and harm, and the contentment which arise as to whatever has happened are also mutual assistance. Some, with a husband and faint-heartedness, have a disposition (sānā) of incapability, and the diligence which is in their reverence of the husband, who is ruler of the family (būnāg shah), is due even to the supremacy which he would set over them through the severity of a husband. Very many others, too, who are strange women, are not content with a custom (vāg) of this description; for they demand even ornaments to cover and clothe the bold and active ones, and slaves, dyes, perfumes, extensive preparations, and many other things of house-mistresses which are according to their desire, though it is not possible they should receive them. And, if it be not possible, they would not accept retrenchment; and, if they should not accept retrenchment, it hurries on brawling, abuse, and ugly words about this, and even uninterrupted falsehood (avisistāk-i kūr) is diffused as regards it; of the secrets, moreover, which they conceal they preserve night and day a bad representation, and unobservantly. They shall take the bad wife to

¹ A native of Asia Minor, or any other part of the eastern empire of the Romans.
the house of her father and mother, the husband is dragged to the judges, and they shall form a district assembly (shatrod angezo) about it. And lest he should speak thus: "I will release her from wifehood with me," vice and fraud of many kinds and the misery of deformity are the faults which are also secretly attributed to him.

'A wife of those three classes is to be provided, since they would not do even one of these things; on which account, even through advantageousness, virtuous living, precious abundance, dignity, and innocence, mutual labour is manifestly mighty and strong.

'And if it be said that, "with all this which you explain, there is also, afterwards, a depravity (darnakho) which is hideous," it should be understood in the mind that hideousness and beauteousness are specially those things which do not exist in themselves, but through some one's habit of taking up an opinion and belief. The hideous children of many are in the ideas of procreation exceedingly handsome, and the handsome forms of many are in the ideas of a housekeeper (khanopano) exceedingly ugly. We consider him also as one of our enemies when any one walks naked in the country, which you consider hideous; but the naked skins of

---

¹ That is, lest he should pronounce her divorce.
² The three nearest degrees of relationship must be meant, as the sequel admits the possibility of the union being considered objectionable; otherwise, the three kinds of first cousins might be understood.
³ As a special pleader for marriage between near relations the apologist feels himself bound to argue that all bad wives must have been strangers to the family before marriage.
the country call him handsome whose garments, which seem to them hideous, have fallen off. And we are they in whose ideas a nose level with the face is ugly, but they who account a prominent nose ugly, and say it is a walling that reaches between the two eyes, remain selecting a handsome one. And concerning handsome and ugliness in themselves, which are only through having taken up an opinion and belief, there is a change even through time and place; for any one of the ancients whose head was shaved was as it were ugly, and it was so settled by law that it was a sin worthy of death for them; then its habits (rānō) did not direct the customs of the country to shave the head of a man, but now there is a sage who has considered it as handsome and even a good work. Whoever is not clear that it is hideous is to think, about something threatening (girāt), that it is even so not in itself, but through what is taken into themselves they consider that it is hideous.

‘Then for us the good work of that thing, of which it is cognizable that it is so ordained by the creator, has its recompense; it is the protector of the race, and the family is more perfect; its nature

---

1 That is, those who admire flat noses select their beauties accordingly. Beauty being merely a matter of taste, which varies with the whim of the individual and the fashion of the period.

2 This law was evidently becoming obsolete at the time the apologist was writing, and is now wholly forgotten. All Parsi laymen have their heads shaved at the present time, although the priests merely have their hair closely cut. This change of custom, in a matter settled by religious law, should warn the Parsis not to deny the possibility of other complete alterations having taken place in their religious customs.

3 Khvētvēk-dās.
is without vexation (apëzâr) and gathering affection, an advantage to the child—the lineage being exalted—gathering (avarâkûn) hope, offspring, and pleasure it is sweetness to the procreator, and the joy is most complete; less is the harm and more the advantage, little the pretence and much the skill of the graceful blandishments (nâzânâd) which are apparent, aiding and procuring assistance (bangisnâd), averting disaster, and conducting affairs; less is the fear, through itself is itself illustrious, and the steadfast shall abandon crime (kâm). And all our fathers and grandfathers, by whom the same practice was lawfully cherished, maintained it handsomely in their homes; and to think of mankind only as regards some assistance is the enlightenment of the steadfast, a reason which is exhibiting the evidence of wisdom, that no practice of it¹ is not expedient.

'And if it be said that the law² has afterwards commanded as regards that custom thus: "Ye shall not practise it!" every one who is cognizant of that command is to consider it current; but we are not cognizant of that command, and by an intelligent person (kâpârvarakô) this should also be seen minutely, through correct observation, that all the knowledge of men has arisen from Khvêtûk-das. For knowledge is generated by the union of instinctive wisdom and acquired wisdom³; instinctive wisdom is the female, and acquired wisdom the male; and on this account, since both are an achievement by the creator, they are sister and brother. And

¹ Khvêtûk-das.
² Perhaps the law of the foreign conquerors is meant.
³ See Dd. XXXVII, 35, XL, 3.
also of everything worldly the existence, maturing, and arrangement are due to union in proportion; water, which is female, and fire, which is male\(^1\), are accounted sister and brother in combination, and they seem as though one restrains them from Khvētûk-das, unless, through being dissipated themselves\(^2\), seed—which is progeny—arises therefrom; and owing to a mutual proportionableness of water and fire is the power in the brain, for if the water be more it rots it away, and if the fire be more it burns it away.'

This elaborate defence of Khvētûk-das shows clearly that, at the time it was written (about a thousand years ago), that custom was understood to include actual marriages between the nearest relatives, although those between first cousins appear to be also referred to.

In the 195th\(^3\) chapter of the third book of the Dînkârd we are told that the eighth of the ten admonitions, delivered to mankind by Zaratûst, was this:—'For the sake of much terrifying of the demons, and much lodgment of the blessing of the holy\(^4\) in one's body, Khvētûk-das is to be practised.' And the following chapter informs us, that 'opposed to that admonition of the righteous Zaratûst, of practising Khvētûk-das for the sake of much terrifying

\(^1\) See Dd. XCIII, 13 n.
\(^2\) Into the forms of moisture and warmth in the body. Water and fire in their ordinary state being incapable of combination.
\(^3\) This will be the 193rd chapter in Dastûr Peshotanji's edition, because his numbers do not commence at the beginning of the book. A similar difference will be found in the numbering of all other chapters of the third book of the Dînkârd.
\(^4\) The technical name of Yas. LIX.
of the demons from the body of man, and the lodgment of the blessing of the holy in the body, the wicked wizard Akhto, the enemy of the good man on account of the perplexing living which would arise from his practising Khvêtûk-das, preferred not practising Khvêtûk-das.'

The practice is also mentioned in the 287th chapter of the same book, in the following passage:—'The welfare of the aggregate of one's own limb-formations—those which exist through no labour of one's own, and have not come to the aid of those not possessing them (anafsma an) owing to their own want of gratitude—even one of a previous formation has to eulogize suitably; and this which has come, completely establishing (spor-nih) the Avesta, one calls equally splendid, by the most modestly comprehensive appellation of Khvêtûk-das.'

In the sixth book of the Dínkard, which professes to be a summary of the opinions of those of the primitive faith, we are told that, 'when the good work of Khvêtûk-das shall diminish, darkness will increase and light will diminish.'

In the seventh book of the Dínkard, which relates the marvels of the Mazda-worshipping religion, we are informed that it was 'recounted how—Gâyômard's having passed away—it was declared secondly, as regards worldly beings, to Masyê and Masyâdê, the first progeny of Gâyômard, by the word of Aûharmazâd—that is, he spoke to them when they

1 Av. Akhtya of Âbân Yt. 82, who propounded ninety-nine enigmas to Yôistô of the Fryâns (see Dd. XC, 3).
2 See Dd. XCIV, 1 n.
3 The sole-created man (see Dd. II, 10, XXXVII, 82).
4 See p. 402, note 1.
were produced by him—thus: "You are the men I produce, you are the parents of all bodily life, and so you men shall not worship the demons, for the possession of complete mindfulness has been perfectly supplied to you by me, so that you may quite full-mindfully observe duty and decrees." And the creativeness of Aūharmazd was extolled by them, and they advanced in diligence; they also performed the will of the creator, they carved (parḵāvīntdō) advantage out of the many duties of the world, and practised Khvētūk-das through procreation and the union and complete progress of the creations in the world, which are the best good works of mankind.'

The following passage also occurs in the same book:—‘Then Zaratūst, on becoming exalted, called out unto the material world of righteousness to extol righteousness and downcast are the demons; and, "homage being the Mazda-worship of Zaratūst, the ceremonial and praise of the archangels are the best for you, I assert; and, as to deprecation (a yazisnith) of the demons, Khvētūk-das is even the best intimation, so that, from the information which is given as to the trustworthiness of a good work, the greatest is the most intimate of them, those of father and daughter, son and she who bore him², and brother and sister." It is declared that, upon those words, innumerable demon-worshipping Kīks and Karaps³ disputed (sārisīdō) with Zaratūst and strove for his death, just like this which revelation states:—"It is then the multitude clamoured (mar barā virād) who are in the vicinity of the seat of Tūr, the well-

III. MEANING OF KHVÊTÛK-DAS.

afflicting\(^1\) holder of decision; and the shame of the brother of Tûr arose, like that of a man whose shame was that they spoke of his Khvêtûk-das so that he might perform it. This Tûr was Tûr-i Aûrvâltâ-sang\(^2\), the little-giving, who was like a great sovereign of that quarter; and he maintained many troops and much power. And the multitude told him they would seize the great one from him who is little\(^3\). But Tûr-i Aûrvâltâ-sang, the little-giving and well-afflicting, spoke thus:—‘Should I thereupon smite him, this great one who mingles together those propitious words for us—where we are thus without doubt as to one thing therein, such as Khvêtûk-das, that it is not necessary to perform it—it would make us ever doubtful that it might be necessary to perform it.’ . . . . And Zaratûst spoke to him thus: ‘I am not always that reserved speaker, by whom that I have mentioned is the most propitious thing to be obtained; and inward speaking and managing the temper are a Khvêtûk-das\(^4\), and the high-priest who has performed it is to perform the ceremonial.’’ This passage attributes to Zaratûst himself the enforcement of next-of-kin marriage, but it is hardly necessary to point out that the Dnkard only records a tradition to that effect; which

\(^{1}\) The word hû-nûsakô is the Pahlavi equivalent of Av. hûnûstâ (Yas. L, 10, b), but the meaning of both words is uncertain. This Tûr seems to have been more friendly to Zaratûst than the Tûrânians were in general, but he appears not to be mentioned in the extant Avesta.

\(^{2}\) As this epithet has not been found in the extant Avesta, the reading is uncertain.

\(^{3}\) Meaning that they demanded possession of Zaratûst in an insolent manner.

\(^{4}\) In a figurative sense.
record may be quoted as evidence of the former existence of such a tradition, but not as testimony for its truth. It is also worthy of notice that this tradition clearly shows that such marriages were distasteful to the people in general; but this might naturally be inferred from the efforts made by religious writers to assert the extraordinary merit of Khvêtûk-das, because customs which are popular and universal require no such special recommendation from the priesthood.

In the Dâdîstân-i Dînlk (XXXVII, 82, LXIV, 6, LXV, 2, LXXXVII, 4, 5) allusions are made to the Khvêtûdâd\(^1\) of brother and sister, formed by the progenitors of mankind. We are also told that Khvêtûdâd is to be practised till the end of the world, and that to occasion it among others is an effectual atonement for heinous sin\(^2\) (Dd. LXXVII, 6, 7, LXXVIII, 19); but it is not certain that the term is applied in these latter passages to marriages between the nearest relatives.

For later particulars about Khvêtûk-das we have to descend to the darkest ages of Mazda-worship, those in which the Rivâyats, or records of religious legends, customs, and decisions, began to be compiled. Of the earlier Rivâyats, such as the Shâyast Lâ-shâyast and Vigir karzd-i Dînlk, which were written in Pahlavi, few remain extant; but the later ones, written in Persian, are more numerous and very voluminous.

A Pahlavi Rivâyat, which precedes the Dâdîstân-i Dînlk in many MSS. of that work, devotes several

---

\(^1\) Another form of the word Khvêtûk-das (see p. 390).
\(^2\) This is also stated in Sls. VIII, 18.
III. MEANING OF KHVĒTŪK-DAS.

pages to the subject of Khvētūdād, which fully confirm the statements of the defender of the practice, quoted above from the Dīnkard (III, lxxxi). The age of this Pahlavi Rivâyat is quite uncertain; it is found in MSS. written in the sixteenth century, but, as it does not mention the marriage of first cousins, it was probably compiled at a much earlier period, more especially as it is written in fairly grammatical Pahlavi. The following extracts will be sufficient to show how far it confirms the statements of the Dīnkard:——

‘Of the good works of an infidel this is the greatest, when he comes out from the habit of infidelity into the good religion; and of one of the good religion, remaining backward (akhār-mān) at the time when his ritual is performed, this is a great good work, when he performs a Khvētūdād; for through that Khvētūdād, which is so valuable a token of Mazda-worship, is the destruction of demons. And of Aūharmazd it is declared, as regards the performance of Khvētūdād, that, when Zaratūst sat before Aūharmazd1, and Vohūman, Ardavahist, Shatvarō, Horvadad, Amerōdad, and Spendarmad2 sat around Aūharmazd, and Spendarmad sat by his side, she had also laid a hand on his neck, and Zaratūst asked Aūharmazd about it thus: “Who is this that sits beside thee, and thou wouldst be such a friend to her, and she also would be such a friend to thee? Thou, who art Aūharmazd, turnest not thy eyes away from her, and she turns not away

---

1 As he is said to have done in heaven, when receiving instruction in the religion.

2 The archangels (see Dd. XLVIII, 1 n), of whom Spendarmad is said to be a female (see p. 393, note 2).
from thee; thou, who art Aûharmazd, dost not release her from thy hand, and she does not release thee from her hand." And Aûharmazd said: "This is Spendarmad, who is my daughter, the house-mistress of my heaven, and mother of the creatures." Zaratûst spoke thus: "When they say, in the world, this is a very perplexing thing, how is it proclaimed by thee—thine who art Aûharmazd—for thee thyself?" Aûharmazd spoke thus: "O Zarâtûst! this should have become the best-enjoyed thing of mankind. When, since my original creation, Mâhartyâ and Mâharlyâôlth had performed it, you, also, should have performed it; because although mankind have turned away from that thing, yet they should not have turned away. Just as Mâhartyâ and Mâharlyâôlth had performed Khvêtûdâd, mankind should have performed it, and all mankind would have known their own lineage and race, and a brother would never be deserted by the affection of his brother, nor a sister by that of her sister. For all nothingness, emptiness, and drought have come unto mankind from the deadly one (mar), when men have come to them from a different country, from a different town, or from a different district, and have married their women; and when they shall have carried away their women, and they have

---

1 This legend is an instance of the close proximity of superstition to profanity, among uneducated and imaginative people.
2 She being a representative of the earth.
3 See p. 402, note 1.
4 That is, from marriage of the nearest relations, which is admitted, throughout these extracts, to be distasteful to the people; hence the vehemence with which it is advocated.
5 Literally 'air-stuffing' (vâç-âkînîh).
wailed together about this, thus: 'They will always carry our daughters into perversion.'"

'This, too, is said, that Khvêtûdâd is so miraculous that it is the preservation of the most grievous sin—such as witchcraft and that worthy of death—from hell. And the want of protection (avîpâ-hartôn) from hell of one unprotected from Aharman and the demons arises at that time when, owing to what occurs when he is begged by some one to exercise witchcraft, he is made worthy of death. And when they shall perform Khvêtûdâd, when the Khvêtûdâd is owing to him, the unprotected one is preserved from the prison of hell, from Aharman and the demons; so miraculous is Khvêtûdâd.

'In a passage it is declared, that Aûharmand spoke unto Zaratûst thus: "These are the best four things: the ceremonial worship of Aûharmand, the lord; presenting firewood, incense, and holy-water to the fire; propitiating a righteous man; and one who performs Khvêtûdâd with her who bore him, or a daughter, or with a sister. And of all those he is the greatest, best, and most perfect who shall perform Khvêtûdâd. ... When Sôshâns comes all mankind will perform Khvêtûdâd, and every fiend will perish through the miracle and power of Khvêtûdâd.'

It is then explained why the several merits of the

---

1 This fear of perversion to another faith was, no doubt, the real cause of the vehement advocacy of family marriages by the priesthood.
2 That is, when he has arranged the next-of-kin marriage of others, before his death.
3 That is, a priest.
4 Shortly before the resurrection (see Dd. II, 10).

[18]
three classes of Khvêtûdâd are considered to stand in the same order as that in which the classes are mentioned in the preceding paragraph; also that the third class includes the case of half brothers and sisters, and the second that of an illegitimate daughter. After this we find the following legend:—

'And Khvêtûdâd is so miraculous, that it is declared, regarding Yim\(^1\), that, when the glory of his sovereignty had departed from him, he went out to the precincts (var) of the ocean with Yimak, his sister, in order to flee from the people, demons, and witches of the assembly of Dahâk\(^2\). And they were sought by them in hell and not seen; and others sought them among mankind, water, earth, and cattle, among trees, in the mountains, and in the towns, but they were not seen by them. Then Aharman shouted thus: "I think thus, that Yim is travelling in the precincts of the ocean." And a demon and a witch, who stood among them, spoke thus: "We will go and seek Yim." And they rushed off and went; and when they came unto those precincts where Yim was—the precincts where the water of Tîr\(^3\) was—Yim spoke thus: "Who are

---

\(^1\) The third sovereign of the world, after Gâyômard (see Dd. II, 10). This legend is also mentioned in Bd. XXIII, 1, as explaining the origin of the ape and bear.

\(^2\) The foreign king, or dynasty, that conquered Yim (see Dd. XXXVII, 97 n).

\(^3\) Evidently intended for Tîrstar, a personification of the star Sirius, who is supposed to bring the rain from the ocean (see Dd. XCIII, 1–17). Strictly speaking Tîr is the planet Mercury, the opponent of Tîrstar, whose name is given to the fourth month, and thirteenth day of the month, in the Parsi year (see Bd. V, 1, VII, 2, XXVII, 24); but the confusion between the two names is not uncommon in the later books (comp. Sls. XXII, 13 with XXIII, 2).
you?" And they spoke thus: "We are those who are just like thee, who had to flee from the hands of the demons; we, too, have fled away from the demons, and we are alone. Do thou give this sister in marriage to me, while I also give this one unto thee!" And Yim, therefore, when the demons were not recognised by him from mankind, made the witch his own wife, and gave his sister unto the demon as wife. From Yim and that witch were born the bear, the ape, Gandarep, and Gôsûbar; and from Yimak and that demon were born the tortoise (gasaf), the cat, the hawk (gavīng), the frog, the weevil (dīvakā), and also as many more noxious creatures, until Yimak saw that that demon was evil, and it was necessary to demand a divorce (zan-ta-kā) from him. And one day, when Yim and that demon had become drunk with wine, she exchanged her own position and clothing with those of the witch; and when Yim came he was drunk, and unwittingly lay with Yimak, who was his sister, and they came to a decision as to the good work of Khvētūdād; many demons were quite crushed and died, and they rushed away at once, and fell back to hell.'

The fact, that the zealous writer felt that he had to force his opinions upon an unwilling people, is betrayed by the exaggerated language he uses in the following statements:—

'This, too, is declared by the Avesta, that Zaratūst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: "Many thoughts, many words, and many deeds are mentioned by

---

1 See p. 371, note 3.
2 Not identified, and the reading is, therefore, uncertain.
thee—thee who art Aūharmazd—that it is necessary to think, speak, and do; of all such thoughts, words, and deeds which is the best, when one shall think, speak, or do it?” Aūharmazd spoke thus: “Many thoughts, many words, and many deeds should be proclaimed by me, O Zaratûst! but, of those thoughts, words, and deeds which it is necessary to think, speak, and do, that which is best and most perfect one performs by Khvêtûdâd. For it is declared that, the first time when he goes near to it, a thousand demons will die, and two thousand wizards and witches; when he goes near to it twice, two thousand demons will die, and four thousand wizards and witches; when he goes near to it three times, three thousand demons will die, and six thousand wizards and witches; and when he goes near to it four times it is known that the man and woman become righteous."

‘.... Owing to the performance of Khvêtûdâd there arises a destruction of demons equivalent to a stoppage of creation; and though, afterwards, some of those men and women shall become wizards, or unlawfully slaughter a thousand sheep and beasts of burden at one time, or shall present holy-water to the demons, yet, on account of that destruction and vexation of the demons, which has occurred to them owing to the Khvêtûdâd, it does not become comfortable to them while completed; and it is not believed by them that “the souls of those people will come to us.”

‘Whoever keeps one year in a marriage of Khvê-

1 Or, as stated in the Appendix to the Shâyast Lâ-shâyast (Sls. XVIII, 4), they ‘will not become parted from the possession of Aūharmazd and the archangels.’
tûdâd becomes just as though one-third of all this world, with the water, with the trees, and with the corn, had been given by him, as a righteous gift, unto a righteous man. When he keeps two years in the marriage it is as though two-thirds of this world, with the water, trees, and corn, had been given by him unto a righteous man. When he keeps three years in the marriage it is as though all this world, with the water, with the trees, and with everything, had been given by him, as a righteous gift, unto a righteous man. And when he keeps four years in his marriage, and his ritual is performed, it is known that his soul thereby goes unto the supreme heaven (garôd'rmân); and when the ritual is not performed, it goes thereby to the ordinary heaven (vahistô).

'Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: "As to the man who practises Khvêtûdâd, and his ritual is performed, and he also offers a ceremonial (yazînô-aê), is the good work of it such as if one without Khvêtûdâd had offered it, or which way is it?" Aûharmazd said: "It is just as though a hundred men without Khvêtûdâd had offered it."

'Zaratûst enquired this, also, of Aûharmazd, that is: "How is the benediction (âfrînô) which a man who practises Khvêtûdâd shall offer?" Aûharmazd spoke thus: "As though a hundred men without Khvêtûdâd should offer the benediction."

'And this, too, was asked by him, that is: "As to them who render assistance, and one meditates and attains to Khvêtûdâd through them, and one

---

1 The proper ceremonies after his death, or for his living soul during his lifetime (see Dd. XXVIII, LXXXI).
performs Khvêtûdâd on account of their statements, how is their good work?’ Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Like his who keeps in food and clothing, for one winter, a hundred priests—each of which priests has a hundred disciples—such is his good work."

'Zaratûst enquired this, also, of Aûharmazd, that is: "As to them who keep a man back from performing Khvêtûdâd, and owing to their statements he shall not perform Khvêtûdâd, what is their sin?" Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Their place is hell."

'In a passage it is declared that, wiser than the wise, and more virtuous than the virtuous is he in whose thoughts, words, and deeds the demons are less predominant; and Aharman and the demons are less predominant in the body of him who practises Khvêtûdâd, and his ritual is performed.

'It is declared by revelation that at the time when Zaratûst came out from the presence of Aûharmazd, the lord, into a worldly place where he travelled, he spoke this, that is: "Extol the religion! and you should perform Khvêtûdâd. I speak of the good and those existing in the religion; as to the negligent, the vile, and those in perplexity, this is said, that a thing so wondrous and important as that which is in our law of Khvêtûdâd could not be for performance. This is a sublime (êtrag) custom, and, as the best of all things, one asserts that it is necessary to perform it. To me, also, this is manifest when, through all faith in the law of those existing in the religion, that which is called by

---

1 The Pahlavi text is imperfect.  
2 See p. 421, note 1.  
3 That is, the general law of Mazda-worship, as distinguished from what he is advocating as a peculiarly religious law sanctioned
them a very heinous sin, through faith in this law of the good, is that which is called the most perfect and best good work of Mazda-worship."

'This, too, is declared by revelation, that Aûharmazd spoke unto Zarathust thus: "You should cause the performance of duties and good works." And Zarathust spoke thus: "Which duty and good work shall I do first?" Aûharmazd spoke thus: "Khvêtûdâd; because that duty and good work is to be performed in the foremost place of all, for, in the end, it happens through Khvêtûdâd, when all who are in the world attain unto the religion.'

'This, too, is declared by revelation, that Zarathust spoke unto Aûharmazd thus: "In my eyes it is an evil (vadô) which is performed, and it is perplexing that I should make Khvêtûdâd as it were fully current among mankind." Aûharmazd spoke thus: "In my eyes, also, it is just as in thine; but for this reason—when out of everything perfect there is some miserable evil for thee—it should not seem so. Do thou be diligent in performing Khvêtûdâd, and others, also, will perform it diligently.'"

The unpopularity of the practice advocated could hardly be more fully admitted than in this last paragraph, nor the objection more irrationally and dogmatically disposed of. As for the numerous quotations, which the compiler of this Pahlavi Rivâyat by the priests ('the good'). This is evidently an admission that the practice advocated was contrary to the ordinary laws of Mazda-worship itself.

1 As Pahlavi writers expect them to do before the resurrection.

2 Reading vadô-î vēshht; but it may be 'something is difficult and hard' (tang va sakht).
professes to take from the Parsi scriptures, it is hardly necessary to remark that their authenticity must be accepted with great reserve.

Persian Rivâyats, copied in the seventeenth century, advocate the marriage of first cousins, and allude vaguely to those between nearer relatives as long extinct, though most of their remarks merely recommend the performance of Khêdyôdath\(^1\), without explaining the meaning of the term. Thus, we are informed that a person worthy of death can perform Khêdyôdath as a good work, but it is better if followed by the Bareshnûm ceremony\(^2\). An unclean person can do the same, but the Bareshnûm should precede the performance, so as to avoid sins arising from the uncleanness. The performance also destroys demons, wizards, and witches; and if arranged by any one, at his own expense, for another person, it is as meritorious as if performed by himself. But the following quotations are more descriptive of the practice\(^3\):

'Again, whereas the great wisdom of the king and of the assembly of priests fully understands that the ceremony of all the religious rites\(^4\) is a great good work, besides that which is called Khêdyôdath, yet, in these days, both have fallen out of their hands; but they will make an endeavour, so that they may form connection with their own, and on account of

\(^1\) The Persian form of the word Khvêtûk-das. It is also written Khetyôdath in some passages, and Khêtvadat in others.
\(^2\) The great ceremony of purification (see App. IV).
\(^3\) The Persian Rivâyat from which all this information has been extracted is M\(\text{I}0\) (fol. 50a).
\(^4\) See Dd. XLIV, z n.
III. MEANING OF KHVÊTÛK-DAS. 425

the Musulmâns the connection is a medium one\(^1\), better than that of an infidel. AndOrmazd has said that *by* as much as the connection is nearer *it is* more of a good work; and they display *their* endeavour and effort, and give the son of a brother and daughter of a brother *to* each other. And just as this *is said*: "I establish the performer of Khêdyôdath, I establish the patrol of the country\(^2\)," even on this account they certainly display an endeavour.

'Query:—"How are the connections that relations form?"' Reply:—"A brother's children with a brother's children and a sister's children, and relations with one another form connections, *and* it is proper for them."

'Khêdyôdath is *that* which is a great good work, and has fallen out of their hands, owing to the reason that there is no king of the good religion; and if it be so they will make an endeavour, and will form connections with their own, and will give the son of a brother and daughter of a brother to each other, and if not it is not proper; and every such connection as is nearer is more of a good work. And the mode they will act who are at first without a king will be an infidel *one*, and to form connections among themselves will be very difficult now he (the king) is a Musulmân, *but* that which is nearer is better and more of a good work.'

---

\(^1\) This seems to be an allusion to some interference of the Muhammadan government with marriages of those next of kin. A similar allusion occurs in the next paragraph but one, which, with most of this paragraph, is also found in M\(7\), fols. 229b, 230a.

\(^2\) This Avesta quotation, from Visp. III, 18, 19, is as follows:—'hvâêtvadathem âstâya, dadhâurvaèsem âstâya;,' and the meaning of the last term is uncertain.
These quotations indicate that a great change had crept over the meaning of Khvétúk-das since the dark ages of the Pahlavi Rivâyat, previously quoted, although a tradition of the old meaning still lingered in the minds of the writers. The modern meaning is, however, most completely explained in a passage, appended to a Persian version of Aēshm’s complaint to Aharman, regarding the difficulty of destroying the effect of the season-festivals, the sacred feast, and Khvétúk-das (Sl. XVIII). After Aharman has confessed his inability to suggest a means of destroying the merit of the last, the Persian writer adds the following particulars:—

‘Therefore it is necessary to understand, that the chief Khêtvdat is that of a sister’s daughter and brother’s son; a medium Khêtvdat is that of a brother’s son and a younger brother’s daughter, or of a sister’s son and a younger sister’s daughter; and inferior to a medium Khêtvdat is that of a sister’s son and a younger brother’s daughter. It is necessary to know that any person who performs Khêtvdat, if his soul be fit for hell, will arrive among the ever-stationary⁴; if it be one of the ever-stationary it will arrive at heaven. Another particular is to be added: if any one, in departing, settles and strives for the connection of Khêtvdat of a next brother it is a good work of a thousand Tanâpûhars; if any one strives to break off the connection of Khêtvdat he is worthy of death.’

¹ See Dd. XX, 3.
² See Dd. LXXVIII, 13. Geldner in his Studien zum Avesta, I, pp. 3–12, suggests that the original meaning of Av. tanupere-tha and peshótanu was ‘outcast;’ but, although these words are translated by Pahl. tanâpûhar, it is doubtful whether this last
With this quotation, which occurs in a MS.\textsuperscript{1} written A.D. 1723, we may conclude our examination of all passages in the Parsi scriptures referring to Khvētûk-das, the result of which may be summarized as follows:—

First, the term does not occur at all in the oldest part of the Avesta, and when it is mentioned in the later portion it is noticed merely as a good work which is highly meritorious, without any allusion to its nature; only one passage (Vend. VIII, 36) indicating that both men and women can participate in it. So far, therefore, as can be ascertained from the extant fragments of the Avesta—the only internal authority regarding the ancient practices of Mazda-worship—the Parsis are perfectly justified in believing that their religion did not originally sanction marriages between those who are next of kin, provided they choose to ignore the statements of foreigners, as based upon imperfect information.

Second, when we descend to the Pahlavi translations and writings of the better class, which, in their present form, probably range from the sixth to the ninth century, we find many allusions to Khvētûk-das between those next of kin, and only one obscure reference to the marriage of first cousins\textsuperscript{2}. Marriages between the nearest relations are defended chiefly by reference to mythical and metaphorical

\footnotesize{1 M5, fols. 54, 55.  \textsuperscript{2} In Dk. III, lxxii (see p. 404).}
statements regarding the creation, and to the practice of the progenitors of mankind; they are also advocated with all the warmth and vehemence that usually indicate much difficulty in convincing the laity, and this zealous vehemence increases as we descend to the dark ages of the Pahlavi Rivayat, the compilation of which may perhaps be attributed to some writer of the thirteenth or fourteenth century. Unless, therefore, the Parsis determine to reject the evidence of such Pahlavi works as the Pahlavi Yasna, the book of Arda-Viraf, the Dinkard, and the Dadistan-i Dinik, or to attribute those books to heretical writers, they must admit that their priests, in the later years of the Sasanian dynasty, and for some centuries subsequently, strongly advocated such next-of-kin marriages, though, probably, with little success. That a practice now reprobated by all Parsis should have been formerly advocated by their priests, as a religious duty, need not excite the surprise of those who consider how slavery has been advocated by many Christians, on scriptural grounds, within the present generation, and how the execution of supposed witches was similarly advocated a few generations ago.

Third, as we come to the modern writings of the Persian Rivayats, which may have commenced about the fifteenth century, we find the present form of Khvêtük-das, the marriage of first cousins (which was only slightly mentioned in the Dinkard of the ninth century), the only form in use; though obscure allusions are made to the other forms as being long extinct.

---

1 See pp. 415-423.
At whatever period the practice of next-of-kin marriage may have originated there were evidently two reasons for its establishment and continuance; one was the indispensable necessity of offspring\(^1\), unfettered by duties towards any other family, for the purpose of maintaining the necessary periodical ceremonies for the souls of those passed away; the other was the wish of preventing any risk of religious perversion consequent upon marrying into a family of strangers or infidels. Both of these reasons must have become intensified as the Mazda-worshippers diminished in numbers, hence the increasing vehemence of priestly advocacy, until the foreign conquerors probably interfered, and put a stop to the practice.

That such marriages were not unusual among other races, in ancient times, we learn from many tales in Greek and Roman mythology, from the usual practice of the Greek dynasty of the Ptolemies in Egypt, and even from the laws prohibiting such connections in Lev. xviii. 6–16, which, as laws are not made to prohibit practices that do not exist, would hardly have been written unless the children of Israel had at one time adopted the custom to some slight extent. That Parsis now deny the existence of such marriages among their ancestors proves that they no longer approve the custom, but does not affect the historical evidence of its former

---

\(^1\) The oriental feeling of such a necessity, for the mere purpose of perpetuating the family, is abundantly manifested in the story of Lot's daughters (Gen. xix. 30–38), which is related without reproval by its writer. Also by the exceptional law requiring a man to marry his brother's wife, when the brother has died childless (Deut. xxv. 5–10).
existence. Christians no longer approve the persecution and execution of women for the imaginary crime of witchcraft, but it would be both childish and useless for them to deny that their ancestors committed hundreds of such judicial murders less than two centuries ago.
IV. THE BARESHNUM CEREMONY.

The great ceremony of purification for any Parsi man or woman who has become unclean by contact with the dead, or through any other serious defilement, lasts for nine nights, and is called the Bareshnum, which is the Avesta name for the ‘top’ of the head, the first part of the body appointed to be washed in the ceremony, after the hands. The description of this ceremony, given in Pahl. Vend. IX, 1-145, which does not differ very materially from the rite still in use, is as follows:

Pahl. Vend. IX, 1. Zaratust enquired of Aûharmazd thus: ‘O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit! creator of the material world! who art the righteous one [of righteousness]’ that is, Aûharmazd is the righteous creator through invocation, and the rest through praise. 2. ‘How, when in the material existence they see a [clean] man together with [that which is polluted], (3) how shall they purify him clean who

---

1 Observing that the passages in brackets do not occur in the Avesta text, but are added by the Pahlavi translators; and that the sections are numbered to correspond with the alternating Avesta and Pahlavi sections in the MSS., which is the division adopted in Spiegel’s edition of the texts. The readings adopted are those of L4, wherever they are not defective; this MS. was written about A.D. 1324, and differs occasionally from Spiegel’s printed text; it begins the ninth fargard with the following heading:—‘May it be fortunate! may it destroy the corruption (nasûz) which rushes on from a dead dog and men on to the living! May the pure, good religion of the Manda-worshippers be triumphant!’
is with *that* fraught with corruption [together with pollution] owing to that dead body? [that is, how should they make *him* thoroughly clean?]*

4. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'A righteous man, O Zaratûst the Spîtamân! [a purifier], (5) who is a speaker [that is, it is possible for him to speak], a true-speaker [that is, falsehood is little spoken by him], an enquirer of the liturgy [that is, the ritual is performed by him], and righteous, (6) he who specially understands the purification of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers [that is, he knows the rite], (7) such a one shall cut up the plants on the fruitful earth, (8) for a length of nine separate reeds¹ in every one of the four directions, (9) at a place on this earth which is most devoid of water, most devoid of trees, land most purified [from bodily refuse]², and with the driest ground [that is, there is no damp in that extent of it]. (10) Even where least upon the paths do cattle and beasts of burden step forth, and the fire of Aûharmazd, the sacred twigs³ spread forth with righteousness, and the righteous man⁴ do least exist.'

11. 'Creator of the material world! thou righteous one! how far from the fire? how far from the water? how far from the sacred twigs spread forth

---

¹ Which would be 43 feet (see Dd. XLIII, 5 n); but the phrase *gâvda nâî* (which, in Pahl.Vend.VII, 90, has become *gâvdâ hânâ* by misreading *gâvda nâî*, and then substituting *Huz. hânâ* for *Pâz. aê*) is merely an attempted translation of Av. *vîbâzu*, which latter appears to mean the 'two arms' outstretched, or a fathom. So the 'separate reed' should be understood as a longer kind of reed, equal to a fathom, instead of 4 feet 8 inches.

² See Dd. XLVIII, 19 n. L4 omits this clause altogether.

³ See Dd. XLIII, 5 n.

⁴ Any priest not engaged in the purification.
with righteousness? how far from a man of the righteous?'

12. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Thirty steps\(^1\) from the fire, thirty steps from the water, thirty steps from the sacred twigs spread forth with righteousness, and three steps\(^2\) from the men of the righteous.

13. The cutting out for the first hole [for bull's urine]\(^3\), after the coming on of summer, is two finger-breadths in excavation; after the coming on of hail-fraught (sôngagân-hômand) winter it is as it were a cup of four finger-breadths\(^4\). 14. So also for the second hole, for the third hole, for the fourth hole, the fifth, and the sixth.'

'How much is one such hole from another hole?'

'As much as one step onwards.'

---

\(^1\) As the step is three feet (see § 15), and the foot, being fourteen finger-breadths (see Bd. XXVI, 3 n), may be taken as 10\(\frac{1}{2}\) inches, these thirty steps would be nearly 79 English feet.

\(^2\) That is, 7 feet 10\(\frac{1}{2}\) inches. This diminution of distance enables a purifying priest to stand near enough to an unclean person to hand him the purifying liquid in a ladle tied to a stick (see §§ 40–42), without going within the furrows traced around the holes or ablation seats at the same distance of three steps (see §§ 21–23).

\(^3\) That is, at which the unclean person is sprinkled with the urine (see §§ 48–116). The urine should be that of a bull, according to Vend. XIX, 70; but Vend. VIII, 35, 36 state that it may be that of cattle or draught oxen, generally, or even that of those who perform Khvêtûk-das (see p. 391). At the present time the term māgh, which means 'a hole' in the Avesta, is applied to the stones which are used as ablation seats for squatting upon.

\(^4\) The greater depth of the hole for catching the ablation droppings in the winter, would provide for the larger quantity of liquid that could not sink into the soil, or evaporate, during the tedious washing, owing to the soil and air being damper than in summer.

\(^5\) The probable positions of these holes, and of the furrows enclosing them, are shown upon the plan of the Bareshnûm Gâh on p. 435, which differs but little from the plan still in use.
15. 'What kind of one step?'
'Just like three feet.'
16. 'The cutting out of the three other holes
[which are for water], (17) after the coming on of
summer, is as much as two finger-breadths in exca-
vation; after the coming on of hail-fraught winter
it is as much as four finger-breadths.'
18. 'How much from those former ones [for bull's
urine]?'
'As much as three steps.'
19. 'What kind of three steps?'
'As much as the steps one plants in walking with
the steps he would take.'
20. 'What kind of walking with steps?'
'Just like nine feet.'
21. 'Thou shalt also plough up a furrow with the
blade due to Shatryôvair.'
22. 'How much from the holes?'
'As much as three steps.'
'What kind of three steps?'
'As much as in walking with the steps one would
take and plant.'
23. 'How much is the walking with steps?'
'As much as nine feet.'
24. 'Then, afterwards, is the ploughing up of the
twelve furrows. 25. By the ploughing up of three
from among them three holes are separated within
them. 26. Thou shalt plough up three from among
them with six holes separated within. 27. Thou
shalt plough up three from among them with nine
holes separated within. 28. And thou shalt plough

1 That is, made of metal, which is under the special protection
of the archangel Shatryôvair or Shatvaīrō (see Dd. XLVIII, 17 n).
IV. THE BARESHNÛM CEREMONY.

PLAN OF BARESHNÛM GÂH.

North

S

O

O

O

O

D

S

O

O

O

S

South

O, O, O, O, six northern holes, for bull's urine, one step apart.
O, O, O, three southern holes, for water, one step apart and three steps from the others.
S, S, S, three loads of stones on the three spaces of three steps.
D, place for collecting fifteen handfuls of dust for drying the body.
up three, within which are the [three] holes that are apart, [which are for water, and] beyond [those within, which are for bull's urine].

29. 'Thou shalt carry three loads of stones on to those spaces of nine feet, as an approach to the holes; (30) or potsherds, or knotty and massive blocks, or a clod of the earth of Vistásp, or [a pot or something of] any hard earth whatever.

31. 'Afterwards, he who has been by the dead shall come to that approach, which is the approach to the holes. 32. Thereupon thou, O Zaratúst! hast to stand up more aside, by the furrows.

---

1 The arrangement, here described, is that of six holes in a row, one step apart; then an interval of three steps, followed by three more holes, one step apart, in the same line. This row of nine holes, from north to south (see § 132, 1), is surrounded by three furrows, the first six holes and the last three are both surrounded by a second series of three furrows, and the first three holes are surrounded by a third series of three furrows. And these furrows are not less than three steps from the holes in any place, except where they separate the three series of holes from each other. The object of the furrows, which are scored during the recitation of certain formulas (see § 132, f, g), is to prevent the fiend of corruption from forcing its way from the unclean person within the furrows to any other person outside them. And, as the fiend is supposed to be strongest at first, and to become gradually weakened by the progress of the purification (see § 119), the first three holes are surrounded by the strongest barrier of nine furrows.

2 There were three such spaces, one between the furrows and the first hole, one between the sixth and seventh holes, and one between the last hole and the furrows (see the plan). It is not distinctly stated that these stones were to be distributed, as ablution seats, to each of the nine stations, as at present; but this was probably intended. At the present time an additional group of stones is placed outside the furrows, at the entrance to the north, as a station for the preliminary washing.

3 That is, the priest is to stand outside, to the right (see § 132, 1), but close to the furrows.
33. Then these words are to be murmured [*by thee, that is*]: "Praise to Spandarmad¹, the propitious!"

34. *And* he who *has been* by the dead shall speak in reply to it thus: "Praise to Spandarmad, the propitious!" 35. Then the fiend becomes disabled by every word [of each repetition]; (36) the smiting of the evil spirit, the wicked one, is owing to it; (37) the smiting of Aeshm², the impetuous assailant, is owing to it; (38) the smiting of the Māzinlkān demons³ is owing to it; (39) the smiting of all the demons is owing to it.

40. 'Afterwards, thou shalt sprinkle bull's urine upon him with an iron, or with a leaden, ladle. 41. *If* thou shalt sprinkle upon him with a leaden one⁴, thou shalt strongly demand, O Zaratūst! the stem of a reed whose nine customary parts (pīsāk) you have mentioned⁵ [as nine knots]; (42) and one should tie that leaden ladle strongly on its foremost part⁶.

43. 'He shall first wash over his hands [even to the elbows]. 44. When he does not wash over his hands, (45) he then makes all his own body impure [and polluted]. 46. When he shall have washed over his hands for three times, (47) then, when *thy* hands

---

¹ See p. 393, note 2. This exclamation is a Pahlavi version of a quotation from the Gāthas (Yas. XLVIII, 10, c).

² The demon of wrath (see Dd. XXXVII, 44).

³ See Dd. XXXVII, 81. This passage (§§ 36–39) is quoted from Yas. XXVI I, 2, LVI, xii, 5.

⁴ These words are omitted in the Pahlavi text, but occur in the Avesta.

⁵ Or, perhaps, 'murmured over' with prayers.

⁶ This nine-knotted reed, or stick, must be so long that the ladle, tied to its end, can easily reach the unclean person at the holes, when the stick is held by the priest who stands outside the furrows.
shall have been washed over, (48) thou shalt sprinkle him on the front of the top of his head, [as far as the hair has grown.] 49. Then the fiend of corruption\(^1\) rushes in front, upon some of the space between the brows of that man.

50. 'Thou shalt sprinkle in front, on some of the space between the brows of that man, [from the place where the hair has grown, as far as to the ears backwards, and both cheeks at the bottom.] 51. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon the back of his head.

52. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on the back of his head, [from the place where the hair has grown, casting (stunak) one-fourth to the spine.] 53. Then the fiend of corruption rushes in front upon his jaws.

54. 'Thou shalt sprinkle in front, on his jaws, [both cheeks as far as to the ears backwards, casting one-fourth unto the throat.] 55. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right ear.

56. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right ear. 57. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left ear.

58. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left ear, [just as the ear is turned, casting one-fourth to the liquid\(^2\).]

---

\(^1\) The Nasûf fiend (see Dd. XVII, 7).

\(^2\) The word, both here and in § 68, must be Av. âfr, 'water,' and not a Pâzand term for any part of the body, as any such term would be inadmissible in § 68. It would seem as if a smaller supply of liquid were requisite for the ears than for the other customary parts, so that a quarter of the supply is directed to be returned to the vessel holding the liquid. The remarks made by the Pahlavi translator, upon the sprinkling of the left-hand members of the body, are evidently intended also to apply, in nearly all cases, to the sprinkling of the right-hand members.
59. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right shoulder.
60. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right shoulder.
61. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left shoulder.
62. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left shoulder, [on the side in front, just as it is turned, even unto the elbow.] 63. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right armpit.
64. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right armpit.
65. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left armpit.
66. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left armpit, [as far as the hair has grown.] 67. Then the fiend of corruption rushes in front upon his chest.
68. 'Thou shalt sprinkle in front on his chest, [half the liquid to the shoulders, and half to the region of the throat, within three finger-breadths of the face.] 69. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his back.
70. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his back, [from the slender part of the spine unto the anus.] 71. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right nipple.
72. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right nipple. 73. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left nipple.
74. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left nipple, [just as the nipple shall be turned; and those of women (zanagânô) are to be held up.] 75. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right side.
76. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right side. 77. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left side.

1 Reading dîmak, but it may be gâmak (compare Pers. gâm, 'jaw'). L4 has gîmak.
78. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left side; [this, moreover, is because one specially recites for ever on that side.] 79. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right hip.

80. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right hip. 81. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left hip.

82. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left hip, [just as it is turned, as far as to the hollow of it (gûyak-t valman) below the thigh.] 83. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his sexual part.

84. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his sexual part. 85. If it be a male, thou shalt sprinkle behind it beforehand, and in front of it afterwards; (86) and if it be a female, thou shalt sprinkle in front of it beforehand, and behind it afterwards; [on this occasion half is for the front and half for behind, and it is rubbed in in front.] 87. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right thigh.

88. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right thigh. 89. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left thigh.

90. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left thigh, [from the prominence (gôhák) below the thigh to the knee.] 91. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right knee.

92. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right knee. 93. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left knee.

---

1 Reading srînak, as in Pahl. Vend. VIII, 178–182; but here the word is four times written srînak.

2 Or, perhaps, 'prominence' is meant, as in § 90; although the two words gûyak and gôhák are written differently, they refer probably to the same part.
94. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left knee, [above just as it is turned, and below the slender part; there are some who would say thus: "As much above it as below."] 95. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right shin.

96. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right shin. 97. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left shin.

98. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left shin, [from the knee unto the place where the leg and foot unite.] 99. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right ankle.

100. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right ankle. 101. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left ankle.

102. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left ankle, [just as the leg and foot unite, that is, while the ten toes are back to the ground.] 103. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his right instep.

104. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his right instep. 105. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left instep.

106. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left instep, [from the place where the leg and foot unite, to the end of his toes.] 107. Then the fiend of corruption turns dejected under the sole of the foot, and its likeness is as it were the wing of a fly's body.

108. 'The toes being held quite in union with the ground, his heel is held up from the ground. 109. Thou shalt sprinkle on his right sole. 110. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left sole.

1 The word zang means rather 'the lower part of the leg.'
111. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left sole. 112. Then the fiend of corruption turns dejected under the toes, and its likeness is as it were the wing of a fly.

113. 'The heel being held quite in union with the ground, his toes are held up from the ground. 114. Thou shalt sprinkle on his right toes. 115. Then the fiend of corruption rushes upon his left toes.

116. 'Thou shalt sprinkle on his left toes. 117. Then the fiend of corruption returns dejected to the northern quarter in the shape of a raging fly, bandy-legged, lean-hipped, illimitably spotted, so that spot is joined to spot, like the most tawdry¹ noxious creature, and most filthy.

118. 'Then these words are to be murmured, which are most triumphant and most healing²:

"As is the will of the patron spirit [as is the will of Aûharmazd], so should be the earthly master [so should be the high priest], owing to whatever are the duty and good works of righteousness; [that is, he is always to perform duty and good works as authoritatively as the will of Aûharmazd.] That which is the gift of good thought is the work of both existences [and the work] of Aûharmazd; [that is, the reward and recompense they give to good thought, they give also to him; there are some who would say thus: 'It is the possession of good thought.']

¹ Reading bûg-âkîntûm, 'most stuffed with ostentation,' as in L4. In AV. XVII, 12 the word can be read basak-âyîntûm, 'most sin-accustomed.'

² Only the initial and final words of the Avesta of the following passages are given in the MSS. here, but they are given at length, with their Pahlavi translation, in Vend. VIII, 49–62, whence the Pahlavi version is here taken.
The sovereignty is given to Aûharmazd, [that is, Aûharmazd has made the ruler for himself,] who has given protection and nourishment to the poor, [that is, he would provide assistance and intercession for them.]

"Who is given to me by thee, O Aûharmazd! as a protection? [when I shall do duty and good works, who would provide me protection?]—when I am in custody of the malice of that wicked [Aharman, that is, he retains malice with me in his thoughts]—other than thy fire and good thought? [this I know, that they would do so on account of you; but, apart from you, who would provide me protection?] When in their employ I invoke righteousness, O Aûharmazd! [that is, I shall do duty and good works, who would provide me protection?] That which thou shalt proclaim to me as religion through a high-priest [this I say, that is, preach religion through a high-priest]³.

"Who is the smiter with triumph, through this thy teaching of protection? [that is, so far as is declared by the revelation of scripture, who should inflict the punishment for sinners?] With clearness the superintendence (radîh) of the creation in both existences is to be taught to me, [that is, it is necessary for thee to give unto me the high-priesthood here and there⁴.] The arrival of virtuous obedience (Srôsh), with good thought (Vohûman), is here,

¹ This paragraph is the Pahlavi version of the Abunavar, or Yathâ-ahû-vairyd formula (see p. 385).
² Reading amat, instead of mûn, 'who,' (see Dd. LXII, 4 n.)
³ This paragraph is the Pahlavi version of the Kem-nâ-mazdâ stanza of the Gâthas (Yas. XLV, 7).
⁴ Both in this world and the next.
[that is, it is necessary for thee to give Vistāsp\(^1\) unto me as assistance.] O Aūharmazd! [the arrival of] that one [is according to my wish], who is he according to the wish of every one, [that Sōshāns\(^2\) that shall be necessary for every one, so that they may thereby convey away their misery, the misery it is possible he should convey away from every one.\(^3\)]

"Let us be guarded from the most afflicting one [here, and apart from the sinners], O Aūharmazd and Spendarmad\(^4\) [that is, keep us away from the harm of the evil spirit!] Perish, thou demon fiend! [as I speak in front of thee.] Perish, thou race of the demons! [that is, their race is from that place.]\(^5\) Perish, thou work transformed by the demons [for uselessness]! Perish, thou work produced by the demons [herefor and hereafter! this produced without the sacred beings, and produced by them (the demons) even for uselessness]. Perish utterly, thou fiend! [that is, mayst thou become invisible!] Perish utterly, thou fiend! [that is, rush away from here, and mayst thou become invisible on any path!] Perish utterly and apart, thou fiend! [that is, stand not again on any path!] Thou shalt perish again to the north! [the path was mentioned thus: 'Go in the direction of the north!'] do not destroy the material world of righteousness\(^6\)!"

---

1. The king in the time of Zarathustr (see Dd. XXXVII, 36).
2. The last of the future apostles (see Dd. II, 10).
3. This paragraph is the Pahlavi version of a passage in the Gāthas (Yas. XLIII, 16, b–c).
5. From hell, the place of the demons.
6. It appears from what follows, in § 120, that the whole of the sprinklings and exorcisms, detailed in §§ 33–118, are to be repeated at each of the first six holes.
IV. THE BARESHNŪM CEREMONY.

119. 'At the first hole the man becomes freer from the fiend of corruption, [that is, it shall depart a little from his body, like a flock when they disperse it.]

120. 'Then these words are to be murmured by thee, &c. [as in §§ 33–118. At] the second [hole, &c., as in § 119. And the same routine is to be followed at] the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth [holes].

'Afterwards he shall sit—he who has been by the dead—within the precinct (sitrā) of the holes apart from those holes [which are for bull's urine]. 121. So much from that [of the previous ones for bull's urine] as four finger-breadths. 122. They shall also dig up those full diggings up of this earth, [they should accomplish this well.] 123. They shall scrape together fifteen handfuls of the earth, [so that they shall quite dislodge the damp purely.]

124. And they shall remain about it the whole period from that time until the time when the hair on his head shall become dry, (125) and until the time when the wet earth on his body shall become dry.

126. 'Then he who has been by the dead shall come to that approach to those other holes [which are for water]. 127. At the first hole he shall then purify over his own body once with water. 128. At the second hole he shall then purify over his own

---

1 This paragraph is omitted in the Pahlavi text, being merely given in the Avesta (for the sake of brevity) so far as the words are not included in the brackets.

2 The three holes for washing with water.

3 That is, three English inches south of the six furrows which separate the first six holes from the last three, at the point D on the plan.

4 That is, the person undergoing purification shall be rubbed with dust until he is quite dry.
body twice with water. 129. At the third hole he shall then purify over his own body thrice with water.

130. 'Afterwards, he who is perfumed with sandarac (râsnô)\(^1\), or benzoin, or aloes\(^2\), or any other of the most odoriferous of plants, (131) shall then put on his clothes. 132. Then he who has been by the dead shall come to that approach, the approach to his abode.'

[a. The clothing is always cleansed by the Khshvash-maunghô ("the six-months' process").

b. Afarg\(^5\) said two purifiers are requisite, and of the two he is suitable who has performed the ritual; thus they have been very unanimous; when he scores the furrow, washes that unclean person in the customary places, and utters the Avesta he has performed it; the other, when he has not performed it,

---

\(^1\) Av. urvâsna (which is translated by Pahl. râsnô) is supposed, in India, to mean sandal-wood.

\(^2\) These are supposed, in India, to be the two substances meant by the Av. vohû-gaona and vohû-kereti, which are merely transcribed by the Pahl. hû-gôn and hû-keret. The Avesta text adds a fourth perfume, named hadhâ naêpata, which is understood to mean the pomegranate bush, although that plant seems to yield no perfume.

\(^5\) For the continuation of the instructions see § 133; the text being here interrupted by a long Pahlavi commentary on the whole of the foregoing description of the ceremony.

\(^4\) This sentence is evidently incomplete in the Pahlavi text. The process is thus described in Pahl. Vend. VII, 36:—'If it be that it is woven, they shall wash it over six times with bull's urine, they shall scrape together six times on the earth with it [so that they quite dislodge its moisture purely], they shall wash it over six times with water, and they shall perfume over it six months at a window in the house.' For the Avesta version of this description, which is nearly the same, see Sls. II, 95 n.

\(^\text{a}\) See Ep. I, v, 1.

is unsuitable; when there shall also be one who is suitable\(^1\) he fully solemnizes a Vendidad service, for this purpose, with a dedication (shnuman\(\ddot{\text{o}}\)) to Sr\(\ddot{o}\)sh.

\(c\). For every single person, at the least, one cup, alike of water and bull’s urine, is to be set down in that place\(^8\), and at the beginning of its consecration it is to be thoroughly inspected, and at the Vendidad it is to be thoroughly inspected\(^3\); afterwards, when it is covered, it is also well; the pebbles cast into it\(^4\) they should carry back to the holy-water, there is no use for them; when thoroughly consecrated it is always suitable, until it becomes quite fetid\(^5\).

\(d\). For the avoidance of an unsecluded (ag\(\ddot{\text{u}}\)b\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)) menstruous woman nava v\(\ddot{\text{t}}\)b\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)z\(\ddot{\text{v}}\)a dr\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)g\(\ddot{\text{d}}\) (‘the length of nine fathoms’)\(^6\) from her is necessary, when she stands nearest; in a wild spot the herbage is to be dug up\(^7\); when they shall make the purifying place in the town, and a path, or a stream, or a wall does not extend into it, it is suitable; and the cleanly plucking up of its small trees, extracting them in the daytime with recitation of the Avesta of Zarat\(\ddot{\text{u}}\)st\(^8\)—those which are thick not existing among the holes—is proper.

\(e\). And every one who digs the holes, with whatever he digs, and whenever he digs, is suitable; four finger-breadths and two finger-breadths\(^9\) is no matter;

---

\(^1\) See Ep. I, vi, 7. \\
\(^2\) See Ep. I, vii, 1. \\
\(^3\) L4 has ‘it is to be taken up,’ by omitting the first letter of niktris\(\text{\(\ddot{n}\)}\). \\
\(^4\) See Ep. I, vii, 16, II, iii, 12. \\
\(^5\) See Ep. I, vii, 1. \\
\(^6\) See § 8. \\
\(^7\) See § 7. \\
\(^8\) These twelve words do not occur in L4. \\
\(^9\) See § 13.
each hole is at a minimum distance of three feet, at a maximum as much as one thoroughly purifies his body in; and they are to be formed in it from the north, and are to be dug in the direction towards its more southern side.

f. In the daytime is the purifier's scoring of the furrows, and with a blade they are to be scored; with the recital of the Avesta they are to be scored; in the day they are to be scored; in that day they are to be scored, when a furrow is scored, three Ashem-vohûs, the Fravarâné, whatever period of the day one considers it to be, the dedication to Srôsh, and its inward prayer are to be taken up inwardly.

g. It is also to be done inside it from the north, and its end is to be passed back at the end; for every single furrow there is one Yathâ-ahû-vairyô at the least, and at the most as many as are possible for it; a furrow is not to be scored again for a furrow, until it is to be put into use; whenever it is fully disturbed it is to be scored again with the recital of its Avesta; when prepared for use and one scores it again it is no matter.

---

1 See §§ 14, 15.
2 The Ahunavar or Yathâ-ahû-vairyô (see § g).
3 So in L4.
4 See Dd. LXXIX, 1, note.
5 That is, the profession of faith (Yas. I, 65), which is as follows:—'I will profess myself a Zarathushtrian Mazda-worshipper, opposed to the demons and of the Ahura faith.' This is followed by the dedication to the period of the day, which is given for the first period only in Yas. I, 66, 67; the dedications for the other periods will be found in Gâh II–V, 1.
7 See Dd. XL, 5, note. All the prayers here detailed are to be murmured merely as a preliminary spell, but while each furrow is being scored a further formula is to be recited (see § g).
8 See pp. 385–386.
h. Once the outside of the body is to be made quite clean from the bodily refuse of the world; and the hair being tied up—it is no use to cut the pubes (nihânô)—he is also to be brought into it (the precinct) from the north to the holes.

i. The purifier stands up on the right-hand side, and when he retains the inward prayer from scoring the furrows it is proper; when not, the prayer to be taken inwardly by him—which is his utterance of Nemaskâ yâ ármaitis žâkâ (‘and the homage which is devotion and nourishment’)—is also that which is to be uttered by the unclean person; and when he is not able to speak, it is both times to be uttered for him.

j. And his hands are to be thoroughly washed three times, not in the inside; as to the other customary parts (pšak) Afarg has said three times, not in the inside, but Mêdôk-mâh one time; also the water and bull’s urine, such as are necessary for him, are to be conveyed on to him; and a portion (bah-rak) is to be preserved for him away from the body, and, when anything comes upon him, a little bull’s urine is to be dropped down upon him; likewise,

---

1 See Dd. XLVIII, 19 n.
2 That is, when he has not broken its spell by talking, since he began the scoring.
3 These are the Avesta words from Yas. XLVIII, 10, c, of which the Pahlavi version is given in §§ 33, 34.
4 Written Mêdôk-mâh in Ep. I, v, 1. The statement here attributed to Mêdôk-mâh is ascribed to Afarg in Ep. I, vi, 7, 9, II, ii, 6, but Afarg is there said to be ‘the prior deponent,’ as he is here; we should, therefore, probably transpose the ‘three times’ and ‘one time’ in our text; the blunder having originated from the frequent substitution of hânâ for aê in Pahlavi, both meaning ‘this,’ while aê also means ‘one’ and is the cipher for ‘3.’

[18]
any customary part, while being washed by him, is to be preserved from that which is not washed; when it comes upon it, it is improper.

k. When a drop of water (âv yûgakô-1) shall remain upon him, his hand is to be thoroughly rubbed over it; when at the same hole and he becomes doubtful as to a customary part, when he knows which, it is to be washed by him again, and from that onwards they are always to be washed again by him; when he does not know which, the beginning of the washing at the hole is to be done again by him, and when he comes unto that which he did before, when he knows it, he is also to go again to that after it, from his doing again of the beginning of the washing at the hole; when he becomes doubtful as to the hole, he is to go back to that which is not doubtful.

l. And when they go from hole to hole, the dog is to be held once, the Avesta of the purifier is to be spoken, and it is to be done by him thus:—When he arrives at the place, it is done by him; when not, the head is to be done thoroughly—there are some who would say thus: 'In the same hole the head is to be done thoroughly'—and all four feet of the dog are to be put by him into the hole; he is also to sit down within four finger-breadths, and the Pankadasa zemô hankanayen ('fifteen times of earth they shall

---

1 That is, when he is doubtful which he washed last.
2 The dog is not mentioned in the Avesta account of the Bareshnûm in Vend. IX, but it is ordered to be brought before the unclean person in another such account in Vend. VIII, 120, 123. The use of the dog is that its sight or touch is supposed to destroy or drive away the Nasûr, or fiend of corruption.
3 The exorcism in § 118.
4 See § 121.
scrape together'\textsuperscript{1} are to be well completed by him, it is also to be thoroughly done by him, and he is to be fully guarded while he properly and thoroughly well perseveres.

m. And, after it, he is to go unto the holes for water; the different times with water are just like the different holes for bull's urine, except holding the dog; the dog, too, works for him inside.

n. When he seeks for it, it\textsuperscript{2} is to be thoroughly warmed for him; when he hungers for it, bread is to be given to him; when the necessity of making water arises, something is to be held unto him; when, on account of his imperfect strength (va\textit{d} \textit{zôrth}), he is quite unable to wash, some one is to sit down inside with him; when he is only just\textsuperscript{3} washed, he is to come into his position therein before, the inward prayer is to be spoken out by him, and the inward prayer is to be again offered by him, his customary parts are also washed, and are to be considered as washed.

o. When he shall keep on for three washings\textsuperscript{4}, though not clean, it is not improper; when he does not attain three washings, it is not proper; when the enclosure is not to be formed to the north\textsuperscript{5}, it is not proper; when one shall not solemnize the Vendid\textit{dâd} service\textsuperscript{6}, it is not proper.

p. When the purifier shall not have performed the ritual, it is not proper; when the purifier is not a man, it is not proper.

\textsuperscript{1} The Avesta version of § 123.
\textsuperscript{2} The water, apparently.
\textsuperscript{3} Perhaps it should be \textit{kand tâk}, 'several times,' instead of \textit{kigùn tâk}, 'only just.'
\textsuperscript{4} See §§ 136, 140, 144.
\textsuperscript{5} See § e.
\textsuperscript{6} See § d.
q. When he shall not wash on the customary parts, it is not proper; when he does not utter the Avesta, it is not proper; and when the dog\(^1\) is not held, it is not proper; when there is no digging of the holes, it is not proper; when he does not perform the Pankadasa zemô hankanayen ('fifteen times of earth they shall scrape together')\(^2\), it is not proper.

r. When it is not the purifier who scores the furrows, and he does not score them with a blade\(^3\), nor does he score them with the recitation of the Avesta, nor does he score them in the daytime, it is not proper.

s. When he shall see anything impure in the hole, it is not proper; when they shall cause rain to come within a hole for bull's urine, it is not proper; when night shall come in upon him, it is not proper; when in everything there is suitableness, but as to one thing doubt arises, through that suitableness it is not proper.]

133. *He*\(^4\) is to sit down in the place of the secluded (armêstânó)\(^5\), within the precinct (sitrâ) of his abode, apart from the other Mazda-worshippers. 134. He shall not come with authorization to fire, nor to water, nor to earth, nor to animals, nor to plants, nor to a righteous man, nor to a righteous

---

\(^1\) See § 1.  
\(^2\) See § 123.  
\(^3\) See § 5.  
\(^4\) He who has been by the dead, as stated in § 132, in connection with which this sentence is to be read; the foregoing §§ a–s being interpolated by the Pahlavi translators.  
\(^5\) The original meaning of armêst was probably 'most stationary,' as it is a term applied to water in tanks, helpless cripples, and insane people, as well as to unclean persons who have to remain apart from their friends (see Sls. II, 98 n).
IV. THE BARESHNûM CEREMONY.

woman, (135) at all from that time, until the time when his three nights shall fully elapse.

136. 'After those three nights he shall wash over his body, and his clothes are purified over in such a way as with bull's urine and also with water. 137. He shall sit in the place of the secluded, within the precinct of his abode, apart from the other Mazda-worshippers. 138. He shall not come with authorization to fire, &c. [just as has been written in § 134], (139) at all from that time, until the time when his six nights shall fully elapse.

140. 'After those six nights¹ he shall wash over his body, and his clothes are purified over in such a way as with bull's urine and also with water. 141–143. He shall sit in the place of the secluded [just as has been written in §§ 133–135] until the time when his nine nights shall fully elapse.

144. 'Then, after the nine nights, he shall wash over his body, and his clothes are purified over in such a way as with bull's urine and also with water. 145. Then he shall come with authorization unto fire, unto water, unto earth, unto animals, unto plants, unto a righteous man, unto a righteous woman.'

Besides the above fully detailed description of the Bareshnûm ceremony we find two other accounts of the rite, in the Vendidâd. Of these the most detailed is contained in Vend. VIII, 117–228, which mentions the use of the dog², the nine holes, the washing with bull's urine and water, and all the

¹ The MSS. omit several words, when sentences are repeated, for the sake of brevity.
² See § 7 above.
detail of driving the fiend of corruption from one part of the body to another (by sprinkling with 'the good waters') till it flies away to the north as in Vend. IX, 117. But it omits the description of the purifier, the dimensions of the purifying place, the scoring of the furrows, the placing of the stones, the exorcism\(^1\), the seclusion for nine nights, and all the washings after the first day.

The other account, which is much shorter, is given in Vend. XIX, 67–84. It specifies that the urine must be that of a young bull, and that the purifier must score a furrow; it mentions the recitation of a hundred Ashem-vohûs and two hundred Yathâ-ahû-vairyôs, four washings with bull's urine and two with water, nine nights' exposure, followed by attention to the fire and fumigation, when the man clothes himself while paying homage to the sacred beings, and is clean; but no other details are given.

\(^1\) That is, the exorcism is not found in the Pahlavi version, but is introduced in the Vendidâd sâdah in an abbreviated form, possibly copied from Vend. IX, 118.
V. FINDING A CORPSE IN THE WILDERNESS.

The controversy between Mânûšēhēr and his brother, Zâd-spāram, of which the Epistles of Mânûšēhēr are the only portion extant, turned chiefly upon the meaning to be attached to Vend. VIII, 271–2991, and whether the mode of purification therein detailed was a sufficient substitute, or merely a preparation, for the Bareshñum ceremony. The following is a translation of the Pahlavi version of this passage2:—

Pahl. Vend. VIII, 271. ‘O creator! how are those men purified, O righteous Aûharmazd! who shall stand by a corpse, in a distant place, upon a wild spot3?’

272. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: ‘They are purified, O righteous Zaratûst!’

273. ‘But when so? [that is, how will such a one become clean?]’

274. ‘If a corpse-eating dog, or a corpse-eating bird, has attacked that corpse, (275) the man shall then purify over his own body with bull’s urine, (276) thirty times by washing forwards [with the bull’s urine], and thirty times by washing over4, [and

2 Subject to the same observations as those detailed in p. 431 n.
3 Reading pavan vaskar, but the MSS., by omitting a stroke, have pavan sîkar, ‘on the chase.’
4 So here, but ‘washing backwards’ in § 279; and in Ep. II, iv, 2 we find ‘upwards’ and ‘downwards,’ instead of ‘forwards’ and ‘backwards.’ The Pahlavi translators were evidently doubtful whether the Av. upasnaṭê (see Ep. II, iii, 2) meant ‘washing over, backwards, or downwards.’
his hand shall rub over it.] 277. Of the topmost part of him is the washing over, [that is, the washing of his head is that regarding which there is a mention through this study-causing (hūshkar) exclamation.]¹

278. 'If a corpse-eating dog, or a corpse-eating bird, has not attacked that corpse, (279) he shall purify fifteen times by washing forwards, and fifteen times by washing backwards, [and his hand shall rub over it.]

280. 'He shall run the first mile (hāsār)². 281. He shall then run forwards, [when the Pankadasa ("fifteen times") shall be performed by him.] 282. And when he shall thus stop opposite any one whomsoever of the material existence,² he shall be prepared with a loud issue of words, (283) thus⁴: "I have thus stood close by the body of him who is dead; I am no wisher for it by thought, I am no wisher for it by word, I am no wisher for it by deed, [that is, it is not possible for me to be as though washed.] 284. It demands purification for me, [that is, wash me thoroughly!]"] 285. When he runs, the first he shall reach, (286) if they do not grant him purification, share one-third of that deed of his,[that is, of all that sin, not possible for him to bear, except when they shall perform his purification, one part in three is theirs at its origin.]

287. 'He runs the second mile [while he runs for

¹ Implying that the Pahlavi translators had found the use of Av. aghrya for 'head' rather perplexing.
² The hāsār was 'a thousand steps of the two feet' (see Bd. XXVI, 1, note), and was, therefore, about an English mile.
³ That is, any human being.
⁴ See Ep. I, ii, 10.
288. He runs, and a second time he reaches people. 289. If they do not grant him purification, (290) they share a half\(^1\) of that deed of his, [that is, of all that sin, not possible for him to bear, except when they shall perform his purification, as it were a half is even for them at its origin.]

291. 'He shall run the third mile [while he runs for it]. 292. When he runs, the third he shall reach, (293) if they do not grant him purification, share all\(^2\) that deed of his, [that is, all that sin which it is not possible for him to bear, except when they shall perform his purification, is ever theirs at its origin.]

294. 'He shall then run forwards\(^3\). 295. He shall thus stop opposite some people of the next house, village, tribe, or district, and he shall be prepared with a loud issue of words, (296) thus: "I have thus stood close by the body of him who is dead; (297) I am no wisher for it by thought, I am no wisher for it by word, I am no wisher for it by deed, [that is, it is not possible to bear without washing.] 298. It demands purification for me, [that is, wash me thoroughly!]" 299. If they do not grant him purification, he shall then purify over his own body with bull's urine, and also with water; thus he shall be thoroughly purified over.\(^4\)

[a. He shall go three miles; it is not allowable to walk back to his district, until he has fully striven

\(^1\) That is, half of the two-thirds remaining with him, or one-third of the whole original trespass.

\(^2\) That is, all the remaining one-third of the original trespass.

\(^3\) See Ep. II, iii, 3.

\(^4\) What follows is a commentary, by the Pahlavi translators, on the whole passage.
with three persons, and all that sin, not possible for him to bear, except when they shall perform his purification, is theirs at its origin.

b. When thus thoroughly washed by himself, his duty even then is the work frakairi frakere-naod, vâstrê verezyôid ('he should accomplish with perseverance, he should cultivate in the pastures'); there are some who would say thus: 'He is always for the performance of work, and abstinence from the ceremonies of others is for him.'

---

1 Quoted from Vend. XIX, 140, where the words 'sheep's food and food for oxen' are added.

2 A person so purified by himself, after vainly seeking a proper purifier, is, therefore, only fit for the ordinary labours of life, and must avoid all religious celebrations till properly purified by the Bareshnûm ceremony. This was the opinion of Mânûxîhar, but it is based upon a Pahlavi commentary, and not upon the Avesta text, which is not clear upon this point.
INDEX.
OBSERVATIONS.

1. The references in this index are to the pages of the introduction and appendix, and to the chapters and sections of the translations; the chapters being denoted by the larger ciphers, or by roman type.

2. References to passages which contain special information are given in parentheses, when the reference is not the first one.

3. Though different forms of the same name may occur in the translations, only one form is usually given in the index, to which the references to all forms are attached; except when the forms differ so much as to require to be widely separated in the index.

4. Pāzand forms are printed in italics, as their orthography is usually corrupt. In all such italicised names any letters which would elsewhere be italic are printed in roman type.

5. Abbreviations used are:—Ap. for Appendix; AV. for Arāḵ-Virāḵ; Av. for Avesta word; Byt. for Bahman Yat; com. for commentator; Cor. for Corrections; Dd. for Dādēstān-i-Dinēk; Dk. for Dinkard; Dr. for Doctor; Ep. for Epistle; ins. for inscription; lun. man. for lunar mansion; m. for mountain; meas. for measure; Mkh. for Mainyūṭ-i Kharē; n for foot-note; Pahl. for Pahlavi; Pers. for Persian; Prof. for Professor; r. for river; Riv. for Rivāyat; Sans. for Sanskrit word; trans. for translation; Vend. for Vendīdā; Visp. for Vissparad; Yas. for Yasa.
INDEX.

Åbān nyāyā, Dd. 78, i9 n.
Abution, Dd. 46, 6; 48, 9, 14, 20;
433-436, 444 n, 445, 447-453. —
in Bareshnūm, Ap. 437-454. — in
melted metal, Dd. 83, 13; 87,
110, 111, 113. — seats, Ep. I,
ix, 7; II, iii, 12, iv, 6 n; III, 6,
20; Ap. 433 n, 436 n.
Abode of fires, Dd. 48, 11; 81, 17,
18.
Abortion, Dd. 78, 7.
Abraham, Dd. 37, 90.
Abyss, Dd. 87, 9, 24.
Account of the soul, Dd. 8, 6; 19,
2; 14, 1-5; 20, 3; 22, 2; 24, 5;
25, 5; 28, 5, 6; 30, 3; 31, 2,
10, 11; 32, 4.
Adam, Dd. 44, 16 n.
Ādarbīgān, land, Dd. 21, 2 n.
Adharmā, man, Dd. 0 n.
Adopted daughter, Dd. 56, 6.
— son, Dd. 64, 4, 9, 13; 56, 2, 5, 6,
8; 58, 3-5; 59, 1-3; 60, 1, 3;
61, 3; 69, 2, 6.
— sonship, Dd. 64, 13, 14; 56, 1-3;
60, 2, 3.
Adoption, Dd. 56, 2, 6; 57, 1-4;
58, 1, 5; 59, 3; 61, 2.
Ādōst, see Fire-stand.
Adultery, Dd. 78, 5; 78, 1-19.
Adversary, Dd. 37, 31; 84, 7.
Āērpat, Int. 13; Dd. 0 n. See
Priest.
— khūfās, Int. 13; Dd. 0 n. See
Priestly lordship.
Āēshm, demon, Dd. 37, 44, 52, 104;
94, 4 n; Ap. 426, 437.
Afarg, com., Ep. I, ii, 5, v, i, 6, vi, i;
3, 4, 7, 9, 9, vii, 1, 18, iv, i, 5,
6, 10, 15, x, 13; II, ii, 5-8, iii,
1 n; III, 7; Ap. 446, 449.
Afrāsiyāb, king, Dd. 70, 3 n.
Āfrān, see Benediction.
— f. dahmān, Dd. 31, 1 n. See
Blessing of the holy.
Āfringān, rite, Dd. 47, 1 n.
Aghrērad, man, Dd. 90, 3 n.
Aharman, Dd. 18, 1, 2, 5-7; 27, 6;
37, 16, 20, 59; 65, 5; 72, 2;
77, 11, 12; 94, 8, 10; Ap. 374,
376-378, 384, 392, 417, 418,
426, 443.
Ahārmokh, Dd. 72, 9 n. See Apost.
tate.
Ahu navar, Dd. 48, 30 n; Ap. 386 n,
443 n, 448 n.
Ahura-mazda, Av., Dd. 79, 1 n; Ap.
374 n, 385, 387. See Ahār-
mazda.
Ahvō, Dd. 1, 20; 7, 7, 29, 1; 31, 7.
See Patron spirit.
Ahvōh, Dd. 8, 5. See Spiritual
life.
Airān-vēg, land, Dd. 21, 2; 80, 3 n,
4, 6 n.
Ākhtya, man, Dd. 80, 3 n; Ap. 411 n.
Ākūmanū, demon, Dd. 37, 44, 533;
94, 1 n; Ep. I, x, 9 n.
Albūrz. m., Dd. 20, 3; 21, 2; 37,
118 n; 92, 5.
Amerōda, angel, Dd. 48, 1 n; Ap.
415.
Amesha-spestas, Dd. 31, 5 n. See
Archangels.
Anāhīta, angel, Dd. 31, 7 n.
Andarvāh, Dd. 93, 7.
Andreas, Dr., Ap. 399 n.
Angels, Dd. 1, 0; 2, 12; 3, 13;
8, 13 n, 15 n;
4, 3; 5, 5; 17, 2; 20, 3 n; 28,
3, 4; 28, 4; 81, 15 n; 37, 32;
86, 87, 114, 131, 132; 39, 11, 25;
28, 29; 45, 1; 48, 12 n, 27, 29;
64, 6; 85, 5; 75, 1, 2; 81, 10;
83, 4, 5; 86, 3; 89, 2; 94, 12;
Ep. I, iv, i, x, 3, xi, 11; II, v, 12;
Ap. 379 n; army of, Dd. 37, 58;
64, 107 n; fortress of, Dd. 30,
18; earthly, Dd. 1, 10; heavenly, Dd. 1, 3; 37, 50; 48, 8; 67, 10; primeval, Dd. 73, 1; spiritual, Ep. I, o, xi, 12; Il, ix, 13; Ap. 378; worldly, Ep. I, o, iv, 4, xi, 12; Il, ix, 13; Ap. 378. See Sacred beings.


Anirān day, Dd. 43, 7.


Anquetil Duperron, Dd. 48, 16 n.

Aogemādaēā, Av., Dd. 81, 1 n.

Aōshāna, man, Dd. 87, 35.

Aōshnōr, man, Dd. 46, 33.

Apāōsh, demon, Dd. 93, 11, 13 n.

Ape, origin of, Ap. 418 n, 419.

Apostates, Dd. 72, 9; Ep. II, v, 13; Ap. 384.

Apostles, Dd. 2, 10 n, 11 n; 37, 43, 100 n; 39, 27; 48, 30, 31; Ep. I, v, 3 n; Il, iii, 1; Ap. 389, 386, 444 n.

Aquarius, Ep. II, ii, 9 n.


Archangel, Dd. 14, 4; 31, 5; 72, 10 n; Ep. I, iii, 1 n; Ap. 380 n, 434 n; female, Dd. 94, 2 n; Ap. 393 n.

Archangels, Dd. 29, 2; 37, 26; 48, 9; 46, 1, 12; 73, 3; 74, 1, 2; 93, 13, 14; 94, 12; Ep. I, x, 9; xi, 12; Il, v, 14, ix, 13; Ap. 377 n, 412, 415 n, 420 n; omniscient, Dd. 74, 3; seven, Dd. 48, 8, 9.

Arda, angel, Dd. 8, 13, 14; 94, 2.

Ardašir-i Pāpakān, king, Dd. 88, 7 n.

Ardašir-khurrah, town, Dd. 88, 7 n.

Ardaširhā, angel, Dd. 48, 1 n; Ap. 415.

Ardaš-Visrāf, man, Int. 28; Dd. 31, 4 n; Ep. I, iv, 17 n; Ap. 397, 428.


Arehvisur water, Dd. 37, 118; 82, 1-3, 5.


Arezūr m., Dd. 83, 5.

Arēs, Ep. II, ii, 9 n.


Artakhshatar-gadman, town, Dd. 88, 7.


Arvand r., Dd. 92, 2.

Arvis, Dd. 48, 13 n. See Aūrvēs.

Aryans, glory of, Dd. 30, 3 n.

Arzā, region, Dd. 86, 5.

Asām-i Tamābust, chief, Dd. 90, 3 n.

Ašibwason, chief, Dd. 89, 3.

Ashavazd, chief, Dd. 90, 3 n, 8 n.

Ashem-vohū, Av., Dd. 48, 32 n; 79, 7; Ap. 371 n, 173 n, 448, 454; translated, Dd. 79, 1 n; Ap. 385.


Ashisang, angel, Dd. 84, 2 n. See Ard.

Asia Minor, Int. 27; Ep. II, viii, 5 n;


Ālesha, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9 n.


Assembly, Int. 25, 27; Ep. I, iv, 14;

Il, 1, 8, 10-12, v, 10 n; Ap. 407, 424.

Āstād, angel, Dd. 30, 2, 3; 44, 20 n.

Asto-vīdā, demon, Dd. 23, 3 n;

30, 4 n; 37, 44, 51, 52, 81, 83 n, 98, 106, 108.

Arval, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9 n.

Ātār nyylīr, Dd. 48, 21 n; 78, 19 n.

Atonement for sin, Dd. 13, 2; 13, 2;

3, 15, 5; 31, 10, 72, 17; 75, 3;

78, 17, 19; Ap. 414.


Ātūr (fire), Dd. 43, 10; day, Dd.

43, 7.

Ātūr-frōbagī Farukhūzdānān, priest, Int. 27; Dd. 88, 8; Ep. I, iii, 9 n.

Ātūr-būgāz, priest, Ep. I, x, 8.


— mahān, man, Int. 22; Dd. 0.

— pād, man, Int. 26; Ep. II, v, 14,

ix, 11.

— — Hēmūzdān, priest, Int. 27;

Dd. 44, 20 n; Ap. 399 n.

— — Māraspandān, priest, Dd. 37, 36.

Āūharmazd, Dd. 1, 0; 2, 5, 7; 29, 1; 38, 5 n; 31, 5, 8, 11; 36, 7;

37, 22, 43, 44 n, 95 n, 40, 7 n;

48, 1, 3; 64, 3; 93, 13 n; 94, 8, 10; Ep. I, iv, 11, x, 9 n; Il, i, 14, iii, 15; Ap. 373, 377, 384;

386, 392, 393, 396, 402 n, 411,

412, 415, 442-444; army of, Dd.

37, 67; beneficent, Dd. 87, 9;

created by, Dd. 37, 117; Ep. I,

vii, 11; creatures of, Dd. 77, 18, 20; 37, 13 n, 66; Ep. I, iv, 2; domestic of, Dd. 81, 1, 5; fire
INDEX.

of, Dd. 9, 1; Ap. 432; in endless light, Dd. 31, 24 n.; in Garóds-
mán, Dd. 1, 3 n.; 94, 12; nature of, Dd. 10, 1-7; priests of, Ep. I, 4, 10, 11; propitiation of, Dd. 46, 22; service of, Dd. 80, 16, 28; speaks, Dd. 7, 3; talks with Keresásb, Ap. 374, 376-
378; talks with Zarafshún, Dd. 7, 7; Ep. I, vii, 10, 12; Ap. 371, 373, 379, 381, 415-417, 419-423, 431-433, 455; the creator, Dd. 1, 6; 4, 5, 6; 9, 7, 8, 12, 75; 94, 1 n, 14; Ep. I, 1, 0, xi, 1, 11, 13, 14; III, 22; Ap. 393 n.; the lord, Dd. 94, 7 n.; Ap. 384 n.; two spirits of, Dd. 2, 11 n.; Ep. I, ii, 1 n.; wisdom of, Dd. 87, 19; worship of, Ap. 417.

Aúharmásd day, Dd. 43, 7.
Aúrva-dás, man, Dd. 78, 2.
Aúrváram, Dd. 48, 16.
Aúrvés (ceremonial area), Dd. 48, 13, 14.
Aúshahín gáh, Dd. 90, 2, 3.
Aúshdártár m., Dd. 37, 2; 37, 118.
Aúshhindúm m., Dd. 87, 118 n.; 92, 5.
Aúán (waters), Dd. 48, 10; day, Dd. 43, 7, 11 n.; month, Dd. 48, 10, 11 n.; Ep. I, ii, 2.

Ávedam, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9 n.
Ávénak, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9, 10.


Avesta names, Dd. 2, 10 n.; 8, 13 n.; 17, 7 n.; 20, 3 n.; 30, 2 n.; 31, 14 n.; 38, 3 n., 4 n.; 37, 22 n.; 35 n., 36 n., 44 n., 52 n., 80 n.-82 n.; 97 n., 101 n., 110 n., 118 n.; 44, 16 n.; 48, 13 n., 33 n.; 70, 3 n.; 79, 4 n., 5 n., 9 n.; 90, 3 n., 8 n.; 92, 5 n.; 93, 11 n.; Ap. 411 n., 431, 433 n.

Avrak, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9 n.
Az, demon, Dd. 87, 51.
Az-i Dahák, king, Dd. 17, 6 n.; 65, 5, 72, 3, 76, 2. See Dahák.
Azí Srúvar, Dd. 72, 4. See Srúvar.

Balance of good works and sin, Dd. 8, 1, 2, 4; 13, 3, 4.
Barázd, man, Dd. 90, 5 n.
Bareshnûm ceremony, Int. 29; Dd. 25, 3 n.; 86, 8 n.; 81, 16; Ep. I, ii, 6 n., iv, 1, vi, 1 n., vii, 14, ix, 7 n., xi, 1 n.; II, i, 7 n., 16 n., ii, 2 n., iii, 4 n., 12 n., iv, 6 n.; III, 2, 5, 8-12, 14, 15, 17, 20; Ap. 424, (431, 455), 458 n. — gáh, Ap. 433 n.; plan of, Ap. 435.
Bareshôm, see Sacred twigs.
— dán, Dd. 48, 5 n.
Bargaining, Dd. 58, 1-4.
Bastard, Dd. 78, 8-13.
Bayak, demon, Dd. 78, 2 n.

Beneficent angel, Dd. 64, 6.
— spirit, Dd. 2, 11; 36, 7; 37, 31 n.; 95, 100; Ep. I, ii, 1 n.

Berezyarstî, man, Dd. 90, 8 n.
Best existence, Dd. 1, 3; 14, 7, 8; 16, 6; 41, 10; 42, 2; 74, 2.

Bodily refuse, Dd. 48, 19, 20; 78, 14; Ep. I, viii, 1, 3, 5; II, iv, 3.

Bôdyozêd sin, Dd. 49, 5 n.; 58, 5 n.
Bombay, Dd. 0 n.; 6, 2 n.; 81, 1 n.

Bone-receptacle, Dd. 18, 3, 4.

Boundless time, Int. 24.

Brahmanical thread, Dd. 38, 30 n.
Bridge, see Kínvad bridge.

Bull’s urine, Dd. 48, 9 n., 33 n.; Ep. I, ii, 6 n., vii, 1, 4, 9, 14, 16, viii, 1-4, 6, ix, 6, 8, 3; II, ii, 2, iii, 9, 10, 12; III, 1, 6, 20; Ap. 391, 433-437, 445; 446 n., 447, 449, 451-455, 457.

Bundahish, Int. 27; Dd. 21, 2 n.; 48, 25 n. See also Sad-dar.
Bûshasp, fiend, Dd. 37, 44, 51.
Bût, demon, Dd. 39, 28 n.

Cancer, Ep. II, ii, 9 n.
Carrion-crows, how purified, Dd. 17, 15.

Caspian Sea, Dd. 37, 44 n.
Cat, origin of, Ap. 419.
Cattle-dealing, Dd. 63, 1-6.
Celestial spirit (ahvô), Dd. 37, 17.

Ceremonial (yazîn), Dd. 47, 10; 48, 4, 8, 10, 11, 14, 22, 26 n, 29, 34, 35, 38; 68, 8-10, 13, 14, 18, 23, 32; 72, 11, 12; 79, 11; 81, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10-12, 15-18; 82, 1, 2, 4, 5; 83, 2; 84, 1, 2, 4; 85, 1, 2, 4, 5; 86, 2-5, 8; 87, 1, 2; 88, 10; Ep. II, ix, 10; III, 13; Ap. 413, 417, 421; — apparatus, Ep. I, iv, 3 n.

— area, Dd. 48, 21 n. See Aûrvês.

Ceremonies, after a death, Dd. 23, 4 n; 81, 5 n; Ap. 429; — (yazûtô), Dd. 80, 1; Ap. 397; — (yazîn), Dd. 44, 9; 46, 5; 54, 10; Ep. I, iv, 9 n; Ap. 458; — annual, Dd. 64, 5; — of the sacred beings, Dd. 66, 17; — sacred, Dd. 37, 32; 44, 2, 4; Ep. II, i, 17 n.

Ceremony, Ep. I, viii, 6 n; II, iii, 7 n, 9 n; Ap. 431, 446 n; of guardian spirits, Dd. 28, 7; 48, 19, 40; 81, 15; of Srôsh, Dd. 28, 1, 6; 29, 1; 48, 40 n; 81, 11 n, 12-14; of the three nights, Dd. 28, 1, 5-7; Ap. 421 n; for living soul, Dd. 81, 1, 8, 10-12; Ap. 421 n; — (yazûtô), Dd. 79, 4, 6; 80, 2; 81, 11; — of Gêtékharîd, Dd. 79, 4, 5; 80, 2; — of Nâbar, Dd. 79, 4; — (yazîn), Dd. 48, 1, 2, 23, 36; 86, 7 n; — of the sacred beings, Dd. 44, 7, 8; 48, 24; — of the waters, Dd. 78, 19; — sacred, Dd. 22, 1; 28, 4, 5; 44, 17; 45, 6; 47, 9; 48, 1, 3, 5 n; 72, 1. See Bareshnûm.

Ch in Oriental words is printed K.
China, Int. 27; Ep. II, i, 12 n, viii, 5.
Christianity, Int. 24.
Christians, Int. 26; Dd. 12, 5 n; 19, 1 n; 37, 90; Ap. 428, 430.

Cleansing, Dd. 40, 1, 6, 8, 13, 14.
Clouds, Dd. 83, 1, 3, 4.
Co-existent one, Dd. 37, 21, 26; Ep. I, ii, 1.

Commentaries, Dd. 71, 2 n, 3 n; Ep. I, iv, 11 n, v, 8 n, vi, 1 n; Ap. 457 n. See Pahlavi.
Commentary (zand), Dd. 1, 1; 44, 2; 45, 5, 6; 47, 1, 2, 4-6, 8-10; — (kâstakô), Ep. I, v, 6 n.

Commentators, Ep. I, ii, 5 n, iv, 17 n; v, i n, vi, 1 n, x, 10 n; II, ii, 10 n; 13 n, ix, 7 n; Ap. 397.


Conjunctions of planets, Ep. II, ii, 10, 11.

Consecrating sacred cakes, Dd. 28, 1; 30, 1; 79, 7; 81, 13-15.

Constantly-beneficial place, Dd. 36, 3; 31, 24 n; — space, Dd. 37, 22, 24; 38, 3.

Corn-dealing, Dd. 49, 1-10.

Corps-eating dogs and birds, Dd. 15, 1, 4, 5; 16, 1, 7; 17, 1; 19, 18; 19, 1-3; Ap. 455, 456.

Creation of man, Dd. 64, 1-7.

Creator, Dd. 1, 0; 2, 4, 7, 17; 3, 2-4, 6, 7, 8 n, 10, 18, 20, 24, 4; 7, 2, 3, 5; 14, 5, 10, 5, 21, 4; 22, 1, 4; 26, 2; 31, 5-7; 36, 7; 37, 4, 6, 12, 16, 17, 22, 26, 37, 64, 65, 67, 75, 84, 96, 112-114, 131; 39, 2, 18; 64, 4; 65, 4, 5; 73, 3; 75, 3, 77, 4; 91, 9, 10; 93, 13; 94, 14; Ep. I, 0, xi, 12; II, ix, 13, 14; III, 22; Ap. 379 n, 386, 401, 408, 409, 412, 431, 432, 455.

Dâdîstan-i Din'k, Dd. 94, 1 n; Ap. 373, 394, 399 n, 414, 428; contents, Int. 22, 23; Gugarâtî trans., Int. 24; how composed, Dd. 1, 18-27; MSS., Int. 15-18; two versions, Int. 15, 19; written at Shiráz, Dd. 1, 17 n.

Daêva-worshippers, Dd. 38, 4 n.

Dahák, king, Dd. 2, 10 n; 86, 3; 87, (97), 121; 72, 5; 78, 2; Ap. 372, 374, 378, 418. See Az-i Dahák.

Dahîkan, Int. 16.

Dahmân âfn, see Blessing of the holy.
INDEX.

Dáithi peak, Dd. 20, 3 n; 21, 1, 2; 34, 1, 4.

— river, Dd. 21, 2 n; 90, 4.

Dakhma, see Depository.

Dândáá nask, Dd. 45, 25 n.


Dáraga r., Dd. 21, 2 n.

Darmesteter, Prof. J., Vend. trans., Dd. 20, 3 n; 31, 5 n, 24 n; 32, 4 n; 33, 4 n, 5 n; 38, 19 n; 78, 3 n; Ep. I, iv, 13 n.


Dates of Pahlavi books, Int. 27, 28; Ep. I, iv, 17 n; Ap. 392 n, 394, 397, 399, 415, 427, 428.


Deadly one, Dd. 88, 8.

Dead matter, Dd. 15, 5; 17, 7, 10; 17, 19 n; 18, 2; Ep. I, ii, 2; 11, 6 n.

Death demon, Dd. 23, 3 n; 30, 4 n.

— of the wicked, Dd. 20, 2 n.

Decree, Ep. I, iv, 7, v, 1 n, x, 7, 11; 12; II, ii, 1 n, 3, iii, 13 n, iv, 1, v, 2, 7, 10, iv, vii, 4.

Decrepitude demon, Dd. 23, 3.

Dedications, Dd. 30, 1; 43, 3, 4, 7-11; Ap. 447, 448.

Demon, Dd. 14, 6 n; 30, 4 n; 34, 47, 49, 81, 83, 97, 103, 108-110, 120, 122; 39, 17, 28; 77, 8, 10, 12; 83, 11-13; Ep. II, iii, 15 n, iv, 3; Ap. 372 n, 381, 418, 419, 444.

— of demons, Dd. 87, 49, 53, 56; Ap. 392.

Demons, Dd. 6, 3, 4; 16, 7, 17, 2, 3, 20; 95, 5 n; 27, 5, 6; 82, 5, 14; 33, 3-5; 37, 20, 27-29; 46, 53, 54, 59, 73, 81, 85, 87, 93; 102, 105, 110; 33, 11, 20; 41, 5; 46, 7; 48, 5, 12 n, 16, 20; 65, 5; 73, 3; 74, 2, 3; 75, 2; 76, 3; 81, 11; 83, 1; Ap. 377, 378, 402, 410-412, 415, 417-420, 422, 424, 437, 444; coupled with fiends, see Fiends.

Demon-worshippers, Dd. 57, 4; 88, 5 n.

Departure of the righteous, Dd. 20, 2 n.

Depository for the dead, Dd. 15, 5 n; 18, 4 n.

Destiny, Dd. 71, 1-4.

Destroyer, Dd. 17, 7; Ap. 395, 401.


Dimâvand m., Dd. 37, 97 n; Ap. 372 n.

Dinkard, book, Int. 19, 27, 29; Dd. 61, 3 n; Ap. 389 n, 415, 428; editor of, Int. 27; Dd. 88, 8 n; Ep. I, iii, 9 n; quoted, see Quotations.

Dínò, angel, Dd. 94, 2.

Director of the priests, Int. 13; Dd. 0 n; I, 10 n; 45, (5) 94, 13; Ep. II, ix, 12.

Dirhams, Dd. 52, 1, 2; 80, 3; 66, 2, 15-17, 20, 21, 32, 76, 13 n; 92, 1; 86, 1-3; 5, 7; 9-11.

Disciples, Dd. 1, 3; 4, 17; 45, 1-6; 46, 5; 66, 3; 11, 21, 24, 25, 30, 33; 81, 11; 85, 7; 86, 3, 6; 88, 9, 12; Ep. II, iii, 7; III, 16; Ap. 428.

Discipleship, Dd. 45, 1-3; 88, 9; Ep. II, v, 5.


Dog, shown to the dead, Dd. 17, 20; 18, 2; used in Baresñûm, Ap. 450-453.

Dowry, Dd. 53, 1 n.

Dráyān-gyūvinth sin, Dd. 79, 8 n.

Drón, see Sacred cake.

Drügāšān, Dd. 33, 4.

Drunkenness, Dd. 50, 3, 4; 51, 1-11.


Dū-hākht, grade of hell, Dd. 81, 3 n.

Dvāzād-hōmāst, rite, Dd. 48, 25; 78, 19; 81, 15.

Eating, desisting from, Dd. 35, 3; with a spoon, Dd. 28, 5.

Eclipses, Dd. 69, 1-4.


Elohim, Dd. 1, 3 n.

Endless light, Dd. 31, 24; 37, 22; 24, 64, 3; 91, 3 n, 4.

Enoch, Dd. 44, 16 n.

Epistle, Dd. 1, 2, 17; Ep. I, 0, 1, 2, ii, 1, iv, 7, v, 1, vi, 10, xi, 1, 2, 5, 10; II, 0, 1, 2, 3, v, 10 n, vii, 2, vii, 1, ix, 2, iii, 21.

Epistles of Mānūš-Šāhu, Int. xxv-xxviii; Ap. 394, 455.

Eradication of life, Dd. 15, 1, 3; 28, 3; of sin, Dd. 12, 1, 2, 5.

Ever-stationary, Dd. 20, 3; 87, 30 n; Ap. 426; of the righteous, Dd.

[18]
24, 6; of the wicked, Dd. 24, 6 n; 38, 2.

— one, Dd. 38, 7; 37, 102.
— spirit, Dd. 8, 11; 8, 5; 7, 3; 19, 1 n; 35, 2; 37, 21 n; 31 n; 53, 83, 96, 120; 48, 1, 22; 64, 5 n; 70, 2 n; 72, 9 n; Ep. I, ii, 1 n, 4; Ap. 437, 444.
— spirits, Dd. 37, 66.
— thoughts, words, and deeds, Dd. 2, 6; 20, 2; 24, 6; 25, 4; Ap. 384, 387.

Exorcism, Ep. I, vi, 6; II, ii, 7; Ap. 441, 444, 450 n, 454.

Exposure of the dead, Dd. 15, 1-6; 16, 1-8; 17, 1-20; 18, 1-4.

Farhank, woman, Dd. 48, 33.

Farmādar, Int. 13; Dd. 0 n. See Director.

Farmān sin, Dd. 40, 4 n; 78, (9 n.)

Farukhūzād, priest, Int. 27; Dd. 88, 8; Ep. I, iii, 9.

Fastening corpses to the ground, Dd. 17, 17; 18, 2.


Female things, see Male.

Fever demon, Dd. 23, 3.

Fiend, a, Dd. 37, 49, 120; 94, 1.
— of corruption, Dd. 17, 7 n; Ap. 436 n, 437-442, 444, 445, 450 n, 454; — the (archfiend), Dd. 1, 3, 6, 14; 2, 5, 7, 11; 8, 7, 19; 7, 3; 28, 4; 31, 8; 32, 7, 12; 37, 7, 12, 13, 14 n, 17-20, 22, 24, 25, 28, 29, 37, 44, 50, 59, 64-67, 72, 75-77, 79, 81, 83, 93, 99, 111, 112, 114, 116 n, 123; 39, 16; 48, 6; 48, 24; 75, 3, 4; 77, 2, 8, 10 n; 91, 8; 94, 8 n; Ep. I, ii, 2, 4, 5, 13; V, 3; Ap. 395; — the (inferior), Dd. 39, 11; 39, 28; 94, 2; Ap. 395.

Fiends, Dd. 19, 7; 38, 12; 87, 61, 74, 80, 84, 106; 89, 10; 48, 27, 37, 88, 7, 94, 4; Ap. 417; coupled with demons, Dd. 2, 13; 16, 8; 27, 2; 37, 44, 55, 57, 97, 104, 108; 39, 13, 14; 48, 1, 72, 10; 94, 3, 4; Ap. 384.

Fifty-seven years' preparation for resurrection, Dd. 86, 5, 7 n.


— for ceremonies, Dd. 28, 5, 48, 1, 2, 5; 48, 15, 21, 23, 78, 19; 68, 6; Ep. I, viii, 1-3; II, i, 17; Ap. 417, 432, 433.
— priest, Dd. 64, 3, 4.
— stand, Dd. 48, 15.
— temple, Dd. 81, 17 n. See Abode.
—to protect infants, Dd. 28, 2 n.
— wood, Dd. 43, 6; 48, 15; Ep. II, ix, 3; Ap. 417.

Firmament, Dd. 91, 2 n.

Foot, meas., Dd. 48, 5; Ap. 433 n, 434, 436, 448.

— faith, Dd. 41, 3; 42, 3, 3.
— Ap. 405 n; — habits, Dd. 78, 8, 9; Ep. II, i, 17; — woman, Dd. 78, 8, 15.

Foreigners, Dd. 41, 3 n, 6 n; 50, 1, 4; 68, 1, 2, 5.

Fourth day after death, Dd. 81, 15.
— night after death, Dd. 11, 1; 13, 1.

Fradasīf, region, Dd. 86, 5.

Frādād-gadman, man, Dd. 86, 4, 5.
— buarān, man, Dd. 86, 4 n.

Frādakhtō, chief, Dd. 90, 3, 8 n.

Frashakard, see Renovation.

Frāsiyāx, king, Dd. 70, 3; 90, 3 n.

Frasnāte, Av., Ep. II, iii, 2.

Fravāk, man, Dd. 37, 35.


Fravarāsān, rite, Dd. 44, 2 n.

Fravardīn, month, Dd. 43, 7 n.

Fravashi, Av., Dd. 2, 5 n. See Guardian spirit.

Frāyār (morning), Dd. 48, 26.

Frāsēn, king, Dd. 2, 10; 37, 35, 85, 97; 66, 5.

Frōbak fire, Ap. 373 n.


Fryān, man, Dd. 90, 3; Ap. 411 n.


Future existence, Dd. 2, 13 n; 14, 6; 32, 2; Ap. 382.

Gaēvān, man, Dd. 38, 3 n.

Gāh, see Period of the day.

Gāhanbārs, Dd. 44, 2 n. See Season-festivals.

INDEX.

Garðamán, Dd. 1, 3 n; 20, 3. See Heaven, supreme and highest.


Gáthas, Dd. 40, 5 n; 76, 7; Ep. I, vii, 10 n; Ap. 370 n-372 b, 390. See Sacred hymns.

Gáymard, man, Dd. 9, 10, 12; 4, 6; 28, 7; 86, 2; 37, 35 n, 46, 82; 64, 2, 5-7; Ap. 393 n, 401, 402, 411, 418 n.

Geiger, Dr., Dd. 31, 1 n.

Geldner, Dr., Ap. 426.

Genesis, book, Dd. 1, 3 n; 37, 22 n; 91, 2 n; Ap. 393 n, 429 n.


Gětő-kharihd, rite, Dd. 79, 4, 5; 80; Ep. III, 11 n.


Gěw, man, Dd. 36, 3 n.

God, Dd. 1, 3 n; Ap. 401; Cor. 479.

Gőkarn, tree, Dd. 37, 100 n; 48, 16.

Gōmēs, see Bull's urine.

Good religion, Dd. 1, 17; 5, 1; 37, 22; 41, 10; 42, 1, 3; 47, 1; 53, 1, 2, 5; 58, 2; 57, 2; 61, 3; 62, 1; 66, 15, 19, 78, 5; 78, 8, 9, 18, 19; 81, 17, 88, 8; 80, 2; 94, 12; Ep. I, iii, 10, vii, 5, x, 5; II, i, 8, 16, vi, 5; III, 21; Ap. 401, 415, 425.

— spirit, Dd. 3, 17; 7, 7; 81, 4; 42, 6.

— spirits, Dd. 1, 23; 16, 8; 37, 66; 48, 4; 91, 8.

— thoughts, words, and deeds, Dd. 2, 6, 12; 3, 10; 15, 2; 20, 2; 24, 4, 6; 25, 4; 38, 2; Ap. 387.

— works, Dd. 1, 4, 7; 5, 2, 3; 8, 1-6; 9, 3; 10, 1, 2; 11, 1, 2; 12, 1-5; 13, 1-4; 14, 1, 2, 4; 15, 2, 3, 5; 20, 3; 22, 1, 24, 2, 3; 25, 3, 4; 31, 2, 4, 10, 17, 19, 20; 38, 7, 15, 16 n; 34, 3; 37, 128; 38, 1, 3; 42, 3, 4; 46, 2; 48, 11; 50, 3, 4; 54, 10; 68, 24; 72, 12; 75, 5; 76, 1; 89, 3; 90, 7; 94, 7, 8 n; Ep. I, i, 3, 4, iv, 5; II, iii, 3; III, 15; Ap. 391, 393, 399, 402, 411, 412, 415, 419, 421-427, 442, 443.

Gőpátóh, land, Dd. 90, 4, 8 n.

Gőpatshah, chief, Dd. 90, 3, 4.

Gőr, town, Dd. 88, 7 n.


Gősá-gam, priest, Dd. 0 n. See Yődan-Yim.

Gőt-f Fryánó, chief, Dd. 90, 3 n.


Grades in heaven, Dd. 20, 4 n; 34, 3.

— in hell, Dd. 20, 4 n; 33, 2-5.


Growth of good works, Dd. 12, 1, 2, 4, 5.

— of sin, Dd. 12, 5.

Guardian, Dd. 56, 9; 61, 3; 62, 5-7; Ep. II, viii, 2.

— spirit, Dd. 2, 5; 3, 9; 37, 80.

— spirits, Dd. 17, 6; 31, 15 n; 37, 80, 131, 132; 91, 10; Ap. 369; — righteous, Dd. 17, 6 n; 28, 7; 37, 34; 48, 1, 21, 40; 81, 13, 15; 89, 5, 94, 12; Ep. II, ix, 13.

Guardianship, Dd. 54, 6, 9, 11; 56, 1, 4, 5, 7; 58, 1, 5; 61, 1, 3; 62, 5, 6; Ep. II, viii, 2, 3, ix, 4, 5.

Gůmná-dam, priest, Int. 13, Dd. 0 n.

Gutás, king, Dd. 37, 36 n. See Vistás.

Gámság, priest, Dd. 44, 16; Ap. 380.

Gődőn-dam, priest, Dd. 0 n.

Gůvůn-Gam, priest, Dd. 0 n.

Hadhánaépata, Av., Dd. 48, 16 n; Ap. 446 n. See Pomegranate.

Hadbyās, ox, Dd. 31, 13 n; 37, (99) 119; 48, 34; 90, 4.

Hádkokht nask, Dd. 48, 25; 94, 14 n.

Haměmál sin, Dd. 14, 3 n.

Hamistkán, Dd. 20, 3; 38, 2 n. See Ever-stationary.


Hara-berezaiti m., Dd. 20, 3 n.

Harlez, Prof. C. de, Dd. 38, 4 n; Ap. 369 n.


Haug's Essays, Dd. 31, 1 n; 37, 48 n; 39, 11 n, 21 n; 43, 5, 7, 7; 47, 1 n; 48, 21 n, 30 n, 31 n; 72, 4 n; Ap. 370 n, 384 n.

Hávan gáh, Dd. 48, 26 n.

Hawk, origin of, Ap. 419.

Heaven (vahít), Dd. 1, 3 n; 6, 7, 8; 14, 7; 20, 3; 24, 6; 36, (1-5); 27, 4 n; 81, 1-4, 9, 10, 12, 15; 17, 24 n, 25; 38, 2 n; 34, 1; 37,
PAHLAVI TEXTS.

38, 43, 75, 79; 38, in; 44, 20, 22 n; 94, 9, 10; Ap. 376-379, 197, 415 n, 421, 426; grades in, Dd. 20, 4 n; 34, 3.
Heaven (gardêmân), highest, Dd. 1, 3; — supreme, Dd. 20, 3; 24, 6; 31, 4, 15, 17, 22, 24, 25, 37, 25, 50; 36, 1 n, 4 n; 80, 2; 94, 12; Ap. 374, 376-378, 421.
Hell, Dd. 8, 6, 8; 14, 6, 7; 20, 4; 21, 8; 35, 2, 6; 37, (1-7); 32, 1, 3, 4, 7, 10, 14; 33, 1, 2 n, 5, 34, 1; 37, 108, 110, 120; 41, 10; 75, 2 n, 3 n, 5 n; 91, 3 n; 94, 9, 10; Ap. 373, 397, 417-419, 422, 426, 444 n; grades in, Dd. 20, 4; 33, 2-5.
Heterodox, Ep. II, ix, 8.
Hígar, see Bodily refuse.
High-priest, Int. 13, 14, 27; Dd. 0 n; 1, 3 n, 4 n, 17 n, 20, 21; 8, 16; 22, 5; 39, 23; 41, 3 n, 44, 1, 13, 16, 20; 75, 2; 93, 15; Ep. I, 0 n, iii, 2 n, 7, vi, 5, vii, 4, ix, 10, 13, 15, 8, 10, 10, 2, 1; 10, 9, ii, 9 n, v, 4, vi, 4; Ap. 401, 413, 442, 443; — supreme, Int. 13.
High-priesthood, Dd. 89, 1; Ep. II, ix, 5; Ap. 443; — supreme, Ep. II, i, 13 n.
High-priests, Int. 27; Dd. 1, 6, 20, 21; 8, 14; 21, 2; 23, 3; 27, 7; 37, 62, 107; 39, 8, 42, 6, 48; 34; 65, 5; 71, 3; 76, 2; 88, 6; 89, 1; 94, 12, 13; Ep. I, ii, 4, 6, 12, iv, 7, 10, 14, 16, 18, v, 1-3, vi, 2, 3, vii, 5, 6, 14, viii, 7, ix, 4, 9, 11, 15, x, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12; II, ii, 2, 7, iii, 4, 14, v, 2, 4, vii, 5, ix, 8; III, 2, 5, 7, 16; Ap. 397.
Híkar, see Bodily refuse.
Hindas, Dd. 39, 30 n; Ep. I, viii, 3 n.
Hindva m., Dd. 92, 5 n.
Hoffmann, Prof. G., Dd. 0 n; Ep. I, xi, 6 n.
Holes (magha), see Ablution holes.
Holy-water, Dd. 48, 30, 32 n, 34; 68, 15, 17, 20, 25, 32; 78, 19; 88, 1, 3, 5, 6, 9; Ep. I, ii, 3, 13, viii, 1 n; Ap. 417, 420, 447.
Hóm juice, Dd. 48, 5 n, 16 n, 27, 30, 31; — mortar, Dd. 48, 14, 16 n, 31; — pestle, Dd. 48, 31 n; — plant, Dd. 48, 16; — twigs, Dd. 48, 14 n, 16 n, 30 n, 32 n; Ep. III, 14; — white, Dd. 31, 13 n; 37, 100.
Hóshâng, king, Dd. 2, 10; 37, 35; 65, 5.
Household attendance, Dd. 31, 8; 37, 16, 17, 21; — attendant, Dd. 31, 1, 5; 32, 7; 43, 1; 48, 41; Ep. I, iii, 9.
Húgar m., Dd. 37, 118 n. See Hókur.
Hókur m., Dd. 92, 5. See Húgar.
Húmân, priest, Dd. 44, 20.
Húsh, beverage, Dd. 31, 13 n.
Húshédar, apostle, Dd. 2, 10; 37, 36, 43, 94 n; 48, 30; 66, 10 n; Ep. II, iii, 1 n.
Húshédar-mâh, apostle, Dd. 2, 10; 37, 36, 43, 94 n, 97 n; 48, 30; Ep. II, iii, 1 n.
Húspárám nask, Int. 24; Dd. 61, 3; 66, 1 n.
Hvætvedatha, Av., Dd. 65, 1 n; Ap. 387 n, 390, 391.
Hvare-kâeshman, man, Dd. 2, 10 n; 36, 4 n.
Hvembya, title, Dd. 90, 3 n.
Hvôvas, family, Dd. 44, 16.
Ibairaz, man, Dd. 90, 8 n.
Immortal rulers, Dd. 87, 101 n; 90, 3.
India, Dd. 18, 4 n; Ap. 446 n.
Indian Antiquary, Dd. 0 n; Ep. I, xi, 6 n.
Iđra, demon, Ep. I, x, 9 n.
Infanticide, Dd. 78, 5.
Infidel, Dd. 50, 4; 415, 425.
Infidelity, Dd. 41, 1; 50, 3; 78, 8, 9, 19; Ap. 415.
Inheritance, Dd. 54, 9-11; 56, 8, 9; 62, 1-4.
Inspiration, Dd. 71, 3 n; Ep. I, iii, 4 n, 5 n.
Inward prayer (vâg), Dd. 40, 5, 7 n; 9 n; 79, 1 n, 3, 4, 7, 8 n; Ep. I, x, 1; Ap. 448, 449, 451.
Irân, Int. 14, 25; Dd. 38, 7 n; 37, 94 n; 53, 6; 66, 15; 88, 1; 90, 6; 94, 12; Ep. II, i, 16,
INDEX.

iv, 4-6, v, 13, vi, 4, vii, 6, viii, 4, ix, 1; I11, i, 3, 17, 19, 21.
Irani ans, Dd. 38, 7 n; 90, 3 n.
Ithâ, Av., Dd. 78, 1-4, 7, 8, 9 n.
J in Oriental words is printed G.
Jamâspî Mincohariji, Dastûr, Dd. 48, 25 n; Ap. 383 n, 392 n.
Jew, Int. 26; Ap. 399.
Jude, epistle, Dd. 44, 16 n.
Judges, Dd. 1, 6; Ap. 407.

Kah tar, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9 n.
Kai-Apîveh, prince, Dd. 48, 33 n.
— Kâûs, king, Dd. 97, 36 n.
— Kavâd, king, Dd. 87, 35; 48, 33.
See Kavâd.
— Khûsrû, king, Dd. 36, 3; 37, 36; 90, 6, 8 n.
— Vîstasp, king, Dd. 37, 36; 44, 16 n. See Vîstasp.
Kâmâk-sûd, man, Dd. 86, 4, 5.
— vakhshûn, man, Dd. 86, 4, 5.
Kangdez, land, Dd. 87, 36 n; 80, 3 n, 5, 8 n.
Kasheri caves, Dd. 0 n; Ep. I, xi, 6 n.
Karap, title, Dd. 72, 8; Ap. 384, 412.
Kavâd, king, Ep. I, iv, 17. See Kâl-
Kavâd.
Kayanians, Dd. 90, 5.
Keresâsâp, hero, Int. 18, 19, 28; Dd.
17, 6; 96, 3; 37, 35, 97; 48, 41 n; 72, 4 n; Ap. 369-381.
Kâshwars, Dd. 36, 5 n. See Regions.
Khân, platform, Dd. 48, 14; 66, 27 n.
Khavzô, Av., Dd. 78, 3 n; 74, 2 n.
Khôr sin, Dd. 78, 14 n.
Khrâfstras, see Noxious creatures,
Khrûtasp, man, Dd. 78, 2 n.
Khshnûmanûn, see Shhûmanûn.
Khûmbik, title, Dd. 90, 3, 8 n.
Khûr, day, Dd. 48, 10.
Khurâsân, land, Int. 14, 25; Ep. II,
i, 2 n, 12 n, v, 3 n.
Khûr-kashm, man, Dd. 2, 10; 38, 4, 5.
Khûsrû Nôshirvân, king, Int. 27;
Khvaniras, region, Dd. 38, 5, 7; 90, 3, 8 n; Ep. I, i, 5.
Khvâpar (persistent), Dd. 19, 7 n.
Khvêtûk-das, Int. 18, 19, 28, 29;
Dd. 65, 1 n; Ap. 389-430, 433 n. See Next-of-kin mar-
riage.
Kîrmân, land and town, Int. 13, 16,
17, 25, 27; Dd. 0 n; 94, 13; Ep.
I, o n; II, i, 13, ix, 12; III, i.
Kûfân, town, Ep. II, 1, 12 n.
Kûstik, Dd. 38, 7, 29; Ap. 383-387.
See Sacred thread-girdle.
Kakâd-i Dâlîtik m., Dd. 21, 3 n. See
Dâlitih peak.
Kamrâ, bird, Dd. 90, 3 n.
Kinvad bridge, Dd. 80, 3, 21, (1-7);
29, 2 n; 24, 2, 6; 26, 2, 6; 32,
4, 34, 3, 4, 42, 2 n; 44, 20 n;
81, 18 n; 85, 7 n; Ep. I, iii, 9;
II, v, 17 n.
Attrâvôkô-mîyânô r., Dd. 90, 3.

Lamp for ceremonies, Dd. 49, 2, 6.
Leader of the religion, Int. 13, 22,
27; Dd. 0 n; 1, 6, 10, 23, 24;
44, 20 n; 46, 5, 88, 8; Ep.
I, iii, 10, vii, 5; II, vi, 5, ix,
12 n.
Lethargy, demon, Dd. 29, 3.
Libertinism, Dd. 78, 14, 15.
Liturgy, Dd. 2, 8; Ap. 432.
Lôhârâsp, king, Dd. 78, 2 n.
Lord, Dd. 1, 20; Ap. 384, 385, 422.
Lunar mansions, Ep. II, ii, 9 n.

Mâh-rû, Dd. 45, 5 n; 48, 14, 17.
Maiden meeting the soul, Dd. 20,
3 n; 21, 6; 24, 5; 25, 5.
Maidhyô-zaremaya, season, Dd. 31,
14 n.
Maidyôk-zarem butter, Dd. 31, 13.
Malkôs, Dd. 87, 94; Cor. 479.
Manicheans, Ep. II, i, 12 n.
Mânsar (text, liturgy), Dd. 1, 7; 2, 8.
Manuscripts described, Int. 14-19, 29, 30.
Mânûsûhâr, author, Int. 13-15, 19, 22-28; Dd. 0; 1, 1, 3 n., 17 n.; 94, 13; Ep. I, o, xi, 12; II, o, i, 11 n., v, 10 n., ix, 1 n., 12; III, o, i, 21; Ap. 455, 458 n.
— king, Dd. 37, 35.
Marhayâ, man, Dd. 37, 82; 64, 2 n.; Ap. 416. See Mashyâh.
Marhûyîth, woman, Dd. 37, 82; 64, 2 n.; Ap. 416. See Mashyûyîoth.
Mark, gospel, Dd. 37, 106 n.; Ap. 398.
Mars, planet, Ep. II, ii, 9, 10.
Mas'ûdî, Ep. II, i, 12 n.
Mashyâh, man, Dd. 64, 2, 6 n.; 65, 2; 77, 4; Ap. 402, 411. See Marhayâ.
Mashyûyîoth, woman, Dd. 64, 2, 6 n.; 65, 2; 77, 4; Ap. 402, 411. See Marhûyîth.
Master (rad), Dd. 1, 20; 44, 13; Ap. 385, 442.
Mazdak, heretic, Ep. I, iv, 17 n.; II, i, 12 n.
Mazda-worship, Int. 24; Dd. 1, 3; 2, 11; 21, 2 n.; 39, 8 n.; 94, 1 n.; Ep. II, i, 12 n.; Ap. 386, 412, 414, 415, 422 n., 423, 427.
— worshippers, Dd. 3, 18, 4, 2; 48, 33; 75, 3 n.; Ap. 387, 448 n.
— worshippers, Int. 14, 24-27; Dd. 2, 15; 4, 4; 5, 2; 39, 1, 3; 37, 36 n., 48, 93; 39, 12; 41, 1, 7; 42, 1; 44, 13; 45, 2 n., 6 n.; 49, 39; 66, 10 n.; 72, 2; 90, 8 n.; Ep. I, ii, 12, iii, 11, viii, 1 n., x, 11-13; III, i, 6; Ap. 398, 429, 431 n., 432, 452, 453.
— superiors, Dd. 41, 9.
Mâzendarân, land, Dd. 37, 44.
Mâzûnikân demons, Dd. 37, 81; Ap. 437.
Mâyôk-mâh, com., Ep. I, v, 6, 8, vi, 3, 7-9, 11, vii, 7, ix, 1, 2, 4, 7, 10, 12-14; II, ii, 5-8, iii, 1 n.; III, 7; Ap. 449.
Melted metal ablution, Dd. 32, 12, 13; 97, 110.
Menstruation, Dd. 78, 4.
Messiah, Dd. 87, 90, 91.
Metals, origin of, Dd. 64, 7.
Meteors, Dd. 37, 55.
Milk, food, Dd. 28, 5.
Millenniums, Dd. 37, 11 n., 33, 97 n.; 64, 4; 66, 10, 80, 7.
Miscarriage, Dd. 78, 6.
Mitôkht, demon, Dd. 37, 50, 51 n., 52.
Mitrô, angel, Dd. 14, 3; 81, 11; the sun, Dd. 31, 14.
— khûrsched, man, Int. 22, 23; Dd. 0.
Môbad, see Priest, officiating.
— of môbads, man, Dd. 44, 21 n.; Ep. I, iv, 15 n.
Moon's influence, Dd. 71, 2.
Mountains, growth of, Dd. 70, 2.
Muhammadan conquest, Dd. 88, 8 n.; Ap. 399.
Muhammadans, Int. 26; Ep. I, viii, 3 n.
Mûspar, comet, Dd. 37, 55 n.
Myazd, see Sacred feast.
Nûbar, rite, Dd. 79, 4, 12. See Nâ-nûbar.
Nâvták r., Dd. 90, 3 n., 8 n.
Naqû-i Rustam ins., Dd. 01, 3 n.; Cor. 479.
Naremanâu, title, Dd. 72, 4 n.; Ap. 369.
Nasâ, see Dead matter.
Nâsk, Dd. 48, 25 n.; 71, 3 n.; Ap. 371 n.; named, Int. 24; Dd. 48, 25 n.; 61, 3; 68, 1 n.; 71, 3 n.; 94, 14 n.; Ep. I, viii, 1, 6; 7; Ap. 373, 394, 395, 397; See Scripture.
INDEX.

Naks, Int. 24; Dd. 37, 36 n.; 45, 2 n.; 47, 1 n.; Ep. I, x, 7; Ap. 370 n., 371 n., 394.

Nasūz, demon, Dd. 17, 7, 8, 20 n.; 48, 8 n.; Ep. I, iv, 3; Ap. 438 n., 450 n.

Nāʿungkas, demon, Dd. 94, 2 n. See Nakšišyā.

Next-of-kin marriage, Int. 25; Dd. 37, 82; 65, 1-5; 77, 6; 78, 19; Ap. 387 n., 413; 427-429; defi

Nīhīv, demon, Dd. 37, 52.

Nikhshahpūr, com., Int. 28; Ep. II, 1, 2 n.; Ap. 397.


Nirangi kustī, Int. 28; Dd. 39, 19 n., 27 n.; Ap. 183-188.

Nirangistan, book, Int. 28; Dd. 66, 1; 28, 1 n.; Ep. I, iv, 15 n., 17 n.

Nīshahpūr, com., Int. 27; Ep. I, iv, 15, 17; man, Ep. II, 1, 2 n.; town, Ep. II, i, 2 n., 3 n.


Nīshvahpūr, man or town, Int. 14; Ep. II, i, 2.

Niyāz, demon, Dd. 37, 52; 77, 8.

Nöldke, Prof., Dd. 88, 7 n.; 94, 13 n.; Ep. I, iv, 17 n.; Cor. 479.

Nōnābar, rite, Dd. 79, 4 n., 11. See Nābar.

Noosing the soul, Dd. 23, 3.


Nōshirvān, title, Int. 27; Ep. I, iv, 17 n.

Noxious creatures, Dd. 17, 12 n., 16; 18, 3; 97, 52.

Ocean, Dd. 48, 32 n.; 92, 2, 5; 98, 2, 3, 8, 11 n.; Ap. 418. See Wide-formed.

Omniscient wisdom, Dd. 37, 43, 75; 39, 11.

Ordeal by poison, Dd. 37, 74.

Original good work, Dd. 12, 1, 5.

— sin, Dd. 12, 5.

Orion, Dd. 97, 48 n.; 39, 11 n.


Ouseley, Sir W., Int. 25 n.; Ep. I, o n.


Pāpak, man, Dd. 88, 2 n.

Pārs, land, Int. 13, 22, 27; Dd. 0 n.; 1, 10 n., 17 n.; 45, 5; 66, 3, 15, 21, 28; 88, 1; 89, 1; 94, 13; Ep. I, o n., xi, 7; II, i, 8, v, 2, 5, 9, ix, 12; III, 1.

Paradgā, chief, Dd. 90, 3 n.


Pattī, Dd. 41, 5 n.; Ap. 385 n. See Renunciation.


Pātrvāgīrā, man, Dd. 48, 33.


Pebbles used in Bareshnūm, Ep. I, vii, 16, 17, ix, 6; II, iii, 12; Ap. 447.

Period of the day, Dd. 49, 3, 8, 9; Ap. 448.


Peshotanjī Behramji, Dastūr, Int. 17 n, 30; Dd. 6, 2 n; 44, 2 n; 81, 1 n; Ep. II, ii, 9 n; Ap. 389 n, 392 n, 399 n, 403 n, 404 n, 410 n.

Peshyotanā, chief, Dd. 37, 36; 90, 3, 5, 7, 8 n.

Pēsinās, land, Dd. 90, 8 n. See Pēśyansāi.

Pēśuḍā, Int. 13; Dd. 0 n; 1, 10. See Leader.

Pēśyansāi, land, Dd. 17, 6 n; 90, 3 n. See Pēśinās.

Phases of the moon, Dd. 68, 1-6.


Pīrūzābād, town, Dd. 88, 7 n.

Pīzīn, land, Dd. 17, 6 n.


Pleides, Dd. 37, 48; 89, 11 n.

Pomegranate bush, Dd. 48, 16; Ap. 446 n.

Pontiff (rad), Int. 13; Dd. 0 n; 1, 6; 94, 13, 14; Ep. II, ix, 14; III, 1, 22.

Pōryūkhēshih, man, Dd. 90, 3, 8 n. Pōryūzēshih, see Primitive faith.

Prayer before eating, Dd. 79, 1 n; imperfect, Dd. 79, 1-12. See Inward prayer.

Priest, Dd. 79, 4 n; 86, 4 n; Ap. 417 n, 432 n, 436 n, 437 n; (aēr-pat), Int. 13; Dd. 0 n; 45, 1, 3-6; 66, 1, 2, 18, 20, 33; 88, 5; Ep. I, 0; II, 0, 1, 17, iii, 4; 9 n, ix, 3; Ap. 373, 400; (maga-vag), Ep. I, iv, 11, vi, 6. See High-priest.

— chief, Dd. 83, 4 n, 6 n; (mōbad of mōbads), Dd. 44, 21; Ep. I, x, 8.

— officiating (magōpat), Dd. 44, 1; 46, 5; (zōtō), Dd. 48, 13, 21, 23; 66, 4; Ep. II, viii, 3; — supreme, Ep. I, iv, 15; see mōbad of mōbads.

Priesthood, Ep. I, iii, 11 n; II, ix, 3 n; Ap. 414; (aēr-patih), Dd. 45, 1-4; 46, 1, 4, 5 n; (aśra-vōhī), Dd. 71, 3; Ep. I, ii, 6, x, 5.

Priestly duties, Dd. 45, 1; 46, 2; 88, 1 n.

— lordship, Int. 13; Dd. 0 n; Ep. II, i, ii, 2, 4, 16, iii, 3; vi, 3; III, o.

— men, Dd. 1, 5 n, 21; 66, 6, 12, 17; 83, 1-6; 88, 4; Ep. I, iii, 10, iv, 7, 10, x, 3, 5, 13, xi, i, 3, 4, 8; II, i, 8, v, 4.

Priests, Dd. 66, 30 n; Ep. I, ii, 6 n; II, v, 14 n; Ap. 424, 428; (aēr-patān), Dd. 1, 7; 45, 2, 3, 5; 46, 2; 66, 26; 86, 7; Ep. I, x, 7; II, ii, 7; Ap. 422; (aśra-vōhān), Dd. 45, 5; 46, 6; (magōvōgan), Ep. I, vi, 6; (magōpatān), Dd. 1, 6.

— officiating (magōpatān), Dd. 45, 5; Ep. I, iv, 10, 15; (zōtān), Dd. 49, 21.


Primeval ox, Dd. 37, 46; 69, 2, 3; Ap. 380 n.


Primitive faith, Dd. 1, 23; 41, 10.

94, 1, 7, 12, 13; Ep. I, iv, 1, 6, 10, vi, 6, ix, 13, 15, x, 6, 10; II, iii, 14; III, 5, 7, 16, 23; Ap. 411.

Producers of the renovation, Dd. 86, 1-7.

Proper and improper, Dd. 44, 2; 47, 2, 4, 9. See Shāyast Lāshāyast.

Propitiations, Dd. 29, 1; 30, 2; 48, 21 n. See Dedications.


Punishment for sin, Dd. 6, 5, 6; 13, 1, 4; 14, 1, 6-8; 19, 7; 20, 2; 24, 4, 6; 27, 1, 5, 6; 32, 2, 9, 11, 14; 83, 3; 43, 5, 8; Ap. 443.

Purifier, Ep. I, ii, 6, 9, 14, 4, 8, 9, vi, 1, 3, 4, 7, vii, 7, 9, 17, ix, 4, x, 3; II, ii, 1, 3, 7, 8, iii, 3, 10-12, iv, 4-6, vii, 5, 6, ix, 9; III, 6, 8, 9; Ap. 432, 433 n, 446, 449, 451, 452, 454.

Purifying cup, Dd. 38, 8; Ep. I, vii, 4, ix, 12.

Pūtik sea, Dd. 17, 18 n.

Qandahār, town, Dd. 17, 6 n.

Quotations from AV., Dd. 74, 3 n; Ap. 397, 398.

— from But., Dd. 37, 43 n.

— Dk., Dd. 44, 20 n; 90, 8 n; 94, 1-17; Ep. I, vii, 1 n; Ap. 370-372, 394-397, 399-413.

— Mkh., Dd. 37, 28 n; 90, 3 n; Ap. 381, 382, 399.
INDEX.

— Vend., Dd. 20, 3 n; 30, 4 n; 31, 5 n; 32, 4 n; 38, 5 n; 72, 5 n; Ep. I, iv, 3; II, iii, 5, vi, 2 n; Ap. 397.
— Yas., Dd. 28, 7; 37, 48 n; 39, 12; 78, 1 n; Ap. 385-387, 391, 448 n, 449.
— not identified, Dd. 4, 4, 5; 7, 3, 4, 7; 12, 3-5; 18, 3; 39, 13; 37, 121; 38, 1, 23; 41, 10; 42, 7; 44, 12, 21; 46, 5; 98, 15-17; Ep. I, iii, 8, 9, vii, 4, viii, 7; II, i, 10.

Rad (master, pontiff), Int. 13; Dd. On, 1, 6, 20; 36, 244, 44, 13 n; 94, 13.
Râi, town, Int. 27; Ep. II, i, 13.
Rain, Dd. 48, 32; 80, 3 n; 83, 1-17; Ap. 378 n, 452.
Rainbow, Dd. 87, 1-3; 91, 2 n, 8 n.
Râm, angel, Dd. 28, 2 n; 30, 4 n.
Râoñas-kâshman, man, Dd. 2, 10 n; 36, 4 n.
Râpitvan, rite, Dd. 44, 2 n.
Râshù, angel, Dd. 14, 4; 21, 4 n; 30, 2, 3 n; 31, 11; 37, 42 n; 44, 20 n; 78, 17 n; Ep. I, ii, 1.
Ready money, Dd. 58, 4 n.
Recompense for good works, Dd. 5, 3; 6, 5, 7; 12, 4; 18, 1; 81, 25; Ap. 442.
Reed, meas., Dd. 21, 3, 5; 48, 5; Ap. 395, 432.
Regions of the earth, Dd. 36, 5 n, 6, 7; 92, 6.
Religious rites (dhn), Dd. 39, 25; 42, 6; 47, 1; 80, 2; 90, 6; Ep. I, vii, 9; II, ix, 8; — all, Dd. 44, 2, 4, 5, 7, 9; 48, 5, 54, 5; 66, 1-4, 6, 7, 11, 12, 15, 17-19, 22, 25, 27, 30-32; 78, 19; 81, 14; 83, 1-6; 85, 5-7; 88, 2, 3, 6, 7; 88, 1, 3, 5-7, 9-11; Ap. 424.
Renovation of the universe, Dd. 1, 3; 2, 6, 10, 13, 15; 8, 18; 4, 5; 7, 2; 31, 10, 16; 32, 6, 10, 12; 35, 2, 3; 36, 1-4, 6; 37, 22, 38, 98, 107, 120; 39, 13; 41, 6; 48, 4, 16; 77, 6, 7; Ap. 400, 401.
Renunciation of sin, Dd. 41, 5, 7, 10, 11; 48, 20; 78, 17; 79, 10; Ep. III, 18, 20; Ap. 380, 384, 395.
Resurrection, Dd. 1, 3; 2, 8, 10 n; 8, 1 n; 18, 4; 14, 6 n; 16, 7, 8; 19, 7; 31, 13 n, 25; 32, 10, 35, 1; 37, 1, 3, 100 n; 76, 5-5; Ep. II, iii, i n; Ap. 378, 382, 417 n, 423 n.
Retribution, Dd. 12, 2; 41, 9, 11; 76, 5, 78, 1, 17, 78, 3, 10; Ep. II, iii, 4.
Righteous gifts, Dd. 44, 19; 46, 5, 7; 60, 2; 84, 3; Ap. 421.
Ritual, Dd. 46, 6; Ap. 415, 421, 422, 432, 446.
Rivâyât, Pahl., Int. 15, 18, 28; Ap. 373, 414, 415, 423, 426, 428; quoted, see Quotations.
— Pers., Int. 28; Dd. 52, 1 n; 81, 13 n; Ep. I, vi, 1 n, vii, 8 n, 167 n; Ap. 373, 381, 414, 442, 428; quoted, see Quotations.
River-beds, Dd. 70, 1-5.
Rôshanô-âshman, man, Dd. 2, 10; 36, 4, 5.
Rûbânîc sin, Dd. 14, 3 n.
Sacred being (yêtâât), Dd. 39, 6.
— beings (yazzâd), Dd. 1, 3, 6, 7, 25; 2, 10, 11; 3, 16; 17, 20; 22, 1, 2, 5, 28, 2; 31, 18 n; 37, 10, 21, 58, 72-74, 88, 97, 98, 108; 39, 8, 19, 23, 32; 40, 3, 6-8, 12; 41, 9; 44, 7, 8; 46, 7; 46, 3; 48, 4, 5; 50-22, 24, 26, 37, 38; 46, 17, 23; 71, 2; 77, 2; 79, 12; 85, 2, 5; 86, 8; 87, 2; 88, 10; 93, 15; Ep. I, o, i, 1, 3, 5; ii, 4, 14; II, i, 1, 2, vi, 1, vii, 2, 5; III, o, 22; Ap. 400, 444, 454. See Angels.
— cake (drân), Dd. 28, 1; 30, (1,) 2, 4; 43, 1-4, 6, 7; 79, 7, 11; 81, 13-15.
Sacred ceremony, see Ceremony.
— feast (myazd), DD. 47, 1 ; 82, 4 ; 83, 4 ; 84, 4 ; Ap. 426.
— fire, DD. 48, 11 n ; 34, 39 ; 66, 21 ; 81, 18 n ; 89, 1 ; 90, 2, 3, 6 ; Ep. 1, iii, 11, 13, 14 ; II, viii, 3.
— hymns (gathas), DD. 20, 3 ; 51, 9 ; 79, 7 ; 86, 4 ; Ep. 1, ii, 12 ; Ap. 390, 397.
— milk, DD. 48, 33.
— shirt, DD. 38, 19 n, 21 ; 40, 1, 2.
— thread-girdle (kustik), DD. 80, 1, 19-25, 27, 30 ; 40, 1, 3 ; 43, 5 n ; Ap. 383.
— twigs (baresm), DD. 43, 5 ; 48, 14 n, 17 ; Ep. I, iv, 3 ; III, 1, 13 ; Ap. 432, 433.
Sad-dar Bundahis, book, DD. 70, 4 n.
Sadvästarân assembly, DD. 14, 5 n.
Saêna bird, DD. 90, 3 n.
Sagastân, land, DD. 30, 2 n.
Sakâdâm nask, Int. 24 ; Ep. I, viii, 6, 7.
Sâh, man, DD. 48, 41 ; Ap. 381.
Sâmân, title, DD. 17, 6 ; 36, 3 ; 37, 97 ; 48, 41 n ; Ap. 369.
Sarakh, town, Int. 13, 25, 27 ; Ep. II, i, 12 n, v, 3.
Saršk, ox, DD. 37, 99 n.
— inscription, DD. 91, 3 n ; Cor. 479.
Satan, DD. 37, 106 n.
Sata-târâkâ, lun. man., Ep. II, ii, 9 n.
Saturn, planet, Ep. II, ii, 9, 10.
Saukavastân, land, DD. 90, 4 n.
Sâvâh, region, DD. 38, 5.
Scripture (avesta), Ap. 443 ; (nask), DD. 48, 25, 28, 34, 38 ; 61, 3.
Season-festivals, DD. 89, 1 n ; 47, 47 ; 48, 8 ; Ep. I, viii, 3 ; Ap. 426.
Seeds, see Source and Tree.
Ség, demon, DD. 38, 28 n.
Shâhânâmah, book, DD. 17, 6 n ; 37, 97 n ; 70, 3 n ; Ap. 369 n.
Shâhpâhr, priest, Int. 13 ; Ep. I, iii, 10.
Shâtvaró, angel, DD. 48, 1 n, 17 n ; Ap. 415, 434 n ; month, DD. 1, 17.
Shaving the head, Ap. 408.
Shîrzâ, town, Int. 14, 22, 25, 27 ; DD. 1, 17 ; 88, 7 n ; Ep. I, iii, 13 ; II, i, 11, v, 7, 4, 10, viii, i, 3.
Shinfâmanâ (dedication, propitiation), DD. 29, 1 ; 30, 1.
Showing a dog to the dead, DD. 17, 20 ; 18, 2.
Sin, DD. 11, 2 ; 12, 3 ; 15, 1, 2, 24, 2, 3 ; 25, 3 ; 32, 6 ; 37, 79, 40, 4, 45, 6, 50, 3 ; 75, 2, 78, 14, 15 ; 79, 2, 3 ; 89, 1 ; 94, 7, 8 n ; Ep. I, viii, 3 ; II, i, 11 ; Ap. 372, 378, 380 n, 399, 422, 424 ; account of, DD. 13, 1-4 ; 14, 1, 2, 4, 31, 2, 10 ; accumulation of, DD. 32, 12 ; 34, 4 ; 37, 111 ; affecting accusers, DD. 14, 3 ; atonement for, DD. 12, 2, 4 ; 10, 4 ; 41, 8, 10 ; 73, 11 ; 75, 5 ; 78, 17, 19 ; 79, 12 ; Ap. 414 ; confinement of, DD. 39, 10, 20, 23 ; deliverance from, Ep. I, ii, 5 ; demons of, DD. 32, 5, 11, 12 ; 34, 4 ; 37, 110 ; grievous, DD. 39, 1 ; 50, 2 ; 78, 16 ; 79, 8 ; Ep. III, 11 n ; Ap. 417 ; growth of, DD. 11, 2 ; 13, 5 ; 37, 109 ; heinous, DD. 49, 4, 5 ; 72, 1, 2 ; 76, 3 ; 77, 1 ; 78, 2 ; Ap. 423 ; impotence of, DD. 37, 112 ; imputed, DD. 42, 4 ; 61, 4, 78, 9, 10 ; Ap. 456-458 ; of apostasy, DD. 41, 1-6 ; of running about uncovered, DD. 40, 1, 4 ; source of, Ep. I, ii, 3 ; store of, DD. 26, 5 ; washing away of, DD. 37, 111. See Bödyôzid, Drâyân-gâyûnih, Eradication, Farmân, Hamêmâl, Khôr, Original, Punishment, Renunciation, Retribution, Tanûpâhr.
Sinfulness, DD. 25, 6 ; 48, 19 ; 71, 2, 4 ; 72, 10 ; 77, 12 ; 78, 1, 15, 18 ; 79, 8 ; Ep. II, ix, 2 ; III, 0 ; Ap. 379.
Sinners, put to death, see Slaying.
INDEX.

Sinners, seven heinous, Dd. 73, 2-9.
Sirius, star, Dd. 93, 1 n; Ap. 418 n.
Sirkân, town, Int. 14, 25-27; Ep. 1, 0, xi, 4 n; 11, 1, 4, 12 n, v, 2, 5 n, 9, 14, vi, 4 n, vii, 1, 3 n, viii, 1.
Srôzah, Dd. 43, 7 n; 79, 4 n.
Styâvash, prince, Dd. 37, 36; 90, 5, 6 n.
Sky, nature of, Dd. 91, 1-3, 8-10; three parts of, Dd. 37, 44-31; 45, 46; 38, 14, 15 n; 73, 2 n.
Slaying heinous sinners, Dd. 76, 1-4.
Solomon, king, Dd. 38, 17 n; Ap. 390.
Soma, plant, Dd. 48, 16 n.
Sôshâns, apostle, Dd. 2, 10, 12, 13; 4, 6; 38, 7, 38, 4, 5; 37, 36, 43, 100 n; 48, 30; Ep. 1, 3, 3.
Ii, iii, 1 n; Ap. 417, 444; com., Ep. 1, v, 1, 6, vi, 1, 2, ix, 1, 4, 15; ii, ii, 7, 111, 7.
Soul, Dd. 3, 8; 5, 5; 8, 4-6; 0, 1; 4, 12, 3, 4; 14, 6, 7, 18, 2.
16, 1-4; 28, 7, 24, 1-4, 5 n.
26, 1-4; 27, 5, 6; 28, 2, 5, 7;
31, 1, 4, 7, 8, 15-17, 20; 32, 4, 16; 37, 79, 108; 38, 3, 41, 8;
43, 2, 6; 44, 22, 46, 2; 52, 3, 72, 11 n, 12; 76, 5; 89, 4, 5;
86, 7; 86, 5, 9; 86, 6, 11; Ep. 1, i, 4, 5, iii, 2, 7, 11, x, 12; II, iii, 6, v, 11, 12, viii, 5 n; Ap. 421.
Souls, Dd. 14, 6; 10, 1, 4; 21, 9;
25, 6; 31, 8; 32, 12, 37, 50,
131, 132; 44, 20, 23; 86, 8; Ap. 420.
Source of all seeds, Dd. 92, 3.
Spear, meas., Dd. 21, 5; Ap. 395.
Spell, Dd. 40, 5 n, 9; 78, 1 n, 8 n; Ap. 448 n, 449 n.
Spandarmad, angel, Dd. 48, 1 n; 64, 6 n; 94, 2; App. (393) 396, 401, 402, 415, 416, 437, 444; day and month, Ep. 1, xii, 12.
Spiegel, Prof., Ap. 431 n.
Spirit of air, Dd. 28, 2, 5; 30, 4 n; 31, 4 n.
Spiritual counterpart, Dd. 28, 5 n.
— faculties (ahvô), Dd. 7, 7.
— life (ahvô), Dd. 94, 1, 2; Ep. III, 1 n, 5; (ahvôth), Dd. 5, 5; Ep. I, iv, 1; (hôkôth), Dd. 18, 4, 6;
17, 4; Ep. 1, v, 3.
— men, Dd. 1, 5, 7.
— wisdom, Dd. 37, 19.

Spitama, title, Dd. 36, 2 n.
Spitamân, title, see Zaratûst.
Srôsh, angel, Dd. 3, 13; 14, 2; 28, 1, 5, 6; 29, 1, 2; 31, 11; 44, 20 n; 79, 4 n; 81, 12-14; 94, 1 n; Ap. 443, 447, 448.
Srôshâ-zarânâm, Dd. 79, 9 n.
Srûvar, snake, Dd. 72, 4; Ap. 370, 371, 374, 381.
Star station in the sky, Dd. 92, 5.
Stipend, Dd. 44, 6-8, 11, 12, 14-17; 66, 6; 85, 4, 6; 86, 4-6; 88, 2, 4; 87, 2; 88, 13.
Stîr (tetradrachm), Dd. 62, 1 n; 66, 2, 9; 59, 2; 78, 13-15; 78, 9.
Sûdâkar nask, Int. 28; Dd. 90, 8 n; Ap. 370, 371 n, 372, 373.
Supreme high-priest, Int. 13; Ep. II, i, 9 n, 13 n.
Tâkhmôrûp, king, Dd. 2, 10; 37, 35; 65, 5.
Tanâpûhar, sin, Dd. 40, 4 n; 78, (13); 76, 9 n; Ap. 426.
Tap, demon, Dd. 37, 51.
Tarmac, demon, Dd. 39, 28 n; 94, 2.
Taurus, Dd. 31, 14.
Teherân, town, Ep. II, i, 13 n.
Tehmurâs, Dinshâwê Anklesaria, Mr., Int. 16, 24; Ep. III, 11, 17; Ap. 373 n.
Text (avâstâk), Dd. 48, 25, 38; 78, 13 (mânsar), Dd. 1, 7.
Third night after death, Dd. 8, 1; 13, 2; 20, 3; 81, 14.
Thraêtaona, king, Dd. 2, 10 n; 37, 97 n.
Three days after a death, Dd. 26, 1; 48, 40; 81, 3-8, 10, 12-14.
— nights' account, Dd. 14, 4, 5; 28, 5.
— after death, Dd. 8, 4; 18, 7; 20, 2; 24, 1-5; 25, 1-5; 56, 1;
2, 73, 11; 78, 17 n.
— punishment, Dd. 14, 6 n, 7; 41, 8.
Tigris, river, Dd. 92, 2 n.
Time, unlimited, Dd. 37, 16.
Tītar, angel, Dd. 48, 32 n; 90, 3 n; 93, 1, 2, 7, 10, 11, 13, 15, 17; Ap. 418 n.
Transliteration of Pahlavi, Int. 20-22.
Tree of all seeds, Dd. 17, 18 n; 90, 3 n.
Tughazzghuz, tribe, Int. 14, 25, 27; Ep. II, i, 12, v, 3 n.
Tūr, Dd. 70, 3; 90, 3 n.
— ā Brādar-vakhš, man, Dd. 72, 8.
Tūrān, land, Dd. 90, 6.
Tūš, man, Dd. 36, 3; Ap. 371 n.
Udai, woman, Dd. 78, 2 n.
Uskhsyar-ereta, apostle, Dd. 2, 10 n.
— nemarang, apostle, Dd. 2, 10 n.
Unnatural intercourse, Dd. 72, 1, 6, 7, 10-12; 73, 1-3; 76, 1-3; 75, 1, 2, 5; 76, 1; 77, 1, 8-12.
Upasnāte, Av., Ep. II, iii, 2, ix, 2.
Urvāsna, Av., Ap. 446 n.
Urūs lake, Dd. 37, 118 n.
Ushi-darena m., Dd. 30, 2 n.
Vadak, woman, Dd. 72, 5; 78, 2.
Vadhtaghana, title, Dd. 72, 5 n.
Vāē the bad, demon, Dd. 30, 4; 37, 44, 52; Ep. II, iii, 15, viii, 5.
— the good, angel, Dd. 28, 2 n; 30, 4; 36, 3; 44, 20 n.
Vāē, see Inward prayer.
Vāhrām, angel, Dd. 31, 7 n.
Vāhrām-shād, priest, Ep. I, iii, 10 n.
Varahrān, angel, Dd. 31, 7; fire of, Dd. 48, 34 n, 39 n; 61, 18; 90, 2 n, 6 n.
Vārēdād-gadman, man, Dd. 36, 4, 5.
Vārēdād-bvarenō, man, Dd. 36, 4 n.
Varenō, demon, Dd. 37, 44; 94, 2.
Vendīdād, book, Dd. 46, 6 n; 47, 1 n; 71, 2 n, 3 n; 78, 13 n; Ep. I, iv, 13 n; Ap. 372 n, 453; service, Dd. 48, 26 n; Ep. I, vii, 10, 12, 13; II, ix, 10 n; Ap. 447, 451. See Quotations.
— Pahlavi, Int. 28, 29; Ep. I, iv, 17 n, v, 1 n, 8 n; Ap. 394, 427 n.
See Quotations.
Vendīdād sadah, book, Dd. 372 n.
Verethraghna, angel, Dd. 31, 7 n.
Vēvan, man, Dd. 36, 3.
Vīdādāsh, region, Dd. 38, 5.
Vibirīsā, man, Dd. 48, 13.
Vipinīdāk, Dd. 73, 7.
Viptak, Dd. 72, 6.
Visparād, book, Dd. 38, 1 n; service, Dd. 45, 6; 81, 13.
Vītasp, king, Dd. 78, 2 n; 90, 8 n; Ap. 373, 380, 444; earth of, Ap. 436. See Kai-Vītasp.
Vivangha, man, Dd. 37, 96; 39, 16.
Vizarāș, demon, Dd. 30, 4 n; 32, 4, 7; 37, 44; Ep. II, v, 13 n.
Vobus-frynd fire, Dd. 17, 18 n; 48, 34 n.
Vohūman, angel, Dd. 3, 13, 14, 16, 17, 7, 14, 2; 31, 5, 11; 40, 2, 48, 1 n, 72, 10 n; 94, 1 n; Ep. I, iii, 1; Ap. 415, 443; men, Ap. 393.
Vohūman’s garment, Dd. 39, 19; 40, 2 n; 48, 9.
Vṛūrbart, region, Dd. 38, 5.
Vṛūgarat, region, Dd. 36, 5.
Vouru-nemō, man, Dd. 36, 4 n.
— savā, man, Dd. 36, 4 n.
Westegaard, Prof., Int. 15, 29; Dd. 48, 25 n; Cor. 479.
Whirlwinds, Dd. 83, 7-9.
Wide-formed ocean, Dd. 17, 18 n; 92, 2, 5. See Ocean.
Wife, only child, Dd. 54, 13 n; privileged, Dd. 54, 9, 13 n; 55, 2; 56, 2, 8; 58, 3; 62, 3; 4; 81, 4; serving, Dd. 56, 4 n, 7.
Will (testament), Dd. 54, 9; 62, 3.
Wine-drinking, Dd. 50, 3; 61, 1-11.
— selling, Dd. 50, 1-4.
INDEX.

Wisdom, acquired and instinctive, Dd. 40, 3 n.; Ap. 409.


Wives, five kinds, Dd. 54, 9 n.

Wizards, Dd. 72, 8; Ap. 384, 420,

Worst existence, Dd. 14, 7; 83, 3; 41, 5, 6.

Worthy of death, Dd. 41, 3, 5; 42, 6; 87, 2, 4; 76, 2; Ep. III, 19;


Yákmáyásad, chief, Dd. 80, 3, 8 n.

Yasna, book, Dd. 88, 1 n.; Ap. 384 n.; rite, Dd. 45, 6 n.; 48, 26 n.; Ep. II, ix, 10 n. See Quotations.


Yástó, see Ceremony.


Yázdán, see Angels, Sacred beings.

— pának, man, Int. 25; Ep. I, xi, 6, 10.

Yazín, see Ceremonial.


Yim, king, Dd. 2, 10; 38, 2; 87, 35, 80, 94 n., 95; 39, 16, 22, 23, 28; 66, 5; Ap. 418, 419; his enclosure, Dd. 37, 95.


— Yótó, chief, Dd. 80, 3, 8 n.; Ap. 411 n.

Yiddan-Yim, priest, Int. 13; Dd. 0; 1, 1; 94, 13; Ep. I, o, iii, 10, vii, 5, xi, 12; II, o, ix, 12; III, o, i, 2, 21.

Zád-sparam, priest, Int. 13-16, 19, 25-27; Ep. I, o, i, 2 n., ii, 6 n., iv, 7 n., 8 n., v, 1 n., 5 n., 7 n., x, 3 n., 13 n., xi, 3 n., 10 n.; II, o, 1, 2 n., 7 n., 12 n., ii, 1 n., v, 3 n., 14 n., vii, 2 n., ix, 8 n.; III, 2, 17; Ap. 394, 455.

Záfrí, demon, Dd. 87, 52; Ep. I, x, 9.

Zand, Dd. 1, 7; 45, 2; 66, 1, 3; Ep. I, iv, 11; II, iii, 14 n., ix, 10.

Zarátústr, apostle, Dd. 1, 23 n.; 2, (10) 11 n., 12; 4, 6; 48, 16, 30; 84, 14; Ep. II, i, 14, v, 11; Ap. 369, 386, 410, 444 n.; addressed by evil spirit, Dd. 72, 5 n.; Avesta of, Ap. 447; blessed (yaztô-frávaháhr), Dd. 48, 30; his early home, Dd. 21, 2 n.; his origin, Dd. 48, 16; law of, Ep. II, iv, 1, 2; perfect (páshúm), Ep. II, ix, 15; III, 23; preaches, Ap. 412, 413; righteous, Dd. 37, 36; sees Keresásp, Ap. 371-373, 379-381; slain, Dd. 72, 8 n.; talks with Aúhármazd, Dd. 7, 7; Ep. I, iii, 8, vii, 10-12; II, i, 10; Ap. 381, 415-417, 419-423, 431, 436, 437, 455; the Spitamán, Dd. 4, 4; 10, 3; 38, (2) 87, 43, 39, 19, 23; 94, 14; Ep. I, iv, 3, x, 9; II, vi, 2, ix, 14; III, 22; Ap. 379, 380 n., 432.


— the club-footed, priest, Int. 26; Ep. II, i, 13.

Zaremáyá, month, Int. 24; Dd. 31, 14.

Zarmán, demon, Dd. 87, 44, 52.

Zindah-raván rites, Dd. 81, 1 n.

Zör, see Holy-water.

Zoroastrian religion, Int. 14.

Zoroastrians, Int. 14.

Zótó, see Priest, officiating.
CORRECTIONS.

P. 66, line 15; p. 67, l. 7; for ‘Mitrō’ read ‘Mitrō.’
P. 108, lines 1, 3, for ‘the Supreme Being’ and ‘the Being’ read ‘God (yēdatō),’ and cancel note 1.
P. 109, note 2, add ‘Malkōs has also been read Markōs and traced to Av. mahrkūš (see Fragment VIII, 2 in Westergaard’s Zend-Avesta, p. 334), which appears to be the title of some demon, regarding whom very little can be ascertained from the text that mentions him.’
P. 143, l. 12; 145, l. 6; 150, note 6; 252, l. 6; 289, note 2; 318, ll. 26, 27; 346, l. 24; for ‘Ātūr’ and ‘Ātūrō’ read ‘Ātūr’ and ‘Ātūrō.’

The following emendations depend upon the meaning to be attached to the word vāspūharak, or vāspūharak, which in Mkh. I, 7 was traced to Pers. bā, ‘with,’ and sipīrah, ‘sphere, world, universe,’ and supposed to mean ‘world-renowned,’ being rendered by vikhyaṭīmat in Sanskrit. The objections to this etymology are that Pers. bā is Pahl. avāk (not vā), which is nearly always replaced by Huz. levatman, and that vāspūhar appears to be the correct form of the word vaspūr, which explains the Huz. barbētā, literally ‘son of the house’ in the Pahlavi Farhang (p. 9, ed. H.); the latter word having been the highest title of the Persian nobility, probably confined to the heads of seven families (see Nöldeke’s Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden, pp. 71, 501). Such nobles are called barbētān in the Hā-ğīābād inscription, line 6, and vaspūharakān in the Naq-i Rustam inscription, line 6; they may perhaps be styled ‘princes,’ and their title, vaspūhar, may be traced to the ancient Persian equivalent of Av. vīsō puthra (Vend. VII, 114), literally ‘son of the village or borough.’ It may be noted, however, that the word ‘sphere’ does really occur in a form very similar to this title, in the word aspiharakānikihā, ‘as regards the spheres,’ in Dd. 69, 4.

P. 78, ll. 11-13, read ‘But those who are the more princely (vāspūharakāniktar) producers of the renovation are said to be seven . . .’
P. 91, ll. 11, 12, read ‘. . . and he made the princes (vāspūharakānihā) contented.’
P. 172, ll. 26, 27, read ‘... a minder of the princes of the religion (dīn-vāspūharakānō), the angels, and with pure thoughts...’

P. 262, ll. 15, 16, read ‘... and its position is most princely (vāspūharakānīkār).’

P. 281, ll. 17, 18, read ‘On account of the princeliness (vāspūhara-kānīh) of the good people of Khvanīras...’

P. 289, ll. 14, 15, read ‘... I am more applauding the princes (vāspūhara-kānō-zāhtar) about the property of the profession...’

P. 306, ll. 23, 24, read ‘... to keep in use the equal measure which is more the custom of his own superiors (nafsman vāspūhara-kāntar).’
### Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets Adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Hebrew</th>
<th>Chaldean</th>
<th>Syriac</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Persian</th>
<th>Pahlavi</th>
<th>Zend</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>क़</td>
<td>क़</td>
<td>क़</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>क़</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
<td>क़</td>
<td>क़</td>
<td>क़</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>كَرَة</td>
<td>क़</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h, ha</td>
<td>ह, हा</td>
<td>ह, हा</td>
<td>ह, हा</td>
<td>هَ</td>
<td>هَ</td>
<td>هَ</td>
<td>هَ</td>
<td>ह, हा</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th>I Class</th>
<th>II Class</th>
<th>III Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Tenus</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Medius</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Aspirata</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nasalis</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Gutturalis</td>
<td>a (ng)</td>
<td>a (ng)</td>
<td>a (ng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Spiritus</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Levis</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>/l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Sper fas.</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Sper fric.</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Levis fas.</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>/l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Sper fric.</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>/s/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Levis fric.</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>/l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Tenus mod.</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Medius mod.</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Aspirata mod.</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Nasalis mod.</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Gutturalis mod.</td>
<td>a (ng)</td>
<td>a (ng)</td>
<td>a (ng)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets

**Consonants (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Syllable</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>Spiritus aper</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>Spiritus aper</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Benign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>asper aspiratus</td>
<td>Lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Tenuis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>&quot; aspirata</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>&quot; aspirata</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Nasalis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>&quot; fricata</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>&quot; discritica</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Spiritus asper</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>&quot; lenis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>zh</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Labiales.**

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Tenuis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>&quot; aspirata</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>ph</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Media</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>&quot; aspirata</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>bh</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Tenuissima</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Nasalis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Semivocalis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>&quot; aspirata</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>hw</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Spiritus asper</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>&quot; lenis</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Anuvåra</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Visarga</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowels</td>
<td>Missionary Alphabet</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
<td>Zend</td>
<td>Pehlevi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Neutralis</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Laryngo-palatalis</td>
<td></td>
<td>à</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Labialis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Gutturalis brevis</td>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Palatalis brevis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Palatalis longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Labialis brevis</td>
<td></td>
<td>u</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Labialis longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Lingualis brevis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Langua longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>rf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Labialis brevis longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>u</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Labialis longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Gutturo-palatalis brevis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Gutturo-palatalis longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Diphthongus gutturo-palatalis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Diphthongus gutturo-palatalis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Gutturo-labialis brevis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Gutturo-labialis longa</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Diphthongus gutturo-labialis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Diphthongus gutturo-labialis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Gutturalis fracta</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Palatalis fracta</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Labialis fracta</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Gutturalis fracta</td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
October, 1881.


A SELECTION OF

BOOKS

PUBLISHED FOR THE UNIVERSITY BY

HENRY FROWDE,

AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,

7 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON.

ALSO TO BE HAD AT THE

CLARENDON PRESS DEPOSITORY, OXFORD.

LEXICONS, GRAMMARS, &c.

(See also Clarendon Press Series, pp. 21, 24.)


A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, compiled from the best authorities. 1850. 24mo. bound, 3s.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Accentuation, by H. W. Chandler, M.A. Second Edition. 1881. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

A Latin Dictionary, founded on Andrews' edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary, revised, enlarged, and in great part rewritten by Charlton T. Lewis, Ph.D., and Charles Short, LL.D., Professor of Latin in Columbia College, New York. 1879. 4to. cloth, 7l. 5s.

The Book of Hebrew Roots, by Abu 'l-Walid Marwán ibn Janáh, otherwise called Rabbi Yônáh. Now first edited, with an Appendix, by Ad. Neubauer. 1875. 4to. cloth, 2l. 7s. 6d.
A Treatise on the use of the Tenses in Hebrew.
By S. R. Driver, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 1881. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


Thesaurus Syriacus: collegerunt Quatremère, Bernstein, Lorsbach, Arnoldi, Field: edidit R. Payne Smith, S.T.P.R.
Fasc. I-V. 1868-79. sm. fol. each, 1s. 1s.
Vol. I, containing Fasc. I-V. sm. fol. cloth, 5l. 5s.

A Practical Grammar of the Sanskrit Language, arranged with reference to the Classical Languages of Europe, for the use of English Students, by Monier Williams, M.A., Boden Professor of Sanskrit. Fourth Edition, 1877. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

A Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to Greek, Latin, German, Anglo-Saxon, English, and other cognate Indo-European Languages. By Monier Williams, M.A., Boden Professor of Sanskrit. 1872. 4to. cloth, 4l. 14s. 6d.

Nalopákhyaánam. Story of Nala, an Episode of the Mahá-Bhárata: the Sanskrit text, with a copious Vocabulary, and an improved version of Dean Milman’s Translation, by Monier Williams, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Improved. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 15s.


An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, based on the MS. Collections of the late Joseph Bosworth, D.D., Professor of Anglo-Saxon, Oxford. Edited and enlarged by Prof. T. N. Toller, M.A., Owens College, Manchester. (To be completed in four parts). Parts I and II. 4to. 15s. each. Just Published.

An Icelandic-English Dictionary, based on the MS. collections of the late Richard Cleasby. Enlarged and completed by G. Vígússon. With an Introduction, and Life of Richard Cleasby, by G. Webbe Dasent, D.C.L. 1874. 4to. cloth, 3l. 7s.
A List of English Words the Etymology of which is illustrated by comparison with Icelandic. Prepared in the form of an Appendix to the above. By W. W. Skeat, M.A., stitched, 2s.

A Handbook of the Chinese Language. Parts I and II, Grammar and Chrestomathy. By James Summers. 1863. 8vo. half bound, 1l. 8s.

An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language, arranged on an Historical Basis. By W. W. Skeat, M.A., Elrington and Bosworth Professor of Anglo-Saxon in the University of Cambridge. 1882. 4to. cloth, 2l. 1s.

Part IV., completing the Work, 10s. 6d.


GREEK CLASSICS, &c.

Heracliti Ephesii Reliquiae. Recensuit I. By-water, M.A. Appendicis loco additae sunt Diogenis Laertii Vita Heracliti, Particularae Hippocratei De Diaeta Libri Primi, Epistolae Heracliteae. 1877. 8vo. cloth, price 6s.

Homer: A Complete Concordance to the Odyssey and Hymns of Homer; to which is added a Concordance to the Parallel Passages in the Iliad, Odyssey, and Hymns. By Henry Dunbar, M.D., Member of the General Council, University of Edinburgh. 1880. 4to. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Plato: The Apology, with a revised Text and English Notes, and a Digest of Platonic Idioms, by James Riddell, M.A. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

Plato: Philebus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by Edward Poste, M.A. 1860. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Plato: Sophistes and Politicus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. 1866. 8vo. cloth, 18s.

Plato: *The Dialogues*, translated into English, with Analyses and Introductions, by B. Jowett, M.A., Regius Professor of Greek. A new Edition in 5 volumes, medium 8vo. 1875. cloth, 3l. 10s.

Plato: *The Republic*, translated into English, with an Analysis and Introduction, by B. Jowett, M.A. Medium 8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.


Thucydides: Translated into English, with Introduction, Marginal Analysis, Notes, and Indices. By B. Jowett, M.A., Regius Professor of Greek. 2 vols. 1881. Medium 8vo. cloth, 1l. 12s.

THE HOLY SCRIPTURES, &c.

*The Holy Bible in the earliest English Versions*, made from the Latin Vulgate by John Wycliffe and his followers: edited by the Rev. J. Forshall and Sir F. Madden. 4 vols. 1850. Royal 4to. cloth, 3l. 3s.

Also reprinted from the above, with Introduction and Glossary by W. W. Skeat, M.A.


*The Books of Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon*: according to the Wycliffite Version made by Nicholas de Hereford, about A.D. 1381, and Revised by John Purvey, about A.D. 1388. Extra 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

*The Holy Bible*: an exact reprint, page for page, of the Authorized Version published in the year 1611. Demy 4to. half bound, 1l. 1s.

*Vetus Testamentum ex Versione Septuaginta* Interpretum secundum exemplar Vaticanum Romae editum. Accedit potior varietas Codicis Alexandrini. Tomi III. Editio Altera. 18mo. cloth, 1s.
Origenis Hexaplolorum quae supersunt; sive,
Veterum Interpretum Graecorum in totum Vetus Testamentum
4to. cloth, 5l. 5s.

Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Latina, cum
8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Gallica e Cod.
MS. in Bibl. Bodleiana adservato, una cum Versione Metrica
aliisque Monumentis pervertutis. Nunc primum descripta et edidit
Franciscus Michel, Phil. Doct. 1860. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Psalms in Hebrew without points. 1879.
Crown 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

The Book of Wisdom: the Greek Text, the
Latin Vulgate, and the Authorised English Version; with an
Introduction, Critical Apparatus, and a Commentary. By William
J. Deane, M.A., Oriel College, Oxford; Rector of Ashen, Essex.
Small 4to. cloth, 13s. 6d.

The Book of Tobit. A Chaldee Text, from a
unique MS. in the Bodleian Library; with other Rabbinical Texts,
English Translations, and the Ital. Edited by Ad. Neubauer, M.A.
1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6s.

A Commentary on the Book of Proverbs. Attributed to Abraham Ibn Ezra. Edited from a Manuscript in the
Bodleian Library by S. R. Driver, M.A. Crown 8vo. paper cover,
3s. 6d.

Horae Hebraicae et Talmudicae, a J. Lightfoot.
A new Edition, by R. Gandell, M.A. 4 vols. 1859. 8vo. cloth,
1s. 11.

Novum Testamentum Graece. Antiquissimorum
Codicum Textus in ordine paralalgo dispositi. Accedit collatio
8vo. half morocco, 1l. 12s. 6d.

Novum Testamentum Graece. Accidunt paral-
lela S. Scripturae loca, necon vetus capitulorum notatio et canones
Eusebii. Edidit Carolus Lloyd, S.T.P.R., necon Episcopus
Oxoniensis. 18mo. cloth, 3s.
The same on writing paper, with large margin, cloth, 10s.
Novum Testamentum Graece juxta Exemplar Millianum. 18mo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
The same on writing paper, with large margin, cloth, 9s.

Evangelia Sacra Graece. fcap. 8vo. limp, 1s. 6d.

The Greek Testament, with the Readings adopted by the Revisers of the Authorised Version:
(1) Pica type. Second Edition, with Marginal References. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
(2) Long Primer type. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
(3) The same, on writing paper, with wide margin, cloth, 15s.


FATHERS OF THE CHURCH, &c.


St. Athanasius: Historical Writings, according to the Benedictine Text. With an Introduction by William Bright, D.D. 1881. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


The Canons of the First Four General Councils of Nicæa, Constantinople, Ephesus, and Chalcedon. 1877. Crown 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini in XII Prophetas. Edidit P. E. Pusey, A.M. Tomi II. 1868. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.

Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini in D. Ioannis Evangelium. Accedunt Fragmenta Varia necnon Tractatus ad Tiberium Diaconum Duo. Edidit post Aubertum P. E. Pusey, A.M. Tomi III. 1872. 8vo. 2l. 5s.

Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini Commentarii in Lucae Evangelium quae supersunt Syriace. E MSS. apud Mus. Britan. edidit R. Payne Smith, A.M. 1858. 4to. cloth, 1l. 2s.

The same, translated by R. Payne Smith, M.A. 2 vols. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

Ephraemi Syri, Rabulae Episcopi Edesseni, Balaei, aliorumque Opera Selecta. E Codd. Syriacis MSS. in Museo Britannico et Bibliotheca Bodleiana asservatis primus edidit J. J. Overbeck. 1865. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Eusebius' Ecclesiastical History, according to the text of Burton, with an Introduction by William Bright, D.D. 1881. Crown 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.


Socrates' Ecclesiastical History, according to the Text of Hussey, with an Introduction by William Bright, D.D. 1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, &C.

Baedae Historia Ecclesiastica. Edited, with English Notes, by G. H. Moberly, M.A. 1881. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
Bright (W., D.D.). Chapters of Early English Church History. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 12s.


Vol. II. Part I. 1873. Medium 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
Vol. II. Part II. 1878. Church of Ireland; Memorials of St. Patrick. Stiff covers, 3s. 6d.

Hammond (C. E.). Liturgies, Eastern and Western. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Liturgical Glossary. 1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

An Appendix to the above. 1879. Crown 8vo. paper covers, 1s. 6d.

John, Bishop of Ephesus. The Third Part of his Ecclesiastical History. [In Syriac.] Now first edited by William Cureton, M.A. 1853. 4to. cloth, 1l. 12s.

The same, translated by R. Payne Smith, M.A. 1860. 8vo. cloth, 10s.

Monumenta Ritualia Ecclesiae Anglicanae. The occasional Offices of the Church of England according to the old use of Salisbury the Prymer in English, and other prayers and forms, with dissertations and notes. By William Maskell, M.A. Second Edition. 1882. 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 10s.

The Ancient Liturgy of the Church of England, according to the uses of Sarum, York, Hereford, and Bangor, and the Roman Liturgy arranged in parallel columns, with preface and notes. By William Maskell, M.A. Third Edition. 1883. 8vo. cloth, 15s.

The Liturgy and Ritual of the Celtic Church. By F. E. Warren, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Oxford. 1881. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

The Leofric Missal. By the same Editor. In the Press.
Records of the Reformation. The Divorce, 1527-1533. Mostly now for the first time printed from MSS. in the British Museum and other libraries. Collected and arranged by N. Focock, M.A. 1870. 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 12. 16s.

Shirley (W. W.). Some Account of the Church in the Apostolic Age. Second Edition, 1874. scap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Stubbs (W.). Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum. An attempt to exhibit the course of Episcopal Succession in England. 1858. small 4to. cloth, 8s. 6d.

ENGLISH THEOLOGY.

Butler's Works, with an Index to the Analogy. 2 vols. 1874. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

Butler's Sermons. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Butler's Analogy of Religion. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.

Heurtley's Collection of Creeds. 1858. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Homilies appointed to be read in Churches. Edited by J. Griffiths, M.A. 1859. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Hooker's Works, with his Life by Walton, arranged by John Keble, M.A. Sixth Edition, 1874. 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, 12. 11s. 6d.

Hooker's Works; the text as arranged by John Keble, M.A. 2 vols. 1875. 8vo. cloth, 11s.

Pearson's Exposition of the Creed. Revised and corrected by E. Burton, D.D. Sixth Edition, 1877. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Waterland's Review of the Doctrine of the Eucharist, with a Preface by the present Bishop of London. 1880. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.


HISTORICAL AND DOCUMENTARY WORKS.


Clarendon's (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. 7 vols. 1839. 18mo. cloth, 1l. 1s.

Clarendon's (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. Also his Life, written by himself, in which is included a Continuation of his History of the Grand Rebellion. With copious Indexes. In one volume, royal 8vo. 1842. cloth. 1l. 2s.

Clinton's Epitome of the Fasti Hellenici. 1851. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Clinton's Epitome of the Fasti Romani. 1854. 8vo. cloth, 7s.
Freeman's (E. A.) History of the Norman Conquest of England; its Causes and Results. In Six Volumes. 8vo. cloth, 5l. 9s. 6d.
  Vols. I–II together, 3rd edition, 1877. 1l. 16s.
  Vol. III, 2nd edition, 1874. 1l. 1s.
  Vol. IV, 2nd edition, 1875. 1l. 1s.
  Vol. V, 1876. 1l. 1s.
  Vol. VI. Index. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 1os. 6d.

Freeman (E. A.). The Reign of William Rufus and the Accession of Henry the First. 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 16s.

Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary ("Liber Veritatum"): Selected Passages, illustrating the condition of Church and State, 1403–1458. With an Introduction by James E. Thorold Rogers, M.P. Small 4to. cloth, 1os. 6d.

Magna Carta, a careful Reprint. Edited by W. Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History. 1879. 4to. stitched, 1s.


Protests of the Lords, including those which have been expunged, from 1624 to 1874; with Historical Introductions. Edited by James E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 1875. 3 vols. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.

  Vols. I and II (1259–1400). 1866. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.
  Vols. III and IV (1401–1582). 1882. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 10s.

Sturlunga Saga, including the Islendinga Saga of Lawman Sturla Thordsson and other works. Edited by Dr. Gudbrand Vigfusson. In 2 vols. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 2s.

Two of the Saxon Chronicles parallel, with Supplementary Extracts from the Others. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Glossarial Index, by J. Earle, M.A. 1865. 8vo. cloth, 16s.
Statuta Universitatis Oxoniensis. 1882. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

The Student's Handbook to the University and Colleges of Oxford. Sixth Edition. 1881. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

MATHEMATICS, PHYSICAL SCIENCE, &c.

Astronomical Observations made at the University Observatory, Oxford, under the direction of C. Pritchard, M.A., Savilian Professor of Astronomy. No. 1. 1878. Royal 8vo. paper covers, 3s. 6d.


Vol. III. Statics, including Attractions; Dynamics of a Material Particle. Second Edition, 1868. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Vol. IV. Dynamics of Material Systems; together with a chapter on Theoretical Dynamics, by W. F. Donkin, M.A., F.R.S. 1862. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Rigaud's Correspondence of Scientific Men of the 17th Century, with Table of Contents by A. de Morgan, and Index by the Rev. J. Rigaud, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. 2 vols. 1841–1862. 8vo. cloth, 18s. 6d.

Vesuvius. By John Phillips, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Geology, Oxford. 1869. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Geology of Oxford and the Valley of the Thames. By the same Author. 1871. 8vo. cloth, 21s.

Synopsis of the Pathological Series in the Oxford Museum. By H. W. Acland, M.D., F.R.S., 1867. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Thesaurus Entomologicus Hopeianus, or a Description of the rarest Insects in the Collection given to the University by the Rev. William Hope. By J. O. Westwood, M.A., F.L.S. With 40 Plates. 1874. Small folio, half morocco, 7l. 10s.

Text-Book of Botany, Morphological and Physiological. By Dr. Julius Sachs, Professor of Botany in the University of Würzburg. A New Edition. Translated by S. H. Vines, M.A. Royal 8vo. 11s. 6d. Just Published.
Johannes Müller on Certain Variations in the
Vocal Organs of the Passeres that have hitherto escaped notice.
Translated by F. J. Bell, B.A., and edited with an Appendix, by
A. H. Garrod, M.A., F.R.S. With Plates. 1878. 4to. paper
covers, 7s. 6d.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Bacon's Novum Organum. Edited, with Eng-
lish notes, by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d.

Bacon's Novum Organum. Translated by G.
W. Kitchin, M.A. 1855. 8vo. cloth, 9s. 6d. (See also p. 37.)

The Works of George Berkeley, D.D., formerly
Bishop of Cloyne; including many of his writings hitherto un-
published. With Prefaces, Annotations, and an Account of his
Life and Philosophy, by Alexander Campbell Fraser, M.A. 4 vols.
1871. 8vo. cloth, 4l. 18s.

The Life, Letters, &c. 1 vol. cloth, 16s. See also p. 37.

The Logic of Hegel; translated from the En-
cyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Prolegomena by
William Wallace, M.A. 1874. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

with Notes, by J. E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 3 vols. 1880. cloth, 21s.

A Course of Lectures on Art, delivered before
the University of Oxford in Hilary Term, 1870, by John Ruskin,
M.A., Slade Professor of Fine Art. 8vo. cloth, 6s.

Aspects of Poetry; being Lectures delivered
at Oxford by John Campbell Shairp, LL.D., Professor of Poetry,
Oxford. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

A Critical Account of the Drawings by Michel
Angelo and Raffaello in the University Galleries, Oxford. By J.

Catalogue of the Castellani Collection of Anti-
quities in the University Galleries, Oxford. By W. S. W. Vaux, M.A.,
F.R.S. Crown 8vo. stiff cover, 1s.
The Sacred Books of the East.

Translated by various Oriental Scholars, and edited by F. Max Müller.


Vol. II. The Sacred Laws of the Aryas, as taught in the Schools of Apastamba, Gautama, Vāśishṭha, and Baudhāyana. [Translated by Prof. Georg Bühler.] Part I. Apastamba and Gautama. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


Vol. IV. The Vedālād. Translated by James Darmesteter. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Vol. V. The Bundahis, Bahman Yast, and Shāyast-lā-Shāyast. Pahlavi Texts. Part I. Translated by E. W. West. 8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.

Vol. VI and IX. The Qur’ān. Parts I and II. Translated by Professor E. H. Palmer. 8vo. cloth, 21s.

Vol. VII. The Institutes of Vishnu. Translated by Professor Julius Jolly. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Vol. VIII. The Bhagavadgītā, Sanatsugāṭhya, and Anuṣṭāṭa. Translated by Kāśināth Trimbak Telang. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Vol. X. The Dhammapada, translated by Professor F. Max Müller; and The Sutta Nīpiṭa, translated by Professor Faussboll; being Canonical Books of the Buddhists. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


Vol. XII. The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa. Translated by Professor Eggeling. Vol. I. 8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.

Vol. XVI. *The Yi King*, with an Appendix on the Philosophy of the Scholars of the Sung dynasty, professedly derived from the Yi. Translated by James Legge.

The following Volumes are in the Press:—

Vol. XIV. *The Sacred Laws of the Aryas*, as taught in the Schools of Vāsishtha and Baudhāyana. Translated by Professor Georg Bühhler.

Vol. XV. *The Upanishads*. Part II. Translated by F. Max Müller.

Vol. XVII. *The Mahāvagga*, and *Kullavagga*. Part II. Translated by T. W. Rhys Davids and Dr. H. Oldenberg.

Vol. XVIII. *The Daśādīstān-ē Dīnk, and Epistles of Māṇḍūkikār.* Fahlahī exts, Part II. Translated by E. W. West.


Vol. XX. *The Vāyu-Purāṇa*. Translated by Professor Bhandarkar, of Elphinstone College, Bombay.

Vol. XXI. *The Saddharma-pundarīka*. Translated by Professor Kern.

Vol. XXII. *The Ākārāṅga-Sūtra*. Translated by Professor Jacobi.

**Anecdota Oxoniensia:**

**Classical Series.** Vol. I. Part I. *The English Manuscripts of the Nicomachean Ethics*, described in relation to Bekker's Manuscripts and other Sources. By J. A. Stewart, M.A., Classical Lecturer, Christ Church. Small 4to. 3s. 6d.

**Classical Series.** Vol. I. Part II. *Nonius Marcellus, de Compendiosa Doctrina*, Harleian MS. 2719. Collated by J. H. Oulins, M.A., Senior Student of Christ Church. Small 4to. 3s. 6d.


**Aryan Series.** Vol. I. Part I. *Buddhist Texts from Japan*. Edited by J. L. G. Mowat, M.A., Fellow of Pembroke College. Small 4to. 3s. 6d.

Clarendon Press Series

The Delegates of the Clarendon Press having undertaken the publication of a series of works, chiefly educational, and entitled the Clarendon Press Series, have published, or have in preparation, the following.

Those to which prices are attached are already published; the others are in preparation.

I. ENGLISH.

A First Reading Book. By Marie Eichens of Berlin; and edited by Anne J. Clough. Extra fcap. 8vo. stiff covers, 4d.

Oxford Reading Book, Part I. For Little Children. Extra fcap. 8vo. stiff covers, 6d.

Oxford Reading Book, Part II. For Junior Classes. Extra fcap. 8vo. stiff covers, 6d.


An English Grammar and Reading Book, for Lower Forms in Classical Schools. By O. W. Tancock, M.A., Head Master of Norwich School. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Typical Selections from the best English Writers, with Introductory Notices. Second Edition. In Two Volumes. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d. each.


An Anglo-Saxon Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

The Ormulum; with the Notes and Glossary of Dr. R. M. White. Edited by Rev. R. Holt, M.A. 1878. 2 vols. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 21s.


Part I. From Old English Homilies to King Horn (A.D. 1150 to A.D. 1300). Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 9s.


Specimens of English Literature, from the 'Ploughman's Crede' to the 'Shepheardes Calender' (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1570). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. By W. W. Skeat, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


Chaucer. The Prioresses Tale; Sir Thopas; The Monk's Tale; The Clerk's Tale; The Squire's Tale, &c. Edited by W. W. Skeat, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Tale of the Man of Lawe; The Pardoner's Tale; The Second Nonnes Tale; The Chanouns Yemannes Tale. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d. (See also p. 19.)
Old English Drama. Marlowe's Tragical History of Dr. Faustus, and Greene's Honourable History of Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay. Edited by A. W. Ward, M.A., Professor of History and English Literature in Owens College, Manchester. 1878. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.


   The Tempest, 1s. 6d.  King Lear, 1s. 6d.
   As You Like It, 1s. 6d.  A Midsummer Night's Dream, 1s. 6d.
   Julius Caesar, 2s.  Coriolanus, 2s. 6d.
   Richard the Third, 2s. 6d.  Henry the Fifth, 2s.
   Twelfth Night. In the Press. (For other Plays, see p. 19.)


Bunyan. Holy War. Edited by E. Venables, M.A. In the Press. (See also p. 20.)

Locke's Conduct of the Understanding. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.


Burke. Four Letters on the Proposals for Peace with the Regicide Directory of France. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. J. Payne, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. (See also p. 20.)
Also the following in paper covers:—

Goldsmith. The Deserted Village. 2d.
Gray. Elegy and Ode on Eton College. 2d.
Johnson. Vanity of Human Wishes. With Notes by E. J. Payne, M.A. 4d.
Milton. With Notes by R. C. Browne, M.A.
   Lycidas, 3d. L’Allegro, 3d. II Penseroso, 4d. Comus, 6d.
   Samson Agonistes, 6d.
Parnell. The Hermit. 2d.
Scott. Lay of the Last Minstrel. Introduction and Canto I, with Preface and Notes by W. Minto, M.A. 6d.

A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS,

Designed to meet the wants of Students in English Literature, by the late Rev. J. S. BREWER, M.A., of Queen’s College, Oxford, and Professor of English Literature at King’s College, London.

1. Chaucer. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales; The Knightes Tale; The Nonne Prestes Tale. Edited by R. Morris, Editor of Specimens of Early English, &c., &c. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d. (See also p. 17.)

   Book I. Eighth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
   Book II. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


   I. The Merchant of Venice. 1s.
   II. Richard the Second. 1s. 6d.
   III. Macbeth. 1s. 6d. (For other Plays, see p. 18.)

C 2
5. Bacon.
   I. Advancement of Learning. Edited by W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

   Sold separately, Vol. I. 4s.; Vol. II. 3s. (See also p. 19.)

7. Dryden. Select Poems. Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; Astraea Redux; Annus Mirabilis; Absalom and Achitophel; Religio Laici; The Hind and the Panther. Edited by W. D. Christie, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


   I. Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the two Speeches on America. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
   II. Reflections on the French Revolution. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. (See also p. 18.)

   I. The Didactic Poems of 1781, with Selections from the Minor Pieces, a.d. 1779-1783. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
   II. The Task, with Tirocinium, and Selections from the Minor Poems, a.d. 1784-1799. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.
II. LATIN.


A First Latin Exercise Book. By the same Author. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

A Second Latin Exercise Book. By the same Author. Preparing.

Anglice Reddenda, or Easy Extracts, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Passages for Translation into Latin. For the use of Passmen and others. Selected by J. Y. Sargent, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Magdalen College, Oxford. Fifth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


Caesar. The Commentaries (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By Charles E. Moberly, M.A.

Part I. The Gallic War. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Part II. The Civil War. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

The Civil War. Book I. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Cicero. Selection of interesting and descriptive passages. With Notes. By Henry Walford, M.A. In three Parts. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d. Each Part separately, limp, 1s. 6d.

Part I. Anecdotes from Grecian and Roman History.

Part II. Omens and Dreams: Beauties of Nature.

Part III. Rome's Rule of her Provinces.

Cicero. *Select Orations* (for Schools). With Notes. By J. R. King, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Cornelius Nepos. With Notes. By Oscar Browning, M.A. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

- Part I. The Caudine Disaster.
- Part II. Hannibal's Campaign in Italy.
- Part III. The Macedonian War.

Livy. Books V–VII. With Introduction and Notes. By A. R. Cluer, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Catulli Veronensis Liber. Iterum recognovit, apparatum criticum prolegomena appendices addidit, Robinson Ellis, A.M. 1878. Demy 8vo. cloth, 16s.

A Commentary on Catullus. By Robinson Ellis, M.A. 1876. Demy 8vo. cloth, 16s.

Catulli Veronensis Carmina Selecta, secundum recognitionem Robinson Ellis, A M. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Cicero de Oratore. With Introduction and Notes, by A S. Wilkins, M.A., Professor of Latin, Owens College, Manchester.
- Book I. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 6s.
- Book II. 1881. 8vo. cloth, 5s.
Cicero's Philippic Orations. With Notes. By J. R. King, M.A. Second Edition. 1879. 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


Cicero. Select Letters. Text. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

Cicero pro Cluentio. With Introduction and Notes. By W. Ramsay, M.A. Edited by G. G. Ramsay, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Horace. A reprint of the above, in a size suitable for the use of Schools. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s. 6d.


Ovid. P. Ovidii Nasonis Ibis. Ex Novis Codicibus Edidit. Scholia Vetera Commentarium cum Prolegomenis Appendice Indice addidit, R. Ellis, A.M. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


Virgil. With Introduction and Notes, by T. L. Papillon, M.A., Fellow of New College, Oxford. Two vols. crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
Selections from the less known Latin Poets. By North Pinder, M.A. 1869. Demy 8vo. cloth, 15s.

Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin. With Introductions and Notes. 1874. By John Wordsworth, M.A. 8vo. cloth, 18s.


Vergil: Suggestions Introductory to a Study of the Aeneid. By H. Nettleship, M.A. 8vo. sewed, 12. 6d.


The Roman Poets of the Augustan Age. By William Young Sellar, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Edinburgh. Vision. 1877. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

The Roman Poets of the Republic. By the same Author. New Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 1881. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

III. GREEK.


A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from Liddell and Scott's 4th edition, chiefly for the use of Schools. Nineteenth Edition. Carefully Revised throughout. 1880. Square 12mo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Greek Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their forms, meaning, and quantity; embracing all the Tenses used by Greek writers, with references to the passages in which they are found. By W. Veitch. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Elements of Greek Accentuation (for Schools): abridged from his larger work by H. W. Chandler, M.A., Waynflete Professor of Moral and Metaphysical Philosophy, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth. 2s. 6d.

A Series of Graduated Greek Readers:

First Greek Reader. By W. G. Rushbrooke, M.L., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Second Classical Master at the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Second Greek Reader. By A. M. Bell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Third Greek Reader. In Preparation.

Fourth Greek Reader; being Specimens of Greek Dialects. With Introductions and Notes. By W. W. Merry, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Fifth Greek Reader. Part I. Selections from Greek Epic and Dramatic Poetry, with Introductions and Notes. By Evelyn Abbott, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Part II. By the same Editor. In Preparation.

The Golden Treasury of Ancient Greek Poetry; being a Collection of the finest passages in the Greek Classic Poets, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. Wright, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 8s. 6d.

A Golden Treasury of Greek Prose, being a collection of the finest passages in the principal Greek Prose Writers, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. Wright, M.A., and J. E. L. Shadwell, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
Aeschylus. *Prometheus Bound* (for Schools).
With Introduction and Notes, by A. O. Prickard, M.A., Fellow of New College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Aeschylus. *Agamemnon.* With Introduction and Notes by Arthur Sidgwick, M.A., Tutor of Corpus Christi College, Oxford; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Assistant Master of Rugby School. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.

Aeschylus. *The Choephoroe.* With Introduction and Notes by the same Editor. Preparing.

Aristophanes. In Single Plays, edited, with English Notes, Introductions, &c., by W. W. Merry, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo.

The Clouds, 2s. The Acharnians, 2s.
Other Plays will follow.

Arrian. Selections (for Schools). With Notes.
By J. S. Phillpotts, B.C.L., Head Master of Bedford School.

Cebes. *Tabula.* With Introduction and Notes by C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Euripides. *Alcestis* (for Schools). By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


Herodotus. Selections from. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Map, by W. W. Merry, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

By W. W. Merry, M.A. Twenty-fourth Thousand. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.
Book II, separately, 1s. 6d.

Homer. *Odyssey*, Books XIII–XXIV (for Schools). By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.

Homer. *Iliad*, Books VI and XXI. With Introduction and Notes. By Herbert Hailstone, M.A., late Scholar of St. Peter’s College, Cambridge. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 1s. 6d. each.

Lucian. *Vera Historia* (for Schools). By C. S. Jerram, M.A. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 1s. 6d.


Sophocles. In Single Plays, with English Notes, &c. By Lewis Campbell, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of St. Andrew’s, and Evelyn Abbott, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Extra scap. 8vo. limp.

- Oedipus Tyrannus. New and Revised Edition. 2s.
- Oedipus Coloneus, Antigone, 1s. 9d. each.
- Ajax, Electra, Trachiniae, Philoctetes, 2s. each.

Sophocles. *Oedipus Rex*: Dindorf’s Text, with Notes by the present Bishop of St. David’s. Extra scap. 8vo. limp, 1s. 6d.

Theocritus (for Schools). With Notes. By II. Kynaston, M.A. (late Snow), Head Master of Cheltenham College. Third Edition. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


Demosthenes and Aeschines. The Orations of


Sophocles. The Plays and Fragments. With English Notes and Introductions, by Lewis Campbell, M.A., Professor of Greek, St. Andrews, formerly Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. 2 vols.

Sophocles. The Text of the Seven Plays. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

A Manual of Greek Historical Inscriptions. By E. L. Hicks, M.A., formerly Fellow and Tutor of Corpus Christi College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
IV. FRENCH.


Brachet's Historical Grammar of the French Language. Translated into English by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

A Short History of French Literature. By George Saintsbury, M.A. Crown 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.

Specimens of French Literature, from Villon to Hugo. Selected and arranged by the same Editor. Preparing.

A Primer of French Literature. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

French Classics, Edited by GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.

Corneille's Cinna, and Molière's Les Femmes Savantes. With Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Racine's Andromaque, and Corneille's Le Menteur. With Louis Racine's Life of his Father. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Molière's Les Fourberies de Scapin, and Racine's Athalie. With Voltaire's Life of Molière. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Selections from the Correspondence of Madame de Sévigné and her chief Contemporaries. Intended more especially for Girls' Schools. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.

Voyage autour de ma Chambre, by Xavier de Maistre; Ourika, by Madame de Duras; La Dot de Suzette, by Ficole; Les Jumeaux de l'Hôtel Corneille, by Edmond About; Mésaventures d'un Écolier, by Rodolphe Töpffer. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

Regnard's Le Joueur and Brueys and Palaprat's Le Grondeur. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.
Louis XIV and his Contemporaries; as described in Extracts from the best Memoirs of the Seventeenth Century. With English Notes, Genealogical Tables, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

V. GERMAN.

LANGE’S German Course. By HERMANN LANGE,
Teacher of Modern Languages, Manchester:

The Germans at Home; a Practical Introduction to German Conversation, with an Appendix containing the Essentials of German Grammar. Second Edition. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

The German Manual; a German Grammar, a Reading Book, and a Handbook of German Conversation. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

A Grammar of the German Language. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

This ‘Grammar’ is a reprint of the Grammar contained in ‘The German Manual,’ and, in this separate form, is intended for the use of Students who wish to make themselves acquainted with German Grammar chiefly for the purpose of being able to read German books.

German Composition; Extracts from English and American writers for Translation into German, with Hints for Translation in footnotes. In the Press.

Lessing’s Laokoon. With Introduction, English Notes, etc. By A. Hamann, Phil. Doc., M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Wilhelm Tell. A Drama. By Schiller. Translated into English Verse by E. Massie, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 5s.
Also, Edited by C. A. BUCHHEIM, Phil. Doc., Professor in King's College, London:


**Schiller's Wilhelm Tell.** With a Life of Schiller; an historical and critical Introduction, Arguments, and a complete Commentary. Fourth Edition. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


**Schiller's Historische Skizzen; Egmonts Leben und Tod, and Belagerung von Antwerpen.** Second Edition. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

**Goethe's Iphigenie auf Tauris.** A Drama. With a Critical Introduction and Notes. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 3s.

**Modern German Reader.** A Graduated Collection of Prose Extracts from Modern German writers:—

Part I. With English Notes, a Grammatical Appendix, and a complete Vocabulary. Second Edition. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d. Parts II and III in Preparation.

**Lessing's Nathan der Weise.** With Introduction, Notes, etc. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d. *Just Published.*

In Preparation.

**Becker's (K. F.) Friedrich der Grosse.**

**Schiller's Maria Stuart.** With Notes, Introduction, &c.

**Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans.** With Notes, Introduction, &c.

**Selections from the Poems of Schiller and Goethe.**
VI. MATHEMATICS, &c.

Figures Made Easy: a First Arithmetic Book.
(Introductory to 'The Scholar's Arithmetic.') By Lewis Hensley, M.A., formerly Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6d.

Answers to the Examples in Figures Made Easy, together with two thousand additional Examples formed from the Tables in the same, with Answers. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. cloth, 1s.

The Scholar's Arithmetic; with Answers to the Examples. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

The Scholar's Algebra. An Introductory work on Algebra. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


An Elementary Treatise on Electricity. By the same Author. Edited by William Garnett, M.A. Demy 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

A Treatise on the Kinetic Theory of Gases.  
By Henry William Watson, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1875. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.


Geodesy. By Colonel Alexander Ross Clarke, C.B., R.E. 1880. 8vo. cloth, 12s. 6d.

VII. PHYSICAL SCIENCE.


A Treatise on Heat, with numerous Woodcuts and Diagrams. By Balfour Stewart, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. Fourth Edition. 1878. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Lessons on Thermodynamics. By R. E. Baynes, M.A., Senior Student of Christ Church, Oxford, and Lee's Reader in Physics. 1878. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.

Exercises in Practical Chemistry. Vol. I.

Tables of Qualitative Analysis. Arranged by H. G. Madan, M.A. Large 4to. paper covers, 4s. 6d.

Crystallography. By M. H. N. Story-Maskeleyne, M.A., Professor of Mineralogy, Oxford; and Deputy Keeper in the Department of Minerals, British Museum. In the Press.

VIII. HISTORY.


Also in 3 vols. crown 8vo. price 12s. each.


A Short History of the Norman Conquest of England. By E. A. Freeman, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.


Vol. 2. From 1453-1624.
Vol. 3. From 1624-1793.
A History of Germany and of the Empire, down to the close of the Middle Ages. By J. Bryce, D.C.L., Regius Professor of Civil Law in the University of Oxford.

A History of British India. By S. J. Owen, M.A., Reader in Indian History in the University of Oxford.

A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers of the Marquess Wellesley, K.G., during his Government of India. Edited by S. J. Owen, M.A., formerly Professor of History in the Elphinstone College, Bombay. 1877. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 4s.

A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers relating to India of Field-Marshal the Duke of Wellington, K.G. By the same Editor. 1880. 8vo. cloth, 24s.


A History of Greece from its Conquest by the Romans to the present time, B.C. 146 to A.D. 1864. By George Finlay, LL.D. A new Edition, revised throughout, and in part re-written, with considerable additions, by the Author, and Edited by H. F. Tozer, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford. 1877. 7 vols. 8vo. cloth, 3l. 10s.


Italy and her Invaders, A.D. 376-476. By T. Hodgkin, Fellow of University College, London. Illustrated with Plates and Maps. 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 1l. 12s.

IX. LAW.


D 2


Also sold in Parts, in paper covers, as follows:—

Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d.
Part II. Family Law. 1s.
Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 1). 3s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 2). 4s. 6d.

An Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation. By Jeremy Bentham. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.


X. MENTAL AND MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

Bacon. Novum Organum. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. 1878. 8vo. cloth, 14s.

Locke's Conduct of the Understanding. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s.

Selections from Berkeley, with an Introduction and Notes. For the use of Students in the Universities. By Alexander Campbell Fraser, LL.D. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d. (See also p. 13.)

The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By T. Fowler, M.A., Professor of Logic in the University of Oxford. Seventh Edition, with a Collection of Examples. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

The Elements of Inductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities. By the same Author. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. cloth, 6s.


XI. ART, &c.


A Treatise on Counterpoint, Canon, and Fugue, based upon that of Cherubini. By the same Author. Second Edition. 4to. cloth, 16s.

A Treatise on Musical Form and General Composition. By the same Author. 4to. cloth, 10s.


XII. MISCELLANEOUS.

The Construction of Healthy Dwellings; namely Houses, Hospitals, Barracks, Asylums, &c. By Douglas Galton, late Royal Engineers, C.B., F.R.S., &c. Demy 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.


A System of Physical Education: Theoretical and Practical. By Archibald Maclaren. Extra 8vo. cloth, 7s. 6d.


English Plant Names from the Tenth to the Fifteenth Century. By J. Earle, M.A. Small 8vo. cloth, 5s.

An Icelandic Prose Reader, with Notes, Grammar, and Glossary by Dr. Gudbrand Vigfusson and F. York Powell, M.A. 1879. Extra 8vo. cloth, 10s. 6d.
Dante. Selections from the Inferno. With Introduction and Notes. By H. B. Cotterill, B.A. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

Tasso. La Gerusalemme Liberata. Cantos i, ii. With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 2l. 6d.

The Modern Greek Language in its relation to Ancient Greek. By E. M. Geldart, B.A. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.


A Handbook of Phonetics, including a Popular Exposition of the Principles of Spelling Reform. By Henry Sweet, M.A. Extra scap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d.

LONDON: HENRY FROWDE,
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, 7 PATERNOSTER ROW,
OXFORD: CLARENDON PRESS DEPOSITORY,
116 HIGH STREET.

The delegates of the Press invite suggestions and advice from all persons interested in education; and will be thankful for hints, &c., addressed to the Secretary to the Delegates, Clarendon Press, Oxford.